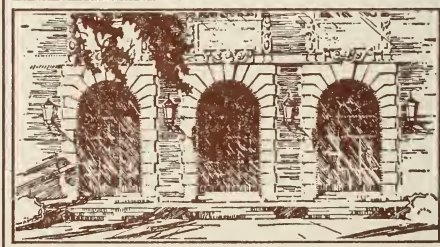


LIBRARY OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS
AT URBANA-CHAMPAIGN

821
C39Yc
v.2





Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2015



THE
Petworth MS
OF
Chaucer's Canterbury Tales.

EDITED BY
FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL.



PART I.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE CHAUCER SOCIETY BY
N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCCLXVIII.

c

Publications
First Series, VI. 12, 19, 38, 42
54, 68

JOHN CHILDS AND SON, PRINTERS.

821
C391c
v. 2

TO THE MEMORY

OF

The late Lady Leonfield

THIS PRINT

OF THE MANUSCRIPT SHE VALUED

IS, BY THE WISH OF LORD LEONFIELD,

DEDICATED.

Christmas, 1868.

64411

GROUP A. FRAGMENT I.

§ 1. GENERAL PROLOGUE.

PETWORTH MS.

WHan that Aprille with his shoures soote [leaf 1]
The droughȝt of marche hath perced to þe roote
And bathes euery veyne in swich licoure
Of which vertue engendrid is þe flour 4
Whan zephirus ek with his swete breth
Inspired hath in euery holt and heth
The tendre croppis *and* þe yonge sonne
Hath in the ram his halfe cours yronne 8

And smale foules make melodye
That slepen al nyght with open eyghē
So prikeþ hem nature in here corages
Than longen folk to gon on pilgrimages 12
And palmers for to seke straunge strondes
To ferne halowes couthe in sondry londes
And specially fram euery shires ende
Of engelond to Caunterbury they wende 16
The holy blisseful martir for to seke
That hem hath holpen when that þey were seke
Byfille þat in that seson on aday
In southwerk atte Tabbard as I lay 20
Redy to wende on my pilgrymage
To Cantirbury with ful devout corage
At nyht was come in to þat hostellerye
Wel nyne and twenty on a companye 24
Of sondry folk by auenture yfalle
In felaschipe *and* pilgrymes were þey alle
That toward Cantirbery wolde ryde

The Chambres and stables weren wyde 28
 And wel weren esed^t atte beste
 And schortly whan the sonne was to reste
 So hadde I spoken with hem euerychon
 That I was of here felaschipe anon 32
 And made forward erly for to ryse
 To take oure wey there as I you deuyse
 But natheles whil I haue tyme and space
 Or þat^t I ferther in this tale pace 36
 Me thynkep it^t accordant^t to reson
 To telle yow al the Condicion
 Of ech of hem so as it^t semed me [leaf 1, back]
 And whiche they were. *and* of what^t degre 40
 And eke in what^t array þat^t they were Inne
 And at^t a knygh^t þan I wol first^t bigynne
A knygh^t þer was *and* þat^t a worthy man
 That fro þe tyme þat he ferst^t bigan 44
 To riden out. he louede Chyualrye
 Trouthe *and* honour fredom and curtesye
 fful worthy was he in his lordis werre
 And therto hadde he ryden no man ferre 48
 As wel in Cristendom as in hethenesse
 And euere honoured for his worthynesse
 ¶ At Alisaundre he was whan it [was] wonne
 fful ofte tyme he hadde the bord bigonne 52
 Aboven alle naciouns in Pruce
 In lettowe had he reysed and in Ruce
 No cristene man so ofte of^t his degre
 In Gernade at the sege ek^t hadde he be 56
 Of Algezire and riden in belmarye
 At Lyeis was he and at Satalye
 When they were wonne *and* in the grete see
 At many a noble armeye had he be 60
 At mortel batailles had he ben fyftene
 And fouhten for oure faith^t at tramessene
 In lystes thryes. and ay slayne his foo

This ilke worthy knyght had ben also 64
 Somtyme with the lord of Palatye
 Ayeyn an othir hethen in Turkye
 And euere more he hadde a souereyne pry
 And though þat he was worthy he was wys 68
 And of his port as meke as is a mayde
 He neuer yet no velonye ne sayde
 In al his lyf vnto no manere wight
 He was a verrey parfit gentil knyght 72
 ffor to tellen yow of his array
 His hors weren gode. but he was not gay
 Of fustyon he werede a gepoñ
 Al bismotered with his habirgeon 76
 ffor he was late ycome from his viage [leaf 2]
 And wente for to don his pilgrymage
 With hym þer was his sone a yong squyere
 A louyere and a lusty bachelere 80
 With lockes crulle as they were leyd in presse
 Of twenty yere of age he was I gesse
 Of his stature he was of euene lengthe
 And wondirly delyuere and gret of strengthe 84
 And he hadde be somtyme in chyuachye
 In fflaundes in Artoys and in Pikardye
 And born him wel as of so litil space
 In hope to stonde in his lady grace 88
 Embroyded was he as it were a mede
 Aft ful of fresshe floures white and rede
 Syngynge he was. or floytynge al the day
 He was also fressh as ys þe moneth of may 92
 Short was his gowne with sleues longe and wyde
 Wel koude he sitte on an hors and faire ryde
 He koude songes make. and wel endite
 Iuste and eke daunce and wel portrey and write. 96
 So hote he louede. that by nygter tale
 He slepte namore than doth a nyghtyngale
 Corteyns he was lowely and servisable

And karf biforn his fadir at the table	100
ANothir yeman hadde he <i>and</i> seruañtes na mo	
At that tyme. for hym lyst ryde so	
And he was clad in coote <i>and</i> hood of grene	
A sheef of pocok arewes bryght and kene	104
Vndir his belt he bar full thriftily	
Wel couthe he dresse his takel yemanly	
Hise arewes drouped noght with feperes lowe	
And in his hond he bar a myghty bowe	108
A not hed hadde he with a broun visage	
Of wode craft wel couthe he al the vsage	
Vppon his arme he bar a gay bracer	
And by his side a swerd and a bokeler	112
And on that oþir syde a gay daggere	
Harneysed wel <i>and</i> sharp as poynt of spere	
A Cristoffre on his brest of seluer shene	[leaf 2, back]
An horn he bar the bawdrik was of grene	116
A foster was he sotly as I gesse	
Ther was a nonne also a prioresse	
That of hir smylunge was ful symple <i>and</i> coy	
Hire grettest ooth was but by sey[n]te loy	120
And she was clepid ma dame Englentyne	
fful wel she song the seruyse divyne	
Entuned in hire nose ful semyly	
And frenshe she spak ful faire and fetysly	124
Aftir the skole of Stratford atte bowe	
ffor frensch of Parys was to hire vnknowe	
At mete wel I-taught was sche with alle	
She leet no morsel from hir lippes falle	128
Ne wete hire fyngres in hire sause depe	
Wel couthe she carye a morsel <i>and</i> wel kepe	
That no drope ne fille vppon hire breste	
In curtesye was set ful mochel hire leste	132
Hire ouer lippe wiped she so clene	
That in hir cuppe ther was no ferthing sene	
Of grece whan she dronken hadde hire draughte	

fful semyly aftir hir mete she raughte 136
 And sikerly sche was of gret^t disporte
 And ful plesaunt and amable of porte
 And peynede hire to counterfete chere
 Of court^t. and to ben estatliche of^t manere 140
 And to be holden digne of^t reuerence
 But for to speken of^t hir Conciense
 She was so charitable and so pitous
 She wolde wepe yif^t that^t she sau^h a mous 144
 Kaugh[t] in a trappe yif^t it were ded or bledde
 Of smale houndes had she that^t she fedde
 With rostid flesh or mylk^t or wastelbrede
 But^t sore wepte she yf oon of^t hem were dede 148
 Or yf^t men smoot yt^t with a yerde smerte
 And al was conscience *and* tendre herte
 fful semeliche hire wypil pynchid was
 Hir nose was streight^t. hire eighen grey as glas 152
 Hire mouth ful smal *and* therto softe and rede [leaf 3]
 But sekerly she hadde a fair forhede
 It was almost a spanne brood I trowe
 ffor hardely she was nouht vndirgrowe 156
 fful fetys was hir cloke as I was waar
 Of smal coral aboute hir arme she baar
 A paire of bedys gaudid al with grene
 And ther on hyng^t a broche of gold ful shene 160
 On which þer was first^t writen a crowned A
 And aftir amor vincit^t omnia
 An othir Nonne with hire hadde she
 That was hire chapeleyn. *and* prestes thre 164
 A monk^t þer was a fair for the maistrye
 An out^t ridere that^t loued venerye
 A manly man to ben an Abbot^t able
 fful many a deynte hors hadde he in stable 168
 And whanne he rood. men myhte his bryditt here
 Gynglynge in a whistelynge wynd as clere
 And eke as loude as dooth þe chapel belle

Ther as this lord was keper of the selle	172
The reule of seynt ^t Maure or of seint Benet ^t	
Bi cause þat yt was olde <i>and</i> somdel streit	
This ylke monke leet olde þynges pace	
And heeld aftir the newe world the space	176
He yaf ^t nouht ^t of ^t the text ^t a pulled hen	
That ^t seith that ^t hunters be nouht ^t holy men	
Ne that a monke whan he is recheles	
Is likened tille a fisshe þat ^t is watirles	180
This is to seye a monke out ^t of ^t his cloistre	
But thilke text ^t held he nouht ^t worth an oystre	
And I seyde his opynion ⁿ was good	
What shulde he studie. and make hymself ^t wood	184
Vpon a book ^t alwey in cloistre to poure	
Or swynke with his hondis and laboure	
As Austyn bit. hou shal the world be serued	
Lat Austyn haue his swynk ^t to him reserued	188
Therfore he was a pricasour aright ^t	
Grehoundes he hadde / as swift ^t as foule in flight ^t	
Of prikyng ^e <i>and</i> of huntyng ^e for the hare	[leaf 3, back]
Was al his lust ^t for no cost wole he spare	192
I seigh hise sleues I-purfiled at ^t the hond ^t	
With grys <i>and</i> that ^t the fynest ^t of a lond ^t	
And for to festne his hood vndir the Chynne	
He hadde of ^t gold ^t wrought ^t a ful curious py ⁿ ne	196
A loue knotte in the gretter ende þer was	
His hed was ballyd that ^t shon as ony glas	
And eke his face. as he hadde ben anoynt ^t	
He was a lord ^t ful fat ^t and in good ^t poynt ^t	200
Hise eiȝthen stepe and rollyng ^e in his hede	
That stemed ^e as a fourneys of a lede	
Hise botes scuple his hors in grete estate	
Now certeynly he was a fair prelate	204
He nas nat pale as a forpynd goost ^t	
A fat swan louede he best ^t of any roost ^t	
His palfray was [as] broun as ys a berye	

A ffrere ther was a wa[n]toun *and* [a] merye 208
 A lymytour a ful solempne man
 In alle the ordres foure is noon that can
 So mochel of daliañce *and* fair langage
 He hadde made ful many a Mariage 212
 Of yonge wommen at his owne cost
 Vn to his ordre he was a noble post
 fful wel biloued *and* famulier was he
 With frankeleynes oueral in his contre 216
 And with worthy wommen of the toun
 ffor he hadde power of confessioun
 As seide hym self more than a Curat
 ffor [of] his ordre he was lycenciat 220
 fful swetely herede he confession
 And plesaunt was his absolucion
 He was an esy man to yeue penañce
 Ther as he wiste to han a good pitañce 224
 ffor wnto a pore ordre for to yeue
 Is signe that a man ys wel yshreve
 ffor yf he yaf he dorste make avaunt
 He wiste þat a man was repentaunt 228
 ffor many a man is so hard of his herte [leaf 4]
 He may noght wepe al þouh him sore smerte
 Ther fore in stede of wepyng and preieres
 Men mote yeue seluer / to the pore freres 232
 His tipet was ay fassed ful of knyfes
 And pynnes for to yeue faire wyfes
 And certeynly he hadde a mery note
 Wel coude he syngen and playen on a roote 236
 Of yeddynges he bar vtirly the pryce
 His necke white was as the flour delyce
 Therto he was strong as a champioun
 He knew the tauernes wel in every toun 240
 And eueriche Osteller and tapestere
 Bet than a lazer or a beggere
 ffor vnto swich a worthy man as he

Acordith nouht as by his faculte	244
To haue with swich seke lazers aqueyntaunce	
It is nouht honest / it may nouht auaunce	
ffor to delen with swich poraille	
But al with riche and sillers of vitaille	248
And oueral ther as profite sholde aryse	
Curtays he was and lowely of seruyse	
Ther nas no man nowher so vertuous	
He was the beste beggere in his hous	252
[.]	
. <i>no gap in the MS.</i>	
ffor þouh a widewe hadde nouht a sho	
So plesaunt was his Inprincipio	
Yet wolde he haue a ferthyng ^r or he wente	
His purchace was wel bettere þan his rente	256
And rage he couthe as it were riht a whelp	
In louedaies ther coude he mochil helpe	
ffor ther he was not liche a cloistrere	
With a thredbare cope as a pore scolere	260
But he was lyke a maistir or a pope	
Of double worstede was his semy cope	
That rounded as a belle out of the presse	
Somwhat he lippede for his wantonesse	264
To make his englyssh swete vpon his tonge	
And in his harpynge whan þat he had songe	
Hise eyghen twyncelede in his hede aright	[leaf 4, back]
As doon the sterres in a frosty nyht	268
This worthy lymytour was clepid hubert	
A Marchant was ther with a longe berd	
In motle and heyh on horse he satte	
Vpon his heued a flaundrisshe beuer hatte	272
Hise botis clapsid faire and fetisly	
His resouns he spak ful solempnely	
Shewynge alwey the eneres of his wynnynge	
He wolde the see were kept for any thyng	276
Bitwixe Middelburgh and Orewelle	

Wel coude he in eschange sheldes selle
 This worthy man ful wel his witte bisette
 Ther wiste no wight^t that^t he was in dette 280
 So estatly was he of^t his gouernañce
 With his bargaynes *and with* his cheuyssañce
 fforsothe he was a worthy man with alle
 But sothely to seyne I not^t how men hym calle 284
A Clerk per was of^t Oxenforde also
 That^t vnto logyk^t hadde longe I-go
 As lene was his hors as ys a rake
 And he was not^t right fat^t I wndirtake 288
 But lokede holewh^t and p^terto soburly
 fful thredbare was his ouerest Courtepy
 ffor he hadde yit^t geten him no benefice
 Ne was so wordly [for] to haue office 292
 ffor hym was leuere haue at^t his bed hede
 Twenty bokes clad in blak^t or rede
 Of Aristotle and his philosophie
 Then robes riche or fithel or gay sautrye 296
 But^t al be that^t he was a philosofre
 Yet hadde he but litel gold in cofre
 But al that^t he myhte of his frendes hente
 On bokes and on lernynge he it^t spente 300
 And besily gan for tho soules preye
 Of hem that yaf hym wharwith to skole-aye
 Of studie took^t he moost cure *and* most hede
 Naught^t a word spak^t he / more than was nede / 304
 And that^t was seid in forme and reuerence [leaf 5]
 And short^t and quyk^t and ful [of] hey sentence
 Sownynge in moral vertue was his speche
 And gladly wolde he lerne *and* gladly teche 308
A sergañt of^t the lawe / war^t *and* wys
 That^t often hadde ben atte parvys
 That was also ful riche of excellence
 Discret he was and of gret reuerence 312
 He semed swich^t hise wordis wern so wise

Iustice he was ful often in assise
 By patent *and* by pleyn commyssioun
 ffor his science. and for his high renoun 316
 Of fees and robes hadde he many on
 So gret a purchassour was nowher non
 Al was fee symple to him in effecte
 His purchassyng myht nouhit ben infecte 320
 Nowher so besy a man as he ther nas
 And yet he semed bisiere than he was
 In termes hadde he caas *and* domes alle
 That from the tyme of kyng^t william were falle 324
 Therto he cowde endite and make a thyng^t
 Ther couthe no wight^t pynche at^t his writyng^t
 And euery statute couthe he pleyne by roote
 He rood but homely in a medle coote 328
 Gert^t with a sent^t of sell^t wip^t barres smale
 Of his array telle I no lenger tale
 A ffrankeleyn was in his compaignye
 Whit^t was his berd^t as is the daieseye 332
 Of his complexioun he was sangwyne
 Wel louede he by the morewe a soppe in wyne
 To lyuen in delite euere was his wone
 ffor he was Epiournes owne sone 336
 That helde opynyon^t pat^t pleyn delite
 Was verrey felicite parfite
 An houshaldere and that^t a greet^t was he
 Seint Iulyan he was in his contre 340
 His bred his ale was alleweys aftir oon
 A bettir envyned man / was nowher noon /
 With oute bakemete was neuere his hous [leaf 5, back]
 Of fische and fleisshe *and* pat^t so plenteuous 344
 It snewe in his hous of^t mete and drynke
 Of alle deyntethes that^t men couthe thinke
 Aftir the sondry sesons of the yere
 So changed he his mete and his sopere 348
 fful many a fat^t partrich hadde he in Mewe

And many a breme *and* many a luce in stewe
 Wo was his cook^t but^t [if] his sauce were
 Poynant^t and sharpe and redy al his gere 352
 His table dormant in his halle al way
 Stood redy couered al the longe day
 At session^s ther was he lord and sire
 fful often tyme he was knyght^t of the shire 356
 An anelas and a gypsere al of^t silke
 Heng^t at his girdel white as morne mylke
 A sherreff^t had he ben / *and* a comptour
 Was nowher swich a worthy vauasour 360
 A N habirdasshere and a Carpenter
 A Webbe. a Diere and a Tapece^re
 And they were clothid alle in oo lyuere
 Of a solempne and a greet^t fraternyte 364
 fful fressh and newe here gere apiked was
 Here knyfes nere chap^[ed] nouht^t with bras
 But al with syluer wrought ful clene *and* wel
 Here gerdelles and her pouches euery del 368
 Wel semed ech of^t hem a fair burgeys
 To sitten in a yeldhalle on a deys
 Eueriche for the wisdom that^t he can
 Was shaply for to bene an Aldirman 372
 For cateff^t hadde they I-nouñ and Rente
 And eke her wifes wolde it^t wel assente
 And elles certeyn^[ly] they were to blame
 It is ful fair to be clepid Madame 376
 And gon to vigilies al be fore
 And haue a mantel rialliche I-bore
 A Cook^t they hadde / with hem for the nones
 To boille the chickenes with þe maribones 380
 And poudre Marchaunt^t tart^t of Gallyngale [leaf 6]
 Wel kowde he knowe a drauñt of london^e ale
 He Couthe roste *and* sethe *and* broyle *and* frye
 Maken Mortrews and wel bake a pye 384
 But gret ha[r]m was it^t / as it thouhte me

That on his shene a mormal hadde he
 For blank manger that made he with the beste
 A Shipman was ther / wonyng fer bi weste 388
 For ouht I woot he was of Dertemouthe
 He rood vpon a Rouncey as he couthe
 In a gowne of ffaldyng to the kne
 A daggar hangyng in a lace hadde he 392
 Aboute his necke vnder his arme doun
 The hote somer hadde made his hiew al broun
 And Certeynly he was a good felawe
 fful many a drauht of wyn hadde he drawe 396
 ffrom burdeux ward while the chapmen slepe
 Of nyce conscience took he no kepe
 Yif that he fauht / and hadde the heihere hond
 By watir he sente hem home to euery lond 400
 But of his craft / to rikene wel his tydes
 His stremes and his daunger him bisydes
 His herberuh. his moone and his lodmanage
 Ther nos noon such from hulle to Cartage 404
 Hardy he was / and wys to vndirtake
 With many a tempest had his berd be shake
 He knew alle the hauenes as they were
 ffrom gutlond to the cape de fynystere 408
 And euery cryke in bretaygne and in Spayne
 His barge y-clepid was the maudeleyne
 W With us ther was a doctour of fisike
 In al this world ne was ther none hym lik 412
 To speke of fisike and of surgerye
 ffor he was grounded in astronomye
 He kepte his pacient a ful greet del
 In houres by his magik naturel 416
 Wel couthe he fortune the assendent
 Of his ymages for his pacient
 He knew the cause of euery maladye [leaf 6, back]
 Were it of hoot or cold or moyst or drye 420
 And wher engendred and [of] what humour

He was a verrey parfit^t practisour
 The cause I-knowe and of his harm the roote
 Anoon he yaf the sike man his boote 424
 fful redy hadde he hise apotecaries
 To sende hem drugges / and his letuaries
 ffor ech of hem made othir for to wyne
 Her frendshiþe nas nat newe to bigynne 428
 Wel knew he the olde Escalapius
 And diascoride and ek^t Rufus
 Old ypocras Hayly and Galien
 Serapion Rasis and Auysen 432
 Aueroys Damascien and constantyne
 Bernard and Gatisden *and* Gilbertyne
 Of his diete mesurable was he
 ffor it was of no superfluyte 436
 Bot of gret^t norshinge and digestable
 His studie was but^t litel on the bible
 In sangweyn and in perce he clad was al
 Lyned with Taffata and with sendal 440
 And yet he was but esy of^t dispense
 He kepte that^t he wan in pestilence
 ffor gold in Phisik^t is a cordeal
 Therfore he louede gold^t in special 444
 A Good wiff^t ther was of besides bathe
 But she was somdel def^t and þat was scathe
 Of cloth makynge sche hadde such an haunt
 She passid hem of ypres and of Gaunt 448
 In alle the parisch wif^t ne was ther noon
 That to the offrynge toforn hir shulde goon
 And yf ther dide / certeyn wroth was she
 That she was out of al[le] charite 452
 Hir couerchefes ful fyne were of ground^t
 I durste swere they weyeden ten pound^t
 That on a Sondag weren vpon hire hede
 Hir hosen weren of fyne scarlet^t rede 456
 fful streight I-tied / and shoes ful moist^t *and* newe [leaf 7]

Bold was hir face and faire / *and* red of hiewe
 She was a worthi womman al hir lyue
 Housbondes atte chirche dore she hadde fyue 460
 With outen othir companie in youthe
 But ther of nedith nouȝt to speke as nouthe
 And thries hadde she bene at Ierusalem
 She had[de] passed many a strange strem 464
 At Rome sche had ben / *and* at boloyne
 In Galice at saint Iame *and* at Coloigne
 She koude moche on wandrynge bi the weye
 Gat tothid was she sothely for to seie 468
 Vp on an Amblere esily she satte
 I-wympled wel and on hir heed an hatte
 As brood as is a bokellere or a targe
 A fot mantel abouten hire hipes large 472
 And on hire feet a paire of spores sharpe
 In felaschipe wel couthe sche lawȝe *and* carpe
 Of remedies of loue she kneuȝ parchaunce
 ffor she couthe of that art the daunce 476
A Good man was there of religioun
 And was a pore persoun of a toun
 But riche he was of holy thouȝt *and* werk
 He was also a lerned man *and* a clerk 480
 That Cristes gospel treuly wolde preche
 His parisschens deuoutly wolde he teche
 Benyngne he was and wondir diligent
 And in aduersite / ful pacient 484
 And swich he was [i]preued ofte sithes
 fful looth were him to cursen for his tythes
 But rather wolde he yeuen out of doute
 Vnto his poure parisschens aboute 488
 Of his offrynge and of his substaunce
 He couthe in litil thing han suffisaunce
 Wide was hise parisshe *and* houses fer asondir
 But he ne lafte nouthir for rayne ne for thundir 492
 In sikenesse nor in meschief to visite

The ferrest in his parisch myche and lite
 Vp on his fete / and in his hond a staffⁱ [leaf 7, back]
 This noble ensample to his shepe he yafⁱ 496
 Thatⁱ ferstⁱ he wroughte. and aftirwardⁱ þat he tauhte
 Outⁱ of the gospel he þo wordes cauhte
 And this figure he addede ekⁱ therto
 Thatⁱ yf gold ruste / whatⁱ shal Iren do 500
 For ifⁱ a prestⁱ be foul on whom we triste
 No wondir is a lewed man to ruste
 And shame it is yfⁱ a prest take kepe
 A shiten sheperde and a clene shepe 504
 Wel ouhte a preest ensample for to yeue
 By his clenness hou thatⁱ his sheepe shulde lyue
 He setⁱ nauht his benefice to hire
 And leetⁱ his sheep acombred in the myre 508
 And ran to london vn to seint Poules
 To seke hym a chañterye for soules
 Or with a bretherhede to bene with holde
 Butⁱ duelte atⁱ home / and kepte wel his folde 512
 So thatⁱ the wolf ne made itⁱ notⁱ myscarye
 He was a shepperde and notⁱ a mercenarie
 And thouh he holy were and vertuous
 He was nouht to synful men dispitous 516
 Ne on his speche daungerous ne digne
 But in his techynge discretⁱ and benygne
 To drawen folkⁱ to heuene by fairnesse
 By good ensample / this was his bisynesse 520
 Butⁱ itⁱ were eny personⁱ obstynate
 Whatⁱ so he were ofⁱ heigh or lowh estate
 Hym wolde he snebbe sharply for the nones
 A bettre prest I trowe þat nowher noon es 524
 He waitede aftir no pompe and reuerence
 Ne maked hym a spiced conscience
 But cristes lore / and hise apostles tuelue
 He tauhte / but ferst he folewed in hymselfue 528
 With hym ther was a plouhman / was his broþir

That hadde I-lad of dong ful many a fothir
 And a trewe swynkere *and* a good was he
 Lyvyng in pees / and parfit charite 532
 God loued he best with al his hole herte [leaf 8]
 At alle tymes thouh he gamed or smerte
 And than his neighebure riht as hymselue
 He wolde thresshe and therto dike *and* delue 536
 For cristes sake / for euery pouere wight
 With oute hire / yif hit lay in his myght
 Hise tythis payed he ful faire and wel
 Bothen of his propre swynke and his catel 540
 In a tabbard he rood vp on a mere
 Ther was also a Reve and a Mellere
 A somenour and a Pardoner also
 A Maunciple and my self ther nar na mo 544
 The mellere was a strong carle for the nones
 Tfful bigge he was / of brawne and ek of bones
 That proued wel / for oueral thare he cam
 Atte wrastelynge / he wolde haue a-wey the ram 548
 He was short shuldred a thicke knarre
 Ther was no dore that he ne wolde heue of barre
 Or breke it at a rennyng with his heed
 His berd as any sowe or fox was reed 552
 And therto brood as pouh it were a spade
 Vp on the cop right of his nose he hade
 A werte and peron stood a tuft of heres
 Rede as the brysteles of a sowes eres 556
 His nose prilles blake were and wyde
 A swerd and a bokelere bar he be his side
 His mouthe as greet was as a greet fourneys
 He was a iangelere and a goliardeys 560
 And that was moost of synne *and* of harlotryes
 Wel couthe he stele corn / and tolle thryes
 And yit he hadde a thombe of gold parde
 A white cote and a blewe hood wered he 564
 A bagge-pipe wel couthe he blowe *and* sowne

And þerwith al he brouht' us out' of towne

A Gentil mañiple was þer o[f] a temple
Of which a catour myghte take ensample 568

ffor to ben wise in biynge of vitaille

ffor whepir þat he payed / or toke by taille

Algate he waitede so in his achate [leaf 8, back]

That he was ay befor and in good estate 572

Now is not' þat' of god a ful fair grace

That such a lewed mannes wit shal pace

The wysdom of an hepe of lerned men

Of maystres hadde he mo þan thries ten 576

That were of lawe expert' an Curious

Of wiche ther was a doseyn in that hous

Worthy to bene stywardes of Rente *and* lond

Of any lord that is in Ingelond 580

To make hym lyue by his propre good

In honour detteles but' if that' he were wood

Or lyue als skarsly as hym lyst desire

And able for to helpen al a shire 584

In any cas that myhte falle or happe

And yit this Maunciple sette ther althir cappe

The Reue was a selendre colerik' man

His berd was shaue / as nyhe as euer he can 588

His heer was by hise eres ful rounde yshorne

His toppe was docked like a prest byforne

fful longe were his legges and ful lene

I-like a staf' / ther was no calf' ysene 592

Wel couthe he kepe a Garner or a bynne

Ther was none auditour couthe on hym wyne

Wel wiste he / by the drouht *and* by the reyne

The yeldynge of' his seed / and of' his greyne 596

Hise lordes sheepe / hise neete / hise dayerie

His swyne / his hors / his stoor / *and* his pultrye

Was hoolly in this reues gouernynge

And by his covenant' / yaf' the rekenynge 600

Syn that his lord was twenty yeer of age

Ther couthe no man brynge hym in a-rerage
 Ther nas baylyf^t ne herde nor othir hyne
 That he ne knew his sleighte *and* his covyne 604
 They were a-drad of hym / as of the deth
 His wonynge was ful faire vpon an heth
 With grene trees / shadewed was his place
 He couthe bettre than his lord purchace 608
 fful riche he was astored pryuely [leaf 9]
 His lorde he coupe wel plese *and* sub[t]ily
 To ȝeue and lene him of his owne goode
 To haue a þonke and yit^t a cote and hode 612
 In ȝoupe he had lered a good mistere
 He was a wel good wriȝt^t a Carpentere
 This Reue satte vpon a wel good stot^t
 That^t was al pomel grey *and* highte scot^t 616
 A longe Surcote of Peers vppon he hadde
 And by his side he bare a rusty blade
 Of Northfolk was þis Reue of which I telle
 Besides a toune men clepen it^t Baldewelle 620
 Tukked he was as is a frere aboute
 And euere he rode þe hynderest^t of our route
 A Somnour was ther wiþ vs in that place
 That^t had a fury cherubynes face 624
 ffor Sauseflewme he was wiþ eyen narowe
 Als hote he was and leccherous as a sparowe
 With scalled browes. blak^t and pilled beerde
 Of his visage children weren a-ferde 628
 Ther nas quyke siluer^t litarge or bremstoñ
 Boras orsure no oyle of tartre nōōn
 Ne oynement^t þat^t wold[e] clense *and* byte
 That him myght^t helpe of his whelkes white 632
 Ne of [the] knobbes sitting^t in his chekes
 Wel loued he garlike. oynyōñs *and* eke lekes
 And for to drink strong^t wyne rede as blode
 Than wolde he speke and cry as he were wode . 636
 And whan [that] he wel dronken had þe wyne

Than wolde he speke no worde but^t latyng
 A fewe teermes had he two or thre
 That^t he had lerned out^t of som decree 640
 No wonder is he herd^t to al þe day
 And eke 3e knowen it^t wel how þat a Iay
 Can clepe watt^t as wel as can þe pope
 But^t who so couþe in oþer þing^t hym grope 644
 Than had he spent^t al his Philosophie [leaf 9, back]
 Ay questio quid iuris wold he crye
 He was a gentile harlot^t and a kinde
 A better felawe shul[de] men not^t fynde 648
 He wolde suffre for a quarte of wyne
 A good felawe to haue his concubyne
 A twelue month and excuse him ate fulle
 fful priuely eke a ffynche couþe he pulle 652
 And if he fonde owhere a good felawe
 He wolde techen hym to han noon awe
 In such caas of þe archedekens curs
 But^t if [a] mannys soule were in his purs 656
 ffor in his purs he shuld[e] punshed be
 Purs is þe erchedekenes Helle seide he
 But^t wel I wote he lyed riȝt^t in dede
 Of cursing^t ouȝt^t eche gilty man to drede 660
 ffor curs wil slee riȝt^t as assayling saueth
 And also war hym of a significauith
 In daunger had he at his owne gyse
 The yonge Geerles of þe diocise 664
 And knewe her counsaile *and* what was al her rede
 A Gallonde had he sette vpon his hede
 As grete as it were for an ale stake
 A Bokelere had he made hym of a Cake 668
With hym þer rode a gentile Pardoner^t
 Of rounçyuale his frende and his comper^t
 That^t streght^t was comen from þe courte of Rome
 fful lowde songe he come hider^t loue come 672
 This somnour bare to hym a stif burdoñ

Was neuere trumpe of half so gret^t a souñ
 This Pardoner had heer as 3elowe as wexe
 But smoth it^t henge. as doþ a strike of flexe 676
 By ounces henge his lockes þat^t he had
 And þerwip he his shulders ouersprad
 But^t thyn it lay by culpons oon and oñ
 But^t hode for Iolite wered he noon 680
 ffor it^t was trussed vp in his walette [leaf 10]
 Hym þou3t^t he rode al of þe newe gette
 Discheuele sauf his cap he rode al bare
 Suche glaryng^t eyen had he as an hare 684
 A vernycle had he sewed vpon his cappe
 His walet^t [lay] biforn him in his lappe
 Bret ful of pardoñ comen from Rome al hote
 A voyce he had as smal as a[n]y goote 688
 No beerde ne had he. ne neuere shuld haue
 As smoth it^t was as it^t were late shaue
 I trowe he were a gelding^t or a mare
 But^t of his craft^t from Barwik^t into ware 692
 Ne was þer suche a noþer pardonere
 ffor in his male he had a pilowbere
 Which þat he seide was oure lady vaile
 He seide he had a gobet^t of þe saile 696
 That^t seynt^t Peter had whan þat he went^t
 Vpon þe see to Ihesu crist hym hent^t
 He had a croys of laton ful of stones
 And in a glas he had[de] pigges bones 700
 But^t wip þise relikes whan þat^t he fonde
 A poor[e] person dwellyng^t vpon londe
 Vpon a day he gate hym more moneye
 þan þe the persone gate in Monþes tweye 704
 And þus wip feyned flateryng *and* Iapes
 He made þe Person *and* þe puple his apes
 But^t trew[e]ly to tellen at^t þe laste
 He was in chirche a noble ecclesiaste 708
 Wel coupe he rede a lessoñ or a storye

But^t al^{per}best he song^t an offertorie
 ffor wel he wist^t whan þat^t songe was songe
 He moste preche and wel afile his tonge 712
 To wyne siluer as he [right] wel cowde
 Therfore he songe so merily *and* lowde
 Now have I toll^d þou sopl^y in a clause
 The asta^{at}. þe aray. þe nombre *and* eke þe cause 716
 Why þat^t assembled was þis companye [leaf 10, back]
 In Suthwerk at^t þis gentil hostrye
 That^t hight^t þe Tabard^t faste by þe belle
 But^t nowe is tyme to þou forto telle 720
 Howe þat^t we beren vs þat ilke nyght^t
 Whan [we] were in þat^t Hostrie a-light^t
 And after wil I tellen of our viage
 And al þe remenaunt of our Pilgrymage 724
 But^t furst^t I prey þou of þoure curtesie
 That þe ne rette it^t not^t my vilanye
 þoo þat^t I pleyⁿly speke in þis matere
 To telle þou her wordes *and* her chere 728
 Ne þouze he speke her wordes proprely
 ffor þis þe knowen as wel as I
 Who so shal telle a tale after a man
 He mote reherce as nyghe as euer he can 732
 Eueriche word if^t it^t be in his charge
 Al speke he neuere so rudely and large
 Or ellis he mote telle his tale vntrewe
 Or feyne þinggis or fynde wordes newe 736
 He may not^t spare al þoughⁿ he were his proper^t
 He mot^t also wel say. oo word^t as another^t
 Crist^t spak him self ful brode in holy writte
 And wel þe wote no vilanye is itte 740
 Eke Plato seiþ who so can hym rede
 The wordes mote be cosyn to þe dede
 Also I prey þou [to] forþeue it^t me
 Al haue I not^t sette folk in her degre 744
 Here in þis tale as þat^t thei shulde stonde

My witte is short^t 3e may wel vnderstonde
Grete chere made oure hooste vs euerechoñ
 And to þe soper sette he vs anoñ 748
 He serued vs with vitailles at þe best^t
 Stronge was þe wyne and wel [to] drink^t vs lest^t
 A semely man our hooste was wiþ all
 ffor to [han] bene a marshal in an hañt 752
 A large man he was with yen stepe [leaf 11]
 A fairer Burges is [ther] none in chepe
 Bold of his speche. and wise *and* wel ytaugt
 And of manhode hym lacked[e] right^t naught^t 756
 Eke þerto he was right^t a mery man
 And after soper pleyen he bygan
 And spak of myrthñ amonge oþer þinges
 Whan that^t we had[de] made our rekenyngges 760
 And seide þus. now lordingges trewly
 3e bene to me welcome riȝt^t hertely
 ffor be my troupe if þat^t I shal not lye
 I seegh not^t þis 3ere so mery a companye 764
 At^t ones in þis harborowe as is nowē
 ffayne wold I do 3ou merthe wist^t I howe
 And of a merþe I am right^t now by-þought^t
 To doñ 3ou ease and it shal coste nouȝt 768
3e gone to canterbery god 3ou spede
 þe blisful martir. quite 3ou 3our^t mede
 And wel I wote. as 3e goon by þe way
 3e shapen 3ou to talen and to pley 772
 ffor trewly conforte ne myrthe is nōn
 To riden by þe wey dombe as a stone
 And þerfor wil I. make 3ou disporte
 As I seide erste and don 3ou som conforte 776
 And if 3ou likeþ alle by oon assente
 [Now] fforto stonden at my Iuggemente
 And forto worchen as I shal 3ou seie
 To morowe whan 3e riden by þe weie 780
 Now be my faders soule þat^t is dede

But 3e be mery. I wil 3eue 3ou my hede
 Holde vp 3oure hondes wip out' more speche
 Our counsaile was not longe for to seche 784
 Vs pou3t' it was not / worþe to make to wis
 And graunted hym wip oute more avis
 And bad him seie his veredit as him lest'
 Lordingges quod he nowe herkenep for þe best' 788
 But' take it' not' I prei 3ou in disdeyne [leaf 11, back]
 This is þe point' to speke short' and pleyne
 That' eche of 3ou to shorte wip our waye
 In þis viage shal telle tailles twaye 792
 To Caunterbery ward' I mene it so
 And homwardes he shal telle opere twoo
 Of auentures þat' han whilom bifalle
 And which of 3ou þat' bereþ hym best' of alle 796
 þat' is to sey þat' telleþ in þis cas
 Tales of best' sentence and most' solas
 shal haue a sopere at' our alder cost'
 Her in þis place sitting' by þis post' 800
 Whan þat' we comen ageyn from Canterburye
 And forto make 3ou þe more merye
 I wil my seluen goodly wip 3ou ride
 Right' at myne owne cost' and be 3our' gide 804
 And who so wil my Iugement' wipseye
 Shal pay al þat' we spenden by þe weye
 And if 3e vouche sauf þat' it' be so
 Telle me anon wip outen wordes moo 808
 And I wiþ erly shape me þefore
 þis þinge was graunted and our opes swore
 Wip ful glad hert' and preien hym also
 þat' he wolde vouchesauf so to do 812
 And þat' he wolde be our governour'
 And of our tales Iugge and roportour'
 And sette a sopere at' a certeyn price
 And we wold rewled bene at his deuice 816
 In heghe and lough and þus by on assent'

We bene accorded to þe Iuggement
 And þer vpon þe wyne was fette anon
 We dronken and to reste wente echoñ 820
 Wiþ oute eny lenger tariynge
 On morowe whan þe day [bi]gan to sprynge
 Vp roos oure hooste and was oure alder' Cok
 And gadered vs to gidere in a flok. 824
 And forþ we riden a litel more þan paas [leaf 12]
 Vnto þe watering' of Seynt' Thomas
 And þer our hooste gan his hors areste
 And seide lordes harkenep if yow leste 828
 3e wote 3oure forward' and I it 3ou record'
 If euensonge and morowsonge accord'
 Lat' see nowe who. shal telle þe first' tale
 As euer mote I drinke wyne or ale 832
 Who so be rebett to my Iuggement
 Shal paye for al þat' by þe way is spent'
 Now drawep Cut' er þat' we ferþer twynne
 Which þat' hap þe shortest shal bygynne 836
 ¶ Sir' knyght' quod he my maister and my lorde
 Now drowep Cutte for þat' is myn accorde
 Commeth nere quod he my lady prioresse
 And 3e sir Clerk lat' be 3oure shamfastnesse 840
 Ne stodieth nou3t' lay honde to euery man
 Anoñ to drawe every wight' bygan
 And shortely forto tellen as it' was
 Were it' be auenture or sort' or cas 844
 The soþe is þis þe Cut' fille to þe kny3t'
 Of which full glad and bliþe was euery wi3t'
 And tellen he most his tale as it' was resoñ
 By forward' and by compo[si]cion 848
 As 3e han herde what' needet' wordes moo
 And whan þis good man seegh þat' it' was soo
 As he þat' wise was and obedient
 To kepen his forward' by his fre assent' 852
 He seide sipen I shal bygynne þe game

What welcome be þe Cutte a goddis name
 Now lat vs ride *and* harkenep what I saye
 And wiþ þat word we riden forþ our waye 856
 And [he] byganne wiþ riȝt a mery chere
 His tale anoñ and seide as ȝe may here

¶ Iam que domos patrias scithice post aspera gentis:
 Prelia laurigero &c. Thus endep þe Prologe of þis
 Boke.

¶ ffabula militis. Here bygynneþ the knyghtes tale.

Whilom was / as olde stories tellen vs [leaf 12, back]
 A worpi duk^t hight^t theseus 860
 Of Athenes he was lord *and* *gouvernour*
 And in his tyme suche a Conquerour^t
 That gretter was [ther] noon vnder þe sunne
 fful many a riche contre had he wonne 864
 What^t wiþ his wisdom and his chyualrye
 He conquered al þe regne of femynye
 That^t whilom was ycleped Sithia
 And wedded[e] þe quene ypolita 868
 And brouzt^t her home wiþ hym to his cuntre
 Whith moeh glorie and gret^t solempnite
 And eke her 3enge suster Emelie
 And þus with victorie and with melodye 872
 Lat I þis noble Duke to Athenes ride
 And al his hooste in armes hym beside
 And certes if it^t nere to longe to here
 I wold^t haue tolde fully þe manere 876
 Howe wonnen was þe Reaume of ffemyny
 By Theseus and by his Chiualrye
 And of þe grete bataille for þe nones
 Bytwyxen Athenes and amazones 880
 And howe asseged was ypolita
 The faire ladye qune of Scithia
 And of þe feest^t þat^t was at her weddinge
 And of þe tempest^t at her home *commynge* 884
 But^t al þat^t þing^t I mot^t as nowe forbere
 I haue god wote a large feelde to ere
 And weiike bene þe oxen in my plough
 The remenaunte of þe tale is long ynogh 888
 I wil not^t letten eke noon of þis route

Lat' euery felawe telle his tale aboute

And lat se nowe who shal þe soper wyne

And þer I lafte: I wil aȝein bygynne [A break in the MS. with]
Incipit narracio plena Militis.

This Duk of whom I make mencion [leaf 13]

Whan he was comen almost to þe toun

In al his wele and his most Pride

He was war as he cast' his eyen atside 896

Where þat' þer kneled in þe highe waye

A companye of ladys twey and tweye

Eche after oþer clad in cloþes blake

But' suche a crye and such a woo þei make 900

That' in þis worlde [n]is creature lyuynge

That' herde suche a-noþer wamentinge

And of þis crie þei nolde neuere stynte

Til þei þe Reynes of his bridel hente 904

What' folk bene ȝe þat' at myn home commynge

Pertourben so my feest[e] wiþ crynge

Quod Theseus haue ȝe so grete envie

Of myn honour þat þus compleyn and crye 908

Or who haþ ȝou mysdone or offended

Telleþ me if it' may be amendet'

And whi þat' ȝe bene cloped þus in blak

The eldest lady of hem al[le] spak 912

Whan she had swowned wiþ a dedly chere

þat' it' was rauthe forto sene and here

She seide lord' to whom fortune haþ ȝeuen

Victorie and as a conquerour to lyuen 916

Nat' greueþ vs ȝoure glory and ȝour honour

But' we biseke mercy and socour

Haue mercy on our woo and our distresse

Some drope of Pite þorgh þi gentelnesse 920

Vpon vs wrecched wommen lat' nowe falle

ffor certes lord' þer is noon of vs alle

That' she ne haþ bene a doches or a quene

Nowe bene we Catyues as it' is wel sene 924

Thonked be fortune and her fals[e] qwhele

þat noon estate ensureþ forto bene wele
 Now certes lord to abide ȝour presence
 Here in þis temple of þe goddes clemence 928
 We han be wayting al þis fourt[e]nyȝt [leaf 13, back]
 Helpe[þ] vs lord siþ it is in þi myght
 I wrecche which þat wepe *and* weile þus
 Whilom was wif to king Cappareus 932
 That starfe at Thebes cursed be þat day
 And alle we þat bene in þis araye
 And maken al þis lamentacioun
 We losten alle our husbondes at þat toun 936
 While þat þe assege þer aboute lay
 And ȝit nowe þe olde Creon weillaway
 That lord is nowe of Thebes Cite
 ffulfilled of yre and of iniquite 940
 He for despite and for his tyrannye
 To doon þe dede bodys vilenye
 Of al our lordes which þat bene sclawe
 Hap al þe bodies on an hepe ydrawe 944
 And wol not suffre hem by noȝ assent
 Neþere to bene yburied neþer brent
 But makeþ houndes ete hem in despit
 And wiþ þat word withouten more respit 948
 þei fillen a Gruf and criden pitously
 Haue on vs wrecched women som mercy
 And lat oure sorowe synken in þi hert
 ¶ This gentel duke doune from his courser stert 952
 Wiþ herte pitous whan he herde hem speke
 Him þouȝte þat his hert wold alto-breke
 Whan he seegh hem so pitous *and* so mate
 þat whilom were[n] of so grete astate 956
 And in his armes he hem alle vp hente
 And hem confortþ in ful good entente
 And swore his oþe as he was trewe knyȝt
 He wolde done so ferforþly his myȝt 960
 Vppon the Tirant Creon hem to wreke

þat alle þe puple of Grece shuld speke
 How Creon was of Theseus yserued
 As he þat had his deþ ful wel deserued 964
 And right anoon *with*outen more abode [leaf 14]
 His baner he displeied and forþ rode
 To Thebes ward and al his hooste beside
 No ner Athenes wold he goo ne ride 968
 Ne take his case fulli half a day
 But onward on his way þat nyȝt he lay
 And sent anoon ypolita the quene
 And Emelye hir yonge sustre Shene 972
 Vnto þe toune of Athenes to dwelle
 And forþe he ritte þer is no more to telle
 The rede statue of Mars wiþ spere *and* targe
 So shyneþ in his white baner large 976
 þat alle the feeldes glyteren vp *and* doun
 And by his baner born is hys pynyoun
 Of gold ful riche in which þer was ybete
 þe Mynataur which þat he wan in Crete 980
 Thus riȝt þis duk. thus riȝt þis conquerour
 And in his ooste of Chyualrye þe flour
 Til þat he come to Thebes and alight
 ffaire in a felde þer as he þouȝt to fiȝt 984
 But shortely forto speken of þis þing
 With Creon whiche þat was of Thebes king
 He faught and selowgh him manly as a knyght
 In pleyñ bataille and put þe folk to flight 988
 And by assent he wan the Cite after
 And rent adoun boþ walle spare and rafter
 And to þe ladies he restored ageyñ
 þe bones of her frendes þat were seleyn 992
 To done obsequies as was þe gyse
 But it were al to longe forto devise
 The grete clamour and þe wamentynge
 þat þe ladies made at þe brennyng 996
 Of þe bodies and þe grete honour

That theseus þe noble conquerour
 Doþ to þe bodies whan þei ffrom hym went
 But shortely to telle is myn entent 1000
 Whan þat þis worþi Duke þis theseus [leaf 14, back]
 Haþ Creon slayn and wonne Thebes þus
 Stille in þat felde he toke al nyȝt his rest
 And did wiþ al þe contre as hym lest 1004
 To Ransake in þe caas of þe bodies dede
 Hem for to stripe of harneyes and of wede
 The pilours dyden bysynesse *and* Cure
 Aftere þe bataille and þe discomfiture 1008
 And so bifelle þat in þe caas þei founde
 þorgh girt wiþ many a greuous bloody wounde
 Two yonge knyghtes ligging by and by
 Bothen in armes same wrouȝt ful richelie 1012
 Of whiche two Arcita hight that oon
 And þat opere knyȝt hight Palamon
 Not fully quyk ne fully dede þei were
 But by her cote armours *and* by her gere 1016
 The herowdes knewe hem self in special
 As þei þat were[n] of þe blood Riall
 Of Thebes. and of sustren two yborn
 Out of þe caas þe Pilours han hem torn 1020
 And han hem caried soft vnto þe tent
 Of Theseus and he ful sone hem sent
 To Athenes to dwellen in Prisoñ
 Perpetuelly hem nolde he not raunsoñ 1024
 And whan this worþi Duke haþ þus ydoñ
 He toke his ooste and home he ritte anōn
 Wiþ laurere corowned as a conquerour
 And þer he lyueþ in Ioie and in honour 1028
 Terme of his lif. what nedeþ wordes moo
 And in a toure in anguissh *and* in woo
 Dwellen þis Palamon and eke arcite
 ffor euermore þer may no gold hem quyte 1032
 This passeþ yere by yere *and* day by day

Till it fille onys in a morowe of May
 That Emely þat fairer was to sene
 Than is þe lyle vpon his stalke grene 1036
 And fressher þan þe may wip floures newe [leaf 15]
 ffor wip þe roos colour strof hir hwe
 I not which was þe fairer of hem twoo
 Er it were day as was her wone to doo 1040
 She was a-risen and al a redy dight
 ffor May wil haue no scloggardy on nyȝt
 The seson pricketh euery gentile hert
 And makeþ hit out of his slepe to stert 1044
 And sithen arise and doo May obseruaunce
 This makeþ Emely to haue remembraunce
 To doñ honour to May and forto rise
 Yclopēd was she fressh forto devise 1048
 ¶ Her ȝelowe heer was breided in a tresse
 Behynde her bak. a ȝeerde longe y gesse
 And in þe gardyne at sonne vprist
 She walkeþ vp and down and as her list 1052
 She gadereþ floures partie white and rede
 To make a subtile garlonde for her hede
 And as an aungel heuenly she songe
 The grete toure þat was so þikke and stronge 1056
 Which of þe castel was þe chief dongeon
 There as þe knyghtes weren in prison
 Of which I tolke ȝowe and telle shaft
 Was euene Ioynant to þe gardyn waft 1060
 Ther as þis Emely had her pleying
 Briȝt was þe sonne and cleer in þat mornynȝ
 And palamon þis woful prisonere
 As was his worne by lieue of his Gaillere 1064
 Was rysen and romed in a chamber on high
 In which he al þe noble Cite segħ
 And eke þe gardyne ful of braunches grene
 Ther as þe fressh emelye þe shene 1068
 Was in her walk and romed vp and down

This soriful prisoner þis Palamoun
 Gop in þe Chambre romyng to and froo
 And to him self compleynnyng of his woo 1072
 That he was born ful ofte seide allas [leaf 15, back]
 And so byfelle by auenture or caas
 That þorowe a wyndowe þikke of mony a barre
 Of yren grete and square as eny sparre 1076
 He cast his eyen vpon Emelia
 A[nd] þerwiþ al he bleynte and cried A
 As þouze he stongen were vnto þe hert
 And wiþ þat crie Arcyte anon vp stert 1080
 And seide Cosyn myne what eileþ þe
 That art so pale and dedly on to see
 Whi cridest þowe who haþ þe doñ offence
 ffor goddis loue. take al in pacience 1084
 Our prisoñ for it may noon othere be
 ffortune hath zeue vs þis aduersite
 Som wikke aspecte or disposicion
 Of Saturne by som constellacion 1088
 Haþ zeuen by þis al þouze he had hit sworn
 So stode þe heuene whan þat we were born
 We mote endure it þis is short and playn
 This Palamon answerd and seide agayñ 1092
 Cosyn forsoþ of þis opynyō
 Thow hast a veyn ymagynacion
 This prison caused me not [for] to crie
 But I was hirt riȝt now þorgh out myn ye 1096
 Into myn hert þat wil my bane be
 The fairnesse of þat lady þat I see
 ȝonde in þe gardyne romyng to and fro
 Is cause of al my cryng and my woo / 1100
 I not where she be womman or goddesse
 But Venus is it soply as I gesse
 And þerwiþal on knees down he fille
 And seide Venus if it be þi wille 1104
 ȝowe in þis gardyne þus to transfigure

Bifore me soriful wrecched creature
 Out of þis Prison helpe þat we mowe scape
 And if so be my destany be shape 1108
 By eterne worde to dyen in prison [leaf 16]
 Of oure lynage haue som compassion
 That is so lowe ybrouzt by tyrannye
 And wiþ þat word arcite gan asprie 1112
 Where as þis lady romed to and froo
 And wiþ þat sizt her bewte hurte hym soo
 þat if þat Palamon was wounded sore
 Arcite is hurte as moche as he or more 1116
 And wiþ a sighe he seide pitously
 þe fresshe bewte sleep me sodeynly
 Of hur þat romep in zonder place
 And but if I hauē her mercy and her grace 1120
 þat I may seen hir atte leeste way
 I ne am but dede þer nys no more to say
 This Palamon whan he þise wordes herde
 Dispitously he loked and answerde 1124
 Wheder seist þou þis in earnest or in pleye
 Nay quod Arcite in earnest be my feye
 God helpe me so me lest ful euel play
 This Palamon gan knytte his browes tway 1128
 It were to the quod he no gret honour
 ffor to be fals ne for to be traitour
 To me þat am þi Cosyn and þi broþer
 Isworne ful depe and eche of vs to oþer 1132
 That neuere for to dyen in þe peyn
 Til þat þe deþe departe shal vs tweyn
 Neþer in loue to hynder oþer
 Ne in noon oþer caas my lief broþer 1136
 But þat þou shuldest trewly ferþernore
 In euery caas and I shal forther þe þore
 þis was þine othe and myn also certeyn
 I wote rizt wele þow darst it not wiþseyñ 1140
 Thus art þow of my counsel out of doute

And nowe þou woldest falsly ben aboute
 To loue my lady whom I loue *and* serue
 And euer shal to þat myn herte sterue 1144
 Now certes fals Arcite þow shalt not so [leaf 16, back]
 I loued her first and tolde þe my woo
 As to my counsaile and my broþer sworn
 To forþere me as I haue tolde biforn 1148
 ffor which þow art ybounden as a knyght
 To helpe me if it lay in þi myght
 Or ellis art þou fals I dar wel sayn
 This arcite ful prudently spak agayn 1152
 Thow shalt *quod* he be rapier fals þan I
 But þou art fals I telle þe witterly
 ffor paramour I loued her first þan þou
 What wilt þow seyn. þou wist it not ȝit nowe 1156
 Whedere she be a womman or goddes
 Thyne is affeccion of holynes
 And myne is loue as to a creature
 ffor which I tolde þe myn auenture 1160
 As to my cosyn and to my broþer sworn
 I pose þat þou louedest hur biforn
 Woost þow not wel þe olde clerkes sawe
 þat who shal ȝeue a louer eny lawe ¶ *Quis legem dat amantibus*
 Loue is a gretter lawe by my pan
 þan may be ȝeue to eny erþely man
 And þerfor positif lawe and swich decree
 Is broke al day for loue in eche degre 1168
 A man mote nedes loue mawgre his hede
 He may not fleen it; þouȝe he shuld be dede
 Al be she mayde or widowe or ellis wif
 And eke it is not likly al þi liff 1172
 To stonden in her grace no more shal I
 ffor wel þou woost þi self[e] verely
 þat þou and I bene dampned to prison
 Perpetuelly vs geyneth no raunson 1176
 We stryuen as [did] houndes for þe boon

þei foughten alday and ȝit her parte was non
 þere come a kite while þat þei were so wroth
 þat bare away þe boon bitwene hem both 1180
 Ak þerfore at þe kingges courte my brother
 Eche man for him self þer is noon oþer
 Loue if þe list. for I loue and ay shal
 And soply leue broþer þis is aft 1184
 Here in þis prison mote we endure
 And euerich of vs take his auenture
 Grete was þe strif and longe bytwix hem tweye
 If þat I had leisere for to seye 1188
 But to þis effect I[t] hapned on a day
 To tellen yowe as soply as I may
 A worpi duc þat hight Perotheus
 þat felawe was vnto duc Theseus 1192
 Sip þilk day þat þei weren children lite
 Was comen to Athenes his felawe to visite
 And forto pley as he was wont to doo
 ffor in þis worlde he loued no man soo 1196
 And he loued him also tenderly ageyn
 So wel þei loued as olde bokes seyn /
 That whan þat oon was dede soply to telle
 His felowe went and souȝt him down in helle 1200
 But of þat storie list me not to write
 Duc Perotheus loued wel arcite
 And had him knowe at Thebes yere by yere
 And fynaly at þe request and preiere 1204
 Of Perotheus wiþ out ony raunson
 Duc theseus him lete out of Prison
 ffrely to goon wher þat him list oueral
 In suche a gise as I you telle shaft 1208
 This was þe forward pleyntly for to endite
 Bitwene Theseus and hym iercite
 That if so were þat arcite were founde
 Euer in his lif be day or nyȝt or stounde 1212
 In eny cuntre of this theseus

And he were kaught^t it was acorded þus
 That^t wip a swerde he shuld lese his hede
 þer nas non oþer remedye ne rede 1216
 But takeþ his leue and homward^d he hym spedde [leaf 17, back]
 Lat^t hym be war his nek lith to wedde
 How grete a sorowe suffreþ nowe arcite
 The detþ he feleþ þorgh his herte smyte 1220
 He wepeþ *and* weileþ and crieþ pitously
 To sleen hym self he waiteth priuely
 He saide Allas þat day þat I was born
 Now is my prison wors than [was] beforē 1224
 Nowe is me shape eternaly to dwelle
 Nouzt^t in purgatorye. but^t in helle
 Allas þat^t euere I knewe Perotheus
 ffor ellis had I ydwelled with theseus 1228
 Yfetered in his prison euermoo
 Than had I bene in blisse and not^t in woo
 Only þe sight^t of her^r whom þat I serue
 Thoow þat I neuere hir^r grace may deserue 1232
 Wold haue ysuffised right ynowe for me
 Oo dere Cosyn Palamon quod he
 Thine is þe victorie of þis auenture
 fful blisfully in prison myzt^t þou dure 1236
 In prison certes nay but paradis
 Wel hatþ fortune turned þe the dys
 þat hast þe sight^t of hur^r and I þe absence
 ffor possible is siþ þou hast her presence 1240
 And art^t a knyght an worpi and an able
 That by som caas siþ fortune is chauceable
 Thowe maiste to þi desire scmtyme atteyñ
 But^t I þat^t am exiled and bareyñ 1244
 Of al[le] grace and in so gret^t despeir^r
 That þer nys erþe water^r fuyr^r ne eire
 Ne creature þat^t of hem maked is
 þat^t may me helpe or done comfort in þis 1248
 Wel ouzte I sterue in wanhope and distresse

ffare wele my lif^t my lust and my gladnesse
 Allas whi pleynten men so in comune
 Of *purueaunce* of god and of fortune 1252
 That^t *zeueþ* hem ful oft^t in mony a gyse [leaf 18]
 Wel bet[ter] þan þei can hem self devise
 Som man desireþ forto haue richesse
 That^t cause is of his mordere and gret^t siknesse 1256
 And som man wolde out^t of his prison fayn
 That^t in his hous is of his mayne selayn
 Infinite harmes bene in þis matiere
 We wote not what^t þinge þat we preien here 1260
 We faren as he þat^t dronken is as mous
 A dronken man wote wele he haþ an hous
 But he ne woote which þe riȝt way is þidere
 And to a dronken man þe way is sclydere 1264
 And certes in þis world^t so faren wee
 We sechen fast^t aftere felicite
 But^t we goon wronge ful oft^t trewly
 Thus may we seie alle and nameliȝ I 1268
 That wende and had a grete opynyōn
 That if I myȝte skapen from prison
 þan had I be in Ioie and parfite hele
 þer nowe I am exiled fro my wele 1272
 Siþ þat I may not^t seen þou Emelye
 I am but dede þer nys no remedye
 Vppon þat oper side Palamon
 Whan þat he wist^t þat^t arcite was agoñ 1276
 Swiȝ sorowe he makeþ þat þe grete tour
 Resounēþ of his ȝellinge *and* clamour
 The pure fettres of his shynes grete
 Were of his bitter salte teeres wete 1280
 Allas quod he Arcita cosyn myne
 Of al our strif god wote þe fruyte is þine
 Thow walkest now in Thebes at þi large
 And of my woo. þou ȝeuest litel charge 1284
 Thow maist siþ þou hast wisdom *and* manhede

Assemble alle þe folk of our kinrede
 And make a werre so sharpe on þis Cite
 þat by som auenture or som trete 1288
 Thow maist haue hir' to lady and to wiff' [leaf 18, back]
 ffor whom þat I most nedes lese my liff
 ffor as by way of possibilite
 Siþ þou art' at þi large of prison free 1292
 And art a lorde grete is þine auauntage
 More þan is myne þat sterue here in a kage
 ffor I mote wepe and weile while þat I lyue
 Wiþ al þe woo þat' prison may me ȝeue 1296
 And eke wiþ peyn þat' loue me ȝeueþ alsoo
 þat' doubleþ al my torment' and my woo
 þer wiþ þe fire of gelesie vpsterte
 Wiþ in his brest' and hente hym by þe herte 1300
 So woodly þat' he like was to biholde
 The box-tre or þe asshen dede and colde
 That' seide he .o. cruel goddes þat' gouerne
 This world' wiþ byndinge of ȝoure worde eterne 1304
 And writen in þe table of Athamaunt'
 ȝoure parlement' and ȝoure eterne graunt'
 What' is mankinde more vnto ȝou holde
 þan is the shepe þat' roukeþ in þe folde 1308
 ffor slayn is man riȝt as an oper beest'
 And dwelleþ eke in prison and in arest'
 And hap siknesse and grete aduersite
 And oft tymes gitlees parde 1312
 What' gouernaunce is in þis prescience
 That' gitlees tormentē Innocence
 And encreseþ þis al my penaunce
 þat man is bounden to his obseruaunce 1316
 ffor goddes sake to letten of his wille
 Ther as a beest may al his list fulfille
 And whan a beest' is dede he hath no peyn
 But' aftere his deth man mote wepe and pleyne 1320
 Thogh in þis world' he haue care and woo

Wip outen doute it may stonden soo
 The answe're of þis lete I to dyuynes
 But wel I wote þat in þis world gret pyne es 1324
 ¶ Allas I se a serpent or a theef [leaf 19]
 þat mony an trewe man haþ done meschief
 Goon at his large and where hym list may turne
 But I mote bene in prison þorgh Saturne 1328
 And eke þorgh Iuno Ialous and eke wode
 þat haþ destroied wel nygh al þe blode
 Of Thebes wip his waaste walles wide
 And Venus sleep me on þat oper side 1332
 ffor Ialousy and fere of him Arcite
 Now wil I stinte of Palamon a lite
 And lat hym in his prison stille dwelle
 And of Arcite forþ I wil 3owe telle 1336
 The somer passeþ and þe nyȝtes longe
 Encreseþ double wise. þe peynes stronge
 Bopen of þe louer and of þe prisoner
 I not whiche haþ þe woofuller myster 1340
 ffor shortely for to seyn of þis Palamōn
 Perpetuelly is dampned to prison
 In cheynes and [in] fettres to þe dede
 And Arcite is exiled vp[on] is hede 1344
 ffor euermore as out of þat cuntre
 Ne neuere ne shal his lady see
 ¶ 3ow louyers aske I now þis questiōn
 Who haþ þe wors Arcite or Palamōn 1348
 That oon may se his lady day by day
 But in Prison mot he dwelle alway
 That oper wher hym list may ride and goo
 But seen his lady shal he neuer moo 1352
 Now devyneþ as 3ou list þat 3e can
 ffor I wil telle forþ as I byganne

¶ Whan þat Arcite to Thebes commen was
 fful often a daie he swelt^t and seide alas 1356
 ffor seen his lady shal he neuere moo
 And shortely to concluden all his woo
 So mykel sorowe had neuere creature
 þat is or shal while þat þe world^t may dure 1360
 ¶ His slepe his mete. his drink is hym byraft^t [leaf 19, back]
 þat lene he wexeþ and drye as is a shaft^t
 His eyen holowe and grisly to biholde
 His hwe falowe *and* pale as asshen colde 1364
 And solitarie he was and euer allone
 And waillinge al þe nyzt^t making his mone
 And if he herde songe or instrument
 Than wolde he wepe he myzt^t not^t stent^t 1368
 So feble eke were his spirites / and he lowe
 And chaunged so þat no man can knowe
 His speche neiþer his voys þouze men it herde
 And in his gere for al þe worlde he ferde 1372
 Not^t comly liche to louers maladye
 Of heres but^t rather like manye
 Engendred of humour malancelike
 Byforn his celle fantastike 1376
 And shortely turned was al vp and down
 Both habite and disposicioun
 Of him þis wooful louer^t Daine¹ Arcite [1 or Dame]
 What^t shuld^t I alday of his woo endite 1380
 Whan he endured had a zere or two
 This cruel torment *and* þis peyn *and* woo
 At Thebes in his courte as I seide
 Vpon a nyght^t in slepe as he hym leide 1384
 Hym þouzt^t howe þat the wenged god Mercurye
 Biforn him stode and bad hym to be merye
 His slepy yeerde in honde he bare vprizt^t
 An hatte he wered vpon his heres brizt^t 1388

Araied was þis god as he toke kepe
 As he was whan þat Argus toke his slepe
 And seide him þus to Athenes shalt þou wende
 Ther is þe shapen of þi woo an ende 1392
 And wiþ þat worde Arcite woke *and* stert
 Nowe trewly howe sore þat euer me smert
 Quod he to Athenes nowe wil I fare
 Ne for þe drede of deþe shal I not spare 1396
 To see my lady þat I loue and serue [leaf 20]
 In her presence I ne recche þough I sterue
 And wiþ þat word he kaught a grete myrour
 And seegh þat chaunged was al his colour 1400
 And seegh his visage al in anoþer kinde
 And right anon it ranne him in his mynde
 That sipen his face was so disfigured
 Of malady þe which he had endured 1404
 He myghte wel if þat he bare hym lowe
 Lyue in Athenes euermore vnknowe
 And seen his lady wel nye day be day
 And right anon he chaunged his aray 1408
 And clad him as a poor labore[er]
 And [al] alon sauf oonly a sqwiere
 That knewe his priuete *and* al his caas
 Whiche was disguised poorly as he waas 1412
 To Athenes is he gon þe nexte way
 And to þe courte he went vpon a day
 And at þe gate he profered his seruyse
 To drugge and drawe what so men wil deuise 1416
 And shortely of þis mater forto seyn
 He felle in office wiþ a chamberleyñ
 The whiche þat was dwelling wiþ Emelye
 ffor he was wise and sone couþe aspye 1420
 Of euery seruante which þat serueþ here
 Wel couþe he hewen wode and water bere
 ffor he was yonge and myghty for þe nonys
 And þerto he was stronge and bigge of bonys 1424

To done þat eny wizt him can deuise
 A 3eer or two he was in þis seruyse
 Page in þe Chambre of Emely þe briȝt
 And Philostrate he seide þat he hiȝt 1428
 But half so wel biloued a man as he
 Ne was þer neuer in courte of his degre
 He was [so] gentil of Condicioun
 þat þorowe out al þe court was his renoun 1432
 Thei seide þat it was a charite [leaf 20, back]
 That thesues wolde enhaunce his degre
 And putten hym in worshipful seruyse
 þer as he myght his vertue exercise 1436
 And þus wiȝ in a while his name is spronge
 Bothen of his dedes and of his good tonge
 That Theseus haȝ taken hym so nere
 þat of his chambere he made hym a squyere 1440
 And ȝaue him gold to meyntene his degre
 And eke men brouȝt hym out of his cuntre
 ffor ȝere to ȝere ful priuely his rente
 But honestly and sleizly he it spente 1444
 That no man wondred. how þat he it hadde
 And thre ȝere in þis wise his lif he ladde
 And bare hym so in pees and eke in werre
 þer is no man þat Theseus hath derre 1448
 And in þis blisse lete I nowe Arcite
 And speke I wil of Palamon a lite
 ¶ In derknesse in horrible and stronge prison
 This vij. ȝere hath sitten Palamon 1452
 ffor-pyned what for woo and for distresse
 Who felet double soor and hevynesse
 But Palamon þat loue destreyneȝ so
 That wode out of his wit he goȝ for woo 1456
 And eke þerto he is a prisonere
 Perpetuelly not oonly for a ȝere
 Who cowde ryme in englissh proprely
 His martierdome for soȝ it am not I 1460

Therfor I passe as listly as I may
 ¶ It felle þat in þe vij. 3ere of May
 The .iiij. nyght as olde bokes seyn
 þat al þis story telleþ more pleyñ 1464
 Were it by auenture or be destynye
 As whan a þing is shape it shal be
 That sone after the mydnyȝt Palamoñ
 By helpinge of a frende brak prison 1468
 And fleep þe Cite fast as he may goo /
 ffor he had 3eue his gaylere drink so
 Of a Clerrey made of a certeyn wyne
 Wiþ vercotiks and opy of Thebes fyne 1472
 þat al þat nyȝt þough þat men wold hym shake
 þe Gailler slepte and nyȝte not awake
 ¶ And þus he fleep as fast as euer he may
 þe nyȝt was short and fast[e] by þe day 1476
 þat nedes cost he most him self hiden
 And til a groue faste ther besiden
 Wiþ dredful foote þan stalkeþ Palamoñ
 ffor shortely þis was his opynyōñ 1480
 That in þat groue he wolde hym hide alday
 And in þe nyght þan wolde he take his way
 To Thebes ward his frendes forto prey
 On theseus to helpe hym to werrey 1484
 A[nd] shortely eiper he wold lese his liff
 Or wynnen Emely to his louely wiff
 This is þeffeste and his entente pleyñ
 ¶ Nowe wil I turne vnto Arcite ageyñ 1488
 That litel wist howe negh þat was his care
 Til þat fortune had kauȝt hym in his snare
 The bysy larke massagere of day
 Salueþ in her songe þe morowe gray 1492
 And ffiry Phebus riseþ vp so briȝt
 þat al þe Orient laugheth of his siȝt
 And wiþ his stremes drieþ in þe greues /
 The siluer dropes hongyng in þe leues 1496

¶ And Arcita þat in þe courte Royall
 With Theseus his squyer pryncipall
 Is risen and lokeþ on þe mery day
 And forto don his obseruaunce to Maij 1500
 Remembring þe point of his desire
 He on his coursere sterting as þe fire
 Is riden into þe feeldes him to pley
 Out of þe courte were it a myle or twey 1504
 And to þe Groue of which þat I 3ou tolde [leaf 21, back]
 By auenture his way by-gon to holde
 And maken hym a garlond of þe greues
 Were it of wodbynde or hawthorn leues 1508
 And loude he songe azeinst þe sonne shene
 May wiþ all þi floures and þi grene
 Welcome be þowe faire fresshe May
 I hope þat I somme grene gete may 1512
 And from his courser wiþ a lusty herte
 Into þe Groue ful hastely he sterte
 And in a path he romeþ vp *and* down
 þer as by auenture of þis Palamoun 1516
 Was in a busshe þat no man myzt hym see
 ffor soor afferd of his dep was he
 ¶ No þinge ne knewe he þat it was Arcyte
 God wote he wold haue trowed it ful lite 1520
 But soþ is seide goon sithen mony 3eres
 That feelde hath yen *and* þe wode hap eeres
 It is ful faire a man to bere hym euene
 ffor alday meten men at vnsef steuene 1524
 fful litel wote Arcite of his felawe
 þat was so nygh to harken of his sawe
 ffor in þe busshe he sitteþ now ful stille
 Whan þat Arcite had romed al his fille 1528
 And songen at the roundel lustely
 Into a stody he felle sodeynly
 As don þise louers in her queynt[e] geres
 Now in þe croppe now down in þe breres 1532

Now vp nowe doune as Boket in a welle
 Riȝt as þe friday soþly forto telle
 Now it shyneþ nowe it reyneþ faste
 Riȝt so gan gery Venus euer caste 1536
 The hertes of her folk riȝt as hir' day
 Is Gerful . riȝt so chaungeþ she aray
 Selde is þe friday al þe weke ylike
 ¶ Whan þat Arcite nad ysonge he gan to sike 1540
 And sette hym doune with oute[n] eny more [leaf 22]
 Allas quod he þat' day þat' I was bore
 Howe longe Iuno þorgh pi cruelte
 Wiltow werryen Thebes þe Citee 1544
 Allas ybrought' is to confusiō
 The blood Roial of Cadme and Amphion
 Of Cadmus whiche þat' was þe first man
 That Thebes bilt . or first' þe toune bygan 1548
 And of þe Cite first' was corowned kinge
 Of his lynage am I and of his of-springe
 By verrey lyne as of þe stok Roiaūt
 And nowe I am so Catif and so thral 1552
 That' he þat' is my mortal enemye
 I serue him as his sqwier poorlye
 And ȝit doþ me Iuno wel more shame
 ffor I dar not' be-knowe myn owne name 1556
 But þer [as] I was wonte to hiȝt' Arcite
 Now hight' I Philostrate not' worþe a myte
 ¶ Allas þou felle Mars allas þou Iuno
 Thus haþ ȝoure Ire our lynage alforde 1560
 Sauf oonly me *and* wrecched Palamoñ
 That Theseus martereþ in prisoñ
 And ouer al þis to sleen me vtterly
 Loue haþ faire his darte so brennyngly 1564
 Istiked þorgh my trewe careful herte
 That shapen was my deþ arst þan my sherte
 ȝe sleen me wiþ ȝoure yen Emelye
 ȝe ben þe cause wherfore þat' I dye 1568

Of al the remenant^t of myn oþer care
 Ne sette I nouȝt^t the mountance of a tare
 So þat I cowde do ouȝt^t to ȝour plesaunce
 And wiþ þat^t word^t he felle down in a traunce 1572
 A longe tyme and afterward^t he vp stert
 þis Palamon þat^t þouȝt^t þat þorgh [his] herte
 He felte a colde swerde sodeinly glide
 ffor Ire he qwoke no lenger wold he bide
 ¶ And whan þat^t he had herde Arcites tale
 As he were wode wiþ face dede *and* pale
 He stert^t hym vp out^t of the buskes thikke
 And seide Arcite fals traitour quykke 1580
 Now art^t þou hent^t þat^t louest^t my lady soo
 ffor whom þat^t I haue al þis peyn *and* woo
 And art^t my blood and to my counsel sworne
 As I ful oft^t have tolde þe here to forn 1584
 And hast^t by-iaped here Duke Theseus
 And falsly chaunged hast þi name þus
 I wil be dede or ellis þou shalt dye
 Thowe shalt^t not^t loue my lady Emely 1588
 But I wil loue hir oonly and no moo
 ffor I am Palamon þi mortel ffoo
 And þouȝe þat^t I no wepen haue in þis place
 But out^t of prison am I-stert^t by grace 1592
 I drede nouȝt^t but^t eiþer þou shalt^t dye
 Or þou ne shalt^t not^t loue Emelye
 Chese which þou wilt^t or þou shalt^t not^t asterte
 ¶ This Arcite wiþ ful dispitous herte 1596
 Whan he hym knewe and had his tale herd^t
 As feers as a lyon pulled out^t a swerd^t
 And seide þus by god þat^t sitteþ aboue
 Ne it were þat^t þou art seke and wode for loue 1600
 And eke þat^t þou no wepen hast in þis place
 Thow shuldest neuere out^t of þis groue pace
 þat^t þou ne shuldest dyen of myn honde
 ffor I defie þe swerte and þe bonde 1604

[leaf 22, back. MS. re-
 peats 'He felt a swerde
 sodeynly Glide']

Which þat þou seist I haue made to þe
 What verrey fool þenk wel þat loue is free
 And I wil loue hir mawgre al þi myzt
 But for as moche as þou art a worþi knyzt 1608
 And willest to darreyn hir by bataille
 Haue here my troupe to morwe I nyl not faille
 Wiþ outen witting of eny opere wight [leaf 23]
 That here I wil be founden as a knyght 1612
 And bringen harneis rizt ynough for þe
 And chese þe best and leue þe worst for me
 And mete and drink þis nyghte wil I bringe
 Ynough for þe and cloþes for þi beddyng 1616
 And if so be þat þou my lady wyne
 And sclee me in þis wode þer I am Inne
 Thow maist wel haue þi lady as for me
 This Palamon answerd I graunte it þe 1620
 And þus þei bene departed til a morowe
 Whan eche of hem had leide his feiþ to borowe
 ¶ O cupide out of al charite
 O regne þat wold no felawe haue wiþ þe 1624
 fful soþ is seide þat loue ne lordship
 Wil not his þonkes haue no felawship
 We fynde þat of Arcite and Palamoun
 Arcite is riden anon into the toun 1628
 And on þe morowe er it were day list
 fful priuely two harneys haþ he dizt
 Both suffisaunt and mete to darreyn
 The bataille in þe feelde bytwix hem tweyn 1632
 And on his hors allone as he was born
 He carieþ al his harneys hym biforn
 And in þe Groue at tyme and place ysette
 This Arcite and þis Palamon ben mette 1636
 To chaungen gan þe colour in her face
 Right as þe hunters in [the] reyne of trace
 That stondeþ atte gap[pe] wiþ a spere
 Whan hunted is þe lyon or þe bere 1640

And hereþ him come russhing^t in þe Greues
 And brekeþ both [the] bowes and þe leues
 And þenkeþ here commeth my mortal enemye
 Wiþ oute faile he mote be dede or I 1644
 ffor eiper I moot^t seleen him atte gappe
 Or he moot selee me if þat^t me myshappe
 So feerden [thei] in chaungyng^t of here hwe [leaf 23, back]
 As fer as euerich of hem oþer knewe 1648
 Ther nas no good day ne no saluynge
 But streiȝt^t wiþ oute worde or rehersinge
 Euerich of hem helpeþ forto arme oþer^t
 As frendly as he were his owne broþer^t 1652
 And after þat^t with sharpe speres stronge
 They foynen eche at^t oþer wonder longe
 Thow myȝtest^t wene þat^t þis Palamon
 In his fightinge were a wood lyoñ 1656
 And as [a] cruel tigre was Arcite
 As wilde boores gon þei to-gider^t smyte
 That^t frothen white as fome for yre woode
 Vp to þe Ancle fought^t þei in her bloode 1660
 And in þis wise I lete hem fighting^t dwelle
 And forþ I wil of Theseus ȝou telle
 ¶ The destanye minister^t generall^t
 That^t executep^t in þe world ouer all^t 1664
 The purueaunce þat god haþ say bifore
 So stronge it^t is þat^t þei þe world had it swore
 þe contrarie of a þinge be ye or nay
 ȝit^t som tyme it shal falle on a day 1668
 That^t falleþ nouȝt^t eft wiþ in a þousand yere
 ffor certeynly our appetites here
 Be it^t of werre or pees. or hate or loue
 Al is þis rewled by þe sight aboue 1672
 This mene I nowe by myghty Theseus
 That^t forto hunte is so desirous
 And namely atte grete hert^t in Maij
 That^t in his bed þer daweþ hym no day 1676

That he nys cladde and redy forto ride
 Wiþ hunte and horn and houndes hym biside
 ffor in his hunting haþ he swiþh delite
 That it is al his ioye and appetite 1680
 To bene hym self þe grete hertes bane
 ffor after Mars he serueþ nowe Dyane
 Cleer was þe day as I haue told er þis / [leaf 24]
 And Theseus wiþ al[le] Ioie and blis 1684
 Wiþ his ypolita þe faire quene
 And Emely[e] cloþed al in grene
 On huntinge bene þei riden rialy
 And to þe Groue þat stode ful fast by 1688
 In which þer was an herte as men hym tolde
 But Theseus þe streighte way haþ holde
 And to þe launde he rideþ hym ful riȝt
 ffor þider was þe hert wonte to haue his flizt 1692
 And ouer a broke and so forþ on his way
 This duke wil haue a cours at hym or tway
 Wiþ houndes swiþh as þat him list comaunde
 And whan þis duke was come vnto þe launde 1696
 Vnder þe sonne he loked anon
 He was ware of Arcite and Palamoñ
 That fouȝten breme as it were boles two
 The briȝte swerdes wenten to and fro 1700
 So hidously þat wiþ þe leest[e] stroke
 It semeþ þat it wold fellen an oke
 But what þei were no þing he ne wote
 This duke his courser wiþ his spores smoote 1704
 And at a stert he was atwixe hem twoo
 A pulled out a swerde and cried hoo
 No more vp peyn of lesing of ȝour hede
 By myȝty mars he shal anon be dede 1708
 That smyteþ eny stroke þat I may sene
 But telleþ me what myster men ȝe bene
 That ben so hardy forto fiȝten here
 Wiþ oute Iugge. or oþer officere 1712

¶ As it were in litel liste ryally
 This Palamon answerde hastily
 And seide Sir' what' nedep' wordes moo
 We han þe deþe deserued boþ twoo 1716
 Two woful wrecched be we two catyfes
 þat bene encombred of oure owne lifes
 And as þow art' a riztful lorde and Iuge [leaf 24, back]
 Ne ȝeue vs neiþer mercy ne refuge 1720
 But' sele me furst' for seinte Iarite
 But' slee my felowe eke as wel as me
 Or slee hym [first] for þough þo[u] knowest lite
 This is þi mortal ffoo þis is arcite 1724
 That' from þi londe is bashed on his hede
 ffor whiche he haþ deserued to be dede
 ffor þis is he þat' come vnto þi gate
 And saide þat' he hight' Philostrate 1728
 Thus haþ he Iaped þe ful mony a ȝere
 And þou hast' made him þi chief squyere
 And þis is he þat' louep' Emelye
 ffor siþ þat' day is comen þat' I shal dye 1732
 I make pleylnly my confession
 That' I am þilk[e] wooful Palamon
 That' haþ þi prison broken wikkedly
 I am þi mortal foo and it' am I 1736
 That' louep' so hote Emely þe brizt'
 That' I wil dye present' in her sizt'
 Wherfore I axe deþ and my Iwes
 But' sele my felawe in þe same wise 1740
 ffor boþe we han deserued forto be sclayn
 This worþi duke answerd anon agayn
 And saide þis is a short' conclusiō
 ȝoure owne mouþe be ȝoure confessiō 1744
 Haþ dampned þer ȝou and I wil it' recorde
 Hit nedep' not' to pyne ȝou wiþ acorde
 He shul be dede by myȝty mars þe rede
 The quene anoon for verrey wommanhede 1748

Gan [for] to wepe and so seide Emelye
 And al þe ladis in þe companye
 Grete pite was it as it þouȝt hem alle
 That euere such a chaunce shuld byfalle 1752
 ffor gentil men þei were of grete astate
 And no þinge but for loue was þis debate
 And seegh her bloody woundes wide and sore [leaf 25]
 And alle criden boþ[e] lasse and more 1756
 Haue mercy vpon vs wommen alle
 And on her bare knees doun þei falle
 And wold han kissed his fete þer he stoode
 Til at þe last a-sclaked was his moode 1760
 ffor pite renneþ sone in gentile herte
 And þoughe he first for ire quoke *and* sterte
 He haþ considered shortly in a clause
 The trespass of hem both[e] and þe cause 1764
 And al þouȝe his Ire her gilt accused
 ȝit in his reson he hem both excused
 And þus he þouȝte wel þat euery man
 Wol helpe him self in loue if þat he can 1768
 And eke delyuere him self out of prison
 And eke him self had compassion
 Of wommen for þei wepen euere in oon
 And in his gentile hert he þouȝt anōn 1772
 And soft vnto him self he seide fye
 Vpon a lord þat wil haue no mercy
 But be a lyon boþe in word and dede
 To hem þat bene in repentaunce *and* drede 1776
 As wel as to a prowde dispitous man
 That wil mey[n]tene þat he first bygan
 That lord haþ litel in discreccion
 That in such caas can no diuision 1780
 But weieþ pride and humblenesse after oon
 And shortely whan his Ire was þus agon
 He gan to loken vp wiþ eyen light
 And spake þise same wordes al on hight 1784

The god of love. o Benedicite
 How myghty and howe grete a lord is he
 Aȝeinst his myght' per ȝeyneþ noñ obstacles
 He may be cleped a god for his myracles 1788
 ffor he can maken at is owne gyse
 Of euerich hert' as þat' hym list' devise
 Lo here þis arcite and þis Palamon [leaf 25, back]
 That quietly were out' of prison goñ 1792
 And myght' haue lyued in thebes Rially
 And weten I am her mortal enemye
 And þat' her deþ is in [my] myght' also /
 And ȝit' hap loue mawgre her eyen two 1796
 [I-]Brouȝt' him hidere boþ[e] forto dye
 Now lokeþ is not' þis a grete folye
 Who may be a fool but' if he loue
 Biholde for goddes loue þat' sitteþ aboue 1800
 See howe þei blede bene þei not' wel araied
 Thus hap her lorde þe god of loue hem paied
 Her wages and her fees for her seruise
 And ȝit' þei wenene for to bene ful wise 1804
 That' seruen loue for ouȝt' þat' may bifalle
 But' ȝit' is þis þe beste game of alle
 That' she for whom þei haue þis Iolite
 Can hem as moche thonke as me 1808
 Shee wote no more of al þis hote fare
 By god þan wote an Cuckowe or an hare
 But' al most' be assaied hote and cold
 A man mote be a fool or ȝonge or old 1812
 I wote it' by my self for yore agone
 ffor in my tyme a seruauante was I oone
 And þerfor sith I knowe of loues peyne
 And wote howe sore it can a man distreyne 1816
 As he þat' hap oft bene cauȝt' in his laas
 I ȝou forȝiue al holy þis trespas /
 Atte request' of þe quene þat' kneleþ here
 And eke of Emelye my suster' dere 1820

And 3e shul boþe vnto me swere
 That neuermore 3e shul my cuntre dere
 Ne make werre vpon me nyȝt ne day
 But bene my frendes in al þat 3e may 1824
 I nowe forȝeue þis trespass euey deff
 And þei hym swore his axing fair and weff
 And him of lordship and of mercye preide [leaf 26]
 And so hem graunteþ grace and þus he seide 1828
 To speke of Rial lynage and riches
 Thoo þat she were a quene or a princesse
 Eche of 3ou boþe is worþi doutelees
 To wedden whan tyme is but napelees 1832
 I speke as for my suster Emelye
 ffor whoom 3e haue þis strif and Ielosie
 3e wote 3oure self ze may not wedden two
 At ones þouȝe 3e fizten euermoo 1836
 þat oon of 3ou be he loþ or lief
 He mot go pipen in an yve lief
 This is to say she may not nowe haue both
 Ne be 3e neuere so Ielous and so wroth 1840
 And forþi þer nowe put in þis degre
 That eche of 3ou shal haue his destane
 As him is shape and harkenþ in what wise
 Lo here 3oure ende and þat I shal devise 1844
 ¶ My wille is þis for plat conclusion
 Wiþ oute[n] eny replicaciō
 3if þat 3ou likeþ take it for þe best
 That euey of 3ou shal go wher hym lest 1848
 firely wiþ outen raunson [or] daungere
 At þis day fifty wekes fer ne nere
 Euerich of 3ou shal bryng an .C. knyȝtes
 Armed for listes vp al rightes 1852
 Al redy to darreyn hir by batayle
 And þis bihote I 3ou wiþ outen faile
 Vpon my troupe and as I am a knyȝt
 þat wheder of 3ou boþ[e] þat haþ myȝt 1856

This is to seyn þat whedere he or þowe
 May wiþ his hundred as I haue spoke of nowē
 Slee his contrary or out of lystes drive
 Than shal I zeue hym Emely to wyue 1860
 To whom þat fortune hap zeue so faire a grace
 The listes shal I do maken in þis place
 And god so wisly on my soule rwe [leaf 26, back]
 As I shal euene Iuge be and trwe 1864
 3e shal non opere ende wiþ me make
 þat oon of 3ou shal be dede or take
 And if yow þenke þis is wel yseide
 Sey 3oure avice and holde 3ou wel apaide 1868
 This is 3oure ende and 3our conclusiō
 Who lokeþ lightly now but Palamon
 Swo springeth vp for Ioie but Arcite
 Who coude telle or who coude it endite 1872
 The Ioie þat is made in þat place
 Whan Theseus hap doñ so faire a grace
 But doune on knees went euery manere wiȝt
 And thonked hym wiþ al her hert and myȝt 1876
 And namely þise Thybeanes mony sith
 And þus wiþ hope and herte bliþ
 Thei take her leue and homward gan þei ride
 Tho Thebes-ward wiþ olde walles wide 1880
 [.

 no gap in the MS.]
 ¶ I trowe men wolde deme it negligence
 If I forȝete to telle þe dispence
 Of Theseus þat goþ so bisily
 To maken vp þe listes rially 1884
 That suche a noble theatre as it was
 I dar wel seyn in þis world ther nas
 The circuyte a myle was aboute
 Walled wiþ stone and dicched al wiþ oute 1888
 Rounde was þe shappe in manere of a compas /

fful of degrees þe heght of sixty paas
 That whan a man was sette on oon degre
 He letted not his felawe forto see 1892
 Estward þer stode a gate of Marbel white
 Westward right such a noþer in þe opposite
 And shortely to conclude such a place
 Was non in erþe as in so litel space 1896
 ffor in þe londe þer nas no crafty man
 That Geometrye or arismetrike can
 Ne purtraieur ne keruer of ymages [leaf 27]
 That Theseus ne ȝaue him mete *and* wages 1900
 The theater to make and to devise
 And forto doon his riȝt and his sacrificie
 He Estward hap [up]on þe gate aboue
 In worship of wenus goddes of loue 1904
 Done maken an awtere and an oratorie
 And on þe westward side in memorie
 Of Mars he hap maked riȝt such anopere
 þat cost largely of gold a ffoþere 1908
 And norþward in a tourett on þe wall
 Of Alabaster white and rede Corafl
 An oratorie riche forto see
 In worship of Diane of chaastite 1912
 Hap Theseus done wrouȝt in noble wise
 But ȝit had I forgete forto devise
 That noble kervingges *and* þe pourtratures
 þe shappe þe countenaunce and þe figures 1916
 þat weren in þe oratories thre
 ffirst in þe temple of Venus maist þou see
 Wrouȝt on þe walle ful pitous to biholde
 þe broken slepes and þe sighes colde 1920
 þe sacred teeres and þe waymentynge
 þe firy strokes of þe desiringe
 þat loues seruantes in þis lif enduren
 þe Oþes þat her conauntes assuren 1924
 Plesaunce and hope. desire fool-hardynesse

Beaute and þouȝt. bawdry riches	
Charmes and force. lesingges and flaterye	
Dispence bysynesse and Ielowsie	1928
þat wered of ȝolowe goldes a garlonde	
And a Cukkowe sitting on her honde	
ffeestes instrumentes Carolles daunces	
Iuste and array and al þe circumstaunces	1932
Of loue whiche I rekened <i>and</i> reken shaft	
By ordere were peynted on þe walf	
And mo þan I con [make] of menciōn	[leaf 27, back]
ffor soply al þe mōnt of Citharōn	1936
Ther Venus haþ her princīpal dwellinge	
Was shewed in þe walle in purtraiynge	
Wiþ al þe Gardeyne and þe lustynesse	
Not was forȝeten þe porter ydelnesse	1940
Ne narcisus þe faire of yore agone	
Ne ȝit þe foly of king salamon	
Ne ȝit þe grete strengthe of hercules	
þe enchaumentz of Medea and certes	1944
Ne of Turnus wiþ þe hardy fires corage	
þe riche Cresus catif in seruage	
Thus may ȝe sene þat wisdom ne richesse	
Bewte ne sleighte. strengthe hardynesse	1948
Ne may with Venus holde chaumpartie	
ffor as her list þe world þan may she gie	
¶ Loo alle þise folk so caught were in her las	
To þei for woo ful often seide alas	1952
Suffiseþ here oon ensample or two	
And þoughe þer coude rekne a thousand moo	
The statue of Venus glorious to see	
Was naked fletinge in þe large see	1956
And from þe nauel down al keuered was	
Wiþ wawes grene and briȝt as eny glas	
A Citole in hire riȝte hond had she	
And on her hede ful semely to see	1960
A Rose garlonde fresshe an wel smellinge	

Aboue her hede her dowues flateringe
 Byfore hir' stode hir' sone Cupido
 Vpon his shulders wenges had he two 1964
 And blynde he was as it' is ofte sene
 A bowe he bare and arowes briȝt' *and* kene
 ¶ Whi shuld' I not eke as wel telle ȝou alle
 The pourtrature þat' was vpon þe walle 1968
 Wiȝ in þe temple of myȝty mars þe rede
 Al peynted was þe walle in lengthe *and* brede
 Like to þe Estres of þe grisly place [leaf 28]
 þe hight' þe gr[e]te temple of Mars in trace 1972
 In þilk[e] colde frosty Regyōn
 Ther as Mars hap' his souereyn' manciōn
 ¶ ffirst' on þe walle was peynted a foreste
 In which þer wonneþ neiȝer man ne beste 1976
 Wiȝ knotty knarry bareyn trees olde
 Of stubbes sharpe and hidous to biholde
 In which þer was a rombled and a swoghe
 As þough a storne shuld breke euery bouȝe 1980
 And downward / from an hille vnder a bent'
 There stode þe temple of Mars Armypotent'
 Wrought' of al of burnyd steel of which þe entent'
 Was longe and streit' *and* goostly forto sent' 1984
 And þer out' came a rage in such a wise
 þat' it' made al þe gates forto rise
 Til norȝeron liȝt' in at þe doores shoōn
 ffor wyndowe on þe wall' þan was þer nōn 1988
 þorowe whiche men myȝt eny light' discernen
 þe door was al of Athamant' eterne
 Yclenched ouertwert' and endelonge
 Wiȝ Iren towe forto make it' stronge 1992
 Euery piler þe temple to sustene
 Was tonne grete of yren briȝt' *and* shene
 Ther seghe I furst' þe [derk] ymagynyng'
 Of felowny and al þe compassing' 1996
 The cruel Ire rede as eny gleede

þe Pikpurs and eke þe pale drede
 þe smyler wiþ þe knyf vnder þe cloke
 þe shippen brennyngt wiþ þe blak[e] smoke 2000
 þe treson of þe morpering in þe bedde
 þe open werre wiþ woundes al by-bledde
 Conteckte wiþ bloody knyff *and* sharpe manace
 Al ful of chirkinge was þat sory place 2004
 þe sleer of him self 3it segþ I þere
 His herte-bloode haþ baped al his here
 The nayle ydryuen in þe shode a ny3t [leaf 28, back]
 Wiþ colde deþe wiþ mouþe gaping vp ri3t 2008
 Amyddes of þe temple satte a meschaunce
 Wiþ discomfort and sori countenaunce
 3it saughe I woodnesse laughing in his rage
 Armed compleint outhees and fires corage 2012
 þe Careyn in þe bussþ wiþ þrote ycorve
 A thousand sclayne and not of qualme ystorue
 This tyraunt wiþ þe pray by force yrafte
 þe toune destroyed þer nas no þing ylafte 2016
 3it seghe I brent þe shippes Hoppesteres
 The hunte strangled wiþ þe wilde beres
 The sowe fretinge þe childe ri3t in þe cradell
 The Coke yscalded for al his longe ladell 2020
 Nou3t was forgeten by þe infortune of Marte
 The Carter ouer-riden wiþ þe Carte
 Vndere þe whele ful lowe he lay adoun
 þere were also of Martes dyuysioun 2024
 þe Barboure þe bochere and þe Smyth
 þat forgeþ sharpe swerdes on þe stith
 And al aboue depeynted in a toure
 Saughe I conquest sittinge in grete honour 2028
 Wiþ þe sharpe swerde ouer his hede
 Hanginge by a sotle twyned þrede
 Depeinted was þe the sclauughter of Iuliu
 Of grete Nero and of Anthoneus 2032
 Al be þat þilke tyme þei were vnborn

3it was her deþ depeinted þer bifor̃
 By manasing^t of Mars riȝt^t by figure
 so was it^t shewed in þe purtrature 2036
 As is depeinted in þe certres aboue
 Who shal be ded or slayne for loue
 Suffiseþ oon ensample in stories olde
 I may not^t rekne hem al[le] þouȝe I wolde 2040
 þe statue of mars vpon a carte stode
 Armed and loked grymme as he were wode
 And ouer his hode þer shyneþ two figures [leaf 29]
 Of sterres þat^t bene cleped in figures 2044
 That^t oon Puella that^t oþer rubeus
 This god of armes was araied þus
 A wolf þer stode to for̃ him at^t his fete
 Wiþ eyen rede and of a man he ete 2048
 Wiþ sotel pensel was depeynted þis storie
 In recordinge of Mars and [of] his glorie
 ¶ Nowe to þe temple of Dyane þe chaste
 As shortely as I can I wil me haste 2052
 To telle ȝou al the descripcioun
 Depeynted was þe walle vp *and* down
 Of huntinge and of shamfast chastite
 þer saughe I how wooful calistope 2056
 Whan þat^t Dyane agreued was [with] here
 Was turned from a womman to a bere
 And after was she made þe lode-sterre
 Thus was she peynted I can say ȝou no ferre 2060
 Her sone is eke a sterre as ȝe may see
 þer saughe I dane turned to a tree
 I mene not^t þe goddes Dyane
 But^t Penneus doughter which þat^t hiȝte dane 2064
 þer saugh I Attheon an hert^t ymaked
 ffor vengeance þat^t he seg̃h diane al naked
 I saugh þat^t how his houndes haue hym caughte
 And freten him for þei knewe hym nauȝte 2068
 3it^t ypeynted was a litel ferþermore

Howe Atthelaunt' hunted þe wilde bore
 And maleagre and mony oþer moo/
 ffor whiche diane wrouȝt hym care *and* woo 2072
 Ther seghe I many anoþer worþi story
 Whiche men list' not' to drowe to memory
 This goddes vpon an hert' ful wel she sette
 Wiþ smale houndes al about' her fete 2076
 And vnderneþe her fete she had a mone
 Wexing' it' was and shal wany sone
 In gaudy grene her statue cloþes was [leaf 29, back]
 Wiþ bowe in honde and arowes in a cas 2080
 Her eyen kestē she ful lowe a doune
 Ther Pluto haþ his derke regioun
 A woman trauailing' was hir' biforn
 But' for her child was so longe vnborū 2084
 fful pitously lucyna can she calle
 And seide helpe for þou maist' best' of alle
 Wel coude he peynte lyvely þat' it wrouȝt'
 Wiþ mony a floreyne he þe coloures bouȝt' 2088
 ¶ Now bene þise listes made and thesues
 That' at his grete cost' araied þus
 þe temple and þe theatre euery dele
 Whan it' was done him liked wonder' wele 2092
 But' stint' I wil of Theseus a lite
 And speke of Palamon and [of] arcite
 The [day] approchēþ of her retournynge
 þat' eueriche shuld an C. knyghtes bringe 2096
 The bataille to darrey as I you tolde
 And to Athenes her couenaunte forto holde
 Haþ euery of hem brouȝt' an .C. knyghtes
 Wel armed for þe werre at al[le] rightes 2100
 And sikerly þer trowed many a man
 That' neuere siþ þat' þe world bygan
 That' forto speke of knyghthode of her honde
 As fer as god haþ makēd see or londe 2104
 Nas of so fewe so noble a companye

ffor euery wight þat loued chivalrye
 And wold his þonkes haue a passaunte name
 Hap preide þat he myght be of þat game 2108
 And wel was him þat þerto chosen was
 ffor if þer felle to morow such a caas
 3e knowen wel þat euery lusty kny3t
 þat loueþ paramours *and* hap [his] my3t 2112
 Were it in engelonde or ellis where
 þei wolden fayne wilnen to be þere
 To fight for a lady O benedicite [leaf 30]
 It were a lusty sighte forto se 2116
 And right so feerden þei wiþ Palamoñ
 Wiþ hym þei wenten knyghtes mony oñ
 Som wol be armed in an haberiõn
 And a brest plate and a litel gippõn 2120
 And some wil haue a peire plates large
 And some wil haue a Spruse plate sheeld or targe
 Somme wil [be] armed on his legges weſte
 And haue an axe and some a mace of stele 2124
 þer nas no newe gyse þat it nas olde
 Armed were þei as I haue 3ou tolde
 Euerich after his opynyõn
 Ther maist þou see commyngt with Palamon 2128
 Ligurge hym self þe grete kingt of trace
 Blak was his visage and manly was his face
 þe Cereles of þe eyen in his hede
 þei glowden bitwix 3elowe *and* rede 2132
 And liche a lyon loked he aboute
 With kempte heeres on his browes stoute
 His lymes grete his brawnes stronge
 His sholdres brode his arnes rounde *and* longe 2136
 And as þe Gyse was in his cuntre
 fful heghe vpon a chare of gold stode he
 Wiþ .iiij. white boles in þe trais
 In stede of cote armur and his harnais 2140
 Wiþ nailles 3elowe and bri3t as eny gold

He had a berres skyn coleblake for olde
 His longe heer was kempte behinde his bak
 As eny rauens fepere it^t shoon for blak 2144
 A wrepe of gold^t. arme brizt^t of huge wizt^t
 Vpon his hede sette ful of stonys brizt^t
 Of fyne Rubies and of dyamauntz
 About^t his chare per went^t white alauntz 2148
 xx^{ti} and moo as grete as oyn ster^t
 To hunten at^t pe lyon or pe deer^t
 And folowed hym wiþ mosel fast^t ybounde [leaf 30, back]
 Colers of golde and torrettes philed rounde 2152
 An C. lordes had he in his route
 Armed ful wel wiþ hertes steerne and stoute
 ¶ With Arcite in stories as men fynde
 The grete Emetreus pe king^t of ynde 2156
 Vpon a stede bay trapped in stele
 Couered wiþ a clope of gold diapred wele
 Come ridin^g liche pe god of armed Mars
 Hiis cote armure was a clope of tars 2160
 Couched wiþ peerles . white. rounde *and* grete
 His sadel was of brent gold^t newe ybete
 A mantel vpon his shulder hongynge
 Bretful of rubies rede as fire spar[c]linge 2164
 His Crispe here liche rynges was yronne
 And pat^t was zelowe and gliterin^g as pe sonne
 His nose was heghe his eyen brizt^t citryn
 His lippes rounde his colour was Sangwyn^d 2168
 A fewe frakens in his face spreyn^t
 Bitwix zelowe and somdele blak^t ymeynt^t
 And as a lyon he is eyen caste
 Of xxv^{ti} zere his age y caste 2172
 His beerd was wel bygonne forto springe
 His vois was as a trompet^t pondringe
 Vpon his hede he wered a laurer grene
 A garlond fresshe and lusty forto sene 2176
 Vpon his honde he bare for his delite

An Egle tame as eny lylye white
 An .C. lordes had he wiþ hym þere
 Al armed sauf her hedes in al her gere 2180
 fful richely in al[le] maner þingges
 ffor trusteþ wel þat dukes Erles kyngges
 Were gadered in þis noble companye
 ffor loue and for encrees of chyualrye 2184
 About þis knyzt þer ranne on euery part
 fful mony a tame lyon and leopart
 And in þis wise þise lordes al and some [leaf 31]
 Bene on þe sonday to þe Cite come 2188
 Aboute prime and in þe toun alight
 This Theseus þis duke þis worþi knyzt
 Whan he had brouzt hem into his Cite
 And Inned hem [ech] after her degre 2192
 He feesteth hem and doþ so gret laboure
 To esen hem and done hem al honoure
 That ȝit men wenen þat no mannys witte
 Of noon astate ne cowde amenden it 2196
 The mynstralsy þe servise at þe feest
 The grete ȝiftes to þe most and leest
 The riche aray of Theseus palays
 Ne who sat first and laste vpon þe dees 2200
 What ladies fairest bene or best daunsinge
 Or whiche of hem can beste daunce or singe
 Ne who most felingly spekeþ of loue
 What hawkes sitten or perche aboue 2204
 What houndes ligen on þe floor a-doun
 Of al this nowe I make no mencyoun
 But al þe effecte þat þenkeþ me þe best
 Nowe commeþ þe poynt herkneþ if ȝou lest 2208
 ¶ The sonday nyght er day gan to springe
 Whan Palamon þe larke herd singe
 Al þouze it ner not day by howres two
 ȝit songe þe larke and Palamon riȝt þoo 2212
 Wiþ holy hert and wiþ an highe corage

He roos vp to we[n]den on his pilgrymage
 Vnto þe blisful Cithera benygne
 I mene Venus honorable and digne 2216
 And in her houre he walkeþ forþ apaas
 Vnto þe listes þer þe tempel was
 And doune he kneleþ and wiþ humble chere
 And herte sore he seide as 3e shal here 2220
 ¶ ffairest. o faire . o. lady myne Venus
 Dou3tere to Ioue and spouse to Vleanus
 Thow glader of þe mounte of Citheroun [leaf 31, back,
 ffor þilk[e] loue þou haddest to a-down 2224
 Haue pite on my bitter teeres smerte
 And take myn humble preier at þine herte
 Alas I ne haue no langage to telle
 þe effecte ne þe tourment of myn helle 2228
 Myne herte may myn armes not be-wreye
 I am so confused þat I can not seye
 But mercy lady brizt þat woost wele
 My þou3t and seest what harmes I fele 2232
 Considere al þis and rwe vpon my sore
 As wisly as I shal for euermore
 Hensforþ my my3t þi trewe seruante be
 And hole werre alwaie wiþ chaastite 2236
 That make I myne avowe so as 3e may helpe
 I kepe not of armes for to 3elpe
 Ne I ne axe not to morowe to haue victorie
 Ne renoun in þis caas ne veynglorie 2240
 Of price of armes blowen vp and down
 But I wold haue fully possessioun
 Of Emelye and dye in her seruise
 ffynde þou þe manere howe and in what wise 2244
 I recche not but it may better be
 To haue victorie of hem or þei of me
 So that I haue my lemman in myn armes
 ffor þou3e so be þat mars is god of armes 2248
 3oure vertue is so grete in heuene aboue

þat' if þe lest I shal wel haue my loue
 Thy tempel shal I worship euermoo
 And on þine awtere wher I ride or goo 2252
 I wil doon sacrificise and fires bete
 And 3if 3e wil not' so my lady swete
 þan prey I 3ou to morowe wiþ a spere
 þat' Arcita me þorghe þe herte bere 2256
 Then rekke I not' whan I haue lost' my lif
 þou3e Arcita wyne her to his wiff
 This is þe effecte and eende of my priere [leaf 32]
 3eue me my lady þou blisful lady dere 2260
 ¶ Whan þe orison was dōn of Palamōn
 His sacrificise he did and þat' a-nōn
 fful pitously wiþ al[le] circumstaunces
 Al telle I not' as nowe his obseruaunces 2264
 But' atte laste þe statue of Venus shoke
 And made a signe wherby þat' he toke
 þat' his preier accepted was þat' day
 ffor þou3e þe signe shewed a delay 2268
 3it wist' he wele þat' graunted was his bone
 And wiþ glad hert' he went' awaie ful sone
 ¶ þe iij. houre in-equal þat' Palamōn
 Byganne to venus temple forto goñ 2272
 Vp roos þe sonne and vp roos Emelye
 And to þe temple of Dyane gan she hie
 Hir maidens þat' she pider wiþ hir ladde
 fful redily wiþ hem þe fire þei hadde 2276
 þe encense þe clopes and þe remenaunte all
 þat to þe sacrificise longen shaft
 þe hornes ful of meth' as was þe gise
 þer lacked nou3t' to don her sacrificise 2280
 Smoking' þe temple ful of clopes faire
 This Emelie wiþ herte debonaire
 Hir' lady wasshe wiþ water of a welle
 But howe she did hir ri3t' I dar not' telle 2284
 But' it' be eny þing' in generall

And ȝit it were a game to here it all
 To him þat menep wel it were no charge
 But it is good a man be at his large 2288
 Hir brigt heres were kempte vntressed all
 A corone of a grene oke seriall
 Vpon her hede was sette ful faire and mete
 Two fires on þe awter gan she bete 2292
 And did her þingges as men may biholde
 In stace of Thebes and þise bokes olde
 Whan kindeled was þe fire wiþ pitous chere [leaf 32, back]
 Vnto Diane she spake as ȝe may here 2296
 ¶ O chaaste goddes of þe wodes grene
 To whom boþ heuene and erþe and see is sene
 Quene of [the] regne of Polute derk and lowe
 Goddes of maydenes þat myn hert hast knowe 2300
 fful mony a ȝere and woost what I desire
 As kepe me from þi vengeance and þine Ire
 That attheon abouȝte cruelly
 Chaast goddes wel woost þou that I 2304
 Desire to be a maiden al my liff
 Ne neuere wil I be [no] loue ne wiff
 I am þou woost ȝit of þi companye
 A maide and loue huntynȝ and venerye 2308
 And for to walke in þe wodes wilde
 And not to be a wiff and be wiþ childe
 Nat wil I knowe company of man
 Now helpe me lady siþ ȝe may *and* can 2312
 ffor þoo þre formes þat þou hast in þe
 And Palamon þat hap such loue to me
 And eke Arcite þat louep me so sore
 This grace I prei þe wiþ out more 2316
 And sende loue and pees ytwyxx hem twoo
 And fro me turne away her hertes so
 That al her hote loue and her desire
 And al her bysy torment and her fire 2320
 Be queynt or turned in an opere place

And if so be þou wilt do me no grace
 Or if it be my destany be shaped soo
 That I shal nedes haue oon of hem two 2324
 As sende me him þat most desireþ me
 Biholde goddesse of clene chaastite
 The bitter teeres þat on my chekes falle
 Siþ þou art maide and keper of vs alle 2328
 My maydenhode þou kepe *and* wel conserue
 And while I lif a maiden I wil þe serue
 þe fires brenne vpon þe Auter' clere [leaf 33] 2332
 While Emely was þus in his preiere 2332
 But sodeynly she seghe a þinge queynt
 ffor right anoon oon of þe fires queynt
 And quicked ageyn and after þat anōn
 That oþer fire was queynt *and* al agōn 2336
 And as it quaint it made a qwisteling
 As done þise wete brondes in her brennyng
 ¶ And at þe brondes eende out ranne anōn
 As it were bloddy dropes mony ōn 2340
 ffor which so sore a-gaste was Emelie
 þat she was wel nyghe madde *and* gan to crye
 ffor she ne wiste what it signified
 But only for þe fire þus she criede 2344
 And wepte þat it was pite for to here
 And þer wiþ al Diane gan to apere
 Wiþ bowe on hond right as an hunteresse
 And seide douȝtere stint of þine heuynesse 2348
 And monge the goddes high it is affermed
 And by eterne worde writt *and* confermed
 þow shalt be wedded vnto oon of þoo
 þat han for þe so moche care *and* woo 2352
 But vnto which of hem I may not telle
 ffare wele I may no lenger dwelle
 þe fire whiche þat on myn awter' brenne
 Shal þe declaren er þat þou go henne 2356
 Thine aventure of loue as in þis caas

And with þat worde þe Arowes in þe caas
 Of þe goddes clateren fast and ringe
 And forþ she went and made a vanysshinge 2360
 ffor whiche þis Emely a-stonyed was
 And seide what mounteth þis alas
 I put me in þi protectiōn
 Diane *and* in þi disposiciōn 2364
 And home she goþ þe neste way
 This is þe effecte þer is no more to say
 þe nexte houre of Mars folowing þis [leaf 33, back]
 Arcite vnto þe temple ywalked is 2368
 Of feers mars to done his sacrificise
 Wiþ al þe myghtes of his peynymes wise
 Wiþ pitous hert and heghe deuociōn
 Riȝt þus to Mars he seide his Orisoñ 2372
 ¶ O stronge god þat in the regnes colde
 Of taars honoured art and lord yholde
 And hast in euery regne *and* euery londe
 Of armes al þe bridel in þine honde 2376
 And hem fortunest as þe list devise
 Accepte of me my pitous sacrificise
 If so be my þouȝte may deserue
 And þat my myght be worþi forto serue 2380
 Thi godhede þat I may be oon of þine
 þan preie I þe to rwe vpon my pyne
 ffor þilk peyn and þat hote fire
 In which þou brentest whilom for desyre 2384
 Whan þou vsedist the beaute
 Of faire yonge fresshe venus free
 And haddest hure in armes at þi wille
 Aȝ þoughe þe onys on a tyme mysfelle 2388
 Whan vleanus had kauȝt þe in his laas
 And foonde þe ligging be his wif alaas
 ffor thilk sorowe þat was in þine herte
 Haue rauthe as wel vpon my peynes smerte 2392
 I am ȝonge and vnkonyng as þou wooste

And as I trowe wiþ loue offended moste
 þat euere was eny lyues creature
 ffor she þat doþ me al this woo endure 2396
 Ne rechep neuere wher I sinke of flete [MS. " flete of sinke]
 And wel I wote ere she me mercy hete
 I mote wiþ strengthe wyne her in þis place
 And wel I wote wiþ outhelpe or grace 2400
 Of þe ne may my strengthe not auaile
 Than helpe me lord to morowe in my bataile
 ffor þilk[e] fire þat whilom brente þe [leaf 34]
 As wel as þat fire now brennep me 2404
 And do þat I to morowe haue victorie
 Myne be þe trauaile and þine be þe glorie
 þi souereyn temple wil I most honouren
 Of eny place and alway most labouren 2408
 In þi plesaunce and in þi craftes stronge
 And in þi temple I wil my baner honge
 And all þe armes in my companye
 And euermore vnto þe day I dye 2412
 Eterne fire I wil byfore þe fynde
 And eke to þis awowe I wil me bynde
 My lorde my here þat hongep lowe a dow[n]e
 þat neuere ȝit ne feltt offencioun 2416
 Of rasoure ne of shere I wil þe ȝeue
 And bene þi trewe seruante while I lyue
 Now lord haue rouþe vpon my sorowes sore
 ȝif me þe victorie I axe þe no more 2420
 The preier stintt of Arcita þe stronge
 The Ryngges on þe tempel door ȝit honge
 And eke the door[es] clateren ful fastt
 Of whiche Arcita somewhat hym a-gastt 2424
 The fires brennen vpon þe auter briȝt
 That itt gan al the temple for to light
 And swete smelle anon þe grounde vp ȝaf
 And Arcita anon his honde vp haf 2428
 And more ensense vnto þe fire he castt

Wiþ oþer riȝtes moo and atte last^t
 The statue of Mars bygan his hauberk ryngē
 And wiþ þat^t sounē he herde a murmyryngē 2432
 fful lowe and dym þat^t seide þus victorie
 ffor whiċh he ȝaue to mars honour *and* glorie
 An þus wiþ Ioie and hope wel to fare
 Arcita is [y]brouȝt^t of Moche care 2436
 As fayn as foule is of þe briȝte sonne
 And riȝt^t anon suċh strif is bygonne
 ffor þilk[e] grauntyng^t in þe heuene aboue [leaf 34, back]
 By-twix venus þe goddes of loue 2440
 And Mars þe steerne god armypotent^t
 þat Iubiter was bysy it^t to stent^t
 Til at^t þe [last] Pale Saturnus þe colde
 þat^t knewe so mony of auentures olde 2444
 ffonde in his bolde experience and & ¹ art^t [1 so]
 þat^t he ful sone haþ plesed every part^t
 And soop^t is seide elde haþ grete auountage
 And elde is boþ[e] wisdomē and vsage 2448
 Men may þe olde attenne but not atrede
 Saturne anōn to stinten strif and drede
 Al be it^t þat^t it^t is aȝeinst^t his kinde
 Of al his strif he can remedye fynde 2452
 My dere doughter Venus quod saturne
 My cours þat^t haþ so wide forto turne
 Haþ more powere þan wote eny man
 Myne is þe drenchinge in þe see so wan 2456
 Myne is þe prison in þe derke cote
 Myn is þe stranglinge and þe hanging^t by þe þrote
 þe murmur^t and þe chirles rebellinge
 þe Gonyngē and the privey enpoysenyngē 2460
 I do vengeaunce and pleyn correctiōn
 While I dwelle in þe signe of the lyōn
 Myne is þe Ruyne of [t]he heghe halles
 þe fallinge of þe toures and of þe walles 2464
 Vpon þe mynour^t or vpon þe carpentere

I slowgh Sampson shaking^t þe pilere
 And myn[e] be þe maladies colde
 The derk tresounes and þe castes olde 2468
 My lokinge is þe fader of Pestilence
 Nowe wepe no more I shal do my diligence
 That Palamon þat^t is þine owne knyȝt^t
 Shal haue his lady as þou hast^t [him] hiȝt^t 2472
 Thouȝe Mars shal helpe his knyȝt^t ȝit napelees
 Bytwix ȝou tweyne þer mot be somtyme pees
 Al be ȝe not^t of oon complexiōn [leaf 35]
 That^t causeþ al day such dyuysioñ 2476
 I am þine eile redy at^t þi wille
 Wepe no more I wil þi lust^t fulfille
 Now wil I stinten of þise goddes aboue
 Of Mars and of venus goddes of loue 2480
 And pleynty I wil telle ȝou as I can
 þe grete effecte for which þat^t I biganne
 [.

 *no gap in the MS.*]
 Grete was þe feest^t in Athenes þat^t day
 And eke þat^t lusty seson in [that] may 2484
 Made euery wight^t to be in suche plesaunce
 And al þat^t day Iusten þei and daunce
 And spenden it^t in Venus high seruyse
 But^t by þe cause þat^t þei shulden rise 2488
 Erly forto seen þe grete fight
 Vnto her reste went^t þei atte nyght^t
 And on þe morowe whan day gan to springe
 Of hors and harnays noyse *and* clateringe 2492
 þer was in hostelrye aboute
 And to þe palaies rode þer mony a route
 Of lordes vpon stedes and palfreis
 þer maist^t þou see dyvising^t of harneis 2496
 So vncoupe and so riche *and* wrouȝt so well
 Of Goldsmythrie of browding^t *and* of steef^t

The sheeldes briȝte teesteers and trappures
 Gold-hewen helmes hauberkes *and* cote armures 2500
 Lordys in parementis on her coursers
 Knyghtes of retenue and eke swiers
 Nailinge þe speres and helmes bokelinge
 Sigyng^t of sheeldes wiþ layvers lasinge 2504
 Ther as nede is þei were no þing^t ydeff
 þe ffomynge steedes on þe golden bridest
 Snavyng^t and fast^t þe armurers also
 Wiþ file and hamure ridyng^t to and froo 2508
 ȝemen on foote and comons many oñ
 Wiþ shorte staues pikke as þei may goñ
 Pipes trompettes nakerns and clariouns [leaf 35, back]
 þat^t in þe bataille blewen bloody sownes 2512
 þe paleis ful of puple vp *and* down
 Here þre þer ten holdinge her questioun
 Dyuynyng^t of þise thibeanes knyȝtes twoo
 Some seide þus. some seide it^t shal be so 2516
 Somme helde wiþ him wiþ þe blake berde
 Somme wiþ þe balled some with þe pikke hered
 Some seide he loked grymme *and* he wold^t fight^t
 He haþ a sparþe of xx^{ti} pounde wight^t 2520
 þus was þe halle ful of dyuynynge
 Longe aftere þe sonne gan to springe
 þe grete Theseus of his slepe gan wake
 Wiþ mynstralcie and nois þat^t þei make 2524
 Heelde ȝit^t þe chambre of his palais riche
 Til þat^t þe thebeane knyghtes boþ yliche
 Honoured weren into þe place fette
 Duke Theseus is at^t þe wyndowe sette 2528
 Araide riȝt^t as he were a god in trone
 The puple presed þidere-ward^t ful sone
 Him forto seen and done him high reuerence
 And eke to harken his heest^t and his sentence 2532
 An herowde on a scaffold^t made an oo /
 Til al þe noise of þe puple was doo

And whan he see þe puple of noise al stille
 Thus shewed he þe myȝty dukes wille 2536
 þe lord hap of his heghe discreciōn
 Considered þat it were destrucciōn
 To gentel blood to feghten in þis gise
 Of mortall bataile now in þis emprise 2540
 Wherefore to shapen þat þei shal not die
 He wille his firste purpoos modifie
 No man þerfor vp peyne of losse of liff
 No maner shotte. ne pollax ne short knyff 2544
 Into þe listes sende or þidere bringe
 Ne shorter swerd forto stoke wiþ poynt bitinge
 No man ne drawe ne bere it be his side [leaf 36]
 Ne no man shal vnto his felawe ride 2548
 But oon cours wiþ a sharpe grounden spere
 ffoyn if hym list on foote hym self to were
 And he þat is at meschief shal be take
 And not sclayn but be brouȝt to a stake 2552
 þat shal be ordeyned on eiper side
 But þidere he shal be foorce and þer abide
 And if so falle þe Chevetayn be take
 On eiper side or ellis sclayn his make 2556
 No lenger shal þe tornamente laste
 God spede ȝou goo and leye on faste
 Wiþ swerdes and longe maces fiȝteȝ ȝour fille
 Go nowe ȝoure way þis is þe lordes wille 2560
 The vois of puple touched heuene
 So loude cried þei wiþ mery steuene
 God saue suche a lord þat is so good
 He wilneȝ no distructiōn of blood 2564
 Vp goȝ þe trompes and þe melody
 And to þe listes ritt þe company
 By ordinaunce þorghe out þe cite large
 Honged wiþ cloȝes of gold and not wiþ sarge 2568
 fful like a lorde þis noble duc gan ride
 Thise two Thebeanes on eiper syde

And aftere rode þe quene *and* Emelye
 And after þat a nother companye 2572
 Of oon and oþer after her degre
 And þus þei passen þorgh out þe Cite
 And to the listes come þei be tyme
 It nas not of þe day ȝit fully pryme 2576
 Whan sette was Theseus ful riche *and* hie
 Ypolita þe quene and Emely
 And oþer ladies in degrees aboute
 Vnto þe setes preesen al þe route 2580
 And westward þorgh þe gates vnder mart /
 Arcite and eke þe hundred of his part
 With banere rede is entred riȝt anōn [leaf 36, back]
 And in þat self[e] moment Palamōn 2584
 Is vnder venus estward in þat place
 With baner white and hardy chere *and* face
 And in al þe world to seken vp and down
 So euene wiþ out variacioun 2588
 þer nere suche company[es] tweye
 ffor þer nas noon so wise þat coude seie
 That eny had of oþer auauntage
 Of worthynesse ne of estate ne age 2592
 So euen were þei chosen forto gesse
 And in to ringges faire þei hem dresse
 Whan þat her names redde were euerechoñ
 þat in her nombre gile were þer nōn 2596
 Tho were þe gates shette and cried was loude
 Do now ȝoure devoire yonge knyȝtes proude
 The herawdes left her priking vp and down
 Now ryngen trompes loude and claryoun 2600
 þer is no more to seyn [but] est and west
 In goon þe sharpe speres ful sadly into þarest
 In goþ þe sharpe spere into þe side
 þere seen men who can iuste *and* who can ride 2604
 þere shyueren shaftes vppon sheeldes pikke
 He fileth þorgh þe herte spone þe prikke

Vp springen speres xx^{ti} fote on hight
 Out goon þe swerdes as þe siluer' white 2608
 þe helmes þei to-hewen and to-shrede
 Out bresteþ þe blode with sterne stremes rede
 Wiþ myȝty maces þe bones þei to-brest'
 And þorgh þe thikkeſt' of þe throng' gan threst' 2612
 þere stomblen stedes stronge and doun goñ alle
 He rolleþ vnder fote as doþ a balle
 He foyneþ on his foote wiþ his tronchoun
 And he hym hurteþ wiþ his hors a-down 2616
 He þorgh þe body is born *and* siþ is take
 Maugre his hede and brouȝt' vnto þe stake
 As forward' was [riȝt] þer he most' abide [leaf 37]
 Anoper lad is on þat' opere side 2620
 And somtyme doþ hem theſeus forto rest'
 Hem to refresshe and drink[e] ȝif hem leſt'
 fful off[te] a day han piſe thybeanes two
 To-gidere mette and wrouȝt' eche oper woo 2624
 Vnhorsed haþ eche opere of hem twey
 þer was no tigre in vale of Galgopleye
 Whan hir' whelp is stole whan it' is lite
 So cruel on þe hunte as is Arcite 2628
 ffor Ielous hert' vpon þis Palamoñ
 Ne in Belmerie þer is so felle a lion
 þat' hunted is or for his hunger wode
 Ne of his pray desireþ so þe bloode 2632
 As Palamon to sclee his foo Arcite
 þe Ielous strokes on her helmes bite
 Out renneþ blood of boþ her sides rede
 Somtyme an ende þer is on euery dede 2636
 ffor or þe sonne vnto þe reste went'
 þe Stronge king' Emetrius gan hent'
 This Palamon as he fauȝt' wiþ Arcite
 And made his swerde depe in his flesshe bite 2640
 And by [the] force of xx^{ti} is he take
 Vnȝolden and drowen to þe stake

And in þe Rescowe of þis Palamoñ
 The stronge king^t ligurge is born down 2644
 And kinge Emetrius for al his grete strength
 Is born out^t of his sadel his swerdes length
 So hit^t hym Palamon er he were take
 But^t al for nouzt^t he was brouzt^t to þe stake 2648
 His hardy herte may hym helpe nouzt^t
 He mote abide whan þat^t he is ykauzt^t
 By force and eke by composiciōn
 Who soroweþ now but^t woful Palamon 2652
 They mote no more go ageyn to fȳt^t
 And whan þat^t he had sene þat^t sizt^t
 He cried Hoo no more for it^t is doñ [leaf 37, back]
 Ne noon shal lenger to his felawe goñ 2656
 I wil be trewe Iuge and not^t partie
 Arcite of Thebes shal haue Emelye
 That^t by his fortune haþ hir^t faire women
 Anon þer is a vois of puple by-gonne 2660
 ffor Ioie of þis so loude and high wiþ-alle
 It semed þat^t þe listes shulden falle
 What^t can nowe faire Venus do aboue
 What^t seiþ she now what^t doþ þis quene of loue 2664
 But wepeþ so for wanting^t of her wille
 Til þat^t her teeres in þe listes fille
 She seide I am ashamed doutelees
 Saturnus seide doughter^t hold^t þi pees 2668
 Mars haþ his wil his knyght^t haþ al his bone
 And by myne hede þou shalt^t be esed sone
 The trompours wiþ þe loude mynstralsie
 The harawdes þat^t ful loude ȝelle *and* crye 2672
 Bene in her wele for Ioie of daun areyte
 But^t harkenep me and stinte vois a lite
 Swiche a myracle þer bifelle anōn
 This ferce Arcite haþ of his helme ydoñ 2676
 And on a courcere forto shew his face
 He prikkep endelonge þe large place

Loking^t vpward^t vnto Emelye
 And she azein him cast^t a frendly ye 2680
 ffor wommen as to speken in comune
 Thei folowen al þe fauour of fortune
 And was al his [in] chere as in his herte
 Out^t of þe grounde a fyre Infernal sterte 2684
 ffrom Pluto sent^t. at þe request^t of Saturne
 ffor which his hors for fere gan to turne
 And lepe a-side and foundred as he lepe
 And or þat^t Arcyte may taken kepe 2688
 He pight^t him on þe pomel of his heued
 þat in þe place he laie as he were dede
 His brest^t to-broste wiþ his sadel bowe [leaf 38]
 As blak he lay as eny cole or crowe 2692
 So was þe blood yronne in his face
 Anon he was [y]brouzt^t out^t of þe place
 Wiþ herte sore vnto Theseus palays
 þo was he coruen out^t of his harnays 2696
 And in a bedde ybrouzt^t ful faire *and* blyue
 ffor he was ȝit^t in memorie *and* on lyue
 And alway crying^t after emelie
 Duke Theseus wiþ al his companye 2700
 Is *commen* home to Athenes Cite
 With alle blisse and grete solempnite
 Al be it^t þat^t þis auenture is falle
 He wolde not^t discomforte[n] hem alle 2704
 Men seide eke þat^t Arcide shuld not^t dye
 He shal be heled of his maladye
 And of anoþer þinge þei were as fayne
 þat^t of hem alle þer nas no man slayne 2708
 Al were þei sore ybete and namely oñ
 þat^t wiþ a spere was þrelled þe brest boñ
 Two oþer woundes and two broken armes
 Somme had salue and some had charmes 2712
 ffermacies of erbes and eke saue
 þei dronken for þei wold^t her lyues haue

ffor which þis noble duke as he wel can
 Confortep and honourep euery man 2716
 And made Reuel al þe longe nyȝt
 Vnto þe straunge lordes as it was riȝt
 Ne þere was holde no discomfourt
 [.] 2720
 *no gap in the MS.*
 ffor fallinge is by an aventure
 Ne to be lad by force vnto a stake
 Vnȝolden and wiþ xx^{ti} knyȝtes take 2724
 A persone alon wiþ oute moo
 And haried forþ by arme fote *and* too
 And eke his stede dryven forþ *with* staues
 With fote men boþ ȝemen *and* [eke] knaues 2728
 It was aretted him no vilanye [leaf 38, back]
 þer may no man clepe[n] it cowardye
 ffor whiche a-non duke Theseus lete crye
 To stynten al rancour and [al] envie 2732
 Gree þei as wel of on side as of oþer [MS. þei "Gree."]
 And eiper side ylike as oþeres broþer
 And ȝaf hem ȝiftes after her degre
 And fulli heelde a feeste daies pree 2736
 And conueyed þe kingges worþely
 Out of his toun a Iourne largely
 And home went euery man þe riȝt[e] way
 þer was no more but fare wel & haue good day 2740
 ¶ Of þis bataille I wil no more endite
 But speke of Palamon *and* of Arcyte
 Swelleþ þe brest of Arcyte and þe sore
 Encreseþ at his herte more *and* more 2744
 The clotered blood for eny leche craft
 Corrumpeþ and is in his body laft
 þat neiþer veyn[e] blood ne ventowsinge
 Ne drinke of herbes may be [him] helpinge 2748
 By vertue expulsif or anymaȝt
 ffro þilk[e] vertu cleped naturaȝt

Ne may þe venyme voide ne expelle
 The pipes of his longges gan to swell 2752
 And euery lacert^t in his hert^t adoun
 Is shent^t wiþ venyme *and* corrupcioun
 Hym Geyneþ neiþer forto gete his lif
 Vompte vpward^t ne dounward^t laxatif 2756
 Al is to-brosten thilk[e] regiōn
 Nature hap no *dominaciōn*
 And certainly þer nature wil not^t wirche
 ffarewel Phisik go bere þe man to chirche 2760
 This is aȝt and some þat^t Arcita most^t die
 ffor which he sendeþ after Emelie
 And Palamon his cosyne dere
 þan seide he þus as 3e shal after here 2764
 Not^t may my woful spirite in myn hert^t [leaf 39]
 Declare a poynt^t of my sorowes smert^t
 To 3ou my lady þat^t I loue moste
 But I biqueth þe seruise of my gooste 2768
 To 3ou abouen euery creature
 Siþ þat^t my lif[e] may no lenger dure
 Allas þe woo allas þe peynes stronge
 þat^t I for 3ou haue suffred and so longe 2772
 Alas þe deþe alas myn Emelie
 Alas departinge of our companye
 Alas my hertes quene alas my lief wif
 Myn hertes lady endere of my lif 2776
 What^t is þe world^t what^t axen men to haue
 Now wiþ his loue now in his cold[e] graue
 Allone wiþ oute[n] eny companye
 ffare wel my foo fare wel myn Emely 2780
 And soft^e take me in 3oure [armes] twey
 ffor loue of god herken^{eþ} what^t I seie
 I haue here wiþ my Cosyn Palamon
 Had strif and rancoure mony day agoñ 2784
 ffor loue of 3ou and for my Ielousie
 And Iubiter so wis my soule gye

To speken of a seruau^t proprely
 Wiþ circumstaunces al trewly 2788
 þat' is to seyn trouþ. honure *and* knyȝthede
 Wisdom humblesse estat *and* high kynrede
 ffredom and al þat' longeþ to þat' art
 So Iubiter haue on my soule part' 2792
 As in þis worlde riȝt' now know I none
 So worpi to be biloued as Palamon
 þat' serueþ ȝou and wil do. al his liff
 And if þat ȝe shal euer bene a wif` 2796
 fforȝete not' Palamon þe gentile man
 And wiþ þat' worde his speche faile bygan
 ffor from his fete vnto þe hert' was come
 þe colde of deþ þat had him ouercome 2800
 And ȝit' more ouer for in his armes twoo [leaf 39, back]
 þe v[i]tal strengþ is lost' and al ago
 Only þe intellecte wiþ oute more
 þat' dwelled in his herte sik *and* sore 2804
 Gan failen whan þe herte felte detþ
 Dusken his eyen two *and* faileþ breþe
 But' on his lady ȝit cast he his ye
 His laste word was mercy Emelye 2808
 His spirit' chaunged hens and went[e] þere
 As I cam neuere I can not' telle where
 Therfor I stint' I am no dyvynystre
 Of soules fynde I not' in þis registre 2812
 Ne me ne list' þilk opynyons to telle
 Of hem þouȝe þat þei writen wher þei dwelle
 Arcite is colde þat' mars his soule gye
 Now wil I speken forþ of emely 2816
 Shrite Emely an halowen Palamon
 And Theseus his suster' toke anōn
 Swownyng' and bar hir' fro his cours away
 What' helpeþ it' vs to tarien forþ þe day 2820
 To tellen howe she wepte boþ euen *and* morowe
 ffor in suche caas wommen han suche sorowe

Whan þat her husbondes bene fro hem a-goo
 [That] ffor þe more parte þei sorowen soo 2824
 Or ellis fallen in such Maladie
 þat at þe laste certeynly þei die
 Infinite harmes bene *and* eke þe teeres
 Of olde folk and folk of tendere ȝeres 2823
 In aȝt þe toun for det̃h of þis Thebean
 ffor him þer wepen boþ[e] child*ð* *and* man
 So grete weping*ʔ* was þer [non] certayn
 Whan Ector was [y]brouȝt*ʔ* *and* fressh ysclayn 2832
 To Troy allas þe pite þat was þere
 Cracching*ʔ* of chekes renting*ʔ* eke of here
 Whi woldest þou be dede þise wommen crie
 And haddest gold*ð* ynoghe and emelye 2836
 No man myght glade Theseus [leaf 40]
 Sauyng*ʔ* his olde fadere Egeus
 That knewe þis worldes *transmutacioun*
 As he had sene it vp and doūn 2840
 Ioie after woo and woo aftere gladnesse
 And shewep hem ensample and liknesse
 Rizt as þer dyed neuer man quod he
 þat he ne lyued in erþe in som degre 2844
 Rizt so ther lyued neuere man he seide
 In al þis world*ð* þat somtyme he ne deyed
 þis world*ð* is nouȝt but a þorgh*ʔ* fare ful of woo
 And we bene pilgrymes passing*ʔ* to and froo 2848
 Dep is an ende of euery worldly sore
 And ouer al þis ȝit seide he mychel more
 To þis effecte ful wisely to enhortē
 þe puple þat þei . hem shul recomforte 2852
 Duke Theseus wiþ al his bisy Cure
 Tastep nowē where þat þe sepulture
 Of good Arcite may best ymaked be
 And eke most honorable of degre 2856
 And atte last he toke conclusiōn
 That þer as first Arcite and Palamon

Had for loue þe bataile hem bitwene
 þat in þe self groue swete and grene 2860
 þer as he had his Amerous desires
 His compleynt and for loue his hote fires
 He wold[e] make a fire in which þe office
 ffuneral he myzt hem aft complice 2864
 He lete anon comaunde to hakke *and* hewe
 þe okes olde and leye hem on a rewe
 In colpons wel araied forto brenne
 His Officers with swift[e] fote thei renne 2868
 And rízt anon at his comaundement
 And after Theseus hap ysent
 Aftere a beer and it al ouer spradde
 Wip cloþ of gold the ricchest þat he hadde 2872
 And of þe same sute he cloþer Arcite [leaf 40, back]
 Vpon his hondes [were] his gloues white
 Eke on his hede a croune of laurere grene
 And in his hand a swerde ful brízt *and* kene 2876
 He laide him bare þe visage vnto þe bere
 Ther wip he wepte þat pite was to here
 And for þe puple shulde sene hym aft
 Whan it was daie he brouzt hym to þe haþt 2880
 þat rorep of þe crie and of þe sorowe sone
 þoo gan þis woful Thebean Palamon
 Wip flotery berð and ruggy asshy heres
 In cloþes blake dropped al wip teeres 2884
 And passing oþer of weping Emelie
 She rewfullest of al þe companye
 In as moche as þe seruise shuld be
 þe more noble and riche in his degre 2888
 Duke Theseus lete forþ þe stedes bringe
 That trapped were in steel al gliteringe
 And keuered wip þe armes of Dame Arcite [or Daine]
 Vppon þise stedes grete and white 2892
 Ther stoden folk of which oon bare his sheelde
 Anoþer his spere vpon his hondes helde

The iij. bare wiþ him bowe turkeys
 Of brent^t gold was þe caas *and* eke þe harneys 2896
 And riden forþ a paas wiþ sory chere
 Towardes þe groue as ȝe shul after^r here
 The noblest^t of þe Grekes þat^r þer were
 Vpon her shulders cariden þe bere 2900
 Wiþ sclak[e] paas and yen rede *and* wete
 þorghⁿ out þe Cite by þe maister strete
 þat sprad was al wiþ blak and wonder hye
 Riȝt of þe same is þe strete ywrie 2904
 Vpon þe Riȝt honde went^t olde Egeus
 And on þat^r oþer side Duke Theseus
 Wiþ vesselles in her hondes of gold^t ful fyne
 Al ful of hony. mylk. [and] blood. *and* wyne 2908
 Eke Palamon with ful grete companye [leaf 41]
 And aftere þat^r come wooful Emelie
 Wiþ fire in hand as was þat^r time þe Gyse
 To do þe office of funeral seruise 2912
 High labour / and ful grete apparaillinge
 Was at^r þe seruyse and at^r þe fire makinge
 That^r wiþ his grene top þe heuene raught
 And xx^{ti} fadmes in brede þe armes raught^t 2916
 This is to seine þe bowes were so brode
 Of strawe first þer was leide mony a lode
 But^t howe þe fire was maked vp[on] hiȝt^t
 Ne eke þe names howe þe trees hiȝt^t 2920
 As Oke. fir. birchⁿ. asp. alder. Elme. popelere.
 Wilowe. holme. playn. assⁿ. box. Chesteyn. bynd^t. laure.
 Mapel. þorne. becche. ewe. hase^{ft}. wypultre.
 How þei were felled shal not^t be tolde for me 2924
 Ne howe þe goddes ronnen vp *and* down
 Disherites of her habitacioun
 In whiche þei wonden in rest^t *and* pees
 Nymphes. flawnes *and* amadries 2928
 Ne howe þe beestes ne þe briddes alle
 felledden for fere whan þei were falle

Ne howe þe grounde agast^t was of þe liz^t
 That^t was not^t wonte to se þe sonne brij^t 2932
 Ne how þe fire was couched first wiþ stre
 And þan wiþ drie stikk^es clouen a þree
 And þan wiþ grene wode and spicerie
 And þan wiþ cloþe of gold^d and [wiþ] perrie 2936
 And Garlondes honging^t wiþ mony a floure
 The myrr^r þensence wiþ swete odoure
 Ne how arcite lay among^t al þis
 Ne what^t richesse aboute his body is 2940
 Ne howe Emely as was þe Gise
 Put^t in þe fire of funeral seruise
 Ne howe she swowned whan made was þe fire
 Ne what^t she spak ne what^t was her desire 2944
 Ne what^t Ielous men in þe fire cast^t [leaf 41, back]
 Whan þat þe fire was grete and brente fast^t
 Nowe howe some cast^t her sheelde *and* some her spere
 And of her vestementes which þei were 2948
 And Coppes ful of mylke and wyne *and* blood
 Into þe fire þat^t brent^t as it^t were wode
 Ne howe þe greges wiþ an huge route
 Thrise riden al þe fire aboute 2952
 Vpon þe list^t honde wiþ a loude shoutinge
 And thries wiþ her speres clateringe
 And thries how þe ladise gan crie
 Ne howe þat^t lad was homward^d Emely 2956
 Ne how arcyte is brent^t in asshen colde
 Ne how þe liche-wake was [y]holde
 Al þat^t nyght^t ne howe þe Grekes pleye
 The wake-plaies kepe I not^t to seie 2960
 Who wrastelep^p best^t naked *with* oile anoynt^t
 Ne who [that] bare him best^t in no dysioynt^t
 I wil not^t tellen aȝ^t howe þei [ben] gone
 Home til Athenes whan þe play is done 2964
 But^t shortely to þe point^t þan wil I wende
 And make[n] of my longe tale an ende

By processe and by length of ȝeres
 Al stinte is þe mournyng and þe teeres 2968
 Of Grege by oon general assent
 Than semed me þer was a parlement
 At Athenes vpon a certeyn point *and* caas
 And amonge pointes [ther] yspoken waas 2972
 To haue wiþ certeyn contrees alliance
 And haue of Thebeanes fully obeisañce
 ffor which this noble theseus anōn
 Lete sende[n] after gentile Palamon 2976
 Vnwist of him what was þe cause *and* whi
 But in his blake cloþes sorowfully
 He come at his comaundement in hie
 Tho sente Theseus for Emelye 2980
 Whan þat þei were sette and huyst was al þe place [leaf 42]
 And Theseus abiden haþ þe space
 Or eny worde come fro his wise brest
 His yen sette he þer hym lest 2984
 And such a sad visage he sighed stille
 And after þat riȝt þus he seide his wille
 The firste mouer of þe cause aboue
 Whan he first made þe faire cheyn of loue 2988
 Gret was þe effecte and high was his entent
 Wel wist he why and what þerof he ment
 ffor wiþ þat faire cheyne of loue he bonde
 The fuyre. þe. Eire þe water and þe londe 2992
 In certeyn boondes þat þei may not flee
 That same prince and þat same mouer *quod* he
 Haþ stablessed in þis wrecched world adoun
 Certeyn days and Dominacioun 2996
 To al þat is engendred in þis place
 Ouer þe whiche day þei may not pace
 Al mowe þei ȝit þe daies abregge
 Ther nys noon autorite to legge 3000
 ffor it is proued by experience
 But that me lust declare my sentence

Than may men by þis order discerne
 That þilk mouer stable is and eterne 3004
 Wel may men knowe but' it' be a fool
 That' euery part' darrayueth fro his hool
 ffor nature haþ not' taken his bygynnyng'
 Of no partie or of catel of no þing' 3008
 But' oon þinge þat' parfit is and stable
 Descendinge so til it' be corruptable
 And þerfore of his wise purueaunce.
 He haþ so wel bysette his ordynaunce 3012
 þat' specife of þingges and progressiones
 Shullen endure by successiones
 And not' eterne wiþ oute eny lye
 This maist' þou vnderstonð *and* see atte ye 3016
 Lo the Oke þat' hath so longe a norshinge [leaf 42, back]
 ffor þe tyme þat' it bygynneþ furst' to springe
 And haþ so longe a lif as 3e may se
 3it' at' þe laste waasted is þe tree 3020
 Considereþ eke howe þat' þe herde stone
 Vnder our fete on which we treden and gone
 3it' .3. wastep it' as it' lith in þe way
 þe Brode Ryuer somtyme wexeþ dray 3024
 þe grete townes so wide wane and wende
 Than þe see þat' al þis þing' haþ ende
 And man and womman so we wil also
 That' nedeþ in oon of þe teermes twoo 3028
 þat' is to sayn in youþe or ellis in age
 He mote be dede þe kinge as wel as page
 Some in his bed some in þe depe see
 Some in þe large felde as 3e may see 3032
 Ther helpeþ nouȝt' al goþ þat' ilk waye
 þan may I seie þat' al þis þing' wil deye
 What' makeþ þis but' Iubiter þe king'
 þat' is prince and cause of al þing' 3036
 Couerting' al vnto his propre wille
 ffrom which it is darreyude soþ to telle

Aud here agayne no creature on lyue
 Of no degre availleþ forto stryue 3040
 Than is it' wisdom as þenkeþ me
 To make vertue of necessite
 And take it' wel þat' we may not' eschew
 And namely þat'. þat' to vs all is dwe 3044
 And who so gruccheþ ouzt' he doþ foly
 And rebeþ is to him þat al may gye
 And certeynly a man haþ most' honour
 To dyen in his excellence and flour' 3048
 Whan he is siker of his good name
 þan haþ he done his frende ne hym no shame
 And gladder' auzt / his frende . ben of his deth
 Whan wiþ honour' yzolden is vp þe breeth 3052
 Than whan his name appalled is for age
 [leaf 43]
 ffor al forȝeten is his vassalage
 Than is þe best' as for a worþi fame
 To dyen whan he is best' of name 3056
 The Contrarie of al þis is wilfulnesse
 Why grucche we whi haue we heuynesse
 That' goode Arcite of Chyualre þe flour'
 Departed is wiþ dwete and wiþ honour' 3060
 Out' of þe foule prison of þis liff
 Whi grucchen here his cosyn and his wiff
 Of his welfare þat' loueþ hem so wel
 Can he hem þonk. nay god wote neuer a deþ 3064
 That' boþ his soule and eke hem [self] offende
 And ȝit' þei mowe not' hir lustes amende
 What' may conclude of þis longe serie
 But' after woo I rede vs be merie 3068
 And þanken Iubiter of al his grace
 And or we departen from þis place
 I rede we made of sorowes twoo
 Oo parfite Ioie lasting' euermoo 3072
 And loke nowe wher most' sorowe is her' Inne
 þer at' wil I furst' bygynne

Suster quod he þis is my ful assent
 Wiþ aȝt thaues here of my parlement 3076
 That Gentile Palamon ȝour owne knyȝt
 þat serueþ ȝou wiþ wille herte *and* myȝt
 And euer haþ do siþen ȝe first hym knewe
 þat ȝe shal of ȝoure grace vpon hym rewe 3080
 And taken [hym] for husbonde and for lord
 Lene me ȝoure honde for þis is our accord
 Lete se nowe of ȝoure womanly pite
 He is a kingges broþer sone parde 3084
 And þouȝe he be a poor bachiler
 Siþ he haþ serued ȝou so mony a ȝere
 And had for ȝou so grete aduersite
 It most be considered leueþ me 3088
 ffor gentel Mercy ouȝt to passen riȝt [leaf 43, back]
 Than seide he þus to Palamon þe knyȝt
 I trowe þere nede litel sermonyng
 To make ȝou assente to þis þinge 3092
 Commeþ nere and takeþ ȝoure lady by þe honde
 Bytwix hem two was made anon þe bonde
 þat hiȝte Matrimoyne or mariage
 By aȝt þe counsaile and [the] baronage 3096
 And þus wiþ al[le] blisse and melodye
 Haþ Palamon ywedded Emelye
 And god þat al þis world haþ wrouȝt
 Send hym his loue þat haþ it dere bouȝt 3100
 ffor nowe is Palamon in al[le] wele
 Lyuyng in al blisse in riches and in hele
 And Emely him loueþ so tenderly
 And he hir serueþ so gently 3104
 Was neuer no worde hem bitwene
 Of Ielousie or eny oþer tene
 Thus endeþ þe tale of Palamon and Emelye
 And god saue al þis faire companye 3108

¶ Here endeþ þe knyghtes tale

& here bygnnep

þe Prologe of þe Milleres tale

¶ The Prologe

Whan þat þe knyght had þus his tale told
 In al the companye nas þer 3onge ne olde
 þat he ne seide it was a noble storie
 And worpi to be drawe in memorie 3112
 And namely the gentels euerechoñ
 Our hooste loughe and swore so mot I goñ
 This gob a rizt vnbokeled is þe male
 Lat se nowe who shal telle anopere tale 3116
 ffor trewly þe game is wel bygonne
 Now telleþ 3e sir monke 3if 3e conne
 Somwhat to quyte wiþ þe knyghtes tale
 The Miller þat for-dronke was al pale 3120
 So þat vnneþes vppon his hors he satte
 He wold availe neiþe hode ne hatte
 Ne abide no man for his curtesie [leaf 44]
 But in Pilates vois he bygan to erie 3124
 And swore by armes blode and bones
 I can a noble tale for þe nones
 Wiþ þe which I wil now quyte þe knyghtes tale
 Our [hooste] seghe þat he was dronke of ale 3128
 And seide abide Robyn leue brother
 Somme better man shal telle vs first anoper
 Abide and [let] us wirche thriftely
 By goddes soule quod he þat wil not I 3132
 ffor I wil speke or ellis go my way
 Our hooste answerd seye on a deuel way
 Thou arte a fool þi witt is ouercommen
 Now harkenep quod þe myllere al and som 3136
 ¶ But first I make a protestacioun
 þat I am dronke I knowe it by my soun
 And perfore 3if I mysspeke or say
 Wite it þe Ale of suthwerk I 3ou pray 3140

ffor I will telle a legend^ȝ and a liif
 Boþ of a Carpenter and [of] his wiff
 How þat a clerke ref^t the wriȝtes cappe
 The reue answer^ȝ and seide stint of þi clappe 3144
 Lat be þi lewde dronken harlotrie
 It is a synne and eke a grete folye
 To appeyren eny man or hym diffame
 And eke to bringe wives in such name 3148
 þow maist ynowe of oþer þingges seine
 þis dronken Millere spake ful sone ageyn
 And seide leue broþer oswalde
 Who hap no wif. is no kukwold^ȝ 3152
 But I seie not þerfor þat þou art ooñ
 Ther ben ful good[e] wyues mony oñ
 [.
 *no gap in the MS.*] 3156
 Whi art þou angry wiþ my tale now
 I haue a wiff parde as wel as þou/
 ȝit nolde I for þe oxen in my plogh
 Take vpon me more þan ynogh 3160
 As demen of my seluen þat I were oone [leaf 44, back]
 I wil bylieue þat þat I am none
 An husbond shuld not be inquesitif
 Of goddes priuete ne of his wif 3164
 So he may finde goddes foyson þere
 Of þe remenant nedeþ nat to enquere
 What shuld I more seie but þe Millere
 He nyl his wordes for no man for-bere 3168
 But tolde his Chirles tale in his manere
 Me forþenkeþ þat I shal reherce it here
 And þerfore euery gentil wiȝt I preie
 Demen not for goddes loue þat I seie 3172
 Of euel entent but for I mote reherce
 Her tales alle be þei better or wors/
 Or ellis fals somen of my matere
 And þerfore who list it not here 3176

Torne ouer þe lief and chese anoþer tale
 ffor 3e shul fynde ynow grete *and* smale
 Of historial þinge þat toucheþ gentilnesse
 And eke moralite and holynesse 3180
 Blame not me 3if þat ye chese amys
 The Millere is a cheerle 3e knowe wel þis
 So was the Reue eke and other moo
 And harlotrie þei toldþ boþ twoo 3184
 Avise 3ou and put me out of blame
 And eke men shal not make earnest of game
Thus endeþ þe prologe.

[*No break in the MS.*]

And here by-

gynneþ þe Millers Tale.

¶ Narracio

Whilom þer was dwelling in Oxenford
 A riche gnof þat gestes helde to bord 3188
 And of his craft he was a Carpenter
 Wiþ him þer was dwelling a pore scolere
 Had lerned arte but al his fantasie
 Was turned forto lere Astrologie 3192
 And cowde a certeyn of conclusions
 To demen by interrogaciõs.
 3if þat men axed him incerteyn houres [leaf 45]
 Whan þat men shuld haue drouzte of shoures 3196
 Or 3if men axed him what shuld byfalle
 Of euery þing I may not rekne alle
 This tale was cleped hende Nicholas
 Of derne loue and priue solas 3200
 And þerto he was sclegþ and ful priue
 And liche to a maiden meke to see
 A chambre had he in þat ostelrie
 Allone wiþ-out eny companye 3204
 fful fetist dight wiþ herbes swote
 And he hym self as swete as is þe rote
 Of licorace or ony sytuale
 His almagist and bokes grete *and* smale 3208
 His aster-laboure longinge for his arte
 His awgryme stones layen ful faire aparte
 On shelues couched at his beddes heuede
 His presse ykeuered wiþ a falding rede 3212
 And al aboue þer lay a gay sautrie
 On which he made on nyghtes melodye
 So swetely þat al þe chambre ronge
 And angelus ad virginem he songe 3216
 And after þat he songe þe kingges note
 fful ofte blessed was his mery prote

And þus þe swete Clerk' his tyme spent
 Aftere his frendes fynding' and his rente 3220
 This Carpenter had wedded newe a wiff
 Which þat' he loued more þan his liff
 Of xvij. 3ere she was of age
 Ielous he was and kept' hir' streit' in cage 3224
 ffor she was wily and yonge and he was olde
 And demed hym self to be like a Cukwolde
 He knewe not' Caton for his wit' is rude
 þat' bad man shuld' wedde his similitude 3228
 Men shul wedde aftere her estate
 ffor 3oupe and elde is oft' at' debate
 But sith he was fallen in þe snare [leaf 45, back]
 He most' enduren as oper folk his care 3232
 ffair was þis yonge wif and þer wip' all
 As eny wesell her body gent' *and* smafl
 A seynt' she wered barred al of silk'
 A barmeelope as white as morn[e] mylk' 3236
 Vpon her lendes ful of mony a gore
 White was hir smok' and enbrauded al byfore
 And eke be-hinde on her coler' aboute
 Of Cole-blak silk' with-Inne and eke wip'-oute 3240
 The tapes of hir' white volipere
 Were of þe same sute of hir colere
 Hir' Philett brode of silk *and* sette ful hie
 And sikerly she had a lykerous ye 3244
 fful smal y pulled were her browes twoo/
 And þoo were bent' and blake as eny sloo/
 She was more blisful on to se
 þan is þe newe Perient' tree 3248
 And softer þan þe wolff is of eiper'
 And by hir' girdel henge a purs of leder'
 Tasshed wip' silk and perled with latoun
 In al þis worlde to seke vp and down 3252
 Ther nys no man so wise þat' coupe þenche
 So gay a popelot' or [such] a wenche

fful briȝt was the shynynȝ of her hwe
 Than in þe toure þe noble forged newe 3256
 But of her songe it was as loude *and* ȝerne
 As eny swalowe sittynge on a beerne
 þerto she couþe skippe and make a game
 As eny kid or calf folowynȝ his dame 3260
 Her mouþe was swete as brakȝet or methȝ
 Or horde of apples leide in hay or hethȝ
 Wynsinge she was as is a Ioly colt
 Longe as a mast and vpward as a bolt 3264
 A broche she bare on her loue coler
 As brode as is þe boos of a bokelere
 Her shoes were laised on her legges hie [leaf 46]
 She was a Primeroff a Pigges nye 3268
 ffor eny lorde to ligen in his bedde
 Or ȝit for eny [good] ȝeman to wedde
 Now sir and eft sir. and so bifelle þe caas
 That on a day þis beende Nicholas / 3272
 felle wiþ þis yonge wif forto rage *and* play
 While þat her husbonde was at osenay
 As clerkes bene ful subtile and ful queynte
 And prively he kauȝt hur by þe queynte 3276
 And seide ywis but I haue my wille
 ffor deerne loue of þe lemman I spille
 And helde hure fast by þe haunche bonys
 And seide lemman my wilȝt at onys 3280
 Or I wil die as god me saue
 And she spronge as a colt in traue
 And wiþ her hede sche wried fast away
 She saide I wil not kisse þe by my fay 3284
 Wy labbe quod she latt be Nicholas
 Or I wil crie out harowe *and* alas
 Do way ȝoure hondes for ȝour curtesie
 This Nicholas gan mercy forto crie 3288
 And spake so faire *and* profred him ful fast
 þat she her loue graunted hym atte last

And swoor hir' oope by seint' Thamas of kent'
 That' she wolde bene at' his comaundement' 3292
 Whan þat' she may hir' laizere wel aspie
 Myn husbonde is so ful of Ielousie
 þat' but' 3e waite wele *and* by prive
 I woote riȝt' wel I ne am but' dede quod she 3296
 3e mote be ful deerne as in þis caas
 Nay þerof care 3ou not' quod Nicholaas
 A Clerk has liþerly bysette his while
 But' ȝif he couþe a carpenter' begile 3300
 And þus þei acorded and sworne
 To awaite a tyme as I haue seide biforñ
 Whan Nicholas had' doñ þus euery dele [leaf 46, back]
 And twakked her aboute þe lendes welle 3304
 He kisseþ her swete and takeþ his sautrie
 And pleieþ fast' and makeþ melodye
 þan fille it þus þat to þe parissñ chirche
 Cristes werkes for to wirche 3308
 This good wif went' vpon an halyday
 Hir' forhede shoon as briȝt' as eny day
 So was it' wasshe whan she left' her werk'
 Now was þere of þe chirchñ a parissñ clerk 3312
 þe whichñ was cleped absaloñ
 Crulle was his heer' and as þe golde shone
 And strouted as [a] fanne large *and* brode
 fful streite and euene laie his Ioly shode 3316
 His ruddle was rede his eyen grey as goos
 Wiþ Powles wyndowes corven in his shoos
 In hosen rede he wente fetisly
 I-clad he was ful smal and proprely 3320
 Al in a kirtel of light' wagett
 fful faire and pikke ben þe poyntes sette
 And þer-vpon he had [a] gay surplise
 As white as is þe blossom on [the] rise 3324
 A mery child' he was so god me saue
 Wel coude he late blood [and] clippe and shaue

And make a chartere of londe or a quytamce
 In xx^{ti} maners coude he trippe *and* daunce 3328
 After the scole of Oxenforde þoo
 And wiþ his legges casten to and froo
 And pleyen songes on a small rybibe
 Some he songe a loude quynybe 3332
 As as wel coude he pley on a gytern
 In al þe towne nas brewhous ne tauern
 þat he ne viset wiþ his solas
 þer eny gailerd tapster was 3336
 But soth to sayn he was somdele squeymous
 Of fartinge *and* of speche daungerous
 This Absolon þat was Ioly *and* gay [leaf 47]
 Goþ wiþ a sensure on þe sonday 3340
 Sensinge þe wyues of þe parissch fast
 And mony a louely loke on hem he cast
 And namely cn þe Carpenters wiff
 To loke on hyr him þouȝt a mery lif 3344
 She was so propre . swete . *and* likerous
 I dar wel say and she had be a mous
 And he a Catt he wolde hire hent anōn
 This parissch clerk þis Ioly absoloñ 3348
 Hap in his herte such a loue longynge
 That of no wiff toke he non offringe
 For curtesie he seide he wolde none
 The mone whan it was nyȝt briȝt shone 3352
 And absolon his gitern hap [i]take
 For paramours he þouȝte forto wake
 And forþe he goþ Ielous and amerous
 Til he come to þe Carpenter[e]s hous 3356
 A litel aftere þe Cok had ycrowe
 And dressed hym vnder a shette wyndowe
 That was vpon þe Carpenter[e]s walle
 He singeþ in his vois gentile *and* smalle 3360
 Now dere lady ȝif þi wil be
 I prei ȝou þat ȝe wil rewe on me

Ful wel according^t to his giterynyge
 This Carpentere a-woke and herð hym singe 3364
 And spake vnto his wif and seide anoñ
 What^t alison herest^t þou not^t Absoloñ
 þat^t chaunteþ þus vndere our boures waft
 And she answerð her husbond^t þer wip aft 3368
 3is god wote Iohn I here it^t euery dele
 þis passeþ forþ what^t wil 3e than but wele
 ffor day to day þis Ioly absoloñ
 So woweþ hire þat^t hym was woo-bygoñ 3372
 He wakeþ al þe nyȝt^t and al þe day
 He kembeþ his lockes brode and made hem gay
 He woweþ hir^t by menes and brocage [leaf 47, back]
 And swoor he wolde bene her wne page 3376
 He Syngeþ brokking^t as a nyghtyngale
 He sent^t her pyment^t Methe and spised ale
 And wafres pyping hote out^t of þe gleden
 And to hir^t often he profered mede 3380
 ffor some wil be wonnen for riches
 And some for strokes and some for gentilnesse
 Somtyme to shewe his lightnesse and maisstrie
 He pleieth herawdes vpon a scaffold^t hie 3384
 But what^t availleþ him as in þis caas
 So loueth she þis hende Nicholaas
 That^t Absolon may blawe þe buke horn
 He ne had for his labour but^t a scorñ 3388
 And þus she makeþ absolon her Ape
 Al his eernest turneþ but^t to a Iape
 ffor soþe þis prouerbe it^t is no lye
 Men seien þus alway þe nyȝte scie 3392
 Makeþ þe feer loue to be loth
 ffor þouȝe þat^t absolon be wode or wroth
 By cause þat^t he fer was from her siȝt^t
 This Niȝte Nicholas stode in his liȝt^t 3396
 Nowe bere 3ou wel thou hende Nicholas/
 ffor absolon may waille *and* singe allas

And so by-felle it' on a Saterdag	
This Carpentere was gone to Osnay	3400
And hende Nicholas and Alisoñ	
Accorded were to þis conclusiōn	
þat' Nicholas shal shapen hym a wile	
This sely Ielous husbonde to begile	3404
And if so be þe game went' a riȝt'	
She shulde slepe in his arme al þat' nyȝt'	
For þis [was] his desire and hers also-	
And riȝt' anon wiþ-oute wordes moo/	3408
This Nicholas no lenger wold tarie	
But' doþ ful softe into his chamber carie	
Both mete and drinke for a daye or tweye	[leaf 48]
And to hir' husbonde bad hir' for to seie	3412
If þat' he asked after Nicholas	
She shulde seie she nyst' not' wher he was	
Of al þat' day she see hym not' wiþ ye	
She trowed þat' he was in maladye	3416
ffor no crie her maide can calle	
He nolde answer for nouȝt' that' may bifalle	
This passeþ forþ al þe Saterdag	
That' Nicholas stille in his bed lay	3420
And ete and slepte and [dede] what' hym lest'	
Til sonday þat' þe sonne goþ to rest'	
This sely Carpenter' haþ grete mervaile	
Of Nicholas or what' þing' myȝt' hym aile	3424
And saide I am a-drad by seynt' Thomas	
It' stondeth not' a-riȝt' wiþ Nicholas	
God shilde þat' he deyed sodenily	
This world is now ful tikil sikerly	3428
I seghe to-day a coors born to chirche	
That' now on monday I segħ fast' wirche	
Go vp quod he to his knaue anoñ	
Clepe at' his door or knokke wiþ a stoñ	3432
Loke howe it' is and telle me boldely	
þis knaue went' him vp ful sturdely	

And at the Chamber door while þat he stode
 He cried an knocked as he were wode 3436
 What howe what do 3e maister Nicholay
 Howe may 3e sclopen al þis longe day
 But al for nouȝt he herd neuer a word
 An hoole he foonde ful lowe vnder a bord 3440
 Ther as þe Catt was wonte forto crepe
 And at þe hole he loked in ful depe
 And atte last he had of him a sizt
 þis Nicholas satte euere gaping vp riȝt 3444
 As he had kiked on þe newe moone
 And doune he goþ and told his maister sone
 In what araie he segh þat ilke man [leaf 48, back]
 This carpentere to blissen hym by-gan 3448
 And seide helpe vs seint ffredeswyde
 A man wote litel what shal hym betide
 This man is fallen wiþ his astronomye
 In some woodnesse or in some Agonye 3452
 I þouȝt wel howe it shuld be
 Men shuld not knowe of goddis priuete
 3e blessed be alway þe lewde man
 þat nouȝt but only his bileue can 3456
 So ferde anoper clerk with astronomye
 He walked into þe feeldes for to prie
 Vpon þe sterres to wit what shal by-falle
 Til he was in a Marle pitte yfalle 3460
 He seighe noȝt but yit by seint Thomas
 Me rueþ soor hende Nicholas
 He schal be rated of his stodyng
 If þat I may by Ihesu¹ heuene knyge [1 MS the] 3464
 Gete me a staf þat I may vnderspore
 While þat þou Robyn heuest vp þe dore
 He shal out of his stodyng as I gesse
 And to þe Chamber dore he gan hym dresse 3468
 His knaue was a stronge Carle for þe nones
 And by þe haspe he haue it vp at ones

Into þe floor þe door fille anoñ
 This Nicholas sat ay stille as stoñ 3472
 And euere gaped vpward into þe eire
 þis carpenter wende he were in despeir
 And hent hym by þe shuldres myztely
 And shoke him hard and cried spitously 3476
 What Nicholay what loke adoun
 A-wake and þenk on cristes passioun
 I crouche þe from eveles and fro wiztes
 þer-with þe nyzt spelle he seide anoñ riztes 3480
 On four halues of the hous aboute
 And on þe thressshold on þe dore withoute
 Ihesu crist and seynt Benedight [leaf 49]
 Blesse þis hous from euery wicked wight 3484
 ffor þe nyghtes verye þe white pater noster
 Where wentestowe. seynt Peters suster
 And atte last þis hende Nicholas
 Gan for to sighe sore and seide allas 3488
 Shal al þe world be loste eftsones nowe
 This Carpentere answerde what seist þowe
 What þenk on god as we doñ þat swynk
 This Nicholas answerde focche me drink 3492
 And aftere I wil speke in privitye
 Of certeyn þing þat towcheþ þe and me
 I wille telle it noon oþer man eereteyne
 This carpenter goþ down and commeþ ageyne 3496
 And brouzt of myghty ale a large quarte
 And whan þat eche of hem had dronke his parte
 þis Nicholas his door fast shette
 And doun þe Carpenter by hym he sette 3500
 And seide Iohñ myn hooste lief and dere
 þow shalt vpon þi trouþ swere me heere
 That to no wight þou shalt þis counsell wrey
 ffor it is cristes counsaile þat I sey 3504
 And if þu telle it man þou art forlore
 ffor þis vengeance þou shalt haue þerfore

þat if þow wrey me þou shalt be wode
 ¶ Nay crist forbede it for his holy blood 3508
 Quod þoo þis sely man I ne am no labbe
 Ne þough I seie it I ne am not lief to gabbe
 Sey what þowe wolt I shal it neuer telle
 To Childe ne wif by hym þat harowed helle 3512
 Nowe Iohn quod Nicholas I wil not lie
 I haue yfounden in myn astrologie
 As I haue loked in þe mone brizt
 þat nowe on monday next a quarter nyzt 3516
 Shal falle a rayn and þat so wild and wode
 þat half so grete was never noes flode
 This world he saide in lasse þan in an houre [leaf 49, back]
 Shal al be dreint so hidous is þe showre 3520
 Thus shal mankinde drenche and lese her liff
 'This Carpentere answerd allas my wiff
 And shal she drenche allas myn alisoun
 ffor sorowe of þis he fille al-most adoun 3524
 And seide is no remedye in þis caas
 Wy 3is for god quod heende Nicholas
 If þow wolte worchen aftere lore and rede
 þowe maist not worchen after þine owne hede 3528
 ffor þus seith salomon þat was ful trewe
 Worche al by counsaile and þou shalt not rewe
 And if þou worchen wolt by good counsaile
 I vndertake wiþ-uten mast or saille 3532
 3it shal I saue hir and þe and mee
 Hast þou not herd how saued was Noe
 Whan þat our lorde hap warned hym byforn
 þat al the world wiþ water shuld be lorn 3536
 3is quod þis Carpenter ful 3ore a-goo
 Hastowe not herde quod Nicholas also
 þe sorowe of Noe wiþ his felawship
 Or he myzt gete his wif to ship 3540
 Hym had leuere I dar wel vndertake
 At pilke tyme þan aff his weperes blake

þat she had a ship hure self allōn
 And þerfor woostowe what is best to doñ 3544
 Thix axeth hast and of an hastif þinge
 Men may not preche or make taryinge
 Anoon go gete vs fast into þis Inne
 A knedinge trougħ or ellis a kemelyne 3548
 ffor eche of vs but loke þat þei bene large
 In whiche men mowe swymme as in a barge
 And han her vitailles suffisaunt
 But for a day fye on þe remenaunt 3552
 þe water shal a-slake and goñ a-way
 Aboute pryme vpon þe nexte day
 But Robyne may not wit of þis þi knaue [leaf 50]
 Ne eke þi maide Giff I may not saue 3556
 Axe not why for þouze þou axe me
 I wil not tellen goddes priuete
 It suffiseþ þe but if þi wittes madde
 To haue as grete a grace as Noe hadde 3560
 þi wif shal I wel saue out of doute
 Go nowe þi way and spede þe here aboute
 But whan þou hast for hir and þe and me
 ygeten vs þise kneding treies þre 3564
 þan shalt þou honge hem in þe roof ful hie
 þat no man of oure purueaunce espie
 And whan þou þus hast doñ as I haue seide
 And hast oure vitaille faire in hem y-leide 3568
 And eke an axe to smyte þe cord a two
 Whan þat þe water commeþ þat we may goo
 And broke and hole on high vpon the gable
 Vnto þe gardyne ward ouer þe stable 3572
 þat we may frely passen forþ our waye
 Whan þat þe grete shoure is passed awaye
 Than shalt þou swymme as mery I vndertake
 As doþ þe wight duk aftere þe drake 3576
 þan wol I clepe how alisoñ. howe Iohn
 Be mery for þe flood wil passe anōn

And þowe wilt seyn heil Maister Nicholay
 Good morowe I see þe wele for it is day 3580
 And þan shal we be lordes al oure lif
 Of alle þe world as Noe and his wif
 But þat of oo þing I warne þe ful riȝt
 Be wel avised on þat ilk[e] nyȝt 3584
 þat we bene entred into þe shippes boord
 þat noon of vs ne speke not a word
 Ne Clepe ne crie but bene in his preire
 ffor it is goddis owe heeste dere 3588
 Thi wif and þou mote honge fer atwynne
 ffor þat bitwix ȝou shal be no synne
 No more in loking þan þer shal in dede [leaf 50, back]
 þis ordinaunce is seide so god þe spede 3592
 To morowe at nyght whan men bene all a-slepe
 Into our kneding trowes wil we crepe
 And sitten þer abidinge goddis grace
 Go nowe þi way I haue no lenger space 3596
 To make of þis no lenger sermonyng
 Men seyn þus sende þe wise *and* say no þinge
 þou art so wise it nededeþ þe not teche
 Go saue our lif and þat I þe biseche 3600
 ¶ This sely Carpenter goþ forþ his way
 fful oft he seide alas and wayleway
 And to his wif he tolde his priuete
 And she was war and knewe it bet þan he 3604
 What al þis queinte cast was for to saye
 But nathelees she feerde as she wold deye
 And saide alas go foorþ þi way anon
 Helpe vs to scape or we bene dede echoñ 3608
 I am þi trewe verry wedded wiff
 Go dere spouse and helpe to saue our lif
 Lo swich a grete þing is affectiōn
 Men may dye for ymaginaciōn 3612
 So depe may impression be take
 This sely Carpenter bygynneþ quake

Hym þenkeþ verrelly þat he may se
 Noe flood come walking^t as þe See 3616
 To drenchen alison his hony dere
 He wepeth weilleth and maketh sori chere
 He sigheþ wiþ mony a sory swough
 And goop and geteþ hym a kneding³ trougħ 3620
 And aftere a Tubbe and a kemelyne
 And prively he sent^t hem to his Inne
 And henge hem in þe roof in private
 His owne honde he made eke ledders þre 3624
 To clymben by þe ronges *and* þe stalkes
 Vnto þe tubbes hongyng^t in þe balkes/
 And hem vitailled boþ[e] trouze and tubbe [leaf 51]
 Wiþ brede. wiþ chese wiþ good ale in a Iubbe 3628
 Suffisinge riȝt^t ynowe as for a day
 But^t er he had made al þis aray
 He sent^t his knaue and eke his wenche alsoo
 Vpon his nede to London for to goo 3632
 ¶ And on þe Monday whan it drouze to nyȝt^t
 He shette his door wiþ-uten candel liȝt^t
 And dressed al þing^t as it shuld be
 And shortely clumben vp al þre 3636
 þei seiten stille wel a forlonge way
 Now *Pater noster* Clum seide Nicholay
 And Clum quod Iohn. and clum seide Alison
 This Carpenter seide his devociōn 3640
 And stille he sitte and biddeþ his preier^r
 Awaitinge on þe reyne if he it here
 The depe sleep for very bisynesse
 fille on þis Carpenter riȝt^t as I gesse 3644
 Aboute Curfewe tyme or litel more
 ffor travaile of his goost^t he groneþ sore
 But^t ofte he routed for his hede myslay
 Doun of þe ledder stalkeþ Nicholay 3648
 And Alison ful softe adoune she spedde
 Wiþ-uten wordes moo þei goñ to bedde

þer as þe Carpenter¹ is wonte to lye
 þer was þe reuel and þe melodye 3652
 And þus lith alison and Nicholas
 In busynes of myrth *and* of solas
 Til þat¹ þe belle of laudes gan to ryng
 And freres in þe chaunsel gan to singe 3656
 ¶ This Parisshe clerk þis amorous absoloun
 þat¹ is for loue alway so woo bygon
 Vpon þe Monday was at¹ Oseney
 Wip Company him to disport¹ *and* pley 3660
 And axed vpon a caas a Cloystre
 fful prively after Iohn þe Carpentere
 And he drowe hym apart¹ out¹ of þe chirche [leaf 51, back]
 And seide I note I seghe hym here not wirch 3664
 Sip saterday I trowe þat he be went¹
 ffor tymbre þer oure abbot¹ hap hym sent¹
 ffor he is wonte for tymbre forto goo
 And dwellen at¹ þe graunge a day or twoo 3668
 Or ellis he is at¹ his hous certeyn
 Wher þat¹ he be I can not¹ soþly seyn
 This absoloun ful Ioly was *and* lizt¹
 And þought¹ now is tyme to wake al nyght¹ 3672
 ffor sikerly I seghe hym not¹ stirenge
 Abouten his door sip day bygan to springe
 So mote I thrive I shal atte Cokes crowe
 fful priuely knocken at¹ his wyndowe 3676
 þat¹ stant¹ ful lowe vpon his bowres walle
 To Alison now wil I tellen alle
 My loue longyng¹ for þat¹ I shal not¹ mysse
 þat¹ at¹ þe leeste wey I shal hir¹ kisse 3680
 Som manere comfort¹ shal I haue *parfay*
 My moupe hap icched al þis longe day
 þat¹ is a signe of kissing¹ atte leest
 Al nyght¹ me met¹ eek I was at¹ a fest¹ 3684
 þer-for I wil goo selepe an hour or twey
 And al þe nyght¹ þan wil I wake *and* pley

Whan þat þe firste cok haþ crowe anoñ
 Vp stert' þis Ioly loue absoloñ 3688
 And hym araied gay and poynt' devise
 But' first' he sheweþ greyn *and* licorise
 To smellen swote er he had kempt' his here
 Vndere his tunge a trewe loue he bere 3692
 ffor þerby wende he to be gracious
 He roomeþ to the Carpenters hous
 And stille he stant' vndere þe shot' wyndowe
 Vnto his brest' it' raught' it' was so lowe 3696
 And soft' he kougheþ wiþ a semy soun
 What' do 3e hony combe swete alisoun
 My faire brid my swete Synamome [leaf 52]
 A-waikeþ lemman myne *and* spekeþ to me 3700
 fful litel þenken 3e vpon my woo
 þat' for 3oure loue I swete as I goo
 No wonder is þouze that' I swelt' or swete
 I mourne as doþ þe lombe after þe tete 3704
 I-wis leuman I haue such' loue-longyng'
 þat' like a turtel trewe is my mournynge
 I may not' eten no more þan a maide
 Go fro þe wyndowe Iak fool she seide 3708
 So god me spede it' wil not' be compame
 I loue anoþer and ellis I were to blame
 Wel bet' þan þe by Ihesu absolon
 Go forþ þi waie or I wil cast' a stoñ 3712
 And lat' me slepe a twenty deulway
 Alas quod absolon and weyloway
 That' trewe loue was euere so euel bysette
 Than kisse me siþ it' may be no bette 3716
 ffor Ihesus¹ loue and for þe loue of me [1 MS the]
 Wilt' þou þan go þi waie þer-with quod she
 3e Certes lemman quod þis absolon
 þan make þe redy quod she I come anoñ 3720
 [.
 *no gap in the MS.*]
 This absolon doune sette hym on his knees

And seid I am a lord at alle degrees 3724
 ffor aftere þis I hope þer cometh more
 Lemman þi grace and swete brid þine ore
 The wyndowe she vndop and þat' in haste
 Hauē doo quod she come of and spede þe faste 3728
 Lest' þat' our neigheboures þe espie
 þis absolon gan wipe his mouþ ful drie
 Derk was þe nyght' as piccñ or as þe cole
 And at' þe wyndowe out' she putt' her hole 3732
 And absolon him felle no bette ne wers
 But' wiþ his mouþe he kissed her naked ers
 fful sauourly er he was ware of þis
 Abak he sterte and þought' it' was amys 3736
 ffor wel he wist' a womman hap no berde [leaf 52, back]
 He felt' a þing' al roughe and longe yherede
 And seide fye alas what' hauē I doo
 Ti he quod she and clapt' þe wyndowe to/ 3740
 And absolon goþ forþ a forþer paas
 A beerd a beerd seide hende Nicholaas
 By goddes corpus þis goþ faire *and* well
 This sely absolon herde it' euery dell 3744
 And on his lippe he gan for anger bite
 And to him self he seide I shal þe quyte
 Who rubbeth nowē who freteth nowē his lippes
 Wiþ dust' wiþ sonde wiþ strawe wiþ cloþ *with* chippes/
 But' absolon that' seiþ ful oft' allas 3749
 My soule bitake I to Satlanas
 But' me were leuere þan al þis toune *quod* he
 Of þis despite a-wroken forto be 3752
 Allas quod he allas I ne had ybleynt'
 His hote love is cold *and* al yqueynt'
 ffor fro þat' tyme þat' he had kist' her ers
 Of paramours he sette not' a kers 3756
 ffor he was heled of his malady
 fful oft' paramours he gan defie
 And wepeþ as doþ a child' þat' is ybete
 A softe paas he went' ouer þe strete 3760

Vnto a smyth men clepen dann Gervase
 That in his forge smyteþ plowh harnase
 He sharpeth share and culter bisily
 This absolon knokkeþ al Esily 3764
 And seide vnto Gervays and þat anon
 What who art þou it am I absolon
 What Absolon. what cristes swete tre
 Why rise 3e so rathe .o benedicite 3768
 What eileþ 3ou som gay gerle god it wote
 Hap brouzt 3ou þus [up]on þe Vyritote
 By seynt Noet 3e whote wele what I mene
 þis Absolon ne rouzte not a bene ./ 3772
 Of al þis pley no word a3ein he gaf
 [leaf 53]
 He had more towe on his dystaf
 þan Gervais knewe and seide frende so dere
 þe hote Cultere in þe Chymeney here 3776
 As lene it me I haue þerwip to doñ
 I wil bringe it a-geyn ful sone
 Gervais answerd certes were it gold
 Or in a poke nobles al vntold 3780
 Thou shuldest haue as I am trewe smyth
 A cristes foo what wil 3e do perwith
 Therof quod absolon be as be may
 I shal tellen it þe to morowe day 3784
 And caught þe Culter by þe colde stele
 fful soft out atte door he gan stele
 And went vnto þe Carpenteres walle
 He koughed first and knokked þer wip aff 3788
 Vppon þe wyndowe right as he did eere
 þis Alison answerde who is þere
 þat knokkeþ so I waraunt it a þeef
 We nay quod he god wote my swete leef 3792
 I am þine absolon þine derlinge
 Of gold quod he I haue þe brouzt a ryng
 My modere 3aue it me so god me saue
 fful fyn it is and þerto wel ygraue 3796

This wil I zeuen þe if þowe me kisse
 þis Nicholas was risen forto pisse
 And þouȝt he wold amenden al þe Iape
 He shulde kisse his ers er þat he scape 3800
 And vp þe wyndowe did he hastely
 And out his ers he putteþ priuely
 Ouer þe buttoke to þe haunche boñ
 And þerwiþ spake þis clerk þis absolone 3804
 Speke swete bridde I not wher þou art
 þis Nicholas anoñ lete fleigh a fart
 As grete as it had bene a þonder dent
 þat wiþ þe stroke he was almost yblent 3808
 And he was redy wiþ his yren hote [leaf 53, back]
 And Nicholas in þe ers he smote
 Of goþ þe skyn an honde brede aboute
 þe hote culter brenned so his toute 3812
 And for þe smerte he wende forto deye
 As he were wood for woo he gan to crye
 Help water water helpe for goddys hert
 This Carpenter out of his slomber stert 3816
 And herde oon crien water as he were wode
 And þouȝt allas now commeth noes flode
 He sette hym vp wiþout[e] wordes moo
 And wiþ an axe he smote þe cord a two 3820
 And doun goþ alle he fonde neiþer to selle
 Brede nor Ale til he com to þe selle
 Vpon þe floor and ther a swoun he lay
 Vp stert hir Alison and Nicholay 3824
 And criden out and horowe in þe strete
 þe neighbours boþ smale and grete
 Ronnen forto gawren on þis man
 þat a swonn lay boþ pale and wan 3828
 ffor wiþ þat falle he brusten hap his arme
 But stonden he most vnto his owne harme
 ffor whan he spak he was anoñ born doun
 Wiþ hende Nicholas and alisoyn 3832

Thei tolde euery man þat he was wode
 He was agast^t so of þe Noes flode
 þorgh fantasie þat^t of his vanyte
 He had ybouȝt^t hym kneding^t tubbes þre 3836
 And had hem honged in þe roof aboue
 And þat^t he preied hym for goddys loue
 To sitten in þe roof par companye
 þe folk gan laughen at his fantasie 3840
 And to the Roof þei kepen and þei gape
 And turned al his harme vnto a Iape
 ffor what^t so þis Carpenter^t answerd^t
 It was for nouȝt no man his resoñ herd^t 3844
 Wiþ oþes grete he was so sworn a down [leaf 54]
 That^t he was holden woode in al þat^t town
 ffor euere clerk anoon riȝt helde wiþ oþer
 þei seide þe man is wood my leue broþer 3848
 And euere wight^t gan laughen at^t his strif
 Thus swyued was þe Carpenter[c]s wiff
 ffor al his keping^t and his Ielousie
 And Absalon haþ kissed her nethere ye 3852
 And Nicholas is scalded in his toute
 This tale is doñ and god saue al þe route.
 ¶ Here endep þe mylers tale.

[No break in the MS.]^r

¶ And þus bygynneþ þe Prologe of þe Reues tale ¶ Cap. 3^m.

Whan folk han laughen at þis nyce cas
 Of absolon and hende Nicholas 3856
 Dyuers folk dyuersly þei seide

But for þe more parte þei louze *and* pleide
 Ne at þis tale I seghe no man hym greue
 But it were only Oswold þe Reue 3860

Bycause he was of Carpenter[*e*]s craft
 A litel Ire in his herte laft

He gan to grucche and blamed it a lite
 So thick quod he ful wele quouþ I þe quyte 3864

Wiþ blering of a proude Millers ye

If þat me list to speke of Ribawdye
 But ik am olde me list not pley for age
 Gras tyme is done my foder is forage 3868

This white top writeþ myn olde 3eeres

Myn hert is al so mowled as myn heeres

But if I fare as doþ an open-ers

þat ilke fruyte is euer lenger þe wers 3872

Til it be roten in Mullok or in stre

We olde men I drede so fare we

Til we be roten can we not be ripe

We hopen alway while þe hert wil pipe 3876

ffor in our wille þer stikketh euer a naile

To haue an hoor heer and a grene taile

As haþ a leke for þough our myȝt be goñ [leaf 54, back]

Our wille desireþ foly euer in oon 3880

ffor whan we may not doñ þan wil we speke

ȝit in oure asshed olde is fire yreke

ffour gledes han we which I shal deuyse

Auauntinge lying. angre. and coueitise 3884

Thise four sparkles longeþ vnto elde

Our olde lymes may wel bene vnwelde

But wil ne shal not faille þat is soth
 And 3it haue I alwaye a coltes toth 3888
 As mony 3ere as it is passed henne
 Siþ þat my tap of lif byganne to renne
 ffor sikerly whan I was born anōn
 Dep drough þe tappe of lif and lete it goñ 3892
 And euere siþen haþ so þe tap yronne
 Til at almost al empty is þe tonne
 The strem of lif now droppeþ on þe chymbe
 þe sely tunge may wel rynge and chymbe 3896
 Of wrecchednesse þat passed is ful yore
 Wiþ olde folk saue dotage is no more
 ¶ Whan þat our ooste had herde þis sermonynge
 He gan to speke as lordly as a kinge 3900
 He seide what amunteþ al þis witte
 What shal we speke alday of holy writte
 The deuel made a Reue forto preche
 Or of a Souter shipman or a lecche 3904
 Say forþ þi take and tary not þe tyme
 Loo Depford and it is almost prime
 Lo Grenwich þat mony a shrewe is Inne
 It were hie tyme þi tale forto bygynne 3908
 ¶ Now Sirs quod þis Oswold þe Reue
 I prei 3ou al þat 3e 3ou not greue
 þou3e I answere and somdele sette hys houwe
 ffor leeful it is wiþ force. force of shouwe 3912
 This dronken Miller haþ ytolde vs here
 Hou þat bigiled was a Carpentere
 Perauenture in scorn for I am ooñ [leaf 55]
 And by 3oure leue I shal hym quyte anoñ 3916
 Rizt in his Cheerles teermes wil I speke
 I prei to god his nekke mot alto-breke
 He can wel in myn ye seen a stalk
 But in his owne he can not seen a balk 3920
 ¶ Thus endeþ þe Prologe of þe Reue

And here bygyrreþ þe Reeues tale

At Trumpington not^t fer fro Caunterbruge
 Ther goþ a broke and over þat^t a bruge
 Vpon þe whiche broke þer stonte a melle
 And þis is verrey soþ þat^t I þou telle 3924
 A Millere was þere dwelling^t mony a day
 As ony Pecok^t he was proude and gay
 Pipen he couþe an fisshen and nettes bete
 And turne Coppes *and* wel wrastel and shete 3928
 Ny by his belt^t he bare a longe panade
 And of a swerd^t ful trenchaunt was þe blade
 A Ioly popper bere he in his pouche
 Ther nas no man for perile durst^t hym touche 3932
 A Sheffield^t thwytel bere he in his hose
 Rounde was his face and camoyse was his nose
 As pilled as an ape was his sculle
 He was a market^t beter atte fulle 3936
 þer nas no wight^t þat durst^t hond on hym legge
 But^t if he swore he shuld anoñ abegge
 A theef he was forsoþ of corn and mele
 And þat^t a sleegh and vsaunt^t forto stele 3940
 His name was hoten deyneþouse Symkyn
 A wif he hadde comen of nobel kyn
 The person^e of þe toune her fader was
 Wiþ hir he ȝaue ful mony a panne of bras 3944
 ffor þat^t Symkyn shuld^t in his blood allie
 She was yfostred in a nonrie
 ffor Symkyn wold[e] no wif as he seide
 But^t she were wel ynorshed and a mayde 3948
 To Sauen his Astate of ȝemanrie [leaf 55, back]
 And she was proude and peert^t as is a pie
 A ful feire sight^t was it^t vpon hem twoo/
 On holy daies byforn hir^t wold he goo/ 3952

Wiþ his typet^t bounden aboute his hede
 And she come aftere in a gite of rede
 And Symkyn had[de] hosen of þe same
 þer durst no wiȝt^t clepe hur' but' dame 3956
 Was noon so hardy þat' went' by þe way
 þat' wiþ hir' dorst^t ones rage or play
 But' if he wold be slayn of Symkyn
 Wiþ panade and wiþ knyf or boydekyn 3960
 ffor Ielous folk ben perylous euer moo
 Algates þei wolde her wyues wenden soo
 And eke for she was somdeft smoterlich
 She was as digne as water in a dicȝ 3964
 As ful of hoker and of bismare
 Hire þouȝte þat' a lady shuld hir' spare
 What' for her kynrede and her nortelrie
 þat' she had lerned in þe Nonerie 3968
 A douȝtere had[de] þei bitwene hem twoo
 Of xx^{ti} ȝere wiþ-uten ony moo/
 Sauyng' a childe þat was of half ȝere age
 In cradel it' lay and was a propre page 3972
 This wenche thik and wel ygrowe was
 Wiþ Camoys nose and eyen as grey as glas
 Wiþ buttokes brode and brestes round *and* hie
 But' riȝt^t faire was hur' heor I wil not' lye 3976
 ¶ The person of þe toune for she was so faire
 In purpoos was to make hir' his aire
 Boþ of his Catell and of his messuage
 And straunge he made it' of hur' mariage 3980
 His purpoos was to bystowe hir' hie
 Into som worþi blood of Auncetrie
 ffor holy churches good most' be despended/
 On holy chirche blood þat' is descended/ 3984
 Therefore he wold his holy blood honoure [leaf 56]
 þoo þat' he holy church e shuld devoure
 Grete soken haþ þis mellere out' of doute
 With whete and malt of al þe londe aboute 3988

And namely *þer* was a grete colege
 Men clepen *þe* solere halle atte Cauntebrigge
 Ther was her whete and eke her malt ygrounde
 And on a day it happed in a stounde 3992
 Sik lay *þe* manciple on a maladie
 Mon wenden wishly *þat* he shuld[e] dye
 ffor whiche *þe* Millere stale boþ mele *and* corn
 An hundred tyme more þan byforñ 3996
 ffor *þer* byforne he stale but curteisly
 But nowe he was a þeef outrageously
 ffor which *þe* wardeyne chidde *and* made fare
 But þerof sette *þe* Millere not a tare 4000
 He craked booste and swore it was not soo/
 þan were þere yonge scolers two
 That dwelten in *þe* halle of which I seie
 Teestif þei were and lusty forto pleye 4004
 And only for her merth *and* reverye
 Vpon *þe* wardeyn bisily þei crie
 To ȝeue hem leue but a litel stounde
 To goo to melle and se her corn y-grounde 4008
 And hardely þei dorst lay her nekke
þe Millere shuld not stele hem half a pekke
 Of corn ne by sleight ne by force hem reue
 And at *þe* last *þe* wardeyn ȝaf hem leue 4012
 Iohñ hight *þat* oon an Aleyn hizt *þat* oper
 Of oon toun were þei born *þat* hight[e] strother
 fferre in *þe* norþe I can not telle where
 This Aleyn makeþ redy al his gere 4016
 And on an hors *þe* sak he cast an̄n
 fforþ goþ Aleyn *þe* Clerc and also Iohñ
 Wiþ good swerde and bokeler by her side
 Iohñ knewe *þe* way hym neded no gyde 4020
 And atte Mille *þe* Sak a doune he laith
 Alayn spake first alhaille Symonde in faip
 How fareþ þi fare douȝtere and þi wiff
 Aleyn welcome quod Symkyn be my liff 4024

[leaf 56, back]

And Iohn also how nowe what do 3e here
 By god quod Iohn Symond nede haþ no pere
 Hym byhoueþ serue hym self þat haþ no swayn
 Or ellis he is a fool as clerkes sayne 4028
 Our manciple I hope he wil be dede
 Swa worchen hym ay þe wanges in his hede
 And þerfore is I comen and eke Aleyn
 To Grynde our corn and carie hit hom ageyn 4032
 We prey 3ou spede vs hepen þat 3e may
 It shal be done quod Symkyn be my fay
 What wil 3e done while þat it is in hande
 By God riȝt by the hoper wil I stande 4036
 Quod Iohn and see how gates þe corn goþ Inne
 ȝit sagh I neuere be my fadere kynne
 How þat þe hoper waggeþ til and fraye
 Aleyn Answerd Iohan wiltowe swaye 4040
 þan wil I be byneþe by my croune
 And se howe gate the mele falles adoun
 Into þe trough þat shal be my disport
 Quod Iohn in faath I may bene of 3our sorte 4044
 I is as il a Miller as is 3e
 This Millere smyled of her nycete
 And þouȝt al þis is doñ but for a wile
 þei wene þat no man may hem bygyle 4048
 But by my þrift ȝit shal I blere her ye
 ffor al þe sleiȝt in her philosophie
 The more queynte Clerkes þat þei make
 þe more wil I stele whan I take 4052
 In stede of floure ȝit wil I ȝeue hem brenne
 The grettest clerkes ben not þe wisest men
 As whilom to þe wolf þus spake þe mare
 Of alle her arte counte I nouȝt a tare 4056
 Out at þe Dore he goþ ful priuely [leaf 57]
 Whan þat he seghe his tyme softely
 He lokeþ vp and doune til he haþ founde
 The Clerkes hors þer as he stode ybounde 4060

Behinde þe mylle vndere a leueselle
 And to þe hors he goþ hym faire and welle
 He strepeþ of þe bridel riȝt anōn
 And whan þe hors is louse he gynneþ to goñ 4064
 Toward þe fenne where wilde Mares renne
 And forþe-wiþ þorgh þikke and þorgh þenne
 This Mellere goþ ageyn no word he seide
 But doþ his note and wiþ þise clerkes pleide 4068
 Til þat her corn was faire and welle ygrounde
 And whan þe mele is sakked and ybounde
 This Iohn goþ oute and fonde her hors away
 And gan to crie harowe and walowway 4072
 Our hors is lost aleyñ for goddis banes/
 Steppe on þi fete come of man / al at anes
 Allas our wardeyn haþ our palfray lorñ
 This Aleyn forgate boþ mele and corñ 4076
 Al was out of his mynde his husbondrie
 What whilk way is he goñ he gan to crie
 þe wif come lepinge inward at a renne
 She seide alas ȝoure hors goþ to þe fenne 4080
 With wilde mares as fast as he may goo
 Vnþonke come on his honde þat bonde hym soo/
 And he þat better shuld haue knette þe reyn
 Allas quod Iohn Aleyn for cristes peyn 4084
 Lay doune þi swerde and I wil myn alswaa
 I is ful swift god wate as is a Raas
 By goddes hert he shal not scape vs bathe
 Whi ne had þou putte þe Capel in þe lathe 4088
 Ilhaile by god Aleyn þou is a foune
 Thise sely clerkes han ful fast yronne
 Touard þe fenne boþen aleyñ an eke Iohn
 And whan þe Miller segþ þat þei were goñ 4092
 He half a busshel of her floure haþ take [leaf 57, back]
 And bad his wif go knede it in a cake
 And seide I trowe þe clerkes weren a-ferde
 ȝit kan a Miller make a clerkes beerde 4096

ffor al her arte 3it^t lat^t hem goñ her way
 Lo wher þei gon 3e lat^t þe children play
 They gete him not^t so lightly by my croun
 Thise sely clerkes rennen vp and doun 4100
 With kepe. kepe. stonde. stonde. Iossa warderere
 Ga qwistel 3ou I shal kepe hym here
 But^t shortely til it^t was verrey ny3t
 þei couþe not^t þoughe þei did al her my3t^t 4104
 þeire Capel cauche he ranne alway so fast^t
 Til in a dicche þei caught^t him at þe last^t
 Wery and wete as beestis in þe reyne
 Commeþ sely Iohn and wiþ hym commeþ aleyñ 4108
 Allas quod Iohn þe day þat^t I was born
 Nowe are we dryuen til heþing^t *and* to scorn
 Our corn is stolle men wil vs foles calle
 Boþ þe wardeyn and our felawes alle 4112
 And namely þe Meller^t weylawaye
 þus pleyneþ Iohn as he goþ by þe waye
 Toward^t the Melle and baiard^t in his honde
 The Millere sitting^t by þe fire he fonde 4116
 ffor it^t was nyght^t and ferþer myght^t he nou3t^t
 But^t for þe loue of god þei hym bisou3t^t
 Of harborowe and of ease as for her penye
 þe Millere seide a3ein if þer be enye 4120
 Such^t as it^t is 3ete shal 3e haue 3oure parte
 Myn hous is streite but^t 3e han lerned arte
 3e can by argumente make a place
 A myle brode of xx^{ti} fete of space 4124
 Lat^t se nowe if þis place may suffise
 Or make it rowmer wiþ speche as is 3our gise
 Now Symond^t seide þis Iohn be seynt^t Cutberd^t
 Ay is þou mery . and þat is faire answerde 4128
 I haue herde seye men shal taken of two pingges [leaf 58]
 Such^t as he fint^t or take such^t as he bringes
 But specially I prey þee hooste dere
 Gete vs some mete and drink and make vs chere 4132

And we wil paien trewly atte fulle
 Wiþ empty hondes men may not haukes tulle
 Lo here our siluer redy forto spende
 This Mellere to þe toune his douzter sende 4136
 ffor Ale and brede and rosted hem a goos
 And bonde her hors for he shuld no more go loos
 And in his owne chambre he made a bedde
 Wiþ shetes and wiþ chalons faire yspredde 4140
 Nouzt from his owne bedde .x. fete or xij.
 His doughter had a bed al by hir selue
 Riȝt in þe same chambre by *and* by
 It myghte be no bette and cause why 4144
 þer was no rommer herborowe in þe place
 þei soupen and þei speken hem to solace
 And drynken euere stronge ale atte beste
 About mydnyzt went þei to reste 4148
 Wel haþ þis Mellere vernyssed his hede
 fful pale he was for-dronken and not rede
 He zeskeþ and he spekeþ þorgh þe nose
 As he ware in þe quakke or on þe pose 4152
 To bedde he goþ and wiþ hym goþ his wif
 As eny Iaye he light was and Iolif
 So was her Ioly whistel wel ywette
 þe Cradel at her beddis fete is ysette 4156
 To Rokken and to zeue þe child to souke
 And whan þat drunken was al in þe crouke
 To bedde went þe doughter riȝt anōn
 To bedde goþ Aleyn and also Ioħn 4160
 þer nas no more hem neded no dwale
 This Mellere haþ so wisly bebbed ale
 þat as an hors he snortep. in his slepe
 Ne of his tale behynde he toke no kepe 4164
 His wif bare him a Burdoñ a ful stronge
 Men myght here þe routing þens a forlonge
 The wenche routeþ eek *par* companye
 Aleyn þe Clerk þat herd þis melodye 4168

[leaf 53, back]

He pouked on Iohn and seide slepestowe
 Herde þou euere sclike a sang^r or nowe
 Lo sclike a couplinge is ytwix hem alle
 A wilde fire on her bodies falle 4172
 Who herkened euere sclike a ferly þinge
 3e þei shal haue þe floure of euel endinge
 This lange nyzt^r þer tydes men no reste
 But^r 3it^r na fors al shal be for þe beste 4176
 ffor Iohn seide he as euere mote I þriue
 If þat^r I may 3on wenche þan wil I swyue
 Some esement^r haþ lawe shapen vs
 ffor Iohn þer is a lawe þat^r seiþ þus 4180
 That^r if a man in oon point^r be agreued
 That^r in anoþer he shal be releued
 Our corn is stollen soþly it^r is no nay
 And we han had an euel fit to day 4184
 And syn I shal haue no amendement^r
 Ageyn my losse I wil haue esement^r
 By goddes saule it^r sal na noþer be
 þis Iohn answerde Aleyn awise þe 4188
 The Mellere is a perilous man he seide
 And if þat^r he out^r of his selepe abreide
 He myghte don vs boþ a vylenye
 Aleyn answerd^r I counte hym not^r a flye 4192
 And vp he rist^r and by þe wenche he crepte
 This wenche lay vprizt^r and faste slepte
 Til he so nygh was er she myzte spie
 þat^r it^r had bene to late forto crie 4196
 And shortely for to seiþ þei were at^r oñ
 Nowe pleye Alayn for I wil speke of Iohn
 This Iohn lith stille a forlonge way or two
 And to hym self he makeþ wamenting^r and woo 4200
 Allas quod he þis is a wikke Iape [leaf 59]
 Now may I seiþ þat^r I is but^r an ape
 3it^r haþ my felawe somewhat^r for his harme
 He haþ þe mellers douzter in his arme 4204

He Auntreþ hym and haþ his nedes spedde
 And I ly as a draf sak in my bedde
 And whan þis Iape is tolde anoþer day
 I shal be holde a daff a cokenay 4208
 I wil arise and aunter be my fath
 Vnhardy is vnsely þus men satli
 And vp he roos and softely he went
 Vnto þe Cradel and in his arme hit hent 4212
 And bare it soft vntil his beddes fete
 Sone aftere þe wif her rowting lete
 And gan to wake and went her out to pisse
 And come agein and gan her cradel mysse 4216
 And groped here and þere but she foond noon/
 Allas quod she I had almost mysgoñ
 I had almost go to þe clerkes bedde
 Ey benedicite þan had I foule yspedde 4220
 And forþ she goþ til she þe cradel fonde
 She gropeþ alway forþer wiþ her honde
 And fond þe bed and þouȝt nouȝt but of good
 By cause þat þe cradel by it stode 4224
 And nyste wher she was for it was derk
 But faire and wel she crepte in to þe clerk
 And lith ful stille and wolde haue kauȝt a slepe
 Wiþ-In a while þis Iohñ þe clerk vp lepe 4228
 And on þis good[e] wif hee leiþ ful sore
 So mery a fitte ne had she not ful ȝore
 And prikeþ harde and depe as he ware¹ madde [P MS]
 þis Ioly lif han þise two clerkes ladde 4232
 To þat þe iij. coke bygan to singe
 Aleyn wexe wery. in þe daw[e]nyng
 ffor he had swonken al þe longe nyȝt
 And seide fare wel malyñ sweete wiȝt 4236
 The day is come I may no lenger byde [leaf 59, back]
 But euermo where so I go or ride
 I am þine owne clerk so haue I sele
 Now dere lemman quod she go fare wele 4240

But er þou goo. on þinge I wil þe telle
 Whhan þat þow wendest homward by þe melle
 Right at þe entre of þe door be-hinde
 Thow shalt a Cake of half a busshel fynde 4244
 That was ymaked of þine owne mele
 Which þat I helpe my Sire forto stele
 And good lemman god þe saue and kepe
 And wiþ þat word almost she gan to wepe 4248
 Aleyn vprist and þouzt er þat it dawe
 I wol go crepen in by my felawe
 And fonde þe cradel wiþ his honde anoñ
 By god þought he alwrong / I haue mysgoñ 4252
 Myn hede is toty of my swynk to nyght
 þat makeþ me þat I go not aright
 I wote wele by þe cradel I haue mysgo
 Here lith þe meller' and his wif also 4256
 And forþ he goþ on twenty delway
 Vnto þe bedde þer as þe meller' lay
 He wende haue copen by his felawe Ioñ
 And by þe Meller' in he crept anoñ 4260
 And kaught him by þe nek and soft he spake
 And seide þou Ioñ þou swyneshede awake
 Of Cristes saule and here a noble game
 ffor by þat lord þat called is seint Iame 4264
 As I haue pries in þis shorte nyzt
 Swyved þe Mellers douzter' bolt vprist
 Whilst þow hast as a Coward beñ agast
 Ye fals harlot quod þe Mellere hast 4268
 A fals traitour. fals clerk quod he
 þow shalt be dede by goddes dignyte
 Who durste be so bolde to disparage
 My douzter þat is come of swich lynage 4272
 And by þe þrote bolle he kauzt aleyn
 [leaf 60]
 And he him hent dispitously ageyn
 And on þe nose he smote hym with his fist
 Doune ranne þe bloody streme vpon his brist 4276

And in þe floor wiþ nose and moup to-broke
 þei walowen as don two pigges in a poke
 And vp þei goon and doune anoñ
 Till þat þe Mellere spurned at a stoñ 4280
 And downe he felle bakward vpon his wiff
 þat wist no þinge of þis nyce striff
 ffor she was falle a slepe a litel wizt
 Wiþ Iohn þe clerk þat waked had al nyzt 4284
 And wiþ þe falle out of her slepe she braide
 Help holy crosse of bromholm she saide
 In manus tuas lorde to þe I calle
 Awake Symond þe feend is on me falle 4288
 Myn hert is broken help I ne am but dede
 þere lith vpon my wombe *and* on myn hede
 Helpe Symkyn for þise fals clerkes fizt
 This Iohn stert vp as fast as euere he myzt 4292
 And grasped by þe walles to and fro
 To fynden a staf and she stert vp also
 And knewe þe Eisters bet þan did Iohn
 And by þe walle she fonde a staf anōn 4296
 And segñ a litel shymering of a lizt
 ffor at an hole in shone þe mone brizt
 And by þat lizt she segñ hem boþ[e] two
 But sikerly she nyste who was who 4300
 But as she seegh a white þinge in her eye
 And whan she gan þis white þing aspie
 She wende þe Clerk had wered a volipere
 And wiþ þe staf she drough ay ner and nere 4304
 And wende han hitte þis Aleyn atte fulle
 And smote þe Mylere on þe pyled skulle
 þat down he goth *and* cried harowe I dye
 Thise Clerkes bette hym wel and lete hym lye 4308
 And Greieþ hem and toke her hors anoñ [leaf 60, back]
 And eke her/ mele and on her way þei gōn
 And at the Melle zit þei toke her Cake
 Of half a busshel floure ful wel ybake 4312

Thus is þe proude Mellere wel ybete
 And hath ylost þe grynding of þe whete
 And paide for þe soper euery dell
 Of aleyn and of Iohn þat bette hym well 4316
 His wiff is swyued and his douȝtere als
 Lo such it is a Miller to be fals
 And þerfor þis prouerbe is seide ful soth
 Hym ther not wene wele þat euel doth 4320
 A Gilour shal hym self begiled be
 And god þat sitteþ hegh in mageste
 Saue al þe company grete and smale
 Thus haue I quytte þe Meller in my tale 4324
 ¶ Thus Endeth þe Reues Tale

[No break in the MS.]

And here bygynneþ þe Cokes tale

The Coke of london while þe Reue spak ¶ The Prologe
 ffor Ioye him þouȝt he clawed hym on þe bak'
 Ha. ha. quod he for cristes passioñ
 This Millere haþ a sharpe conclusioñ 4328
 Vpon his argument of harbigage
 Wel seide Salomon in his langage
 Ne bringe not euery man into þine hous
 ffor herbowringe by nyght is perilous 4332
 Wel ouȝt a man avised forto be
 Whoom þat he brouȝt into his pryvete
 I prey to god so ȝeue me sorowe and care
 If euer siþen I hight hogge of ware 4336
 Herd I Meller better ysette a werke
 He had a Iape of malice in þe derke
 And þerfor if ȝe vouche sauþ to here 4340
 But god forbede þat we stynt heere 4339
 A tale of me þat am a poor man
 I wil ȝou telle as wel as euer I can
 A litel Iape þat felle in our Cite [leaf 61]
 Our hooste answerd and seide I graunte it þe 4344
 Now telle on Rogger and loke þat it be good
 ffor mony a paast hast þou laten blood
 And mony a Iak of Douer hast þou sold
 þat haþ be twies hoote and twies cold 4348
 Of mony a pilgryme hast þou cristes curs
 ffor of þi-Persely ȝit fare þei þe wors
 þat þei han eten wiþ þi stobel goos
 ffor in þi shoppe is mony a flee loos 4352
 Now telle on gentil Rogger by þi name
 But ȝit I prei þe be not wroþ for game
 A man may say ful soþ in game and play
 þow seist ful soþ quod Rogger be my fay 4356

But^t soþ play quade play as þe flemmyng^t saiþ
 And þerfore henry balyf by þi feiþ
 Be þow not^t wroþ er we departen here
 þoughe þat^t my tale be of an ostylere 4360
 But^t napelees I wil not^t tellen it^t ȝit^t
 But^t er we part^t I-wis þou shalt^t be quy^t
 And þerwiþ al [he] lough and made chere
 And saide his tale as ȝe shal after here 4364
 þus endeþ þe prologe of þe cokes talè

[*No break in the MS.*]

And here bygynneþ þe Cokes tale

¶ The Cokes Tale.

A Prentis whilom dwelled in our' Cite
 And of a craft' of vitalers was he
 Gailard' he was as gold-fynch' in þe shawe
 Broun as þe bery. a propre short felawe 4368
 Wiþ lockes blake ykempt' ful fetisly
 Daunce he couþe so wel and Iolily
 þat' he was cleped Perkyn reveilour'
 He was as ful of loue and paramour 4372
 As is þe hyve ful of hony swete
 Wel was þe wenche wiþ him myȝt' mete
 And every Bridale wold' he sing' and hoppe
 He loued bette þe Tauern þan þe shoppe 4376
 ffor whan þer eny ridynge was in chepe [leaf 61, back]
 Out' of þe Shoppe þidere wold' he lepe
 Til þat' he had al þe sizt' yseyñ
 And daunsed wel wold he not' come ageyñ 4380
 And gader' hym a mayne of his sort'
 To hoppe and synge and make such' disport'
 And þer þei setten steuen forto mete
 To pleyn at' þe dis in such a strete 4384
 ffor in þe toune nas þer no prentys
 þat' fairrer couþe cast' a peire of dys
 þan perkyn couþe and þerto he was free
 Of his dispence in place of pryvete 4388
 That' fonde his maister wel in his chaffare
 ffor oft' tymes he fonde his boxe ful bare
 ffor sikerly a prentise Reveilour'
 þat' haunteþ dis ryot' and paramour 4392
 His maister' shulde in his shop aby
 Al haue he not' part' of þe mynstralcie
 ffor þeft and riot' þei ben conuertible
 Al conne he play on gitern or rubible 4396

Reuel and troupe as in a lough degre
 þei ben ful wroþ alday as men may see
 þis Ioly Prentis wiþ his maister bode
 Til he were nygh out of his prentisehode 4400
 Al were he snybbed erly or late
 And somtyme ladde wiþ revel to Newgate
 But atte last his maister hym bypouzte
 Vpon a day whan he his paper souzte 4404
 Of a prouerd þat seiþ þis same word
 Wel bette is roten appel out of horde
 þan þat it rote al þe remenaunte
 So fareþ it by a ryotous seruaunte 4408
 It is moche lasse harme to lat hym passe
 þan he sheed alle þe seruauntes in þe place
 Therfor his maister 3aue hym a quyttaunce
 And bad hym goo wiþ sorowe and meschaunce 4412
 And þus þis prentise had his leue .
 [leaf 62]
 Now lat him riot al þe nyzt or leue
 And for þer is no þeef wiþ-out a louke
 þat helpeþ hym to waasten or to souke 4416
 Of þat he bribe can or borowe may
 Anon he sent his bedde and his aray
 Vnto a conper of his owne sort
 þat loued dys [and] reuel and disport 4420
 And had a wif þat helde for countenaunce
 A Shop and swyued for her sustenaunce

[No break in the MS.]

APPENDIX TO GROUP A.

[THE SPURIOUS TALE OF GAMELYN.]

[*Spurious Link.*]

Butt here-of I wil pas as nowe
 And of yonge Gamelyn I wil telle 3ou. 2

[*Tale.*]

Lipes *and* listnep and harknep a-ri3t ¶ þe tale of yonge
 And 3e shul here of a doughty kny3t Gamelyne
 Sir Iohn of boundes was his name
 He coude of Norture and of mochel game 4
 Thre sones þe knyght had *and* wiþ his body he wan
 The eldest was a moche schrewe and sone bygan
 His breþer loued wel her fader *and* of him were agast
 þe eldest deserued his faders curs *and* had it atte last 8
 þe good knyght his fadere lyued so yore
 þat deþ was comen to hym . and handled hym ful sore
 þe Good knyght cared sore . sik þer he lay
 How his children shuld lyuen after his day 12
 He had ben wide where . butt non husbonde he was
 Al þe londe þat he had it was purchas/
 ffayn he wold it were dressed amongst hem alle
 That eche of hem had his parte as it my3t falle 16
 þoo sente he in to contrey after wise kny3tes
 To helpen delen his londres *and* dresen hem to ri3tes
 He sent hem word by letters *þei* shul hie blyve
 Yf þei wolk speke wiþ hym *whilst* he was a lyve 20

Whan þe knyȝtes harden sik þat he lay
 Had þei no rest ne þer' : nyȝt ne day
 Til þei come to hym : þer he lay stille
 On his deþes bedde/ to abide goddys wille 24
 Than seide þe good knyght seke þer he lay (leaf 62, back)
 Lordes I ȝou warne for soþ wiþ-out nay
 I may no lenger lyuen here in þis stounde
 ffor þorgh goddis wille : deþ droueþ me to grounde 28
 þer nas noon of hem alle : þat herd hym ariȝt
 þat þei ne had routh : of þat ilke knyȝt
 And seide sir' for goddes loue : dismay ȝou nouȝt
 God may doñ boote of bale : þat is now ywrouȝt 32
 þan speke þe good knyȝt : sik' þer he lay
 Boote of bale god may sende : I wote it is no nay
 But I bisecche ȝou knyȝtes for þe loue of me
 Goþ and dresseþ my londes : among' my sones þre 36
 And for þe loue of god deleþ not amys
 And forgeteþ not Gamelyne : my ȝong' sonne þat is/
 Takeþ hede to þat oon as wel as to þat oþere
 Seelde ȝe seen eny hier . helpen his broþere 40
 þoo lete þei þe knyght lyen : þat was not in hele
 And wenten into counseil his londes forto dele
 Forto delen hem alle to oñ : þat was her þouȝt
 And for Gamelyn was ȝongest he shuld haue nouȝt 44
 Alȝ þe londe þat þer was : þei dalten it in two
 And lete Gamelyne þe ȝonge : without londe goo
 And eche of hem seide to other ful loude
 His breþeren myȝt ȝeue him londe whan he good cowde 48
 And whan þei had deled þe londe at her wille
 þei comen to þe knyght . þer he lay stille
 And tolde him anon : how þei had wrouȝt
 And þe knyght þere he laye liked it riȝt nouȝt 52
 ¶ Than seide þe knyȝt : be seint Martyne
 For al þat ȝe han done : ȝit is the londe myne
 ffor goddis loue neighbours . stondeþ alle stille
 And I wil delen my londe : after myn owne wille 56

Iohā myne eldest' sone' shal haue plowes fyve
 þat' was my faders heritage' : whan he was alyve
 And my myddelest' sone .v. plowes of londe
 þat' I halpe forto gete *with* my riȝt' honde 60
 And al myñ opere purchase of londes *and* ledes [leaf 63]
 þat' I biqueþe Gamelyñ. and al my good stedes
 And I biseche ȝou good men þat' lawe conne of londe
 For Gamelynes loue' : þat' my quest' stonde 64
 Thus dalt' þe knyȝt'. his londe by his day
 Riȝt' on his dep' bed sik þer he lay
 And sone afterward he lay stoon stille
 And deide whan tyme come' : as it' was cristes wille 68
 Anoon as he was dede and vnder gras graue
 Sone þ^e elder broþer' : giled þe ȝonge knaue
 He toke into his honde his londe *and* his lede
 And Gamelyne him seluen to cloþe *and* to fede 72
 He cloþed him and fedde him/ euell' *and* eke wrothe
 And lete his londes forfare' : and his houses boþe
 His Parkes and his wodes' : and did no þing' welle
 And siþen he it' abouȝt' on his owne felle 76
 So longe was Gamelyne in his broþers halle
 ffor þe strengest' of good wiȝt' þei douted hym alle
 þer was noon þer-Inne neiþer ȝonge ne olde
 þat' wold' wrethe Gamelyñ. were he neuer so bolde 80
 Gamelyne stood on a day' : in his broþeres ȝerde
 And byganne wiþ his hond/ to handel his berde
 He þouȝt' on his landes þat' lay vnsowe
 And his fare okes þat' doune were ydrawe 84
 His Parkes were broken/ and his deer reued
 Of alle his good stedes/ noon was hym byleued
 His hous were vnhilld/ *and* ful euell' diȝt'
 Tho þouȝt' Gamelyne/ it' went' not' ariȝt' 88
 ¶ Afterward' come his broþer walking' þare
 And seide to Gamelyñ. is our mete ȝare
 Tho wrathed him Gamelyñ/ *and* swore by goddys boke
 þow shalt' go bake þi self/ I wil not' be þi coke 92

What' broþer Gamelyne howe answerst þou nowe
 þou spekest' neuere such a word' as þou dost nowe
 By feiþe seide Gamelyn' : now me þenkeþ nede
 Of al þe harmes þat' I haue : I toke neuere 3it' hede . 96
 My parkes bene broken : *and* my dere reued [leaf 63, back]
 Of myn armes ne my stedes : nou3t' is byleued
 Aft' þat' my fader' me byquaþe : al goþ to shame
 And þerfor haue þou goddes curs : broþere be þi name 100
 þan spake his broþer þat' rape was and rees
 Stond stille Gadlynge and holde þi pees
 Thou shalt' be fayn to haue : þi mete *and* þi wede
 What' spekest' þow gadeling' . of londe or of lede 104
 Than seide Gamelyn' : þe child so 3ing'
 Cristes curs mote he haue : þat' me clepeth Gadelinge
 I am no wors Gadeling' : ne no wors wizt'
 But' born of a lady and gete of a kny3t' 108
 Ne dorst' he not' to Gamelyn' neuere a foot' goo
 But' cleped to hym his men : and seide to hem þoo/
 Goþ and betep þis boye and reueþ hym his witte
 And lat' him lerne anoþer tyme : to answer' me bette 112
 Than seide þe Child' 3onge Gamelyn'
 Cristes curs mote þou haue : broþer art þou myn
 And if I shal algates be beten an' n
 Cristes curs mote þou haue : but þou be þat' oñ 116
 And anon his broþer in þat' grete hete
 Made his men to fette staues Gamelyn to bete
 Whan euery of hem had a staf ynommen
 Gamelyn was werre . whan he segh hem commen 120
 Whan Gamelyne segh hem commen . he loked ouer aft'
 And was ware of a pestel : stode vnder þe waft'
 Gamelyn was lizt' and þider' gan he lepe
 And droof alle his broþeres men rizt' sone on an hepe 124
 And loked as a wilde lyon . and leide on good wone
 And whan his broþer segh þat' : he byganne to goñ
 He fley vp into a loft' : and shette þe door fast'
 þus Gamelyn wip his pestel . made hem al a-gast' 128

Some for Gamelyns loue. *and* some for eye
 Alle þei droughen hem to halues whan he gan to pleye
 ¶ What now seide Gamelyn : euel mote ȝe the
 Wil ȝe bygynne contecte : and so sone flee 132
 Gamelyn souȝt his broþer : whider he was flowe [leaf 64]
 And seghe where he loked out a wyndowe
 Broþere seide Gamelyn. come a litel nere
 And I wil teche þe a play at þe bokelere 136
 His broþere him ansuerde. *and* seide by seint Richere
 þe while þat pestel is in pine honde. I wil come no nere
 Broþer I wil make þi pees : I swer by cristes oore
 Cast away þe pestel. and wreþe þe no more 140
 I most nede seide Gamelyn wreþ me at onys
 ffor þou wold make þi men. to breke my bonys
 Ne had I hadde mayn *and* myȝt in myn armes
 To han hem fro me. þei wold haue doñ me harmes 144
 Gamelyn seide his broþer be þou not wroth
 Forto sene þe han harme. me were riȝt loth
 I ne did it not broþer but for a fendinge
 ffor to loken wher þou art stronge and art so ȝenge 148
 Come a doune þan to me and graunt me my bone
 Of oon þing I wil þe axe and we shal sauȝt sone
 Doune þan come his broþer þat fikel was *and* felle
 And was swiþ sore a-feerd of þe pestelle 152
 He seide broþer Gamelyn axe me þi bone
 And loke þou me blame but I it graunte sone
 þan seide Gamelyn broþer I-wys
 And we shul be at oñ. þou most graunte me this 156
 Alþ þat my fader me by-quaþ. whilst he was alyue
 þow most do me it haue. if we shul not strive
 þat shalt þou haue Gamelyn I swere bi cristes oore.
 Al þat þi fadere þe by-quaþe. þough þou wold haue more
 Thy londe þat lith ley. wel it shal be sawe 161
 And pine houses reised vp þat bene leide ful lawe
 Thus seide þe knyght. to gamelyn wiþ mouþe
 And þouȝt on falsnes as he wel couþe 164

þe knyȝt^t þouȝt^t on tresoñ. and gamelyn anoñ
 And wente *and* kissed his broþer *and* whan þei were at oñ
 Alas yonge Gamelyn no þing^t he ne wist
 Wiþ such fals tresoñ. his broþer him kist^t 168
 Lyþeneth and listeneþ and holdeþ *ȝour* tonge [leaf 64, back]
 And ȝe shul here talking^t of Gamelyn þe ȝonge
 ¶ Ther was þere bisiden cride a wrastelinge
 And þerfore þer was sette a ramme *and* a ringe 172
 And Gamelyn was in wille to wende þerto/
 fforto preuen his myȝt^t what^t he coude doo
 Broþere seide Gamelyn by seint^t Richere
 þow most^t lene me to nyȝt^t a litel coursere 176
 That^t is fresshe fro þe spore on for to ride
 I most^t on an erand^t a litel here beside
 By god seide his broþer/ of stedes in my stalle
 Goo and chese þe the best^t spare noñ of hem alle 180
 Of stedes and of coursers þat^t stoden hem byside
 And telle me good broþer whider þou wilt ride
 Here beside broþer is cried a wrastelinge
 And þerfore shal be sette a ram *and* a ringe 184
 Moche worchip it were broþere to vs alle
 Might^t I þe ram *and* þe ring^t bring^t home to þis halle
 A stede ther was sadeled smertly an skete
 Gamelyn did a peire spores fast^t on his fete 188
 He sette his foote in þe stirop þe stede he bistrode
 And towardes þe wrasteling^t þe yong^t childe rode
 ¶ Whan Gamelyn þe ȝonge was riden out^t atte gate
 þe fals knyȝt^t his broþer loket it^t after^t þate 192
 And bysouȝt^t Ihesu crist^t þat^t is heuene kinge
 He myght^t breke his necke in þe wrestelinge
 As sone as Gamelyn come þer þe place was
 He light^t doune of his stede *and* stood on þe gras 196
 And þer he herde a frankeleyn weiloway singe
 And by-gonne bitterly his hondes for to wringe
 Good man seide Gamelyn : whi mast þou þis fare
 Is þer no man þat^t may. ȝou helpen out^t of care 200

Allas seide þis frankeleyn þat euere was I bore
 ffor twey stalworþ sones ! I wene þat I haue lore
 A champion is in þe place. þat haþ wrouzt me sorowe
 ffor he haþ sclayn my two sones. but 3if god hem borowe
 I wil 3eue x. li. by Ihesu crist *and* more [leaf 65]
 Wiþ þe nones I fonde a man woldt handel hym sore
 Good man seide Gamelyn wilt þou wele doñ
 Holde my hors þe whiles my man ! drowe of my shoñ 208
 And helpe my man to kepe/ my cloþes *and* my stede
 And I wil to place goñ. to loke if I may spede
 By god seide þe ffrankeleyn it shal be doñ
 I wil my self be þi man to drowe of þi shoñ 212
 And wende þou into place Ihesu crist þe spede
 And drede not of þi cloþes. ne of þi good stede
 Bare-foot and vngirt. Gamelyn Inne came
 Alle þat were in þe place. hede of him name 216
 Howe he durst auenture him to doñ his myzt
 þat was so doghty a champiõn in wrasteling *and* in fzt
 Vp stert þe Champion rapely anõn
 And toward yong Gamelyn byganne to gõn 220
 And seide who is þi fadere *and* who is þi sire
 ffor sothe þou art a grete fool þat thou come hire
 Gamelyn answerd þe Champiõn þo
 Thowe knewe wel my fadere while he myzt goo 224
 þe whiles he was alyue by seynt Martyn
 Sir Iohñ of Boundes was his name *and* I am Gamelyn
 ¶ ffelawe seide þe Champiõn so mote I þriue
 I knewe wel þi fadere þe whiles he was alyue 228
 And þi silf Gamelyn I wil þat þou it here
 While þou were a 3ong boy. a moçh shrewe þou were
 Than seide Gamelyn and swore by cristes ore
 Now I am older wexe þou shalt finde me a more 232
 By god seide þe Champion welcome mote þou be
 Come þow onys in my honde. þou shalt neuere the
 It was wel wiþ-in þe nyzt *and* þe mone shone
 Whan Gamelyn and þe Champiõn to-gider gon gone 236

The Champion cast^t turnes to Gamelyn þat was prest^t
 And Gamelyn stode and bad hym done his best^t
 Than seide Gamelyn to þe Champioun
 þowe art^t fast^t aboute to bringe me adoun 240
 Now I haue proued mony turnes of þine [leaf 65, back]
 Thow most^t he seide oon or ij. of myne
 Gamelyn to þe Champion zede smertely anōn
 Of alle þe turnes þat^t he couþe he shewed hym but oñ
 And cast^t him on þe list^t side. þat þre ribbes to-brake 245
 And þerto his owne arme þat^t 3af a grete crake
 Than seide Gamelyn smertly anōn
 Shal it^t bihold^t for a cast^t or ellis for nōn 248
 By god seide þe Champion whedere it^t bee
 He þat^t comþeþ ones in þi honde shal he neuere the
 ¶ Than seide þe frankeley þat had þe sones þere
 Blessed be þou Gamelyn þat^t euere þou bore were 252
 The ffrankleyn seide to þe Champion on hym stode hym
 This is 3onge Gamelyn þat^t tauzt/ þe þis pleye [noñ eye
 A3ein answerd þe Champion. þat^t likeþ no þing^t wel
 He is alþer maister and his pley is ri3t^t felt 256
 Sipeñ y wrasteled first^t it^t is goon 3ore
 But^t I was neuer^t in my lif handeled so sore
 Gamelyn stode in þe place anon wiþ-out^t serk^t
 And seide 3if þer be moo lat^t hem come to werk^t 260
 The Champion þat^t pynded hym to worch sore
 It^t semeþ by his countenaunce þat^t he wil no more
 Gamelyin in þe place stood stille as stone
 ffor to abide wrastelinge but^t þer come nonē 264
 þer was noon wiþ gamelyn þat wold wrastel more
 ffor he handeled the Champion so wonderly sore
 Two gentile men þat 3emed þe place
 Come to Gamelyin god 3eue hym good grace 268
 And seide to hym do on · þi hosen and þi shoone
 ffor soþ at^t þis tyme þis fare is done
 And þan seide Gamelyn so mot^t I wel fare
 I haue not^t 3ete haluendele sold my ware 272

þoo seide þe Champion : so broke I my swere
 He is a fool þat þerof bieþ þou selleþ it so dere
 Tho saide þe frankelēn þat was in močh care
 ffelawe he saide whi lackest þou þis ware 276
 By sante Iame of Gales þat mony man haþ souzt [leaf 66]
 3it is it to good chepe þat þow hast bouzt
 Thoo þat wardeynes were of þat wrasteling
 Come and brouzt Gamelyn þe Ramme and þe rynge 280
 [.
 *no gap in the MS.*]
 And Gamelyn biþouzt him it was a faire þinge
 And went wiþ moche Ioye home in þe mornynge 284
 ¶ His broþer see wher he came : wiþ þe grete route
 And bad shitt þe gate and hold hym wiþ oute
 The Porter of his lord was soor a gaast
 And stert anon to þe gate and lokked it fast 288
 ¶ Now lithenes and listneþ boþ 3onge and olde
 And 3e shul here gamen of Gamelyn þe bolde
 Gamelyn come to þe gate for to haue come Inne
 And it was shett fast wiþ a strong pynne 292
 þan seide Gamelyn Porter vndo þe 3ate
 ffor good mennys sones stonden þer-ate
 þan answerd þe porter and swore by goddys berde
 þow ne shalt Gamelyn come into þis 3erde 296
 Thow lixt seide Gamelyn/ so broke I my chyne
 He smote þe wikett wiþ his foote and breke awaie þ^e pynne
 The Porter seie þoo/ it myzt no better be
 He sette foote on erth and bygan to flee 300
 By my feye seide Gamelyn þat traualle is ylore
 ffor I am of fote as light as þou . if þou haddest it swore
 Gamelyn ouertoke þe porter . and his tene wrake
 And girt him in þe nek þat þe boon to-brake 304
 And toke hym by þat oon arme/ and threwe hym in a welle
 vij^c. fadme it was depe/ as I haue herd telle
 ¶ Whan Gamelyn þe yonge þus had plaid his playe
 Alle þat in þe yerde were . drowen hem awaye 308

þei dredden him ful sore for werk þat he wrouȝt
 And for þe faire company þat he þider brouȝt
 Gamelyn ȝede to þe gate/ and lete it vp wide
 He lete Inne aft. þat goñ wold or ride 312
 And seide ȝe be welcome wiþ out eny greue
 ffor we wil be maisters here and axe no man leue
 ȝusterday I left/ seide ȝonge Gamelyñ [leaf 66, back]
 In my broþers seler/ v. tonne of wyñ 316
 I wil not þis company partyn a-twynne
 And ȝe wil done after me/ while sope is þer-Inne
 And if my broþer gruche or make foule chere
 Eiper for spence of mete and drink/ þat we spende here
 I am oure Catour and bere our alþer purs 321
 He shal haue for his grucching seint Maries curs
 My broþer is a Nigon! I swere be cristes oore
 And we wil spende largely/ þat he haþ spared yore 324
 And who þat make grucching þat we here dwelle
 He shal to þe porter in to þe drowe-welle
 .Vij. dayes and vij. nyȝtes Gamelyn helde his feest
 Wiþ moche solace/ was þer noon cheest 328
 In a litel torret his broþer lay steke
 And see hem waast his good and dorst no word speke
 Erly on a mornynge on þe viij. day
 The Gestes come to Gamelyn and wolde goñ her way 332
 Lordes seide Gamelyn wil ȝe so hie
 Al þe wyne is not ȝit dronke! so brouke I myñ ye
 Gamelyn in his hert/ was ful woo
 Whan his gestes toke her leue. fro hym forto go 336
 He wolde þei had dwelled lenger. and þei seide nay
 But bytaught Gamelyn. god and good day
 Thus made Gamelyn his feest. and brouȝt wel to ende
 And aftere his gestes. toke leue to wende 340
 ¶ Lythen and listen and holde ȝour tunge
 And ȝe shal here Game of Gamelyn þe ȝonge
 Harkeneth lordingges and listeneþ ariȝt
 Whan alle gestis were goon how gamelyn was diȝt 344

Alle þe while þat Gamelyn heeld his Mangerye
 His broþere þouȝt on hym be wroke/ *with* his trecherye
 Whan Gamylens gestes were riden and goñ
 Gamelyn stood anon allone/ frend had he noñ 348
 Tho aftere felle sone/ *with-in* a litel stounde
 Gamelyn was taken/ and ful hardȝ ybounde
 fforþ Come þe fals knyght! out of þe Solere [leaf 67]
 To Gamelyn his broþer/ he ȝede ful nere 352
 And saide to Gamelyn/ who made þe so boldȝ
 For to stroien þe stoor of myn householdȝ
 Broþer seide Gamelyn wreþ þe riȝt nought
 ffor it is many day gon siþ it was bouȝt 356
 ffor broþer þou hast had by seint Richere
 Of xv. plowes of londe. þis xvj. ȝere
 And of alle þe beestes þou hast forþ bredde
 That my fader me byquath on his deþes bedde 360
 Of al þis xvj. ȝere I ȝeue þe þe prowē
 ffor þe mete and þe drink þat we han spendē nowē
 Than seide þe fals knyȝt. euel mote he þee
 Herken broþere Gamelyn what I wil ȝeue þe 364
 ffor of my body broþer! here geten haue I none
 I wil make þe myn heire I s ere by seint Ioħn
 Parfay seide Gamelyn! *and* if it so be
 And þou thenk as þou seist! god ȝeeld it þe 368
 No þinge wist Gamelyn of his broþer gile
 Therefore he hym bygiled in a litel while
 Gamelyn seide. oon þing I þe telle
 þoo þou þrewe my porter in þe drowe-welle 372
 I swore in þat wreþe and in þat grete moote
 þat þou shuldest be bounde boþe honde *and* fote
 [.
 *no gap in the MS.*] 376
 This most be fulfilled! my men to dote
 ffor to holden myn avowe as I þe bihote
 ¶ Broþer seide Gamelyn as mote I þee
 þou shalt not be forswore for þe loue of me 380

Tho maden þei Gamelyn to sitte and not stonde
 To þei had hym bounde boþ fote and honde
 þe fals knyght his broþer. of Gamelyn was a-gast
 And sent efter fetters to fetter hym fast 384
 His broþer made lesingges on him þer he stode
 And tolde hem þat comen Inne þat Gamelyn was wode
 Gamelyn stode to a post. bounden in þe hall
 þoo þat comen Inne. loked on hym aȝt 388
 Euer stode Gamelyn euen vp-riȝt [leaf 67, back]
 But mete and drink had ne noun. neiþer day ne nyȝt
 Than seide Gamelyn/ brother be myn hals
 Nowe haue I aspid þou art a party fals 392
 Had I wist þe Treson þat hast yfounde
 I wold haue ȝeue strokes or I had be bounde
 Gamelyn stode bounde stille as eny stone
 Tho daies and two nyȝtes mete had he none 396
 Than seide Gamelyn : þat stood ybound stronge
 Adam Spencer me þenkeþ I fast to longe
 Adam Spencere now I biseche þe
 ffor þe moche loue my fadere loued þe 400
 If þou may come to þe keys/ lese me out of bonde
 And I wil part wiþ þe of my free londe
 Than seide Adam þat was þe spencere
 I haue serued þi broþer þis xvj ȝere 404
 ȝif I lete þe gone out of his boure
 He wold saye afterwarde I were a tratour
 Adam seide Gamelyn so brouke I myn hals
 Thow shalt finde þi broþer at þe last fals 408
 Therefore broþer Adam lose me out of boȝdes
 And I will parte wiþ þe of my free londes
 Vp such forward seide Adam ywis
 I wil do þerto al þat in me is 412
 Adam seide Gamelyn as mote I þe
 I wil holde þe Conaunte and þou wil me [fre]
 Anoon as Adams lord to bed was goȝ
 Adam toke þe laves and lete Gamelyn out anon 416

He vnlocked Gamelyn boþ hondes *and* fete
 In hope of auauncement^t þat^t he hym byhete
 Than seide Gamelyn þonked be goddis sonde
 Nowe I am lose boþ fote and honde 420
 Had I nowe eten and dronken ariz^t
 þer is noon in þis hous shuld^t bynde me þis nyzt^t
 Adam toke Gamelyn as stille as eny stone
 And ladde him into þe spence raply anone 424
 And sette him to sopere riz^t in a priuey styde [leaf 68]
 He bad hym do gladly and so he dide
 Anoon as Gamelyn had eten wel *and* fyne
 And þerto y-dronken wel of þe rede wyne 428
 Adam seide Gamelyn what^t is nowe þi rede
 Or I go to my broþer and Gerd of his his hede
 Gamelyn seide Adam it^t shal not^t be so
 I can teche þe a rede þat^t is worþ þe twoo/ 432
 I wote wel forsop þat^t þis is no nay/
 We shul haue a Mangerye riz^t on sonday
 Abbotes and Priours mony here shul be
 And oþer men of holy chircĥ as I telle þe 436
 þou shal stonde vp by þe post^t as þou were bounde fast^t
 And I shal leue hem vnloke þat^t away þou may hem cast^t
 Whan þat^t þei han eten and wasshen her handes
 þow shalt^t biseche hem alle to bringe þe out^t of bondes 440
 And if þei willen borowe þe þat^t were good game
 þan were þou out^t of prison and [I] out^t of blame
 And if ecche of hem saye to vs nay
 I shal do anoper I swere by þis day 444
 þow shalt^t haue a good staf *and* I wil haue anopere
 And cristes curs haf þat^t on þat^t failleþ þat^t opere
 3e for god seide Gamelyn I say it^t for me
 If I faille on my side evel mot^t I pee 448
 If we shul algate assoille hem of her synne
 Warne me brother/ Adam whan we shul bygygne
 Gamelyn seid Adam by seint^t charite
 I wil warne þe biforn whan it^t shal be 452

Whan I winke on þe. loke forto gone
 And caste away þi fetters and come to me anoñ
 Adam seide Gamelyn blessed be þi bonys
 þat' is a good counseile ȝeuen for þe nonys 456
 ȝif þei warne me þe to bring' out' of bondes
 I wil sette good strokes riȝt' on here lendes
 Whan þe Sondag was commen and folk to þe feest
 ffaire þei were welcomed. boȝ leest' and mest' 460
 And euer as þei at' þe haldore come Inne [leaf 68, back]
 They casten her yen/ on ȝonge Gamelyñ
 The fals knyȝt' his broȝer ful of trecherye
 Al þe gettes þat' þer were at' þe mangerye 464
 Of Gamelyn his broȝer he tolde hem wiȝ mouȝe
 Al þe harme and þe shame þat' he telle couȝe
 Whan þei were yserued of messes ij. or thre
 þan seide Gamelyn howe serue ȝe me 468
 It' is not' wel serued by god þat' aȝt' made
 þat' I sitte fastinge and oȝer men make glade
 The fals knyȝt' his broȝer þer as he stode
 Told to aȝt' þe gestes þat' Gamelyn was wode 472
 And Gamelyn stode stille and answerd' nouȝt'
 But' Adames wordes he helde in his þouȝt'
 Thoo Gamelyn gan speke doolfully wiȝ-aȝt'
 To þe grete lordes þat' seten in þe haȝt' 476
 ¶ Lordes he seide for cristes passioñ
 Helpe to bringe Gamelyn out' of prisoñ
 þan seide an Abbot' sorowe on his cheke
 He shal haue cristes curs and seint' Maries eke 480
 That' þe out' of prison beggeȝ or borowe
 And euer worȝ him wel þat' doȝ þe moche sorowe
 After þat' Abbot' þan speke anoȝere
 I wold' þine hede were of þough' þou were my broȝere 484
 Aȝt' þat' þe borowe foule mot' hem falle
 Thus þei seiden alle þat' were in þe halle
 ¶ Than seide a Priour/ euel mote he preue
 It' is grete sorowe and care boy þat' þou art alyue 488

Ow seide Gamelyn so brouke I my bone
 Now haue I spied þat' frendes haue I noñ
 Cursed mote he worþ. boþ flessħ and blood
 þat' euer doþ Priour or Abbot' eny good 492
 Adam þe Spencere toke vp þe cloth
 And loked on Gamelyn and segh þat' he was wroþe
 Adam on the Pantry litel he þouzt
 And two good staues to þe halle door he brouzt 496
 Adam loked on Gamelyn and he was warre anoñ [leaf 69]
 And cast' away þe fetters *and* bygan to goñ
 Whan he come to Adam he toke þat' on staf
 And bygan to worch and good strokes 3af 500
 Gamelyn come into þe halle and þe Spencer' boþe
 And loked hem aboute as þei hadden be wroþe
 Gamelyn spreynep holy watere wiþ an oken spire
 That' some þat' stode vprizt' felle in þe fire 504
 þer was no lewe man þat' in þe halle stode
 þat' wolde do Gamelyn eny þing' but' good
 But' stoden bisides and lete hem boþ wirch
 ffor þei had no rewþe of men of holy chirch 508
 Abbot' or Priour' monk or chanoun
 That' Gamelyn ouertoke. anoñ þei 3eden down
 Ther was noon of alle þat' with his staf mette
 þat' he ne made hem ouer-prowe to quyte hem his dette
 Gamelyn seide Adam for seint' charite 513
 Pay good lyuere for þe loue of me
 And I wil kepe þe door so euere here I masse
 Er þei bene assoilled þer shal non passe 516
 Doute þe not' seide Gamelyn whil we ben in fere
 Kepe þowe wel þe door and I wil wirche here
 Bystere þe good adam and lete non fle
 And we shul telle largely how mony þat þer be 520
 Gamelyn seide Adam do hem but' goode
 þei bene men of holy church drowe of hem no blode
 Saue wel þe crownes. and do hem no harmes
 But' breke boþ her logges/ and sipen her armes 524

Thus Gamelyn and Adam wrouȝt ryȝt fast
 And pleide wiȝ þe monkes and made hem agast
 Þidere þei come ridinge Ioly wiȝ swaynes
 And home aȝein þei were ladde in cartes *and* waynes 528
 Tho þei hadden al ydo. þan seide a grey frere
 Allas Sir' abbot' what' did we nowe here
 Whan þat' we comen hidere it' was a cold' rede
 Vs had be bet' haue be at' home . *with water and* brede 532
 While Gamelyñ made orders of monke *and* frere [leaf 69, back]
 Euere stood his broȝer and made foule chere
 Gamelyn vp wiȝ his staf þat' he wel knewe
 And girt' hym in þe nek þat' he ouer thrwe 536
 A litel aboue þe Girdel þe Rigge-boon he brast
 And sette him in þe fetters þer he sat' arst'
 Sitte þer broȝer seide Gamelyñ
 fforto colen þi body/ as I did myñ 540
 As swiȝ as þei had wroken hem on her fooñ
 þei asked water and wasshen anoñ
 What' some for her loue and some for her Awe
 Aȝ þe seruantes serued hem on þe best' lawe 544
 þe Sherreue was þennes but .v. myle
 And aȝ was tolde him in a lytel while
 Howe Gamelyn and Adam had ydo a sorye rees
 Bounden and wounded men aȝeinst þe kingges pees/ 548
 Tho bygan sone strif' for to wake
 And þe shereff about' Gamelyn forto take
 ¶ Now liȝen and listen so god ȝeue ȝou good fyne
 And ye shul here good game of yonge Gamelyne 552
 xxiiij^{ti} ȝonge men þat' helde hem ful bold'
 Come to þe shiref and seide þat' þei wold'
 Gamelyn and Adam fette by her fay
 The Sheref ȝaue hem leue soȝ for to say 556
 Thei hiden fast' wold þei not' lynne
 To þei come to þe gate þere Gamelyn was Inne
 Thei knocked on þe gate þe porter was nyȝe
 And loked out' att' an hool as man þat' was seleȝe 560

þe Porter had bihold hem a litel while
 He loued wel Gamelyn and was dradde of gyle
 And lete þe wikett stonde ful stille
 And asked hem wiþ out what was her wille 564
 ffor aft þe grete company/ speke but oñ
 Vndo þe gate porter and lat vs in goñ
 þan seide þe Porter so brouke I my chyn
 3e shul saie 3oure erand er 3e come Inne 568
 Sey to Gamelyn and Adam/ if þeire wil be [leaf 70]
 We wil speke wiþ hem two wordes or þre
 ffelawe seide þe Porter stonde þer stille
 And I wil wende to Gamelyn to wete his wille 572
 Inne went þe porter to Gamelyn anōñ
 And saide sir I warne 3ou here ben commen 3our fooñ
 The Shireues men bene at þe gate
 fforto take 3ou boþ 3e shul not scape 576
 Porter seide Gamelyn so mote I þe
 I wil alowe þi wordes whan I my tyme se
 Go ageyn to þe gate and dwelle wiþ hem a while
 And þou shalt se riȝt sone porter a gile 580
 Adam seide gamelyn hast þe to goñ
 We han foo-men mony and frendes neuere oñ
 It bene þe shireues men þat hider bene commen
 þei ben swore to-gidere þat we shal be nomen 584
 Gamelyn seide Adam hye þe riȝt blyve
 And if I faile þe þis day euel mot I þriue
 And we shul so welcome þe shyreues men
 þat some of hem shal make her beddes in þe fenne 588
 At a postern gate Gamelyn out went
 And a good Cartstaf in his hondes hent
 Adam hent sone anoper grete staff
 ffor to helpen Gamelyne and good strokes 3af 592
 Adam felled tweyn and Gamelyn þre
 þe oper sette fete on erþe and bygan to flee
 What seide Adam so euere here I masse
 I haue riȝt good wyne drynk er 3e passe 596

Nay by god seide þei þi drink is not goode
 It wolde make a mannys brayn to lyen on his hode
 Gamelyn stode stille and loked hym aboute
 And seide þe Shyref commep wiþ a grete route 600
 Adam seide Gamelyn what bene nowe þi redes
 Here commep þe sheref and wil haue *our* hedes
 Adam seide to Gamelyn my rede is now þis
 Abide we no lenger lest we fare amys 604
 I rede we to wode goñ/ er we be founde [leaf 70, back]
 Better is þer louse þan in þe toune bounde
 Adam toke by þe honde yonge Gamelyn
 And euery of hem dronke a drauȝt of wyñ 608
 And after token he cours and wenten her way
 T[h]o fonde þe Shyrreue nyst but non aye
 ¶ The Shirreue lizt/ doune and went into halle
 And fonde þe lord fetred fast wiþ alle 612
 The Schirreue vnfetred hym riȝt sone anoñ
 And sent aftere a leche to hele his rigge-boñ
 Lat we nowe þe fals knyȝt lye in his care
 And talke we of Gamelyn . and of his fare 616
 Gamelyn into þe wode stalked stille
 And Adam Spensere liked riȝt ille
 Adam swore to Gamelyn by seint Richere
 Nowe I see it is mery to be a spencere 620
 ȝit leuer me were kayes to bere
 þan walken in þis wilde wode my cloþes to tere
 Adam seide Gamelyn dismay þe riȝt nouȝt
 Mony good mannys child in care is brouȝt 624
 As þei stode talkinge boþen in fere
 Adam herð talking of men. *and* riȝt nygh hem þei were
 Tho Gamelyn vnder wode loked ariȝt
 vij^{xx}. of ȝonge men he seye wel ydiȝt 628
 Alle satte at þe mete compas about
 Adam seide Gamelyn now haue I no dout
 Aftere bale commep bote þorgh goddis myȝt
 Me þink of mete and drynk I haue a siȝt 632

Adam loked þoo vnder wode bough
 And whan he segħ mete was glad ynogh
 ffor he hoped to god to haue his dele
 And he was sore alonged after a mele 636
 As he seide þat worde þe mayster outlawe
 Saugh Adam and gamelyn vnder þe wode shawe
 3onge men seide þe maistere by þe good rode
 I am ware of gestic. god sende vs goode 640
 3one ben twoo 3onge men wel ydight [leaf 71]
 And paraventure þer ben mo who so loket riȝt
 A-riseþ vp 3onge men and fette hem to me
 It is good þat we weten what men þei be 644
 Vp þer sterten .vij. from þe dynere
 And metten wiþ Gamelyn and Adam Spencer
 Whan þei were nyghe hem þan seide þat oon
 3eeldeþ vp 3onge men 3our bowes and 3our floon 648
 þan seide Gamelyn þat 3ong was of elde
 Moche sorowe mote þei haue þat to 3ou hem 3elde
 I Curs noon opere but right my silue
 þoo 3e fette to 3ou .v. þan be 3e twelue 652
 Whan þei hard by his word þat myȝt was in his arme
 Ther was noon of hem þat wold do hym harme
 But seide to Gamelyn myldely *and* stille
 Comeþ a-fore our Maister and seiþ to hym 3our wille 656
 3onge men seide Gamelyn be 3our lewte
 What man is 3our maister þat 3e wiþ be
 Alle þei answerd wiþ out lesing
 Our maister is crowned of outlawe king 660
 Adam seide Gamelyn go we in cristes name
 He may neiþer mete ne drink warne vs for shame
 If þat he be hende and come of gentil blood
 He wil 3eue vs mete and drink and do us som gode 664
 By seint Iame seide Adam what harme þat I gete
 I wil auenture me þat I had mete
 Gamelyn and Adam went forth in fere
 And þei grette þe Maister þat þei fond þere 668

Than seide þe Maister kingⁱ of outlawes
 Whatⁱ seche ȝe ȝonge men vnder þe wode shawes
 Gamelyn answerd þe kingⁱ *with* his croun
 He mostⁱ nedes walkⁱ in feeldⁱ þatⁱ may notⁱ in toun 672
 Sire we walk notⁱ here no harme to doo
 Butⁱ ȝif we mete a dere to shete *perto*
 As men þatⁱ bene hungry *and* mow no mete fynde
 And beñ hardⁱ bystadⁱ vnder wode lynde 676
 Of Gamelyns wordes / þe^e maister had reuþe [leaf 71, back]
 And seide ȝe shul haue ynow haue god my treuth
 He bad hem sitte down forto take restⁱ
 And bad hem ete and drinkⁱ and þatⁱ of þe bestⁱ 680
 As þei eten and dronken wel and fyne
 þan seide on to anoþer. þis is Gamelyn
 þo was þe Maistere outlawe into counseile nome
 And tolde howe itⁱ was Gamelyn þatⁱ þider was come 684
 Anon as he herdⁱ how itⁱ was byfalle
 He made him maisterⁱ vnder hym ouer hem alle
 WitⁱInne þe iij. weke hym come tydinge
 To þe Maistere outlawe þatⁱ was her kinge 688
 þatⁱ he shuld come home his pees was made
 And of þatⁱ good tydinge he was ful glade
 þoo seide he to his ȝonge men soþ forto telle
 Me bene comen tydinges : I may no lenger dwelle 692
 Tho was Gamelyn anoon wiþ outⁱ taryinge
 Made maisterⁱ outlawe and crowned her kinge
 Whan Gamelyn was crowned kingⁱ of outlawes
 And walked had a while vnder þe wode shawes/ 696
 þe fals knyȝtⁱ bis broþer was sherif *and* sire
 And lete his broþere endite for hate *and* for ire
 þoo were his boond-men sory : *and* no þingⁱ glade
 Whan Gamelyn her lord / wolfes hede was cried *and* made
 And sentⁱ outⁱ of his men wher þei myȝtⁱ hym fynde
 ffor to go seke Gamelyn vnder þe wode lynde
 To telle hym tydingⁱ þe wynde was wente
 And al his good reued and al his men shentⁱ 704

Whan þei had hym founden on knees þei hem setten
 And adoune *with* her hodes and her lord gretten
 Sir' wreth 3ou not' for þe good rode
 ffor we han brou3t' 3ou tydyngges but' þei be not' gode 708
 Nowe is þi broþer Sherreue *and* haþ þe bayly
 And haþ endited þe / and wolfes hede doþ þe crye
 Allas seide Gamelyn þat' euere I was so selak
 þat' I ne had broke his nek whan I his rigge brak' 712
 Gop greteþ wel myn husbondes and wif [leaf 72]
 I wil be at' þe next' shyre haue god my lif
 Gamelyn come redy to þe next' shire
 And þer was his broþer boþ lord and sire 716
 Gamelyn boldly come into þe mote halle
 And putt' a doun his hode / amonge þo lordes alle
 God saue 3ou lordinggs þat' here be
 But' broke-bak sherreue euel mote þou þee 720
 Whi hast þou doñ me þat' shame and vilonye
 fforto lat' endite me / and wolfeshede do me crye
 poo þou3t' þe fals kny3t' forto bene awreke
 And lette Gamelyn most' he no þing' speke 724
 Might' þer be no grace. but' Gamelyn atte last'
 Was cast' in prison and fettred fast'
 ¶ Gamelyn haþ a broþere þat' hi3t' sir Ote
 Als good an knyght' and hende as my3t' goñ on fote 728
 Anoon 3ede a massager' to þat' good kny3t'
 And tolde him al to-gidere how gamelyn was di3t'
 Anoon whan sir' ote herd howe Gamelyn was di3t'
 He was ri3t' sory and no þing' li3t' 732
 And lete sadel a stede and þe way namme
 And to his tweyne broþeren ri3t' sone he camme
 Sir' seide Sir' Ote to þe sherreue poo
 We bene but' þre breþeren shul we neuere be mo 736
 And þou hast' prisoned þe best of vs alle
 Such' anopere broþer euel mote hym byfalle
 Sir' Ote seide þe false knyght' lat' be þi cors
 By god for þi wordes he shal fare þe wors 740

To þe kingges prison he is ynome
 And þer he shal abide to þe Iustise come
 Parde Seide Sir' Ote better it' shal be
 I bid hym to maynprise þat þou graunte me 744
 To þe next' sitting' of delyueraunce
 And lat' þan Gamelyn stonde to his chaunce
 Broþere in such a forward' I take hym to þe
 And by þ^e fader soule þat' þe bigate and me 748
 But' he be redy whan þe Iustice sitte [leaf 72, back]
 þou shalt' bere þe Iuggement' for al þi grete witte
 I graunte wel seide Sir' Ote þat' it' so be
 Lat' delyuere hym anoon and take hym to me 752
 Tho was gamelyn delyuered to Sir' ote his broþer'
 And þat' nyght' dwelled þe ooñ wiþ þe oþer'
 On the morowe seide Gamelyn to Sir' Ote þe hende
 Broþer he seide I mote forsop from 30ⁿ wende 756
 To loke howe my 3onge men leden her liff
 Whedere þei lyuen in Ioie or ellis in striff
 By god seide Sir' ote þat' is a colde rede
 Nowe I se þat' alle þe Carke shal fal on my hede 760
 ffor whan þe Iustise sitte and þou be not' yfound'
 I shal anoon be take and in þi stede I-bound'
 Broþer seide Gamelyn dismay 3ou nou3t'
 ffor by seint Iame in Gales þat' mony men haþ sou3t' 764
 3if that god almy3ty holde my lif and witte
 I wil be redy whan þe Iustice sitte
 Than seide sire Ote to gamelyn god shilde þ^e from shame
 Come whan þou seest' tyme and bring' vs out' of blame 768
 ¶ Liþeneþ and listeneþ and holde 3ou stille
 And 3e shul here howe Gamelyn had al his wille
 Gamelyn went' vnder þe wode Ris
 And fonde þer pleyng' 3eng' men of pris 772
 þo was 3ong' gamelyn rizt' glad ynou3e
 Whan he fonde his men vnder wode bou3e
 Gamelyn and his men talkeden in fere
 And þei had good game her maister to here 776

His men tolde him of auentures þat þei had found
 And Gamelyn tolde hem aȝein howe he was fast bounde
 While Gamelyn was outlawe had he no cors
 þer was no man þat for him ferde þe wors 780
 But Abbottes *and* Priours monk and chanone
 On hem left he nouȝt whan he myȝt hem nome
 While Gamelyn and his men made merþes ryve
 þe fals knyght his broþer euel mot he thryve 784
 ffor he was fast about boþ day and oþer [leaf 73]
 ffor to hiren þe quest to hongen his broþer
 Gamelyn stode on a day and byheeld
 þe wodes and þe Shawes and þe wild feelde 788
 He þouȝt on his broþere how he hym byhette
 þat he wold be redy whan þe Iustice sette
 He þouȝt wel he wold wiþ-out delay
 Come to-fore þe Iustice to kepen his day 792
 And saide to his ȝonge men dighteþ ȝou ȝare
 ffor whan þe Iustice sitte we most be þare
 ffor I am vnder borowe til þat I come
 And my broþer for me to prison shal be nome 796
 Be seint Iame seide his ȝonge men and þou rede þerto
 Ordeyn how it shal be and it shal be do
 While Gamelyn was commyng þer þe Iustice satte
 þe fals knyȝt his broþer forȝate he not þat 800
 To hire þe men of þe quest to hangen his broþer
 þouȝe þei had not þat oon þei wold haue þat oþer
 Tho come Gamelyn from vnder þe wode Ris
 And brouȝt with hym ȝonge men of pris 804
 I see wel seide Gamelyn þe Iustise is sette
 Go a-forȝ adam and loke how it spette
 Adam went into þe halle *and* loked al aboute
 He segȝ þer stonde lordes grete *and* stoute 808
 And Sire Ote his broþer fetred ful fast
 þoo went Adam out of halle as he were a-gast
 Adam seide to Gamelyn and to his felawes aȝȝ
 Sire Ote stout fetered in þe mote haȝt 812

[.
 *no gap in the MS.*]

If gode ȝeue vs grace wel forto doo
 He shal it abigge þat it brouȝt þerto / 816
 þan seide Adam þat lockes had hore
 Cristes curs mote he haue þat hym bonde so sore
 And þou wilt Gamelyn do after my rede
 þer is noon in þe halle shal bere away his hede 820
 Adam seide Gamelyn we wil not do soo
 We wil slee þe giltif and lat þe opere goo/
 I wil into þe halle and with þe Iustice speke [leaf 73, back]
 Of hem þat bene giltif I wil ben awreke 824
 Late no skape at þe door take ȝonge men ȝeme
 ffor I wil be Iustise þis day domes to deme
 God spede me þis day at my newe werk
 Adam come with me for þou shalt be my clerk 828
 His men answerde hym. and bad done his best
 And if þou to vs haue nede þou shalt finde vs prest
 We wil stonde wiþ þe while þat we may dure
 And but we worchen manly pay vs none hure 832
 ȝonge men said Gamelyn so mote I wel þe
 A trusty maister ȝe shul fynde me
 Riȝt þere þe Iustise satte in þe halle
 Inne went Gamelyn amonges hem alle 836
 Gamelyn lete vnfetter his broþer out of bende
 þan seide Sir Ote his broþer þat was hende
 þow haddest almost Gamelyn dwelled to longe
 ffor þe quest is out on me þat I shuld honge 840
 Broþer seide Gamelyn so god ȝeue me good rest
 þis day shul þei be honged / þat ben on þe quest
 And þe Iustise boþ þat is þe Iuge man
 And þe Sherreue also. þorgh hym it bigan 844
 Than seide Gamelyn to þe Iustice
 Now is þi power done. þe most nedes rise
 þow hast ȝeuen domes þat bene euel diȝt
 I wil sitten in þi sete and dresen/ hem ariȝt 848

The Iustise satte stille and roos not anone
 And Gamelyn cleued his cheke bone
 Gamelyn toke him in his armes *and* no more spake
 But threwe hym ouer þe barre and his arme brake 852
 Dorst noon to Gamelyn seie but good
 ffor feerd of þe company þat *with-out* stode
 Gamelyn sette hym down in þe Iustise sete
 And Sire Ote his broþere by hym. and Adam at his fete
 Whan gamelyn was sette in þe Iustise sede
 Herken of a bourde þat Gamelyn dede
 He lete fetter þe Iustise and his fals broþere [leaf 74]
 And did hem come to þe barre þat on *with* þat opere 860
 Whan gamelyn had þus ydone had he no rest
 Til he had enquired who was on his quest
 fforto demen his broþer sire Ote forto honge
 Er he wist what þei were hym þouzt ful longe 864
 But as sone as Gamelyn wist where þei were
 He did hem euerechone fetter in fere
 And bringgen hem to þe barre & setten in rewe
 By my feiþ seide þe Iustise þe sherrue is a shrewe 868
 þan seide Gamelyn to þe Iustise
 þou hast 3oue domes of þe worst assise
 And þe xij. Sesoures þat weren on þe quest
 þei shul be honged þis day so haue I good rest 872
 Than seide þe sheref to 3onge Gamelyn
 Lord I crie þe mercie broþer art þou myn
 þerfor seide Gamelyn haue þou cristes curs
 ffor and þow were maister. I shuld haue wors 876
 fforto make short tale and not to longe
 He ordeyned hym a quest of his men stronge
 þe Iustise and þe Sirreue boþ honged hie
 To weyuen wiþ þe ropes and þe winde drye 880
 And þe xij. Sisours sorowe haue þat rekke
 All þei were honged fast by þe nekke
 þus endeþ þe fals knyzt wiþ his trecherye
 þat euere had lad his lif in falsnesse *and* folye 884

He was honged by þe nek and not by þe purs
 þat was þe mede þat he had for his faders curs
 Sire Otes was eldest and Gamelyn was 3enge
 Wenten to her frendes / and passed to þe kinge 888
 þei maden pees wiþ þe king of þe best sise
 þe king loued wel sir Ote & made hym iustise
 And after þe king made Gamelyn in est *and in west*
 þe cheef Iustice of his free forest 892
 Alþ his wizt 3onge men þe king forgaf her gilt
 And siþen in good office þe king haþ hem pilt
 Thus wanne Gamelyn his land and his lede
 And wreke him on his enemyes. *and quytte hem her mede*
 And Sire Ote his broþer made him his heire
 And Siþen wedded gamelyn a wif good and faire
 They lyued to-gidere þe while þat crist wold
 And siþen was Gamelyn grauen vnder mold 900
 And so shul we all : may þer no man fle
 God bring vs to þat Ioye þat euer shal be
here endep þe tale of þe Coke.)

*[The Prologue and Tale of the Shipman follow, without
 any break in the MS.]*

¶ And [on leaf 74, back]

Thus gynnep þe prologe of þe shipman

N	owe frendes seide our hoost ^t so dere	¶ The Prologe.
	How likeþ 3ou by Iohn þe pardonere	
	ffor he haþ vnbokeled wel þe male	
	He haþ vs tolde riȝt ^t a thrifty tale	4
	As touching ^t of mys gouernaunce	
	I prey to god 3eue hym good chaunche	
	As 3e han herd of þise retoures þre	
	Now gentil Marynere hertely I preye þe	8
	Telle vs a good tale and þat ^t riȝt anoñ	
	It ^t shal be done by god & by seint ^t Iohn	
	Seide þis marinere as wel as euer I can	
	And riȝt anoon his tale he bygan .	12

¶ Thus endep þe prologe of þe shipman.

[No gap in the MS.]

GROUP B. (β. FRAGMENT III.)

§ 4. THE SHIPMAN'S TALE.

And here bygynneþ þe shipman tale

[on leaf 74, back]

A Marchaunt^t whilom dwelled in seynt^t denys
 þat^t riche was for which men held hym wys
 A wif he had of excellent^t bewte
 And companable and reuerent^t was she
 Which is a þing^t þat^t causeþ more dispence
 þan worþ is al þe chere and reuerence 1196
 þat^t men hem done at^t feestes and at^t daunces
 such salutations and countenaunces
 Passeþ as doþ þe shadowe vpon a waht
 But^t woo is hym þat^t payen mote for aht 1200
 The Sely husbond^t algate he mot^t paye
 He mote vs cloþe and vs aray
 ffor his owne worship richely [leaf 75]
 In which aray we dauncen Iolily 1204
 And if þat^t he may not^t peraventure
 Or ellis list noon such^t spence endure
 But^t þenkeþ þat^t it^t is waast^t and ylost^t
 þan mote anoþer paien for þe cost^t 1208
 Or lene vs gold and þat^t is perilous
 This noble marchaunt^t helde a noble hous
 ffor which he had alday grete repayre
 ffor his largesse and for his wif was faire 1212
 þat^t wonder is but^t herkenep to my tale
 Amonge aht his gestis. grete and smale
 Ther was a monk a faire man and a bold^t
 I trowe xxx^{ti}. wynter he was olde 1216
 That^t euer in oon was drowing^t to þat^t place
 þis yonge monk þat^t was so faire of face

Aqueynted was so wiþ þat^t good man
[. 1220

.

.

. *no gap in the MS.*]

And eke þis monke of^t which I byganne 1224

Were boþ twoo yborn in oo vilage

þe monke hym cleymed as for cosynage

And he aȝein seiþ not^t ones nay

But^t was as glad þerof as foule of day 1228

ffor to his hert^t it^t was a grete plesañce

Thus bene þei knyut^t wiþ eterne aliance

And eche of hem gan oþer ensure

Of breþerode þe whiles her lif^t may dure 1232

ffree was dañ Ioħn and namely of dispence

As in þat^t hous and ful of diligence

To do plesaunce and also grete costage

He forȝate not^t to ȝeue þe lest^t page 1236

In alle þat^t hous but^t after her degre

He ȝaue þe lord^t and siþen his Mayne

Whan þat^t he came some maner honest þing^t

ffor which þei were as glad of his commyng^t 1240

As foule is fayne whan þe sonne vpriseth

No more herof as nowe for þis suffiseþ

But^t so byfelle þis marchaunt^t on a day

Shope hym to make redy his aray

[leat 75, back]

Towarde þe toune of Brugges for to fare

To byen þer a porcioun of ware

ffor which he haþ to Paris sent^t anōn

A massagere and preied haþ dañ Ioħn 1248

þat^t he shuld come to seynt^t denys to pleyñ

Wiþ hym and wiþ his wif a day or tweyn

Or he to brugges went^t in al wise

This noble monk of which I ȝou devise 1252

Haþ of his abbot^t as hym list^t licence

Bycause he was a man of high prudence

And eke an officere out' forto ride
 To seen her graunges and her beernes wide 1256
 And vnto seint denys he *commeþ* anoñ
 Who was so welcome as my lord' dañ Iohñ
 Our dere cosyn ful of curtesie
 With him brouzt' he a Iubbe of Maluesie 1260
 And eke anoþer ful of fyñe vernage
 As volatile as ay was his his vsage
 And þus I lat' hem .ete. boþ drink' and playe
 This merchaunt' and þis monk a day or twaye 1264
 The .iiij. day þis Marchaunte vp ariseþ
 And on his nede sadly hym avisethñ
 And vp into his counter hous goþ he
 To rekne wiþ him self as wel may be 1268
 Of þilk 3ere hou þat' it' wiþ hym stode
 And how he despended had his good
 And 3if þat' he encreased were or noñ
 His bokes and his bagges mony oñ 1272
 He leip to-fore him on his countyng' boord'
 fful riche was his tresour and his hord'
 ffor whiche ful fast' his counter door he shette
 And eke he nold' þat' no man shuld' hym lette 1276
 Of his acomptes for þe mene tyme
 And þus he sitte til it' was passed prime
 Dan Iohñ was risen in þe morowe also
 And in þe Gardyne walked to and fro 1280
 And haþ his þingges seide ful curteisly [leaf 76]
 This good wif come walking' prively
 Into þe Gardyne þer he walked soft'
 And hym salueth as he haþ doñ ful oft' 1284
 A mayden childe cam in her companye
 Which as hure lust' she may gouern and gye
 ffor 3it' vndere þe 3eerd was þe mayde
 O deer Cosyn myn dañ Iohñ she seide 1288
 What' eileþ 3ou so rathe to arise
 Nece *quod* he it' auzt' ynough suffise

V. houres forto slepe vpon a nyȝt
 But it were for an olde palled wiȝt 1292
 As ben þise wedded men þat lye *and* dare
 As in a forme sitte a very hare
 Were al for-straught wiþ houndes grete *and* smale
 But dere nece whi beñ ȝe so pale 1296
 I trowe certes þat oure good man
 Haþ ȝow labored siþ þe nyght bygan
 That ȝou were nede to resten hastely
 And wiþ þat word he lough ful merely 1300
 And of his owne þouȝt he wex al rede
 This faire wif gan to shake her hede
 And seide þus / ȝe god wote al quod she
 Nay Cosin myne it stont not so wiþ me 1304
 ffor by þat god þat ȝaue me saule *and* lif
 In aȝ þe rewme of fraunce is þer no wif
 þat lasse lust haþ to do þat sorie play
 for I may syngen alas and wele away 1308
 That I was born but no wiȝt quod she
 I dar not tellen how it stant wiþ me
 werfore I þenk out of þis lond to wende
 Or ellis of my self to make an ende 1312
 So ful I am of drede and eke of care
 þis monkt bygan vpon þis wif to stare
 A saide alas nay nece god forbede
 þat ȝe for eny sorowe or eny drede 1316
 fforto ȝoure self but telleþ me ȝour greef [leaf 76, back]
 Perauenture I may in ȝoure meschief
 Conseile or helpe *and* þerfor telleþ me
 Alle ȝour avis for it shal be sece 1320
 ffor on my portoos I make an oþe
 þat neuere in my lif for leef ne loþe
 Ne shal I of no counsaile ȝou by-wrey
 þe same aȝein to ȝou quod she I seie 1324
 By god and by þis portoos I swere
 þei men me wold al into peces tere

Ne shal I neuer forto goo to helle
 Bywrey a word^l of þing^t þat^t 3e me telle 1328
 Nou3^t for no cosinage ne alliance
 But^t verrelly for loue *and* affiance
 Thus bene þei sworn and here vpon kist^t
 And eche of hem told^l oþer what^t hem list^t 1332
 Cosyn quod she if I had a space
 As I haue non namely in þis place
 þan wold I tellen a legend^l of my lif^t
 þat^t I suffred haue siþ I was a wif^t 1336
 With myn husbond^l al þough^h he be 3our cosyñ
 Nay quod þis monke by god & by seint^t Martyn
 He nys no more Cosyn vnto me
 þan is þis leef^t þat^t hongep on þe tree 1340
 I clepe hym so by seint^t denys in ffraunce
 To haue þe more cause of a-queyntaunce
 Of 3owe þe which I haue loued specialy
 A-bouen al wommen sikerly 1344
 þis swere I 3ou on my professioun
 Telleþ 3our greef lest^t he come adoun
 And hastep 3ou and goop 3oure way anoñ
 My dere loue quod she o dañ Ioñn 1348
 fful leef me were þis counsaile to hide
 But out^t it^t mote / it^t may no lengere bide
 My husbond is to me þe worst^t man
 þat^t euer was siþ þis world^l bygan 1352
 But^t siþen I am a wif it^t sitte not^t to me [leaf 77]
 To telle no wight^t of our priuete
 Neiper in bedde ne in noon oþer place
 God shild^l I shuld telle it^t for his grace 1356
 A wif ne shuld not^t seye of her husbond^l
 But^t al honure as I can vnderstonde
 Saue vnto 3ou þus moche telle I shal
 As helpe me god he nys not^t worþ at^t al 1360
 In no degre þe valewe of a flee
 But^t 3it^t me greueþ most^t his nygarde

And wel 3e wote þat' wommen naturelly
 desiren þingges . sex as wel as I. 1364
 þei wolden þat' her husbond' shuld' be
 Hardy and wise . riche *and* þerto free
 And boxom to his wif and fressh abedde
 But' by þat' ilk lord þat' for vs bledde 1368
 ffor his honoure my self to aray
 A sonday next' I mote pay
 An C. frankes or ellis am I lorñ
 3it' were me leuere þat' I were vnborñ 1372
 þan me were done a sclaunder or vilanye
 And if myn husbonde eke my3t' espie
 I nere but' lost and þerfor I 3ou prey
 lene me þis somme and ellis mote I dey 1376
 Danne Iohñ I seie lene me þise hundred frankes
 Parde I wold' not' faile þe my þonkes
 If þat' 3ou lust to do þat' I 3ou pray
 ffor a certeyn day I wil 3ow pay 1380
 And to do 3ou what' plesaunce *and* seruyse
 þat' I may do right as 3ou list' devise
 And but' I do god take on me vengeance
 As foule as had genyloñ of ffraunce 1384
 This gentil monke answerd' in þis manere
 Nowe trewly myn owne lady dere
 I haue quod he on 3ow so grete a rouþe
 þat' I 3owe swere *and* plizt' 3ou my trouþe 1388
 That' whan 3oure husbonde is to fflaundres fare [leaf 77, back]
 I wil delyuere 3owe out' of þis worldes care
 I wil bringen 3ou an C. frankes
 And wiþ þat' he kaught' hure by þe shankes 1392
 And hire enbrased harde and kissed oft'
 Goþ now 3oure way quod he al stille *and* soft'
 And lat' vs dyne as sone as euere 3e may
 ffor by my children it is prime of day 1396
 Goþ nowe and beþ as trewe as I shal be
 Nowe ellis god forbede sire quod she

And forþ she goop as Ielous as a pye
 And had þe Cokes þat þei shuld hem hie 1400
 So þat men myȝt dyne and þat anoñ
 Vp to her husbond is þis wif goñ
 And knokkep at his counter boldely
 Quy la quod he . Peter it am I 1404
 Quod she what howe longe wol ȝe fast
 How longe tyme wil ȝe rekken *and* cast
 ȝoure *sommes* ȝoure bokes *and* ȝoure pingges
 þe deuel haue part on al suche rekenyngges 1408
 ȝe han ynogh parde of goddes sonde
 Come doune to day and lat ȝoure bagge stonde
 Ne be ȝe not ashamed þat dañ Iohñ
 Shal fasting al þis day elenge goñ 1412
 What lat vs here masse and go dyne
 Wiff quod þis man litel canst þou devyne
 þe Curious bysynes þat we haue
 ffor of vs Chapmen so god me saue 1416
 And by þat lord þat called is seint yve
 Scarcely amonges .xij. tweyn shul þriue
 Contynuely lasting vnto our age
 We may wel make chere and good visage 1420
 And drive forþ þe world as it may be
 And kepen our astate in priuete
 Til we be dede or ellis þat we pleye
 A pilgrymage or gon out of þe weye 1424
 And þerfor haue I grete necessite [leaf 78]
 Vpon þis queynt world to avise me
 ffor euermore we mote stonde in drede
 Of happe and fortune in our chapmanhede 1428
 To fflaundes wil I goo to morowe at day
 And come aȝein as sone as euere I may
 ffor which my dere wif I þe biseke
 As be to euery wight buxom *and* meke 1432
 And forto kepe our good be Curious
 And honestly gouerne wel oure hous

Thow hast nowe in euery maner wise
 þat to a þrifty husbonde may suffise 1436
 þe lackeþ noon araye ne no vitaile
 Of siluere in þi purs þou maist not faile
 And wiþ þat worde his counter door he shette
 And doune he goþ no lenger nold he lette 1440
 And hastely a masse was þere saide
 And spedely þe tables were ylade
 And to þe dyner fast þei hem spedde
 And richely þis monke þe chapman fedde 1444
 And after dynere daun Iohn soberly
 This Chapman toke a-part al priuely
 he seide him þus Cosyn it stondeþ soo
 þat wel I see to brugges 3e wil goo 1448
 God and seint Austyn speke 3ou and gide
 I prei 3ou Cosyn wisly þat 3e ride
 Gouverneþ 3ou also of 3oure diete
 And temperaly and namely in þis hete 1452
 Bitwix vs twey nedeþ no stronge fare
 ffare wel Cosyn god kepe 3ou fro care
 3if eny þinge þer be by day or by nyȝt
 If it ligge in my power and in my myȝt 1456
 þat 3e me wil commaunde in ony wise
 It shal be doñ riȝt as 3e wil devise
 Oon þing er þat 3e goñ if þat 3it may be
 I wold prei 3ou forto lene me 1460
 An C ffrankes for a weke or twey
 ffor certeyn beestes I mot beye
 To store wiþ a place þat is owres [leaf 78, back]
 God helpe me so I wolde it were 3oures 1464
 I shal not faile sverly of my day
 Nouȝt for a Ml. frankes a myleway
 But lat þis þinge be secre I 3ou prey
 And god of heuene spede 3ou in 3oure weye 1468
 And fare nowe wele myn owne cosyn dere
 Graunt mercy of 3oure cost & of 3oure chere

This noble Merchaunt^t gently anoñ
 Answerde and seide . O cosyn dañ Iohñ 1472
 Nowe sikerly þis is a smal request^t
 My golt^t is 3oures whan þat^t 3ou lest^t
 And not^t oonly my gold^t but^t my chaffare
 Take what^t 3ou lest^t god shilde þat^t 3e spare 1476
 But^t oo þinge is 3e knowe it^t wel ynogh
 Of Chapmen þat^t her money is her plou3e
 We may creaunce while we haue a name
 But^t goldelees forto be is no game 1480
 Paye it^t a3ein whan it^t lith in 3oure ese
 Aftere 3oure my3t^t fayn wold^t I 3ou plese
 Thise hundred ffrankes he fette forþ anoñ
 And priuely he toke it^t to dañ Iohñ 1484
 No wi3t^t in al þis world^t wist^t of þis lone
 Sauyng^t þis merchaunt^t and dañ Iohñ allone
 þei dronken and romen and goñ to pleye
 Til þat^t dañ Iohñ rideþ to his abbay 1488
 þe morn come and forþ þis merchaunte rideþ
 To fflaundes ward^t his prentis wel hym gideþ
 Til he came into brugges merely
 Now goþ þis merchaunt^t fast^t and bisily 1492
 Aboute his nede and bieþ and creaunseþ
 He neiþer pleieþ at þe dis ne daunseþ
 But^t as a merchaunt^t shortely forto telle
 he lad his lif and þer I lete hym dwelle 1496
 ¶ The sonday next^t þe merchaunt^t was a-goñ
 To seynt Denys y-commen is dañ Iohñ
 Wiþ croune and berde fressh *and* newe yshaue
 In al þe hous þer nas so lite a knaue [leaf 79]
 Ne no wi3t^t ellis þat^t he nas fayñ
 ffor þat^t my lord daun Iohñ was come a3ayñ
 And shortely to her poynt^t forto goñ
 This faire wif acordeþ to daun Iohñ 1504
 And for þise hundred frankes he shuld al ny3t^t
 Haue her in his armes bolt^t vpri3t^t

And þis acorde perfourmed was in dede
 In myrth al nyȝt a bysy lif þei lede 1508
 Til it was day þat dañ Iohñ went his way
 And bad þe mayne fare wele and haue good day
 ffor noon of hem ne no wiȝt in þe toun
 Han of dañ Iohñ none suspecioun 1512
 And forþ he rideþ home to his abbaye
 Or wher hym lust no more of hym I saie
 ¶ This marchaunt whan þat ended was þe fare
 To seint Denys he gan forto repare 1516
 And wiþ his wif he makeþ feest *and* chere
 And telleþ her þat chaffare is so dere
 þat nedes most he make a cheuysance
 ffor he was bounden in a reconysañce 1520
 To pay xx^{ti}. þousand sheldes añon
 ffor which þis marchaunt is wont to goñ
 To borowe of certeyñ frendes þat he hadde
 A certeyn ffrannkes and somme *with* hym he ladde 1524
 And whan he was come into þe toñ
 ffor greet cheerte and grete affeccoun
 Vnto dañ Iohñ him first he goþ to pley
 Nouȝt for to borowe of hym no money 1528
 But forto witt and see of his welfare
 And for to tellen him of his chaffare
 As frendes done whan þei ben mette in fere
 Dañ Iohñ him makeþ feest *and* mery chere 1532
 And he him told aȝein ful specialy
 Howe he had bouȝt ful wel & graciously
 Thonked be god al hole his merchaundyse
 Saue þat he most in al manere wise [leaf 79, back] 1536
 Maken a chevisaunce as for his beste
 And þan shuld he be in Ioye *and* reste
 Dañ Iohñ answerd Certes I am fayn
 þat ȝe in hele be comen home aȝeyñ 1540
 And if þat I were riche as haue I blisse
 Of xx^{ti} M^l. sheldes shuldest þou not mysse

ffor 3e so kindely þis oþer day
 Lent me gold and as I can and maye 1544
 I þonke 3ou by god *and* by seint Iame
 But napelees I toke vnto our dame
 3oure wif at home þe same gold aȝein
 Vpon 3oure benche she wote it wel certeyn 1548
 By certeyne tokens þat I can her telle
 Now by 3our leue I may no lenger dwelle
 Our abbot wil out of þis toun anon
 And in his company I mot goñ 1552
 Grete wele our dame myn owene nece swete
 And fare wele dere cosyn to we mete
 ¶ This Marchaunt wiþ þat was ful ware *and* wys
 Creaunsed hap and eke paide in Paris 1556
 To certeyn lumbardes redy in her handes
 This some of gold and gate of hem þe bandes /
 And home he goþ mery as a popeniaye
 ffor wel he knewe he stood in such araye 1560
 þat nedes most he wyne in such a viage
 A þousand frankes aboue al his costage
 His wif ful redy mette hym at þe gate
 As she was wont of olde vsage algate 1564
 And all þat nyȝt in myrthe þei bysette
 ffor he was riche and cleerly out of dette
 ¶ Whan it was day þis merchaunt gan enbrace
 His wif al newe and kissed hir on hir face 1568
 And vp he goþe and makeþ it wonder toogh
 No more quod she by god 3e haue ynogh
 And wātonly aȝein wiþ hym she pleide
 Til at þe last þat þis merchaunt seide [leaf 80] 1572
 By god quod he I am a litel wroth
 Wiþ 3ou my wif al-þo it be me loth
 And wote 3e why by god as þat I gesse
 ffor 3e haue made a manere straungenesse 1576
 Bytwixen me and my cosyn daun Iohn
 3e shuld haue warned me er I had goñ

pat^t he had 3ou an hundred fraunkes paide
 By redy token and he hym held^t euel paide 1580
 ffor pat^t I to him spake of cheuysance
 Me semed so as by his countenañce
 But^t nape-lees by god heuen kinge
 I pou3t^t not^t to axe of hym no þinge 1584
 I prey þe wif ne do no more soo
 Telle me alway er þat^t I fro þe goo
 If eny dett^{our} haþ in myn absence
 Ypaide þe lest^t þorgh þine negligence 1588
 I my3t^t him axe as þing^t þat^t he haþ paide
 This wif was not^t afferd ne affraied .
 Bot^t boldely sche seide *and* þat^t anoñ
 Mary I diffie þat^t fals monk dañ Ioñ . 1592
 I kepe not^t of his tokens neuer a dele
 He toke me certeyn gold þis wote I wele
 What^t euel thedom on his monkes snoute
 ffor god it^t wote I went^t wiþ-out^t doute 1596
 þat^t he had 3oue it^t me by cause of 3owe
 To do þer-wiþ myn honure *and* my prowre
 ffor Cosynage and eke for bele chere
 þat^t he haþ hadde ful often tyme here 1600
 But^t siþen I see I stonde in such^t disioynt^t
 I wil answe^re 3ou shortely to þe poynt^t
 3e haue moo slakker dettours þan am I
 for I wil pay 3ow wel *and* redely 1604
 ffro day to day *and* if so be I faile
 I am 3oure wif score it^t on my taile
 And I shal paye as sone as euer I may
 ffor by my troupe I haue on myn aray [leaf 80, back] 1608
 And nouht^t on waast^t bystowed euery dele
 And for I haue bystowed it^t so wele
 To 3oure honour for goddes sake I say
 As be not^t wroþ but^t lat^t vs laugh^t *and* play 1612
 3e shullen my Ioly body haue to wedde
 By god I nyl not^t paye 3ou but^t abedde

168 GROUP B. § 4. SHIPMAN'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

fforȝeue it me myn owne spouse dere
 Turne hiderward and make better chere 1616
 This Marchaunte seye þer was no remedye
 And forto chide it ner but foly
 Syþens þat þe þing may not amended be
 Now wif he seide *and* I forȝeue it þe 1620
 But be þi lif ne be no more so large
 kepe bette my good þis ȝeue I þe in charge
 þus enden now my tale and god vs sende
 Tailling y-nowe into our lyues ende. 1624

¶ Thus ended þe shipmannys tale

[*No break in the MS.*]

¶ *þe prologe.***And here bygynneþ þe prologe of þe priores.** [*on leaf 80, back*]

WEl seide by corpus dominus quod *our* hoste
 Now longe mote þou saile by þe coste
 Sire Gentile Maister gentyl marynere
 God ȝeue þe monk a Mȝ. last quade ȝere 1628
 A ha felowes beþ ware of such a Iape
 þe Monk put in þe mannys hode an ape
 And in his wyues eke by seint Austyn
 Draweþ no mo monkes into *ȝour* Inne 1632
 But now passe ouer & lat vs seke aboute
 Who shal now telle first of al þe route
 Anoper tale and wiþ þat word he saide
 As curteisly as it had bene a Mayde 1636
 My lady Piores by ȝoure leue
 So þat I wist I shulde ȝou not greue
 I wolde deme þat ȝe telle shuld
 A tale next if so be þat ȝe wold 1640
 Now wil ȝe vouche sauf my lady dere
 Gladly quod she and seide in þis manere. [leaf 81]

Thus endep þe prologe.[*No break in the MS.*]

And here bygynneþ
þe Priores tale of Alma redemptoris mater.

[*The Prologue.*]

O lord our lord þi name how merveilous ¶ *Domine dominus*
Is in þis large world ysprad quod she *noster.* } cap
ffor nouȝt only þi laude precioüs }
þe Priores tale

Perfourmed is by men of dignite 1646

But by þe mouþe of Children þi bounte

Perfourmed is for in our brest soukinge

Somtyme shewen þei þine heryinge 1649

¶ Wherfor in laude as I can best and may

Of þe and of þe white lile floure

Which þat þe bare and art a maide alway

To telle a storie I wol do my laboure 1653

Nouȝt þat I may encrece her honoure

ffor she he[r] self is honure and þerto rote

Of bounte next her sone of soules bote 1656

O Modere Mayden o. maiden moder fre

O bussh vnbrent brennyng in Moises sizt

But varyssheþ doune fro þe deite

þorgh þine humblesse þe goost þat in þe lizt 1660

Of whos vertue whan he in þine hert alizt

Conceyued was þe faders sapience

Helpe me to telle it in þi reuerence 1663

LAdy þi bounte and þine magnificence

þi vertue and þi grete humilite

þer may no þing expresse in no science

ffor somtyme lady er men preie to þe 1667

þow gost byforn of þi benignite

And getest vs to lizt þorgh þi preire

To gyden vs vnto þi sonne so clere 1670

My Conyng^t is to waike . o blesful quene
 fforto declare þi grete worþinesse [leaf 81, back]
 þat I ne may þe weght^t not^t susteyne
 But^t as a childe of xij monþe elde or lesse 1674
 þat can vnneþes eny word^t expresse
 Riȝt^t so fare I and þerfore I ȝowe preye
 Gideþ my songe þat I shal of ȝou seie 1677

[THE TALE.]

Ther was a child in a grete Cite
 Amonges cristen folk^t in Iwerye
 Susteyned by a lord of þat^t cuntre
 ffor foule vsure & lucre of vilany 1681
 Hatful to Crist^t and to his companye
 And þorghe þe strete men myȝt^t ride & wende
 ffor it was fre and open at^t euery ende 1684

A litel scole of Cristen folk þer stode
 Doune at^t þe ferþer ende in which þer were
 Children an hepe ycome of cristes blode
 þat lerned in þat^t scole ȝere by ȝere 1688
 Such manere doctrine as men vsed þere
 þis is to saie to syngen and to rede
 As smale children done in her childhede . 1691

Amonges pise children was a widowes sone
 A litel Clergioun .vij. ȝere of age
 þat day by day to scole was his wone
 And eke also wher he segħ þe ymage 1695
 Of cristes modere had he in vsage
 As him was tauȝt to knele adoun and seie
 His Aue marye as he goþ by þe weye 1698

172 GROUP B. § 6. Prioress's TALE. Petworth MS.

Thus haþ þis widowe her litel childe tauȝt
 Our blesful lady *cristes* moder dere
 To worship ay *and* he forgate it nouȝt
 ffor sely childȝ wil alday sone lere 1702
 But ay whan I remembre me on þis matere
 Seint Nicholas stant euere in my presence [leaf 82]
 ffor he so ȝonge to *crist* did reuerence 1705

This childe his litel boke lernynge
 As he satte in þe scole at his prymere
 He **Alma redemptoris** / herd singe
 As Children lered her antiphonere 1709
 And as he durst he drow hym ner *and* nere
 And harkened ay þe wordes *and* þe note
 Til he þe first vers couþe al by rote 1712

Nouȝt wist he what þe latyn was to say
 ffor he so ȝonge and tender was of age
 But on a day his felawe gan he pray
 To expoune hym þe songe in his langage 1716
 Or tellen him whi þis songe was in vsage
 This preide he hym to construe *and* declare
 fful ofte tyme vpon his knees bare 1719

His felawe which þat elder was þan he
 Answerd him þus þis songe I haue herd say
 Was maked of our blisful lady fre
 Her to salue and eke her forto pray 1723
 To bene our helpe and socour whan we dey
 I Can no more expounde in þis matere
 I lerne songe I can but smal gramere 1726

And is þis songe ymade in Reuerence
 Of Cristes modere seide þis Innocent
 Now certes I wil done my diligence
 To conne it er cristmas be went 1730

þoo þat I for my primere shal be shent
 And shal be beten pries in an houre
 I wil it konne our lady to honoure 1733

His felawe tauȝt hym homward priuely
 ffro day to daye til he coupe it by rote [leaf 82, back]
 And þan he songe it wel *and* boldely
 ffro word to word acording to þe note 1737
 prise on a day it passeþ þorgh his prote
 To scoleward and hamward whan he went
 On cristes modere sette was his entent 1740

As I haue seide þorgh-oute þe Iwerye
 þis childe as he came to and froo
 fful merely þan wold he singe *and* crye
 On **alma redemptoris** euermoo 1744
 The swetnesse hap his hert perced so
 Of cristes modere þat to hir to prey
 he can not stint of syngyng by þe wey 1747

Our furst foo þe serpent Sathanas
 þat hap in Iwes his waspes nest
 Vpswal and seide o Ebraike puple alas
 Is þis a þing to ȝou þat his honest 1751
 þat such a boy shal walken as hym lest
 In ȝoure despite and singgyng of such sentence
 Which is aȝeinst ȝoure lawes reuerence 1754

From þennes forþ þe Iwes han conspired
 This Innocent out of þis world to chace
 In homycide þerto han þei hured
 þat in a Aley had a prive place 1758
 And as þe childe gan forby forto pace
 þis cursed Iwe him hent *and* helde fast
 And kitte his prote and in a pitte hym cast 1761

174 GROUP B. § 6. Prioress's Tale. Petworth MS.

I say þat in a wardrobe þei hym drwe
 Wher þat þise Iwes purgen entraile
 O cursed folk of herawdes al nwe/
 What may ȝoure euel tent ȝo^u availe 1765
 Mordere wil out it wil not faile .
 And namely þer honure of god shuld sprede [leaf 83]
 þe blood out crieþ of ȝoure cursed dede 1768

O Matir sounded to virginite
 Now maist þow syngen folowing euere in oñ
 þe white lombe celestial quod he
 Of which þe grete euaungelist seynt Iohn 1772
 In Pathmos wrote which seyn þei þat gōn
 Byfore þis lombe and singe a songe al nwe
 That neuer fleshly wommen þei knewe 1775

This poor widowe waiteþ al þat nyȝt
 After this litel childe . but home cam he nouȝt
 ffor whom as sone as it is daies liȝt
 Wiþ face pale for drede and bisy þouȝt 1779
 She haþ atte scole and ellis whe[re] him souȝt
 Til fynaly she gan so fer espie
 þat he was sene last in þe Iwerye 1782

Wiþ moders pite in her brest enclosed
 She goþ as þouȝe she were half out of mynde
 To euery place wher she haþ supposed
 By liklihedde her child to fynde 1786
 And euere on cristes modere meke and kynde
 She cried and at þe last þus she wrouȝt
 Amonge þe cursed Iwes she him souȝt 1789

She freyneþ and she preieþ pitously
 To euery Iwe þat dwelte in pilk place
 To telle her if her child went hem bye
 þei seiden nay but Ihesus of his grace 1793

3aue in her þouȝt^t inwiþ a litel space
 That^t in þat^t place after her sone she cried/
 Ther he was cast^t in a pitte beside 1796

O grete god þat^t perfourmed þi lawde
 By mouþe of Innocence lo here þi myȝt^t [leaf 83, back]
 This Gemme of chastite þis emeraude
 And eke of Marterdom þe rubie briȝt^t 1800
 Ther he wiþ þrote y-corue lay vpriȝt^t
 He **alma redemptoris** gan to singe
 So longe þat^t al þe place gan to rynge 1803

The Cristen folk^t þat^t þorgh þe strete went^t
 Inne comen forto wondren on þis þinge
 And hastely þei for þe prouost^t sent^t
 He come anone wiþ-out^t tarynge 1807
 And herieþ crist^t þat^t is of heuen kyng
 And eke his modere honoure of man kynde
 And after þat^t þe Iwes lete he bynde 1810

This child^t wiþ pitous lamentacioñ
 Vptaken singyng^t his songe alway
 And wiþ honure of grete processioñ
 þei Carien hym to þe next^t abbay 1814
 His modere swownyng^t by þe bere lay
 Vnneþes myȝt^t þe puple þat^t was þere
 þis new Racheff bring^t fro his bere 1817

Wiþ torment^t and with shameful dep^t ilkoñ
 This prouost^t doþ þise Iwes to sterue
 þat^t of þis mordre wist^t and þat^t anōn
 He nolde none such^t cursednesse obserue 1821
 Euel he shal haue þat^t euel wol deserue
 perfore wiþ wilde hors he did hym drawe
 And after þat^t he henge him by þe lawe 1824

¶ Vppon þis bere ay lith þis Innocent
 Byforn þe chief autere whiles masse last
 And after þat þe Abbot wiþ his Couent
 had spedde hem forto bury hym fast 1828
 And whan þei holy water on hym cast
 3it spake þe child whan spreynt was þ^e holy watere [184]
 And songe .**O alma redemptoris matere** 1831

This Abbot which þat was an holy man
 As monkes be or ellis ouȝten to be
 þis ȝonge childe to coniure þei bygan
 And saide good child I hailse þe 1835
 Be vertue of þe holy trinite
 Telle me what is þi cause to singe
 Sipeþ þat þi þrote is kitte at my semyng 1838

My þrote is kitte vnto my nek bone
 Saide þis child and as be way of [k]ynde
 I shuld haue deied longe tyme a-gone
 But Ihesu crist as ȝe in bokes fynde 1842
 Wol þat his glorie last and be in mynde
 And for þe worship of his moder dere
 ȝit may I singe .**o Alma.** loude and clere 1845

This welle of me[r]cye cristes modere swete
 I loued alway as aftere my connyng
 And whan þan I my lif shuld lete .
 To me she cam and bad me for to singe 1849
 þis Anteme verrelly in my mynd deyinge
 As ȝe han herd . and whan þat I had songe
 Me þouȝt she leide a greyn vpon my tonge 1852

Wherfore I singe and singe mote certeyn
 In honure of þe blisful martere fre
 Til of my tunge of taken is þe greyn
 And aftere þat þus seide she to me 1856

My litel childe now wol I fecche þe
 Whan þat þe greyn is fro þi tunge ytake
 Be not agast I wil þe not forsake 1859

This holy monke þis abbot hym mene I
 His tunge out kaught and toke away þ^e greyn/ [leaf 84, back]
 And he ȝaue vp þe goost ful softly
 And whan þe abbot had þis wonder seyn 1863
 His salte teeres striked down as reyn/
 And gruf he fille al plat to þe ground
 And stille he lay as he had bene ybound 1866

The Couent eke lay vpon þe payment
 Weping and heryng cristes moder dere
 And after þat þei rise *and* forþ bene went
 And toke away þis martere fro his bere 1870
 And in a toumebe of Marble stonys clere
 Enclosen þei his litel body swete
 Ther he is nowe god leue vs forto mete 1873

O yonge hugħ of lyncoln slayn also
 With cursed Iwes as it is notable
 ffor it nys but a litel while agoo
 Prei eke for vs we sinful folk vnstable 1877
 þat of his mercy god so merciable
 On vs his grete mercy multiplie
 ffor reuerence of his modere marye . 1880

¶ Here endep þe prioress tale.

[*The Man of Law's Prologue and Tale follow in the MS.*]

GROUP B. (α. FRAGMENT II.)

§ 1. MAN OF LAW'S HEAD-LINK.

PETWORTH MS.

¶ Prologus
viri legis

And here by- <sup>[on leaf 84,
back]</sup>

gynnes þe prologe of þe man of lawe

Oure hoost^t segh wel þat^t þe briȝt^t sonne
 þe arke of þis artificial day hadde ronne
 þe feerþ part^t and half an houre or more
 And þough he were not^t depe expert^t in lore 4
 He wist^t it^t was þe xviij. day
 Of Aprile þat^t is massagere to may
 And seghe wel þat^t þe shadowe of euery tre
 Was as in length þe same quantite 8
 þat^t was þe body erecte þat^t caused it^t
 And þerfore by þe shadowe he toke his witte
 þat^t Phebus which þat^t shoon so clere *and* briȝt^t
 Degrees was xlv. clombe on hight^t 12
 And for þat^t day as in þat^t latitude [leaf 85]
 Hit^t was .x. of þe klok^t he gan conclude
 And sodeynly he plizt^t his hors about
 Lordingges quod he I warne ȝow al þis route 16
 þe feer party of þis day is goon
 Now for þe loue of god and of seint^t Iohn
 Leseþ no tyme as ferforþ as ȝe may
 Lordingges þe tyme it^t wastep^t boþ nyȝt^t *and* day 20
 And stelep^t from vs what^t priuely slepinge
 And what^t þourgh neglygence in our wakinge
 As doþ þe streme þat^t turnep^t neuere agayn /
 Descending^t from þe mounteyn into playn 24
 Wel can Senec^t and many a philosophre
 Byweillen tyme more þan gold in Cofre
 ffor losse of Catel may recouered be
 But^t losse of tyme shendeþ vs quod he 28

It wil not^t come aȝein wiȝ-uten drede
 No more þan wil Malkyns Maidenhede
 Whan she haȝ lost^t it^t in her wantonesse
 Lat^t vs nout^t mowlen þus in Ydelnesse 32
 Sire man of lawe quod he so haue I blesse
 Telle vs a tale anoon as forward^t es
 Ȝe bene submitted þourȝ ȝour fre assent^t
 To stonden in þis cas at^t my Iuggement^t 36
 Aquiteȝ ȝou nowe of ȝoure biheest^t
 þan han ȝe done ȝoure devoire at^t þe leest^t
 Oost quod he *depardeux* ich assent^t
 To breke forward^t is not^t myñ entent^t 40
 Biheest^t is dette and I wil holde fayne
 Al my biheest^t I can no better seyne
 ffor such lawe as a man ȝeueȝ anoȝer wiȝt^t
 He shuld hym self vsen it^t by riȝt^t 44
 Thus wil our text^t but^t napeles certeyne
 I can riȝt^t now no trusty tale seyne
 þat^t chaucere þouȝt^t he can but^t lewdely
 On meters and in rymyng^t craftely 48
 Haȝ seide hem in such englissh as he can [leaf 85, back]
 Of olde tyme as knoweȝ mony a man
 And if he haue nouȝt^t seide hem leue broȝer^t
 In oo boke he haȝ seide in a-noȝer 52
 ffor he haȝ told^t of louers vp *and* down
 Moo þan Ovide made mencion
 In his Epistels þat^t bene ful olde
 What^t shuld I tellen hem siȝ þei be tolde 56
 In ȝouȝe he made of Ceys *and* Alcione
 And siȝ haȝ he spoke of euerychone
 Thise noble wyues and þise louyers eke
 Who so þat^t wol his large volom seke 60
 Cleped þe Seintes legende of Cupide
 þer may he see þe large woundes wide
 Of lucesse and of Babylan Tysbe
 þe swerȝ of Dido for þe fals ene 64

The tre of Phillis for hir demophon
 þe pleynte of Dyanyre *and* of Hermyon
 Of Andrian and of ysiphilee
 þe barayn Isle stonding^t in þe see 68
 þe dreynt^t leander for his erro
 The teres of Elyne and eke þe woo
 Of Brixseid^t and of þe ladomya
 The cruelte of quene Medea / 72
 þe litel children honging^t by þe hals
 ffor þe Iason þat^t was of loue so fals
 Of ypinistra penolope Alceste
 3oure wivehode he commendep wiþ þe best^t 76
 But^t certeynly no worde ne writeþ he
 Of þilk wicke ensample of canace
 þat^t luffed her oune broþere synfully
 Of suche cursed storis I seie fye 80
 Or ellis of Tiro Appolloneus
 How þat^t þe cursed king^t Antiocus
 Biraft^t his douzter of her maydenhede
 þat^t is so horrible a tale for to rede 84
 Whan he her drewe þorgh-out^t þe pament^t [leaf 86]
 And þerfor he of ful avisement^t
 Nold neuer write in none of his *sermons*
 Of such vnkinde abhomynacions. 88
 Ne I ne wil none reherce if þat^t I may
 But^t of my tale how shal I done þis day
 Me were loth^t be likned doutlees
 To muses þat^t men clepen pieriades 92
 Methanorphoseos wote what^t I mene
 But^t napelees I recche not^t a bene
 þouze I come after hym wiþ hawe bake
 I speke in prose and lat^t hym rymes make 96
 And wiþ þat^t word^t he wiþ a sobre chere
 Bygan his tale as 3e shal after here 98

¶ Thus endep þe prologe [*no break in the MS.*]

¶ Incipit fabula

And here by-
gynneþ þe Mannys of lawe Tale

[Prologue.]

O hateful harme condicioñ of pouert^t 99
 Wiþ þrust^t wiþ cold^t with hunger so confounded^t
 To asken help þe shamest^t in þine hert^t
 If þowe now aske wiþ nede art^t þou so wounded^t 102
 þat^t verrey nede vnwrappeþ al þi wonud hed
 Maugre in þine hede þou most^t for indigence
 Or stele or begge or borowe þi dispence 105

Thow blamest^t *crist*^t and seist^t ful bitterly
 He mysdeparteþ riches temporal
 þi neighbour þow witest^t sinfully
 And saist^t þou hast^t to litel and he hap^t aþ 109
 Parfay seist^t þou somtyme he rekne shaft
 Whan þat^t his tale shal brenne in þ^e glede
 ffor he nouȝt^t helpeþ nedeful in her nede 112

Herken what^t is þe menyng^t of þe wise
 Bett^t is to dyen þan haue indigence
 þi self neighbour wil þe despise
 If þou be poor fare wele þi reuerence. 116
 ȝit^t of þe wise man take þis sentence [leaf 86, back]
 Al þe daies of poor men ben wikke
 Be war þerfore er þou come in þat prikke 119

ȝif þou be poor þi broþer hateþ þe
 And alle þi freendes fleen fro þe alas
 O riche marchauntes ful of wele be ȝe
 O noble prudent^t folk as in þis cas 123
 ȝoure bagges bene not filled with ambees aas
 But wiþ sise cynk þat^t renneþ for ȝour chance
 At Cristes mas mery may ȝe daunce 126

3e seken londe and fle for 3our wynnyngges
 As wise folk þat knowen al þe state
 Of regnes 3e bene fadere of Tithenges
 And tales bopen of pees & debate 130
 I was riȝt nowe of tales desolate
 Ner þat a marchaunt gone is mony a 3ere
 Me taught a tale which þat 3e shal here 133
 [Only the usual stanza-gap of a line in the MS.]

[As there is no room in this print for the Latin notes in the margin of the MS, they are put here, with the numbers of the lines to which they refer.]

- l. 197. ¶ *Ceptra pharonei fratrum discordia thebe*
 ¶ *flammam phetentis deutalionis aque*
 ¶ *In stellis priami. species audacia turni*
 ¶ *Sensus vlixus herculies que vigor* [MS, leaf 87, back.]
- l. 295. ¶ *Vnde Philomeus libro .j^o. c^o. 8^o. primi motus celi duo sunt quorum vnus est qui mouet totum semper ab oriente & occidente vno modo super orbis & cetera. Ita aliter vero motus est qui mouet orbem stellarum currencium contra motum primum viz ab occidente in orientem super alios duos polos & cetera. Omnes enim concordati sunt quod elociones sint debiles nisi in diuitibus. habent enim. isti licet debilitentur eorum electiones radicem .i. natiuitates eorum que confortat omnem planetam debilem in Itinere. Hec. Philosophus.* [MS, leaf 89.]
- l. 421. ¶ *Semper mundane leticie tristicia repentina succedit. Mundana ergo felicitas multis amaritudinibus est respersa Extrema gaudii. luctus occupat. Audi ergo salubre consilium in die bonorum ne in memor sis malorum.* [MS, leaf 91.]
- l. 771. ¶ *Quid turpius ebrioso cui fetor in ore. tremor in corpore. qui promit stulta. prodit occulta Cui mens alienatur facies transformatur nullum enim latet secretum. vbi regnat Ebrietas.* [MS, leaf 96, back.]
- l. 925. ¶ *O extrema libidinis turpitudine que non solum mentem effeminat. sed et corpus enervat semper sequuntur dolor & penitencia post & cetera.* [MS, leaf 99.]
- l. 1127. ¶ *A mane vsque ad vesperam mutabitur tempus. tenent tympanum & gaudent ad sonum organi.* [MS, leaf 102, back.]
- l. 1134. *Quis vnquam vnicam diem totam duxit in sua delectacione iocundam quem in aliqua parte die reatus consciencie vel impetus ire vel motus concupiscencie inde non turbauerit quem liuor inuidie vel ardor auaricie vel timor superbie non vexauerit. quem aliqua iactura vel offensa vel passio non commouerit & cetera.* [MS, leaf 102, back.]

[*TALE. PART I.*]

In Surry whilom dwelt a companye
Of Chapmen riche *and* þerto sadde *and* trewe
þat wide where setten her spicerie
Cloþes of golde and saten riche of hue 137
Her chaffare was so þrifty *and* so nwe
þat euery wiȝt haþ deynte to chafare
Wiþ hem and eke to sellen hem her ware 140

Nowe fille it þat þe maisters of þat sort
 Han shapen hem to Rome forto wende
 Were it for chapmanhode or for disport
 Noon oþer message wold þei þider sende 144
 But comen hem self to Rome þis is þe ende
 And in suche place as þouȝt hem auauntage
 ffor her entent þei taken her herbergage 147

Soiourned han þise merchaundes in þat toun [leaf 87]
 A certeyn tyme as fille to her plesaunce
 But so byfelle þat þe excellen renoun
 Of þe Emperour douȝtere Dame Castaunce 151
 Reported was *with* euery circumstaunce
 Vnto þise Surryen merchauntz *in* such wise
 ffro day to day as I shal þou deuise 154

This was þe comon vois of euery man
 Our Emperour of Rome god hym see
 A doughter hap þat siþe þe world bygan
 To rekne as wel her goodnes as bewte 158
 Nas neuere such anoþer as is she
 I prei to god in honure hir sustene
 And wolde she were of al Europe þe quene ¶ *Europa est tertia /*

IN hure is hegh bewte wiþ-outē pride
 3ouþe wiþ-out^t grenehode or folye
 To aH her werkes vertue is her gide
 Humblesse haþ selayn in hire al tyrannye 165
 She is a myrour of al Curtesie
 Hire herte is verrey chambere of holynesse
 Her hand mynystre of fredam for almesse 168

And al þis vois was soþ as god is trewe
 But^t nowē to purpoos lat^t vs turne ageyn
 þise Merchauntz han do fraught her shippes newe
 And whan þei han þis blisful Maiden seyn 172
 Howe to Surrey ben þei went^t ageyn
 And done her nedes as þei han do 3ore
 And lyuen in wele I can say 3ou no more 175

Now fille it^t þat^t þise marchauntes stoden in grace
 Of hym þat^t was þe Sawden of Surrye
 ffor whan þat^t þei came from eny straunge place
 He wolde of his benygne Curtesie. 179
 Make hem good chere and bysillie asprie [leaf 87, back]
 Tipingges of sondry rewmes forto lere
 þe wondres þat^t þei my3t^t se or here 182

Amonges opere þingges specialy
 Thise marchauntes han hym tolde of dame custauce
 So grete noblesse in earnest^t ceriously
 þat^t þis sowden haþ caught^t so grete plesaunce 186
 To han her figure in his remembraunce
 And al his lust^t and al his bysy cure
 Was forto loue her^t þe whilis his lif may dure 189

Perauenture in þe pikke large book
 Which þat^t cloped is heuene ywriten was
 Wiþ sterres whan þat^t he his birth toke
 þat^t he for loue shuld^t han his deth^t allas 193

ffor in þe sterres clerer þan is þe glas /
 y-writen god wote who coude it rede
 þe depe of every man *with*-outen drede 196

In Sterris mony a wynter þer byforñ
 Was writen þe dep of Ector achilles
 Of pompe Iulius er þei were born
 þe strif of Thebes and of hercules / 200
 Of sampson turuno *and* of Socrates
 þe dep but mennys wittes beñ so dulle
 þat no wizt can wel rede it at þe fulle 203

This souden for his priue counseñ sent
 And shortly of þis matere forto pase
 He hap to hem declared his entent
 And seide hem certeyn but he myzt haue grace 207
 To haue custance wiþ-Inne a litel space
 He nas but dede *and* charged hem in hie
 To shapen for his lif somme remedye 210

Dyuers men dyuers þingges seiden
 þe argumentz Custen vp and Douñ [leaf 88]
 Mony a sotele resoñ forþ þei leideñ
 þei speken of magik and abusioñ 214
 But fynaly as in conclusioñ
 þei can not seen in þat noñ *auauntage*
 Ne in noon oþer way sauf mariage 217

Than segh þei þere in such difficulte
 Be way of reson forto speke al playñ
 By cause þat þer was such dyuersite
 Bytwene hor boþ lawes þat þei seyñ 221
 þei trowe þat no cristen prince wold fayn
 Wedden his childe vnder oure lawes so swete
 þat vs was taught be Mahoun our prophete 224

And he answered rap^{er} þan I lese
 Custance I wil be Cristened doutlees
 I mote bene hers I may non oþere chese
 I prei þou holde þoure argumentes in pees 228
 Saueþ my lif and beþ not rechelees
 To geten hure þat haþ my lif in cure
 ffor in þis woo I may not longe endure 231

What nedep gretter dilataciō
 I saye by tretis and Embassadrye
 And by þe popes mediaciō
 And alle þe cherch and aȝ þe Chivalrye 235
 þat in destrucciō of Mawmetrie
 And in encrees of cristes lawe dere
 þei bene acorded so as ȝe shal here 238

Now þat þe Sawden and his Baronage
 And al his lieges shuld ycristened be
 And he shal haue custance in mariage
 And certeyn gold I note what quantite 242
 And herto founden sufficient suerte
 This same accorde was sworn in eiper side [leaf 88, back]
 Now faire custauunce almyȝty god þe gyde 245

Now woldt somme men waiten as I gesse
 þat I shulde tellen al þe purviaunce
 That þe Emperour of his noblesse
 haþ shapen for his douȝter dame Custaunce 249
 Wel may men knowe þat so grete ordynaunce
 May no man telle in a litel clause
 As was araied for so hie a cause 252

Bisshopes bene shapen wiþ hure forto wende
 Lordes ladys knyȝtes of renoun
 And oþer folk ynow þis is þe ende
 And notified is þorgh-out þe toun 256

That euery wight *with* grete deuocioun
 Shulde preye crist þat he þis mariage
 Resceyue in gre and spede þis viage 259

The day is *commen* of her departinge
 I seie þe wooful day fatal is come
 That þer may be no lenger tariyng
 But forþward þei hem dressed al and some 263
 Custance þat *with* sorowe is al ouercome
 fful pale arist and dresseþ hure to wende
 ffor wel shee seeþ þer is noon opere ende 266

Allas what wondere is it þouze she wepte
 þat shal be sent to straunge naciō
 ffro frendes þat so tenderly her kepte
 And to be bounden vnder subiecciō 270
 Of oon she knoweþ nouȝt his *condiciō*
 Husbondes bene all good and han ben ȝore
 þat knowen wives I dar seie ȝou no more 273

Fadere she seide þⁱ wrecched child custance
 Thi ȝonge douȝtere fostred vp so soft ¶ Cap. 9 [leaf 89]
 And ȝe my modere my souereyn plesaunce
 Ouer al þinge outaken crist aloft 277
 Custaunce ȝoure child hire recomanndeþ oft
 Vnto ȝoure grace for I shal to Surrye
 Ne shal I neuere seyn ȝow more wiþ ye 280

Allas vnto þe Barbarye naciō
 I most anoon siþ it is ȝoure wille
 But crist þat starf for oure redempciō
 So ȝeue me grace his heestes to fulfille 284
 I wrecched womman no fors þouze I spille
 Wommen ben borū to thraldom and penaunce
 And to bene vnder mannes gouernaunce 287

I trowe at Troye whan purrus brak þe waȝt
 Or ylyon þat brent Thebes þat Cite
 Nor Rome for þe harme þorgh Hanybaȝ
 þat Romaynes han venqwished tymes þre 291
 Nas herd such tendere weping for pite
 As in þe Chambere for her departinge
 But forþ she mote wher she wepe or singe 294

O first mouynge cruel firmament [Latin note, p. 133.]
 Wip þine dyurnal sweigh þat crowdest aye 182
 And hurlest al from eest to occident
 That naturelly wold hold anoþer waye 298
 þi Crowding sette þe heuene in such araye
 At þe bygynnyng of þis feers viage
 That cruel mars haþ slayn þis mariage 301

Infortunat ascendent tortuous
 Of which þe lord is helplees falle alas
 Out of his Angle in to þe derkest hous
 O Mars o Atazir in this caas 305
 O feble mone vnhappy bene þi paas/
 þow knettest þe þer þou art not receyued [leaf 89, back]
 Ther þou were wele fro þennes now art þou weyued 308

Imprudent Emperour of Rome alas ¶ Inspirant
 Was þer no Philisophre in al þi toun
 Is no tyme bette þan oþer in such cas/
 Of viage is þer non election 312
 Namely to folk of high condicioñ
 Nat whan a roote is of a birþ yknowe
 Allas 3e bene to lewde or to selowe 315

The shippe is brouȝt þis woful faire mayde
 Solempnely wip euery circumstaunce
 Nowe Ihesu crist be wip ȝou al she seide
 Ther is no more but fare wel faire Custaunce 319

She peyneþ hure to make good countenaunce
 And forþe I lete hire saile in þis manere
 And turne I wil ageyn to my matere 322

The modere of þe Sowden welle of vices
 Espied haþ her sones pleyn entent
 Howe he wil lete his olde sacrificises
 And rizt anone she for her counsel sent 326
 And þei ben commen to knowe what she ment
 And whan assembled was þis folk in fere
 She sette her doune and seide as 3e shal here 329

Lordes quod she 3e knowe euerichon
 Howe þat my sone in poynt is forto lete
 þe holy lawes of our akkaron
 3eueene by goddes massagere Makamete 333
 But on avowe to grete god I hete
 þe lif shal raþer out of my body sterte
 Or makametes lawe out of myn herte. 336

What shuld vs tyden of þis newe lawe
 But þraldome to our bodies and penaunce {leaf 90}
 And afterward in helle to ben drawe
 ffor we reveied Mahonne our creaunce 340
 But lordes wil 3e maken assurance
 As I shal sein assenting to my lore
 And I shal make vs sauf for euermore 343

¶ Thei sworn and assenten euery man
 To lyve and dye wiþ hure and by hure stonde
 And euery in þe best wise he can
 To strengthen hure shal al his freendes fonde 347
 And she haþ þis emprise taken on honde
 Which 3e shal here þat I shal devise
 And to hem alle she spak in þis wise 350

We shul first^t feyn vs cristendom to take
 Cold watere shal not^t greue vs but^t a lite
 And I shal suche a reuel and feest^t make
 þat^t as I trowe I shal þe Sowden quite 354
 ffor þouze his wif be cristned neuer so white
 She shal haue nede to wassh away þe rede
 þough^h she a font^t ful of water wip her lede 357

O Sawdenesse Roote of Iniquite
 Virago þou Semyram þe Second^t
 O Serpent^t vnder femyninete
 Like to þe Serpent^t depe in helle ybound^t 361
 O feyned womman al þat^t may confound^t
 Vertue and Innocence þorgh^h þi malice
 Is bredde in þe as nest^t of euery vice 364

O Sathan envious sip þilk day
 þat^t þou were chased fro *our* heritage
 Wel knewest^t þou to wommen þ^e old^t way
 þou madest^t Eva to bringe in seruage 368
 Thow wilt^t fordone cristen mariage
 Thyñ Instrument^t so wele away þe while
 Makestowe of wommen wham þou wilt^t begile [leaf 90, back]

This Sowdonesse whom I þus blame *and* warye
 Lat^t prively her counsel gone her way
 What^t shuld I in þis tale lenger tarye
 She rideþ to þe Sawden on a daye 375
 And seide him þat^t she wold reneye her laye
 And Cristendom of preestes hondes fonge
 Repenting^t she heþen was so longe 378

Biseching^t him to done her þat^t honoure
 þat^t she most^t han þ^e cristen folk to feest^t
 To plesen hem I wil do my labour
 þe Sawden seiþ I wil doñ at^t þour heest^t 382

And knelinge þonkeþ hure of þat request
 So glad he was he nyst what to seye
 She kist her sone and hom she goþ her way 385

[PART II.]

Arriued bene þise cristen folk to londe
 In Surrye wiþ a grete solempne Route
 And hastely þis Sowden sent his sonde
 ffurst to his modere and al þe regne aboute 389
 And seide his wiff was *commen* out of doute
 And preide hure forto riden ageyn þe quene
 The honure of his regne to sustene 392

Grete was þe prees and rich was tharray
 Of Surriens and romaynes met yfere
 The modere of þe Sowden riche *and* gay
 Resceyueþ her wiþ as glad a chere 396
 As eny modere myȝt her douȝter dere
 And to þe next Cite þer beside
 A soft paas solempnely þei ryde 399

Naught trowe I þe triumphe of Iulius
 Of which þat lucan makeþ such a boost
 Was ryallere ne more curious [leaf 91]
 Than was þe assemple of þis blisful hoost 403
 But þis scorpion þis wikke goost
 þe Sawdenesse for al her flateringe
 Cast vnder þis ful mortally to styngre 406

The Sowden *commeþ* hym self sone after þis
 So Rialli þat wonder is to telle
 He welcommeþ hure *with* alle ioye *and* blis
 And þus in merþe and Ioie I lete hem dwelle 410

þe froyte of þis matere þat I telle
 Whan tyme come men þouȝt it for þe best
 That reueH stint and men goñ to her rest 413

The tyme come þis olde Sawdenesse
 Ordeyned haþ þis feest of which I told
 And to þe fest cristen folk hem dresse
 In general boþ ȝenge and old 417
 Here may men feest and rialte bihold
 And deyntes moo þan I can 30ⁿ devise
 But al to dere þei bouȝt it er þei rise 420

O sodeyn woo þat euer art successoure [Latin note, p. 133.]
132
 To worldly blisse sp[r]ayned is wiþ bitterncsse
 þe end of þe ioie of our worldely laboure
 Woo occupieþ þe fyne of our gladnesse 424
 Herk þis counsaile for þi sikernesse
 Vppon þi glade day haue in þi mynde
 þe vnwar woo or harme þat commeth behinde 427

For shortely forto tellen at oon word
 The Sowden and þe cristen euerechone
 Bene al to-hewe and stikked at þe bord
 But it were oonly dame custance allone 431
 þis olde Sawdenes þis cursed krone
 haþ wiþ her frendes done þis cursed dede
 ffor she her self wold al þe cuntre lede [leaf 91, back]

NE þer nas Surrien noon þat was conuerted
 þat of þe counsaile of þe Sawden wote
 þat he nas al to-hewe er he asterted
 And Custaunce han þei take anoñ fote hoot 438
 And in a shippe al steerless god woote
 þei han hure sette and bidden her lerne saile
 Out of Surry ageynward to ytaile 441

A certeyn tresour þat she þider ladde
 And soþe to seyn vitaille grete plente
 They han her ȝeuen and cloþes eke she hadde
 And fforþ she sailleþ in þe salt see 445
 O my custaunce ful of benygnyte
 O Emperours ȝonge douȝtere dere.
 He þat is lord of fortune be þi stere 448

She blesseþ and wiþ ful pitous voys
 Vnto þe Crois of crist þus seid she
 O cleer o. welful autere holy croys
 Rede of þe lambes blood ful of pite 452
 That wessh þe world from þe olde iniquyte
 Me from þe feende and from his clawes kepe
 þat day þat I shal drenche in þe depe 455

Victorious tree protection of trewe
 That oonly worþi were for to bere
 The king of heuene wiþ his woundys newe
 The white lombe þat hirte was with a spere 459
 flemer of feendes out of hym and here
 On which þi lyues feiþfully extenden
 Me kepe and ȝeue myght my lyf tamenden 462

Yeeres and daies fleet þis Creature
 Thorgh-out þe see of Grece vnto þe strayte
 Of Marrok as it was hir aventure [leaf 92]
 O mony a sory mele nowe may she baite 466
 After her deth ful oft may she wayte
 Er þat þe wilde waves wil her dryve
 Vnto þe place þere she shal aryue 469

MEn myghten axen whi she was not slayn
 Eke atte feeste who myght her body saue
 I Answer to þat demannde agayn
 Who saued Danyel in þe horrible caue 473

Ther euery wight saf he maister' or knaue
 Was wiþ þe leon frette or a-stert'
 No wight' but' god þat' hem bare in his hert' 476

God list' to shewe his wonderful myracle
 In hir' þat' shee shulde seen his myzty werkes
 Crist' which þat is to euery harme triacle
 By certayne meenes oft' / as knowen clerkes 480
 Dop þing' for certeyn ende þat' ful derk es
 To mannys witt' þat' for our ignoraunce
 Ne kon not' knowe his prudent' puruyaunce 483

Now siþ she was not' at' þe feest' yslawe
 Who kepte her from þe drenching' in þe see
 Who kepte Ionas in þe fisshes mawe
 Til he was spowted vp at' Nynyve 487
 Wel may men knowe it was no wight' but' he
 What' kept' puple Ebrayk from drenchinge
 Wiþ drie feet' þorgh' out' þe see passinge 490

Who bad þe foure spiretes of tempest'
 That' power han boþ annoyen londe *and* see
 Boþ norþe and souþe *and* also west' *and* Eest'
 Annoyeth neiþer See londe ne tree 494
 Soply þe Comannder' of þat' was he
 That' from þe tempest' ay þis womman kept'
 As wel whan she woke as whan she slepte [leaf 92, back]

Where myzt' þis womman mete or drynk' haue
 Thre zere or more how lasteth hir' vitaille
 Who fedde þe Egipcien mary in þe Caue
 Or in desert' noon but' Crist' saunz faille 501
 V. Mf. folk it' was as grete mervaille
 Wiþ loues .v. and fisshes two to fede
 God sent' his foysen at' her grete nede 504

She dryueþ forþ into our' Occiān
 Thorgh-out' cure wilde See to atte last
 Vnder an hold þat nempne I ne can
 ffor in Nourth humberlonð þ^e wawe hire cast' 508
 And in þe sonde her shipp stiked so fast
 þat þennes wold it' not' of al a tyde
 The wille of *Crist* was þat' she shuld' abide 511

The Constable of þe Castel down is fare
 To seen þis werk and al þe ship he souȝt
 And fonde þis very womman ful of care
 He fonde also þe tresoure þat' she brouȝt' 515
 In her langage mercy she bysouȝt'
 The lif' out' of her body forto twynne
 Hire to delyuere of woo þat' she was Inne 518

A Maner' latyn corrupte was her speche
 But' algates þer-by was she vnderstonde
 The Constable whan he list' no lengere seche
 This wooful womman brouȝt' he to þe londe 522
 She kneleþ doune *and* þonkeþ goddys sonde
 But' what' she was she wolde no man seye
 ffor foule ne faire þouȝe þat' she shuld' deye 525

She seide she was so mased in the See
 þat' she forgate hure mynde by hure trouȝe
 The Constable of hire haþ so grete pite [leaf 93]
 And eke his wiff þat' þei wepen for rouȝe 529
 She was so diligent' wiȝ-uten slouȝe
 To serue and plese euerech in þat' place
 That' al her louen þat' loken on her face / 532

The Constable and dame Ermengeld' his wiff
 Were paynynes and þat' contray euerywhere
 But' Hermengilt' loued hure riȝt' as hir liff
 And Constance haþ so longe soiournd þere 536

In Orisons wiþ mony a bitter tere
Til Ihesu haþe conuerted þorgh his grace
Dame hermengild Constablesse of þat place 539

In aȝ þat londe durst none cristen route
Alle Cristen folk ben fledde fro þat cuntre
Thorgh paynymes þat conquered þer aboute
þe plages of þe north by lond *and* see 543
To wales fledde þe Cristiante
Of olde Bretoyne dwelling in þe Ile
Ther was hure refute for þe mene while 546

But ȝit nas neuere cristen Bretoyne so exiled
That þer nas somme in her priuete
Honoured Crist and heþen folk begyled
And nyȝe þe Castel such þer dwelled thre 550
That oon of hem was blynde *and* myȝt not see
But it were wiþ þilk yen of his mynde
With which men seen after þat þei bene blynde 553

Briȝt was þe sonne as in þat somers day
for whiche þe constable and his wif also
And Custance han ytake þe riȝt way
Toward þe see a forlonge way or two 557
To pleien and to romen to *and* froo /
And in her walk þis blynde man þei mette
Croked and olde wiþ fast eyen yshett [leaf 93, back]

In þe name of crist cried þis blynd Bretoun
Dame hermegild ȝeue me siȝt agayn
This lady wexe a-fraied of þe soun
Lest þat her husbond shortely forto seyne 564
Wold hure for Ihesu cristes loue haue slayn
Til Custance made hure bold *and* bad hire wirche
The wille of crist as douȝter of his chirche 567

The constable wexe abasshed of þat sight
 And seide what amounteþ al þis fare
 Custance answerd Sire it is cristes myȝt
 þat helpeþ folk out of þe fendes snare 571
 And so ferforþ she can our lay declare
 þat she þe constable er it was eve
 Conuertep and on crist made hym byleue 574

This Constable nas no þing lord of þis place
 Of which I speke þer he Custaunce fonde
 But kepte it strongly mony a wynter space
 Vnder Alla king of aȝ Norþhumberlonde 578
 þat was full wise and worþi of his honde
 Ageyne þe scottes as men may wel here
 But turne I wil ageyn to my matere 581

Sathan þat euere vs waiteþ to begile
 Seghe of Custance al hure perfeccioun
 And cast anone howe he myȝt quyte her while
 And made a yonge knyght þat dwelt in þe town 585
 Loue hire so hoot of foule affeccioun
 þat verrely hym þouȝt he shulde spille
 But he of hire ones myȝt haue his wille 588

He woweþ hure but it availleþ nouȝt
 She wolde do no synne by no weye
 And for despite he compased in his þouȝt [leaf 91]
 To make hure a shameful deep to dye 592
 He waiteþ whan þe constable was away
 And priuely vpon a nyȝt he crept
 In hermengildes Chambre while she slept 595

Wery for-waked in her Orisons
 Slepeþ Custance and hermengild also /
 This knyght þourgh Sathanas temptaciōns
 Al softly is to þe bed y-goo 599

And kitte þe prote of hermengild atwoo ,
 And laide þe bloody knyf by dame Custaunce
 And went his waye þer god ȝeue hym meschaunce 602

Sone after Commeþ þis Constable home agayn
 And Eke Alla þat kinge was of þat londe
 And segþ his wiff dispitously slayn
 ffor whiche ful oft he wepte and wronge his honde 606
 And in þe bedde þe bloody knyf he fonde
 By dame Custaunce alas what myȝt she say
 ffor verry woo her witte was al away 609

So kinge Alla was tolde al þis meschaunce
 And eke þe tyme and where and in what wise
 þat in a shipp was founden þis Custaunce
 As here byforn ȝe han herde devise 613
 The kingges hert of pite gan agrise
 Whan he seye so benigne a creature
 ffalle in dissese and in mysauenture 616

For as þe lombe toward þ^e deth is brouȝt
 So þis Innocent stant to-fore þe king
 þis fals knyȝt þat hap þis tresoñ wrouȝt
 Bereþ hure on honde þat she hap do þis þing 620
 But napelees þer was grete mournyng
 Amonge þe puple and seie þai can not gesse
 Tha[t] she had done so grete a wickednesse [leaf 94, back]

For þei han seyn her euere so vertuous
 And louyng hermengile riȝt as her liff
 Of þis bare witesse euerich in þat hous
 Saue he þat hermengild slowe with his knyff 627
 This gentile kinge hap kauȝt a gret motiff
 Of þis witesse and þouȝt he wold enquire
 Depper in þis caas troupe forto lere 630

Allas Custaunce þow nast' no champyōn
 Ne fighte Canstowe nat' so wele away
 But' he þat' for oure redempciōn
 And bonde Sathan and lyeþ hym þer he lay 634
 So be þi strong' Champion þis daye
 ffor but' Criste on þe miracle kith
 Wiþ-owten gilt' þou shalt' be slayn as swiþe 637

She sette her doune on knees and þer she seide
 Immortal god þat' sauedest' Susanne
 ffro fals blame and þou merciful maide
 Marye I mene douȝter to seint' Anne 641
 Byforn whoos childe aungels sing' Osanne
 If I be gitlees of þis felonye
 My socoure be for ellis shal I dye 644

Haue ȝe not' sene somtyme a pale face
 Among' a prees of him þat' haþ be ladde
 Toward' þe deþe where as he gete no grace
 And swich a coloure in his face haþ hadde 648
 Men myȝt' knowe his face þat' was bistadde
 Amonge alle þe faces of þat' route
 So stant Custance and lokeþ hire aboute 651

O quenes lyuyng in prosperite
 Duchesses and ȝe ladies euerechone
 Haue some rouþe on her aduersite [leaf 95]
 An Emperours douȝtere stant' allone 655
 She haþ no wiȝt' to whom to make her mone
 O blood real þat' stondest' in þis drede
 ffer bene þi frendes at' þi grete nede 658

This Alla king' haþ swich compassioun
 As Geltile hert' is fulfilled of pite
 þat' from his eyen ranne þe water down
 Now hasteli do fecche a boke quod he 662

And if þis knyght wil swere howe þat she
 þis womman sclowe ȝit wil we vs. avise
 Whom þat we wold shuld be *our* Iustise 665

A breton booke writen *with* euaungelies
 Was fette and þer-on he swore anone
 She giltif was in þe mene whiles
 An honde him smote vpon þe nekke bone 669
 þat doune he felle at ones as a stone
 And boþe his eyen brast out of his face
 In sizt of euery body in þat place 672

A voys was herde in general audience
 And seide þou hast disslaundered giltelees
 þe douȝter of holy church in high presence
 Thus hastowe done and ȝit I mot hold my pees 676
 Of þis mervaille agast was all þe prees
 As mazed folk þei stoden euerechone
 ffor drede of wreche sauþ Custance alone 679

Grete was þe drede and eke þe repentaunce
 Of hem þat hadden wrongt suspeciouñ
 Vppon þis cely Innocent Custaunce
 And for þis miracle in conclusioun 683
 And by Custance Mediacioun
 þe kinge and mony anoþer in þat place
 Conuerted were þonked be goddis grace [leaf 95, back]

This fals knyght was selayn for his vntrouþe
 By Iuggement of Alla hastily
 And ȝit Custance haþ of his deþ gret rouþe
 And after þis Ihesus of his mercye 690
 Made Alla wedden ful solempnely
 This holy maiden þat is so briȝt and shene
 And þus haþ crist made Custance a quene 693

But who was wooful if I shal not lye
 Of þis wedding but donegildt *and* no moo /
 The kingges modere ful of Tyrannye
 Hire þou3t her cursed hert brast a two 697
 She woldt not her sone had done so /
 Hire þou3t a despite þat he shulde take
 So straunge a creature vnto his make 700

ME list not of þe Chaf ne of þe stre
 Make so longe a tale as of þe corne
 What shuld I tellen of þe Rialte
 Of mariage or which cours goþ byforne 704
 Who bloweþ in trompe or in an horne
 þ^e firwte of euery tale is forto seye
 þe[i] and drinke. þei daunce singe or pley. 707

Thei gone to bedde as it was skil *and* ri3t
 ffor þouze þat wives bene ful holy þingges
 þei most take in pacience a nyght
 Such manere necessities as ben plesingges 711
 To folk þat han ywedded hem *with* ringges /
 And laye a litel her holynesse aside
 As for þe tyme it may none opere betide 714

On hire he gate a knaue childt anone
 And to a bisshope and his Constable eke
 He toke his wif to kepe whan he is gone [leaf 96]
 to scotlandt wardt his foomen for to seke 718
 Nowe faire Custance þat is so humble *and* meke
 So longe is goon wiþ childt til þat stille
 She halt her chambere abidingt cristes wille 721

The tyme is come a knaue child she bere
 Mauricius atte fontstone þei hym calle
 þis Constable doþ forþ come a massagere
 And wrote to his kinge þat cleped was Alle 725

Howe þat þis blisful tydyngges is byfalle
 And oþer tydyngges spedeful forto seye
 He takeþ þe *lettre* and forþ he goþ his waye 728

This Massagere to done his *auauntage*
 Vnto þe kingges *modere* rideþ swiþe
 And salweþ hire ful faire in his langage
 Madame quod he. 3e may be glad *and* bliþe 732
 And þonkeþ god an hundred þousand sipe
 My lady quene haþ child wip-uten doute
 To Ioie and blisse of al þis regne aboute 735

Lo here þe *lettres* seled of þis þinge
 þat I mot bere wip al þe hast I may
 If 3e wil ouȝt vnto ȝoure sone þe kinge
 I am ȝoure seruauante boþ nyȝt *and* day 739
 Dongild answerd not not at þis tyme
 But here al nyȝt I wil þou take þi rest
 To morowe wil I saye what me lest 742

This Massagere dronk sadly ale *and* wyne
 And stollen were his *lettres* prively
 Out of his boxe whilst he slepte as a swyn
 And counterfeted was ful subtilly 746
 A *noþere* *lettre* wrouȝt ful synfully
 Vnto þe kinge directe of þis matere
 ffrom his Constable as 3e shal after here [leaf 96, back]

The *lettre* spak þe Quene delyuered was
 Of so horrible a fendlich creature
 That in þe Castel noon so hardy was
 þat eny while dorst þer-Inne endure 753
 The *modere* was an Elf by *auenture*
 Ycome by Charmes or by sorcerye
 And euery wight hateþ her companye 756

WOo was þis kinge whan he þis *lettre* had seyne
 But to no wīȝt^t he tolde his sorowes sore
 But^t of his owne honde he wrote ageyne
 Welcome þe sonde of *crist*^t for euermoore 760
 To me þat^t am nowe lered in his lore
 Lord welcome be þi lust^t and þi plesaunce
 My lust^t is putte al in þine ordynaunce 763

Wepeþ þis child^t al be it^t foule or feire
 And eke my wiff vnto myn home *commynge*
 Crist^t whan him list^t may sende me an heire
 More a-greable þan þis is to my likinge 767
 This letter he celeþ prively wepinge
 Whiche to þe massagere was take sone
 And forþ he goþ þer nys no more to done 770

O Massagere fulfilled of dronkenesse [Latin note, p. 133.]
 Stronge is þi breeþ þi lymmes flateren ay 182
 And þou by-wreiest^t al sikernesse
 Thy mynde is lorn þou langlest^t as a Iaye 774
 Thi face is turned in a newe aray
 Ther dronkenesse regneþ in ony route
 Ther nys no counseil hidde wiþ-out^e doute 777

O Donegild^t I ne haue noon englisshⁿ digne
 Vnto þi malice and þi tyrannye¹ [¹ line repeated in MS, with *tirannye*,
 as the first line of leaf 97]
 And þefore to þe fende I þe resigne
 Lat^t hym enditen of þi traterye 781
 ffy mannysshⁿ fy . o nay by god I lie
 ffy feendisshⁿ spirit^t . for I dar wel telle
 Thowe þou here walk^t þi spirit^t is in helle 784

This massagere *commeþ* fro þe feende agayn
 And at^t þe kingges moders court^t he liȝt^t
 And she was of this massagere ful fayn
 And plesed him in al þat euere she myȝt^t 788

He drank wel his girdel vnder piȝt'
He selepeþ and he ffronteþ in his gise
Al nyght to þe sonne gan arise 791

Ofte were his *lettres* stolle euerechone
And counterfeted *lettres* in þat wise
þe kinge commaundeþ his constable anone
Vp peyn of hongyng on an high Iwyse 795
That he ne shulde suffre in no wise
Custance wiþ-Inne his regne forto abide
Thre daies and a quarter of a tyde 798

But in þe same ship as he hire fonde
Hure and her yonge sone and al her gere
He shulde putte and croude fro þ^e londe
And charge hure þat she neuere eft come þere 802
O my Custaunce wel may þi goost haue fere
And sleping in þi dreame bene in penaunce
Whan donegil cast aH hir ordinaunce 805

This Massagere on morowe whan he woke
Vnto þe Castel halt þe next waye
And to þe Constable he þe *lettre* toke
And whan þat he þis pitous *lettre* saye 809
fful oft he seide allas and walawaye
lord Crist quod he howe may þis *lettre* endure [leaf 97, back]
So ful of synne is mony a creature 812

O myȝty god if þat it be þi wille
Sip þou art riȝtful Iuge how may it be
þat þou wilt suffren Innocentz to spille
And wicked folk regnen in prosperite 816
O good Custance allas so woo is me
þat I mote be þi turmentour or deye
On shames detli þer nys noon opere waye 819

Wepen boþ ʒonge and olde in al þat place
 Whan þat þe kinge þis cursed *lettre* sent
 And Custance wiþ a dedly pale face
 þe ferþe day toward her ship she went 823
 But napelees she takeþ in good entent
 þe wille of Crist and kneling in þe stronde
 She saide lorde G. welcome be þi sonde 826

He þat me kept from þe fals blame
 While I was in þe londe amonges ʒou
 He kan me kepe from harme *and* eke fro sham
 In salt See al-pouʒe I se not howe 830
 As stronge as euer he was he is riȝt now
 In hym trust I and in his modere dere
 þat is to me my saille and eke my stere 833

Hire litel child lay weping in her Arme
 An kneling pitously to him she seide
 Pees litel sone I wil do þe noon harme
 Wiþ þat her keerschef of her hede she breide 837
 And ouer his smale yen she it leyde
 And in her Arme she lullep it ful fast
 And in to heuene her yen vp she cast 840

Modere quod she and maide briȝt marie
 Soþe is þat þorowe wommennys eggement [leaf 98]
 Mankinde was lorn and dampned ay to dye
 ffor which þi child was on croys yrent 844
 þi blisful eyen segþ al his turment
 þan is þer no comparison bytwene
 þi woo and any woo man may sustene 847

Thowe seghe þi sone yslayn bifore þine eyen
 And ȝit now lyueþ my litel child parfay
 Now lady briȝt to whom al woful crien
 Thowe glory of wommanhode þou faire may 851

þow hauen of refute briȝt sterre of day
 Rewe on my child þat of þi gentilnesse
 Rewest on euery Rweful in distresse 854

O litel child allas wat is þi gilt
 þat neuer wrouȝtest synne as ȝit parde
 Why wil þine harde fadere haue þe spilt
 O mercye dere constable *quod* she 858
 As lat my litel child dwelle here *with* þe
 And ȝif þou darst not fauour hym for blame
 So kisse him onys in his faders name 861

Therwiþ she lokeþ bacward to þe lande
 And saide fare wel husbond rewthlees
 And vp she rest and walkeþ down þe stronde
 Toward þe shippe hire foloweþ al þe prees 865
 And euere she preieþ her child to hold his pees
 And takeþ her leue and *with* an holy entent
 She blesseþ hire and into ship she went 868

Availed was þe ship it is no drede
 Abundantly for hire a longe space
 And oþer necessities þat shulde nede
 She had ynowe heryed be goddes grace 872
 ffor wynde and weder almyȝty god purchase
 And bringe hure home I can no better seye [leaf 98, back]
 But in þe See she driveþ forþ her weye 875

[PART III.]

Alla þe kynges commeþ home sone after þis
 Vnto his Castel of þe which I tolde
 And axeþ wher his wif and his child is
 The Constable gan about his hert cold 879

And pleyonly al þe manere he hym told^t
 As ȝe han herde I can telle it^t no bettere
 And sheweþ þe kinge his seele *and* his lettere 882

And seide lord as ȝe commaunded me
 Vp peyn of deþe so haue I done certeyne
 This massagere tormented was til he
 Most^t be-knowen and tellen plat^t *and* pleyne 886
 ffrom nyght^t to nyȝt^t in what^t place he had leyne
 And þus by witte and subtil enqueringe
 Ymagened was by whom þis harme can sprynge 889

The honde was knowen þat^t þe lettere wrote
 And al þe venyme of þis cursed dede
 But^t in what^t wise certeynly I note
 þe effecte is þis þat^t Alla out^t of drede 893
 his modere scowe þat^t mony men pleyonly rede
 That^t for she tratour was to her legeaunce
 Thus endeþ old^t donegild^t *with* meschaunce 896

The Sorowe þat^t þis Alla nyȝt *and* day
 Makeþ for his wif^t and for his child^t also
 Ther nys no tunge þat^t it^t telle may
 But^t now wil I vnto Custance goo 900
 That^t fleteþ in þe See in peyn *and* woo
 V. ȝere and more as liked cristes sonde
 Er þat^t her shippe approched vnto londe 903

Vnder an hethen CasteH atte last^t
 Of which þe name in my tixt^t noȝt^t I fynde [leaf 99]
 Custance and eke þe child^t þe see vp cast^t
 Almyȝty god þat^t saueþ al man kinde 907
 Haue on custaunce and her childe som mynde
 þat^t fallen is in hethen hand eft^t sone
 In poynt^t to spille as I shal telle ȝou sone 910

Downe fro þe Castell comþe þere mony a wízt
 To gawen on þis ship and on custance
 But shortely from þe Castel on a nyzt
 The lordes steward god 3eue hym meschaunce 914
 A theef þat had reyned our creaunce
 Come into shipp allone and seide he shuld
 Her lemman be where so she wold or nold 917

Woo was þis wrecched womman þoo bygone
 Her childe cried and she cried pitously
 But blisful mary halpe hure rízt anone
 ffor wíþ her strogelinge wel *and* myztely 921
 þe theef fille ouer bord al sodeynly
 And in þe See he dreynt for vengeance
 And þus haþ crist vnwemmed kepte custance 924

O foule lust of luxurie lo þine ende [Latin note, p. 133.]
182
 Not only þat þou fayntest manys mynde
 But verrely þou wilt his body shende
 þe ende of þi werk or of þi lustes blynde 928
 Is compleynyng how mony one may men fynde
 þat nouzt for werk somtyme but for þentente
 To done þis synne bene eíþer slayn or shente 931

How may þis weiike womman han þis strengþ
 Hire to defend azeinst þis Renegat
 O Golyas vnmesurable of length
 How myzt dauid make þe so mat 935
 So yonge and of armure so desolat
 How durst he loke vpon þi dredful face [leaf 99, back]
 Wel may men seen it was but goddes grace 938

Who 3af Iudith corage or hardynesse
 To sceen hym Olesphernus in his tent
 And to delyuere out of wrecchednesse
 The puple of god I seye for þis entent 942

That riȝt^t as god spirit^t and vigor sent^t
 To hem and saued hem out^t of meschaunce
 So sent^t he myȝt^t and vigor to Custaunce 945

Forþ goþ þe shippe þorowe-out^t þe narow mouþe
 Of Iubaltar and scepte dryuyng aye
 Som tyme west^t and somtyme^t nourþe *and* souþe
 And somtyme Este ful mony a wery daye 949
 Til Cristes modere blessed be ȝe aye
 haþ scapen þorgh^t her endelees goodnesse
 To make an ende of al her hevynesse 952

Now lat^t vs stynt^t of Custance but^t a throwe
 And speke we of þe Romayn Emperour
 þat^t out^t of Surry haþ by letters knowe
 þe slaughter of Cristen folk and dishonoure 956
 Doon to his douȝter by a fals tratour
 I mene þe Cursed wicked Sowdenesse
 That^t at þe feest^t lete scleen boþ more *and* lesse 959

For which þe Emperour haþ sent^t anon
 His Senatour wiþ real ordynaunce
 And oþer lordes god wote mony on
 On Surriens to taken hie vengeaunce 963
 They brennen sleen *and* bringgen hem to meschaunce.
 fful mony a day but^t shortely þis is þende
 Homword^t to Rome þei shapen hem to wende 966

This senatour repaireþ *with* victorye
 To Romeward^t saillinge ful Rially [leaf 100]
 And mette þe Shippe dryuyng^t as seiþ þe storye
 In which Custance sitte ful pitously 970
 No þing^t ne knewe what^t she was ne why
 She was in such aray. ne she nyl sey
 Of her astaat^t þough^t þat^t she shulde deye 973

HE bringeþ her to Rome and to his wiff
 He 3aue hure and her 3onge sone also
 And wiþ þe Senatoure she lad her liff
 Thus can our lady bringen out of woo 977
 Wooful Custance and mony an oþer moo
 And longe tyme dwelled she in þat place
 In holy werkes euer as was hire grace 980

The Senatours wif her Aunte was
 But for al þat she knewe her neuere þe more
 I wil no lenger tarien in þis cas
 But to kinge Alla which I spake of yore 984
 þat for his wiff wepeþ and sigheþ sore
 I wil retorne *and* lete I wil Custance
 Vnder þe Senatours gouernaunce 987

Kynge Alla which þat had his modere selayn
 Vpon a day felle in such repentaunce
 þat if I shortly tellen shal *and* playn
 To Rome he comeþ to resceyuen his penaunce 991
 And putte him in þe Popes ordinaunce
 In by and lowe and Ihesu crist bysouzt
 ffor3eue his wicked werkes þat he wrouzt 994

The fame anon þorowe Room toune is born
 How Alla þe king shal commen in pilgrimage
 By herberious þat wenten hym biforn
 ffor which þe Senatoure as was vsage 998
 Rode hym a3ein and mony of his lynage
 As wel to shewen his hie magnificence [leaf 100, back]
 As to doon eny king a Reuerence 1001

Grete chere dop þis noble Senatour
 To kinge Alla and he to hym also
 Euerech of hem dop oþere grete honour
 And so byfelle þat in a day or twoo 1005

This Senatour is to king^t Alla goo /
 To feest^t and shortely if I shal not^t ly
 Custance sone in his Companye 1008

Somme men wold^t seyn atte request^t of Custance
 This Senatour hap^t ladde þis child^t to fest^t
 I may not tellen euery Circumstance
 Be as be may þer was he atte leest^t 1012
 But^t soþe is þis þat^t at^t his moders hest^t
 Byforn alla duringe þe metes space
 The Childe stode loking^t in þe kingges face 1015

This Alla kinge hap^t of þe child^t gret^t wonder
 And to þe Senatore he seide anoon
 Whoos is þat^t faire childe þat^t stondeþ 3onder
 I noot^t quod he by god and be seynt^t Iohn 1019
 A modere he hap^t but^t fadere hap^t he non
 þat^t I of wote and shortly in a stounde
 He told^t Alla how þat^t þis child^t was founde 1022

But^t god wote quod þis Senatour also
 So vertuous a lyuere in my liff
 Ne segþ I neuere as she ne herd of mo
 Of worldly wommen / mayde ne wiff 1026
 I dar wel seide she had leuer^t a knyff
 þorowe-out^t her brest^t þan bene a womman wicke
 þer is no man couþe bringe hire to þat^t prikke 1029

Now was þis Childe as like vnto custance
 As possible is a creature to be [leaf 101]
 This Alla hap^t þe face in remembraunce
 Of Dame Custance and þeron mused he 1033
 If þat^t þe childes modere were ou3t^t she
 þat^t is his wif and priuely he si3t^t
 And spedde hym fro þe table þat^t he my3t^t 1036

Perfay he þouȝt þe fantom is in myn hede
 I ouȝt demen of skilful Iuggement
 That in þe salt se my wif is dede
 And afterward he made his argument 1040
 What wote I ȝif þat crist hap hider sent
 My wif by see as wel as he her sent
 To my cuntre from þennes as she was went 1043

And aftere anoon home wiþ þe Senatoure
 Goþ alla forto see þis wonder chance
 This Senatour doþ Alla grete honoure
 And hastify he sent aftere Custance 1047
 But trusteþ wel her lust nouȝt to dance
 Whan þat she wist wherfor was þat sonde
 Vnneþes on her fete she myȝt stonde 1050

Whan Alla segh his wif faire he her grette
 And wepte it was reuþe forto see
 ffor atte first loke he on hir sette
 He knewe wel verrely þat it was she 1054
 And for sorowe as dombe stant as a tre
 So was hert shette in her distresse
 Whan she remembred his vnkindenesse 1057

Twise she swowneþ in his owne siȝt
 He wepte and him excuseþ pitously
 Nowe god quod he and his halowes briȝt
 So wisly on my soule haue mercy 1061
 þat of ȝoure harme as giltelees am I
 As is Maurice Mi sone so lik ȝoure face [leaf 101, back]
 Ellis þe feend me fecche out of þis place 1064

Longe was þe sobbyng and þe bitter peyne
 Er þat her wooful hertes myȝten cese
 Grete was þe pite forto here hem pleyne
 þorgh whiche pleyntes gan her woo encrees 1068

I prei 3ou aH my labour to relees
 I may not tellen her woo vntil to morowe
 I am so very to speke of her sorowe 1071

But fynaly whan þat þe soþe is wist
 That Alla giltles was of her woo
 I trowe an C. tymes ben þei kist
 And suche a blisse is þer ytwix hem twoo 1075
 þat saue þe Ioie þat lestep euermoo
 þer is non like þat eny creature
 Haþ seyne or shal while þe world may dure 1078

Tho preied she her husbond mekely
 In relief of her longe pitous pyne
 þat he wolde prei hure fadere specialy
 þat of his maieste he wold enclyne 1082
 To vouche sauf with him som day to dyne
 She preied him eke he shulde by no way
 vnto her fader no word of hire say 1085

Somme men wold seyn how þat þe childe Maurice
 Doþ þis massage vnto þe Emperour
 But as I gesse alla was not so nyce
 To him þat was of so souereyn honour 1089
 As he þat is of cristen folk þe flour
 Sent eny childe but it is bette to deme
 He went him self and so it may wel seme 1092

This Emperour haþ graunted gentilly
 To come to dyner as he hym bysou3t [leaf 102]
 And wel rede I he loked bisily
 Vpon þis child and on his dou3ter þou3t 1096
 Alla goþ to his Inne and as hym ou3t
 Arraied for þis feest in euery wise
 As ferforþ as his conyngt may suffice 1099

The morowe come and Alla can hym dresse
 And eke his wif þis emperour forto mete
 And forþ þei ride in Ioie and in gladnesse
 And whan she segħ her fadere in þe strete 1103
 She liȝt a-doune and falleþ hym to fete
 ffadere quod she ȝoure ȝonge child Custance
 Is nowe ful clene out of ȝoure remembrance 1106

I am ȝoure douȝtere Custance quod she
 þat whilom ȝe sent vnto Surray
 It am I fadere þat in þe salt see
 Was putte allone and dampned forto dye 1110
 Good fader now I yow merceye crye
 Send me no more vnto noon heþenes
 But þonke my lord here of his kindenes 1113

Who can þe pitous Ioye tellen alle
 Bitwixe hem þre siþ þei ben þus ymette
 But of my tale make an ende I shal
 The day goþ fast I wil no lenger lette 1117
 This glad folk to dyner þei hem sette
 In Ioye and blisse at mete I lat hem dwelle
 A þousand fold wel more þan I can telle 1120

This child Maurice was siþen Emperour
 Made by þe pope and lyued cristenly
 To cristes church he did grete honour
 But I lat al þis story passen by 1124
 Of Custance is my tale specialy
 In olde romayn Gestes may men fynde
 Mawrices lif I bere it not in mynde

[leaf 102, back]
 [Latin note, p. 133.]
 182

This king Alla whan he his tyme say
 Wiþ Custance his holy wif so swete
 To Engeland ben þei come þe riȝt way
 Wher as þei lyve in Ioie and in quiete 1131

But litel while it lasteþ I ȝou hete
 Ioie of þis world for tyme wil not abide
 ffrom day to nyȝt it chaungeþ as þe tyde 1134

Who lyued euere in suche delite a day [Latin note, p. 133.]
 þat ne meued eȝer conscience 182

Or Ire or talent or somkyn affray
 Envie or pride. or passioñ or offence 1138

I ne seie but for þis ende þis sentence
 þat litel while in Ioye or in plesaunce
 Lasteþ þe blisse of alla wiþ Custaunce 1141

For deþ þat takeþ of high and lough his rente
 Whan passed was a ȝeer euene as I gesse
 Out of þis world þis kinge alla he hente 1145
 ffor whom Custance haþ ful grete hevynesse
 Now lat vs preien god his saule blisse
 And Dame Custance fynally to seye
 Toward þe towne of Rome goþ her weye 1148

TO Rome is come þis holy creature
 And fyndeþ her frende hool and sound
 Now is she scaped aȝ hure auenture
 And whan she her fadere haþ yfounde 1152
 Doune on her knees falleþ she to grounde
 Weping for tendernesse in hert blith
 She herieþ God an C. thousand siþe 1155

In vertue and holy Almesdede
 þei lyuen aȝ and neuere a sondrie wende [leaf 103]
 Til deþ departe hem þis lif þei lede
 And fareþ now wel my tale is at an ende 1159
 Now Ihesu crist þat of his myȝt may sende
 Ioye after woo gouerne vs in his grace
 And kepe vs aȝ þat beñ in þis place 1162

¶ Here endeþ þe tale of þe man of lawe

[The Squire's Prologue follows in the MS.]

And here bygynnep þe prologe of þe sqwier [on leaf 103]

Oure hoost' vpon his stiropes stood anoñ || þe prologe
 And seide good men herkenep euerychoñ
 This was a þrifty tale for þe nones
 Sire parissñ preest quod he for goddes bonys 1166
 Telle vs a tale as was þi forward yore
 I se wele pat' 3e leerned men in lore
 Can moche good by goddes dignyte
 þe Parsones hym answered benedicite 1170
 What' eileþ þe man so synfully to swere
 Oure hoost' answerd O Iankyn be 3e þere
 I smelle a lollard' in þe wynde quod he
 Howe good men quod our hoost' herkneþ me 1174
 Abideþ for goddis digne passioñ
 ffor we shal haue a predicacioñ
 þis lollard' here wil prechen vs somewhat
 Nay by my fader' soule þat shal he nat' 1178
 Seide þe Sqwier here shal he nat' preche
 He shal no gospel glosen here ne teche
 He leueþ al in þe grete god he
 He wolde sowen som difficulte 1182
 Or springeþ Cokel in oure clene corn
 And þerfore hoost' I warne þe byforn
 Mi Ioly body shal a tale telle
 And I shal Clynken 3ou so mery a belle 1186
 þat' I shal waken al þis companye
 But' it' shal not' bene of Philosophie
 Ne Phislyas ne teermes queynt' of lawe
 þer is but' litel latyn in my mawe 1190

[*The Squire's Tale follows in the MS.*]

¶ The Sqwiers Tale.

[headline]
[leaf 103, back]

And here by-

gynnep þe Sqwiers tale. /

At Sarray in þe land of Tartarye ¶ ffabula Armigeri
 þer dwelt a kyng^t þat^t werried Russye
 þorgh which þer deyed mony a dughty man
 þis noble king^t was cleped Cambynskan 12
 Which in his tyme was of so grete renoun
 þat þer nas nowhere in no regioun
 So Excellent a lord in al þinge
 Hym lacked nouȝt^t þat^t longed to a kyng^e 16
 As of þe secte of which þat^t he was born
 He kepte his lay to which þat^t he was sworⁿ
 And þerto he was hardy wise *and* riche
 And pitous and Iust^t alway ylich 20
 Soop of his worde benygne *and* honurable
 Of his corage as ony centre stable ¶ *centrum circuli*
 ȝong^t fresshe and stronge in Armes desirous
 As eny bachilere in al his hous 24
 A faire persone he was and fortunat^t
 And kept^t alway so wel rial astat^t
 þat^t þer nas nawhere such a noþer man
 This noble kinge þis tatre Cambynskan 28
 had two sones on Eltheta his wiff
 Of which þe eldest^t hight^t Algarsiff
 þat^t oþer was cleped Camballo
 A doughtere had þis worpi kinge also 32
 þat ȝongest^t was and hiȝt^t Canace
 But^t forto telle ȝou al her beute
 It liþe not^t in my tunge ne in my connyng^e
 I dar not^t vndertake so hye a þinge 36

Myn engelisshe eke is insufficient
 It most bene a ritther excellent
 þat kouþe his colours longyng for þat arte
 If he shuld here discryve eny part 40
 I am noon suche I most speke as I can
 And so byfelle þat þis Cambynskan
 Hath xx^{ti} wyntere born his diademe [leaf 104]
 As he was wonte fro 3ere to 3ere I deme 44
 He lete þe feest of his natiuite
 Done Crien þorgh Sarray his Cite
 þe last Idus of March after þe 3ere
 Phebus þe sonne ful Iolyf was *and* clere 48
 ffor he was nye his exaltacioñ
 In Martes face and in his mancioñ
 In Aries þe Colerik þe hote signe
 fful lusty was þe weder *and* benigne 52
 ffor which þe fowles azeinst þe sonne shene
 What for the seson and þe 3onge grene
 fful loude songe hir affeccioñs
 Hem semed han geten hem proteccioñs 56
 Azeinst þe swerd of wynter kene and cold
 This Cambynskan of which I haue 3ou told
 In Rial vestement sitte vpon his des
 Wiþ dia[de]me ful high in his paleys 60
 And halt his feest so solempne *and* so riche
 þat in þis world ne was þer noñ it liche
 Of which if I sal telle al þe araye
 Than wold it occupie a somers daye 64
 And eke it nedep nat to devise
 And euery cours þe order of her seruise
 I wil not telle of her straunge sewes
 Ne of her swannes ne her heron-sewes 68
 Eke in þat londe as tellen knyȝtes olde
 There is som mete þat is for deynte holde
 That in þis londe men recche but smaht
 þer nys no man þat may reporten aht 72

GROUP F. § 2. SQUIRE'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

I wil not tary 3ou for it is pryme
 And for it is no frute but losse of tyme
 Vnto my furst I wil haue my recours
 And so byfeH þat after þe þred recours 76
 Whil þat þis kinge sitte þus in his nobleye
 Herkenyng his menstralles her þingges pleye
 Byform him at þe boord deliciously [leaf 104, back]
 Inne atte halle door so sodeynly 80
 Ther come a knyght vpon a stede of bras
 And in his honde a brood myrour of glas
 Vpon his þombe he had of gold a rynge
 And by his side a naked swerd hangyng 84
 And vp he rideþ to þe heigh boord
 In al þe halle ne was þer spoke no word
 ffor merueile of þis knyght hym to biholde
 fful bisily þei wayten 3onge and olde 88
 This stronge knyght þat come þus sodeynly
 Al armed saue his hede ful richely
 Salued þe king þe quene and lordes alle
 By ordere as þei seten in þe halle 92
 Wiþ so high reuerence and obeysance
 As wel in speche as in his countenance
 þat Gawayne wiþ his olde curtasie
 þouze he come ageyn out of ffarye 96
 Ne coude him nouzt amende *with* no word
 And after þis bfore þe highe bord
 He wiþ a manly vois saide his massage
 After þe forme vsed in his langage 100
 With-out vice of sillable or of *lettre*
 And for his tale shulde seme þe bettere
 Accordant to his wordes was his chere
 As techep arte of speche hem þat it lere 104
 Al be it þat I can not sowne his styale
 Ne can not clymben ouer so hiȝe a styale
 3it say I þis þat as to comune entente
 Thus moche amounteþ al þat euere he ment 108

If it^t so be þat^t I haue it^t in my mynde
 He seide þe kyng of Arabye and of ynde
 My liege lord^t on þis solempe day
 Salweþ þou as he best^t can *and* may 112
 And seendeþ þowe in honour of þour feste
 By me þat^t am redy al at þoure heeste
 This stede of bras þat^t esily & weh [leaf 105]
 Can in a space of a day naturel 116
 This is to saye in *four and twenti*¹ houres [1 MS xxiiij.]
 Wher so þou lust^t in drouȝt^t or in shoures
 Beren þoure body in to euery place
 To which þoure hertes wilneþ forto pace 120
 Wiþ-oute wemme of þou þorow foule or fare
 Or if þow list^t to flee as hie in þe Eire
 As doþ an Egle whan him list^t to sore
 This same stede shal bere þou euermore 124
 Wiþ-uten harme til ȝe be where þou list^t
 þow þat^t ȝe selepen on his bak^t or rest^t
 And turne aȝein wiþ wriþing^t of a pynne
 He þat^t it wrouȝt^t cowde ful mony a gynne 128
 He waited mony a constellaciō
 Or he had doo þis operaciō
 And knewe ful mony a seal *and* mony a bonde
 This myroure eke þat^t I haue in myn honde 132
 Hap suche a myȝt^t þat^t men may in it see
 whan þer shal fallen eny aduersite
 Vnto þour^t regne or vnto þour self also
 And openly who is þoure freend^t or ffoo / 136
 And ouer al þis if eny lady brizt^t
 Hap sette her hert^t in eny maner wiȝt^t
 If he be fals she shal his tresōn see
 His newe loues *and* al his subtilite 140
 So openly þat^t þer shal no þing^t hide
 wherfore ageyn þis lusty somers tyde
 This myrour and þis ryng^t þat^t ȝe may see
 He hap sent^t to my lady Canacee 144

3oure excellent^t dou3tere þat^t is here
 þe vertue of þis ryng^e if 3e wil here
 Is þis? þat^t if her list^t it^t forto were
 Vpon her thombe or in her purs it bere 148
 þer nys no fowle þat^t fleep vnder þ^e heuene
 þat^t he ne shal vnderstonð his steuene
 And knowe his menyng^t openly *and* pleyne [leaf 105, back]
 And answe^re him in his langage ageyne 152
 And euery gras þat^t growep vpon rote
 She shal wel knowe *and* whome it wil do bote
 And be his woundes neuere so depe *and* wide/
 This naked swerd þat^t hongep by my side 156
 Such^e vertue hap þat^t what^t man so 3e smyte
 þorowe-out^t his armure it^t wil kerue *and* bite
 were it^t as thikke as is a braunched oke
 And what^t man þat^t is wounded with þe stroke 160
 Shal neuere be hool til þat 3ou list^t of grace
 To stroke him with þe plat^t in þilk place
 Ther he is hirt^t þis is as moche to seyn
 3e mote with þe plat^t swerde ageyn 164
 Stroke hym in the wounde *and* it^t wil close
 This is a verrey soþe wiþ-outen glose
 It^t faillep nou3t^t þe whilis it^t is in 3our holde
 And whan þis kny3t^t hap þus þis tale tolde 168
 He rideþ out^t of þe halle *and* down he li3t^t
 His stede which þat^t shoon as sonne bri3t^t
 Stant^t in þe courte stille as eny stoon
 This knyght^t is to his chambre lad anoon 172
 And is vnarmed and to þe mete I-sette
 þe presentes bene ful richely fette
 This is to seyn þe swerd^t and þe Mirrour
 And born anoon vnto þe hie toure 176
 Wiþ certeyn officers yordeyned þefore
 And vnto Canacee þe ryng^e is bore
 Solempnely þer she sitte atte þ^e table
 But^t sikerly wiþ-oute eny fable 180

þe hors of bras þat may not be remewed
 It stant as it were to þe grounde yglwed /
 þer may no man out of þe place it drive
 ffor noon engyn of wyndas or polyve 184
 And cause whi for þei can not þe craft
 And þerfore in þe place þei han it laft
 Tyl þat þe knyȝt haþ tauȝt hem þe manere [leaf 106]
 To voyden him as ȝe shal after here 188
 Grete was þe prees þat swarmed to *and* froo
 To Gowren on þis hors þat stondeþ soo /
 ffor it so hegh was . and so brode *and* long
 So wel proporciond forto be stronge 192
 Riȝt as it were a stede of lumbardye
 Ther-wip so horsly and so quyke of eye
 As it a ge[n]til poyleis coursere were
 ffor Certes from his tale vnto his ere 196
 Nature ne art ne koude hym nouȝt mende
 In no degre as al þe puple wende
 But euer-more hir most wonder was /
 Howe þat it cowde gon and was of bras 200
 It was of fayre as þe puple semed
 Dyuers folk dyuersly han demed
 As mony hedes as mony wittes þer bene
 þei Mormured as don a swarme of been 204
 And mede skilles after her fantasies
 Rehersinge of þe olde poetries ¶ .i. equus pedasus.
 And seide it was lik þe Pegasee
 þe hors þat had wenges forto fle 208
 Or ellis it was þe Gr[e]kes hors Synon
 That brouȝt Troy to destruction
 As men in þise olde Geestes rede
 Myne hert quod oon is euer more in drede 212
 I trowe somme men of armes bene þer-Inne
 That shapen hem þis Cite forto wyne
 It were riȝt good þat al such þing were knowe
 Anoper rowned to his felawe lowe 216

And seide he lieþ for it is rap̃er like
 An apparence ymade by soȝn magike
 As Iogelours pleyen at þise feestes grete
 Of sondry þouȝtes þus þei Iangle *and* trete 220
 As lewde puple demen comonly
 Of þingges þat bene made subtily
 Than þei can in her lewdenesse comprehende [leaf 106, back]
 þei demen gladly to þe badder ende 224
 An somme of hem wondren on þe myroure
 þat born was vp vnto þe maister tour
 How men myȝt in hit suche þingges see
 Anoper answerd *and* seide it myȝt wel be 228
 Naturelli by composiciõs
 Of Angeles and of seley reflexiõs
 And seide þat in rome was such̃ oon
 þei speke of Alocen and Vitilioȝ 232
 And of Aristote þat writ in her lyues
 Of queynt Mirours *and* of prospectyues
 As knowen þei þat han her bokes herde
 And oper folk han wondred on þe swerde 236
 þat wold perce þourgh̃ euery þinge
 And fille in speche of Thelophus þe kinge
 And of Achilles for his queinte spere
 ffor he kouþe wiþ it boþ hele *and* dere 240
 Riȝt in such̃ wise as men may *with* þe swerde
 Of which̃ riȝt now̃ ȝe han ȝoure seluen herde
 þe[i] speken of sondry hardyng of MetaH
 And speken of medecynes þer-wiþ-aH 244
 And howe *and* whan it shuld harded be
 which̃ is vnknowe algate vnto me
 ¶ Tho speke þei of Ganaces ryng
 And seiden aH þat such̃ a wondere þinge 248
 Of craft of ryngges had þei neuere noȝ
 Saue þat he Moyses and kyng Salomon
 Had a nane of Conyng in swich̃ arte
 Thus seyn þe puple and drawn hem a parte 252

GROUP F. § 2. SQUIRE'S TALE. Petworth MS.

But napelees somme seide þat it was
 wonder to maken of feerne Asshen glas
 And ȝit is glas not like asshen of feerne
 But for þei han knowen it so ȝerne 256
 Therefore Ceseþ her Iangelinge *and* her wonder
 As sore wondren some on cause of þondere
 On ebbe on flood on gossomer *and* on myst [leaf 107]
 And al þing to þe cause is wist 260
 Thus Iangelen þei and demen and devise
 Til þat þe kinge can from his bord arise
 Phebus haþ laft þe angle Meredyonal
 And ȝit ascending was þe beest Royal 264
 þe gentil leon wiþ his Aldrean
 Whan þat þis tartre kinge Cambynskan
 Roos from his boord þer as he satte ful hie
 Byforne him goþ þe lowde Mynstralcy 268
 Til he come to his Chambre of paramentys
 Ther as þei sownen dyuers Instrumentys
 That is like an heuene forto here
 Now daunsen lusty venus children dere 272
 ffor in þe flissþ hir lady satte ful hie
 And lokeþ on hem wiþ a frendly ye
 This noble kinge is sette vpon his trone
 þis straunge knyght is fette to hym ful sone 276
 And on the Daunce he goþ wiþ Canace
 Here is þe reuel and þe Iolite
 þat is not able a dulle man to deuyse
 He most han knowe loue and his seruyse 280
 And be a feestlicþ man as fressþ as may
 That shulden ȝou deuysen swich array
 Who couþe tellen ȝou þe forme of daunces
 So vncouþe and such fressþ countynaunces / 284
 Such Subtile lokinges and dyssymulynges
 ffor drede of Ialowsie mennys apperceyuunges
 No man but launcelett *and* he is dede
 þerfor I passe ouer of al þis lustihede 288

GROUP F. § 2. SQUIRE'S TALE. Petworth MS.

I say no more but in þis Iolynesse
 I lete hem to men to soper hem dresse
 þe Steward bit spices forto hie
 And eke the wyne in al þis melodye 292
 þe vsshers and þe sqwiers ben ygoñ
 þe Spices and þe wyne is come anōn
 Thei ete and drinke and whan þis had an ende [leaf 107, bk]
 Vnto þe temple as reson was þei wende 290
 ¶ The servise done / þei souþen al by day
 whatt nedep þou rehersen her array
 Eche man wote wel þat at a kingges feest
 Hap plente to þe mest and to þe leest 300
 And deyntees moo þan be in my knowinge
 And aftere sopere goþ þis noble kyng
 To sene þis hors of bras with al a route
 Of lordes and ladys hym aboute 304
 Such wondring was þer on þis hors of bras
 þat siþen þe grete sege of Troye was
 þer as men wondren on an hors also
 Ne was þer such a wondering as was þoo 308
 By fynaly þe kinge axep þe knyzt
 þe vertue of þe Coursere and þe myzt
 And preide hym to telle his gouernañce
 þe hors anon gan forto trippe and dañce 312
 whan þat þis knyght leide hond vpon his reyne
 And seide Sir þer is to more to seyne
 but whan þe list to ride owhere
 3e moot trille a pynne stonde in his ere 316
 which I shal telle þou bytwene vs twoo
 3e mote nempne hym to what place also
 Or to what cuntre þat þou list to ride ./
 And whan 3e come þere as þou list to abide 320
 Bidde hym descende and trille anopere pynne
 ffor þer-Inne lith þeffecte of al þat gynne
 And [he] wol doune descende and done þoure wille
 And in þat place he wille abide stille 324

pough al the world had þe contrary swore
 He shal not pennys by throwe ne ybore
 Or if þou list bidde hym þennes gōōn
 Trille þis pynne and he wil vanyssh anōn 328
 Out of þe sizt of euery maner wizt
 And come azein be it day or nyght
 whan þat þou list to clepen hym ageyn [leaf 108]
 In swich a gise as I shal to þou seyn / 332
 By-twixen þou and me and þat ful sone
 Ride whan þou list þer is no more to done
 ¶ Enformed whan þe kyng was of þe knyzt
 And hap conceyued in his witt arizt 336
 The manere *and* þe forme of al þis þinge
 fful glad and bliþe þe noble douzty kyng
 Repeyring to his reuel as byforñ
 þe bridel is into þe toure born 340
 And kepte amonge his Iwels leef *and* dere
 þe hors vanysshed I note in what manere
 Out of her sizt 3e gete no more of mee
 But þus I lete in lust and Iolite 344
 This Cambynskan is lordes feestinge
 Til wel nygh þe day bygan to springe

¶ Explicit. prima pars./

¶ The Stag of an hert

The norice of digestion is slepe
 Gan on hem wynke and bad hem take kepe 348
 þat moch mete and labour wil haue rest
 And wiþ a galping mouþe hem albycast
 And seide þat it was tyme to lye adoune
 ffor blood was in his domynacioun 352
 Cheressheþ blood natures frende quod he
 þei þonken hym galping by two or þre
 And euery wight gan drowen hym to his rest
 As slepe hem bad þei toke it for þe best 356

Her dremes mow not^t be tolde for me
 fful were her hedes of ffumosite
 þat^t causet^t dreem of which^h þer is no charge
 þei selepen til it was pryme large 360
 þe moste parte but^t it^t were Canacee
 She was ful mesurable as wommen be
 ffor of her fadere had she take her leue
 To goo to rest^t sone after it was Eue 364
 Her list^t not^t appalled forto be [leaf 108, back]
 ffor on þe morowe vnfeestlich^h forto see
 And sclepte hure first^t slepe and awoke
 ffor such a Ioie she in her herte toke 368
 Boþ of her queynt^t rynges and of her myroure
 þat^t xx^{ti} tyme she chaunged her colour
 And in her slepe riȝt^t for impressiō
 Of her myroure she had a visiō 372
 wherfore er þat^t þe sonne vp gan glide
 She cleped vpon her maistresse here beside
 And seide þat^t hir^t list^t forto arise
 þise olde wommen þat^t bene gladly wise 376
 As is her maistresse answerd^d hir^t anōn
 And seide Madame whidere wold^d ȝe gōn
 þus erly for folke bene al in rest^t
 I wil quod she arise for me lest^t 380
 No lenger slepen but^t walken aboute
 Her Maistresse clepeþ wommen a grete route
 And vp þei risen wel . ten or twelue
 Vpriseþ fresshe Canace her selue 384
 As roddey and briȝt^t as þei þe ȝonge sonne
 þat^t in þe Ram is ten degrees vp ronne
 Noon hier was he whan she redy was
 And forþ she walked esily a pas 388
 Arraied aftere þe lusty seson sote
 listly forto prey and walk on fote
 Nat^t but^t .v. or .vj. of her mayne
 And in a trenche fer in þe park/ goop she 392

The vapour which þat fro þe erthe glode
 Makeþ þe sonne to seme rody *and* brode
 But napelees it was so faire a sizt
 þat it made aH her hertes forto lizt 396
 What for þe seson and þe mownynge
 And for þe fowles þat she herde synge
 ffor rizt anoon she wist what þei ment
 Rizt by her songe and knewe al her entent 400
 ¶ The knotte whi þat euery tale is told
 3if it be taried til lust be cold
 Of hem þat han it herkened after 3ore
 þe Sauour passeþ euer lenger þe more 404
 ffor ffulsomnesse of prolixite
 And by þis same reson þenkeþ me
 I shuld vnto þe knotte condescende
 And maken of her walking sone an ende 408
 ¶ Amydde a tree for-drye as white as chalke
 As Canacee was plaiyng in her walke
 þer satte a fawcon ouer her hede ful hie
 þat wiþ a pitous vois so gan to crie 412
 þat alle in þe wode resed of her crie
 And beten had her self so pitously
 Wiþ bothe her wenges to þe rede blode
 Ranne endelonge þe tre þer as she stode 416
 And euer in oon she cried alway *and* shrighit
 And wiþ her beke her seluen so she pi3t
 þat þer ne was Tigre ne cruel beest
 þat dwelleþ eiþer in wode or in forest 420
 þat ne wold haue wepte if þat she wepe couþe
 ffor sorowe of hir she shrighit alway so louþe
 ffor þer nas neuere 3it man on lyue
 If þat I coude a fawcon wel diseryue 424
 þat herd of such anoper of fairnesse
 As wel of plummage as of gentilnesse
 Of shappe of al þat my3t rekned be
 A ffawcon peregryne þan semed she . 428

GROUP F. § 2. SQUIRE'S TALE. Petworth MS.

Of fremde londe and eueremore as she stode
 She swowned nowe and nowe for lakke of blood
 Til wel nygh is she fallen fro þe tre
 This faire kyngges doughter' þis Canace 432
 þat' on her fynger bere þe queynte rynge
 þorgh which she vnderstode wel euery þinge
 þat' eny foule may in his ledne seyne
 And coude answeere him in his ledne ageyne 436
 Haþ vnderstode þat' þis fawcon seide [leaf 109, back]
 And wel nygh for þe roupe alмест' she deide
 And to þe tree she goþ ful hastely
 And on þis faucon lokeþ ful pitously 440
 And helde her lappe abroad for wel she wist'
 þe faucon most' falle from þe twist'
 Whan þat' it' swowned next' for lacke of blode
 A longe while to waite her she stode 444
 Til atte last' she spake in þis manere
 Vnto þe hawke as 3e shal after here
 ¶ What' is þe cause if' it' be forto telle
 þat' 3e bene in þis furial peyn of helle 448
 Quod Canacee vnto þis hawke aboue
 Is þis for sorowe of deth or losse of loue
 ffor as I trowe þise bene causes two
 þan causen most' a gentil hert' woo / 452
 Of other harme it' nedeþ not' to speke
 ffor þi 3oure self vpon youre self 3ou wreke
 Which þat' proueth wel þat' eiþere ire or drede
 Mote bene encheson of 3oure cruel dede 456
 Siþ þat' I see noon oþer wizt' 3ou chace
 ffor loue of god so doþ 3our self grace
 Or what' may be 3oure helpe for west' nor este
 Ne seghe I neuere er nowe ne brid ne beste 460
 þat' ferde wiþ him self so pitously
 3e sclee me wiþ 3oure sorowe verreyly
 I haue of 3ou so grete compassioun
 ffor goddes loue come fro þe tree adoun 464

And as I am a kingges douȝhter' trewe
 If þat' I verrelȝ þe causes knewe
 Of ȝoure dis[e]se if it' lay in my nyȝt'
 I wold amende it' er þat' it were nyȝt' 468
 As wisly helpe me grete god of kinde
 And Erbes shal I riȝt' ynow fynde
 To hele wiþ ȝoure hirtes hastely
 þoo shrighȝ þis fawcon ȝit' more pitously 472
 þan euere she did and fille to grounde anōn [leaf 110]
 And lith a swowne dede as is þe stoñ
 Til Canacee hap in hure lappe her take
 Vnto þat' tyme she gan of swowne awake 476
 And after þat' she of swowne gan vpbreide
 Riȝt' in hire hawkes leodene þus she seide
 ¶ þat' pite rennep sone in gentil herte
 ffeling' his symillitude in peynes smerte 480
 Is proued alday as men may it see
 As wel be werk' as be auctorite
 ffor gentil hert' kepeþ gentillesse
 I se wele þat' ȝe han on my distresse 484
 Compassion my faire Canacee
 Of verrey wommanly benigȝyte
 That' nature in ȝoure principles hap sette
 But' for noon hope forto fare þe bette 488
 But' forto obeye vnto ȝoure herte free
 And forto maken oþer be ware by me
 As by þe whelpe chastised is the lyōn
 Riȝt' for þat' cause and for þat' conclusiōn 492
 While þat' I haue a leisere and a space
 Myn harme I wil confessen er I pace
 And euere while þat' she her sorowe told'
 þat' oþer wepte as she to water wold' 496
 Til þat' þe ffaucon bad hir' to be stille
 And wiþ a sighe þus she seide hir' till
 Ther I was bredde allas þat' ilk daye
 And fostred in a roche of Merbel graye 500

So tenderly þat no þing ciled me
 I ne wist not what was aduersite
 Til I coude flee ful hie vndere þe skie
 Tho dwelled a tercelet me fast by 504
 þat semed welle of al gentilnesse
 Al were he ful of treson and falsnesse
 It is wrapped vnder humble chere
 And vnder hwe of troupe & in such manere ./ 508
 Vndere plesaunce and vnder bisy peyne [leaf 110, back]
 þat no wight couþe han wende he coude feyne
 So depe in greyne he dyed his coloures /
 Rizt as a serpent hyd hym vnder floures 512
 Til he may se his tyme forto bite
 Rizt so þis god of loue ypocrite
 Doþ so his serymonijs and obeysances
 And kepeþ in semblaunt al his obseruaunces / 516
 That sowneþ into gentilnesse of loue
 As in a tompe is al þe faire aboue
 And vnder is þe cours which as ȝe wote
 Such was þis ypocrite boþ colde *and* hote 520
 And in þis wise he serued his entente
 þat saue þe feende non wist what he mente
 Til he so longe had wepte *and* compleyned
 And many a ȝeer his servise to hym feyned 524
 Til þat myn hert to pitous *and* to nyce
 Al Innocent of his crowned malice
 ffor-ferde of his deþ as þouȝt me
 Vpon his oþes and his Suerte 528
 Graunted hym loue vpon þis condicioun
 þat euer moo myn honure and my renoun
 Were saued boþ privey and apert
 þis is to seyn þat after his dissert 532
 I ȝaue hym al myn hert and my þouȝt
 God woot and he þat oþer wise nouȝt
 And toke his hert in chaunge of myn for ay
 But soþ is seide go siþen mony a day 536

A trewe wight and a þeef thenkeþ not oon
 And whan he sawe þe þing so fer ygoon
 þat I [had] graunted hym fully my loue
 In such a gise as I haue seide aboue 540
 An zeuen hym my trewe hert as free
 As he swore he ȝaf his hert to me
 Anon þis tigre ful of doublenesse
 ffil on his knees wiþ so deuoute humblesse 544
 Wiþ hye reuerence and as by his chere [leaf 111]
 So like a gentile louere of manere
 So rauissed as it semed for þe Ioye
 þat neuere Iason ne Paris of Troye 548
 Iason certes ne noon opere man
 Sip Lameþ was þat alþer furst biganne
 To louen two as writen folk to-forne
 Ne neuere sip þe first man was born 552
 Ne coude man by xx^{ti} þousand part
 Countrefete þe sophymes of his arte
 Ne were worpi to vnbocle his galoche
 þer dowblenesse or faynyng shuld approche 556
 Ne so couþe þonke a wight as he did me
 His manere was an heuene for to see
 Til eny womman were she neuere his wys
 So peynted he and kembþ at poynt devis 560
 As wel his wordes as his countenaunce
 And I so loued hym for his obeysaunce
 And for þe troupe I demed in his hert
 þat if so were þat eny þinge hym smerte 564
 Al were it neuere so lite and I it wist
 Me þouȝt I felt deþ at myn herte twiste
 And shortely so ferforþ þis þinge wente
 þat my wille hap his willes Instrument 568
 þis is to seyne my wille obeied his wille
 In al þinge as ferre as reson fille
 Keping þe boundes of my worship euere
 Ne neuere had I þinge so leef ne leuere 572

GROUP F. § 2. SQUIRE'S TALE. Petworth MS.

As hym : god wote ne neuere shal no moo /
 þis last lenger þan a ȝere or twoo
 ¶ That I Suppose of hym no þing but good
 But fynaly þus at the ende it stood 576
 þat fortune wold þat he most twynne
 Out of þat place which þat I was Inne
 where me were woo it is no question
 I can not make of it discripcion 580
 ffor oon þinge dar I telle boldely [leaf 111, back]
 I knowe what is þe peyne of deþ þerby :
 Such harme I felt for he no wizt by-leue
 So on a day of me he toke his leue 584
 So sorowefulli eke þat I wende verrelly
 þat he had feled as moche harme as I
 Whan þat I herde hym speke and segh his hwe
 But napelees I þouȝt he was so trewe 588
 And eke þat he repeire shuld agayn/
 Wiþ-Inne a litel while soþ to sayn
 And reson wold eke þat he most goo
 ffor his honoure as oft happeþ soo 592
 þat I made vertue of necessite
 And toke it wel siþ þat it most be
 As I best myght I hid fro hym my sorowe
 And toke hym by þe honde seint Iohn to borowe 596
 And seide þus loo I am ȝoures aH
 Beþ swich as I haue be to you and shal
 what he answerd it nedep not reherce
 who can seyn bette þan he who can do wors 600
 whan he haþ al wel seide þan haþ he done
 þerfore bihouep hym a ful longe spon
 þat shal eten with a feend þus herd I seye
 So at þe last he mote forþ his weye 604
 And forþ he fleep til he come þer hym list
 whan it come hym to purpoos for to rist
 ¶ I trowe he had þilk texte in mynde
 þat al þinge repeiryng to his kinge 608

¶ Redditui suo sui
gula gaudet /

GROUP F. § 2. SQUIRE'S TALE. Petworth MS.

Gladeþ hym self þus seyn men as I gesse
 Men louen of propre kinde newfangilnesse
 As briddes doon þat men in cages fede
 ffor þeiȝh þou nyȝt and day take of hym hede 612
 And strawe her cage faire and soft as silk
 And ȝeue hem sugre . hony . brede *and* mylkt
 ȝit right anoon as þat his door is vppe
 He wiþ his feete wil spurne down his cuppe 616
 And to þe wode he wil and wormes ete [leaf 112]
 So newfangle bene þei of her mete
 And louen nouelries of propre kinde
 No gentilnesse of blood may hem bynde 620
 So ferde þis tercelett allas þe day
 Thowe he were gentilt born fressh and gay
 And goodly forto sene . humble *and* free
 He segȝh vpon a tyme a kite fle 624
 And sodeynly he loued þis kite soo
 That al his loue is clene fro me goo
 And haþ his trowþe falsed in þis wise
 Thus haþ þe kite my loue in her seruyse 628
 And I am lorn *with*-outen remedye
 And wiþ þat worde þis fawcon gan to crie
 And swowned eft in Canaces barme
 Grete was þe sorowe for þat haukes harme 632
 That Canacee and alle her wommen made
 þei nyst howe þat þei myȝt þe faucon glade
 But Canace home bereþ her in hir lappe
 And softly in plaasters gan hir wrappe 636
 þer as she *with* hire beek had hurt her selue
 Nowe can not Canace but herbes delue
 Out of the grounde and maken salues newe
 Of herbes precious *and* fyne of hewe 640
 To helen wiþ þe hauke from day to nyȝt
 She doþ her bysynesse and al her myȝt
 And by hire beddes hede she made a mew
 And keuered it wiþ veluetes blewe 644

GROUP F. § 2. SQUIRE'S TALE. Petworth MS.

In signe of troupe þat is in wommen sene
 And Aȝ wip-oute þe mwee is peinted grene
 In whiche were peynted aȝ þise fals foules
 As bene þise tydifs . tercelettes and owles 648
 Riȝt for þe spite were peynted hem biside
 Pies on hem forto erie and chide
 þus lete I Canace her hauke kepinge
 I wil no more as nowe speke of her rynge 652
 Til it come eft to purpoos forto seyn [leaf 112, back]
 Howe þat þis faucon gate her loue ageyn
 Repentaunt as þe story telleþ vs
 By mediacion of Camballus 656
 þe kyngges sone of which I ȝou tolde
 But hens forþ I wil processe holde
 To speken of auentures and of batailles
 That ȝit was neuere herde so grete merveiles 660
 ffirst wil I telle ȝou of Cambynskan
 That in his tyme mony a Cite wan
 And aftere wil I speke of algarsif
 How þat he wan Theodora to his wiff 664
 ffor whan ful oft in grete perih he was
 Ne had he bene holpen by þe hors of bras
 And aftere wil I speke of Camballo
 þat faught in listes wip þe breperen two 668
 ffor Canace er þat he myȝt hir wynne
 And þer I left wil I ageyn bygynne
 .i. sol.
 va- Apollo whirleþ vp his chare so hie
 cat Til þat þe god Mercurius hous þe schie 672
Explicit secunda pars :
¶ Here endep þe squyers tale

And here

[on leaf 112, *ba·k*]

bygynneþ þe prologe of þe merchaunte.

In feiþ Squier þow hast þe wel yquytte
 And gentely I preise wel þi witte
 Quod þe merchaunt^t consideryng^t þi zouþe
 So felingly þou spekest^t sir I þe alouþe 676
 As to my dome þer is non þat^t is here
 Of Eloquence þat^t shal be þi pere
 [And if þat þow lyue god 3if þe goode chaunce [Barlow MS 20]
 And in vertue sende the Contynaunce] 680
 ffor of þi speche I haue gret^t deynte
 I haue a sone and by þe trinite
 I had leuere þan xx^{ti} pounde worþ lond^t
 þough^t it^t were riȝt^t nowe fallen in my hond^t 684
 3e ere a man of such^t discrecioñ
 As þat^t 3e beñ fy on possession
 But^t 3if a man be uertuous withal
 I haue my sone snybbed *and* 3it^t shal / 688
 ffor he to vertue listep not^t entende [leaf 113]
 But^t forto pley atte dys and to dispende
 And lese al þat^t he haþ is his vsage
 And he haþ leuere talke wiþ a page 692
 þan to comune wiþ a gentile wiȝt^t
 where he myȝt^t lerne gentillesse ariȝt^t
 A strawe for 3oure gentilnesse quod our Hoost^t
 What^t Marchaunte parde Sir^t wel þou woost^t 696
 That^t ech^t of 3ou mote tellen at^t þe leest^t
 A tale or twoo or breken his bihest^t
 That^t knowe I weñ quod þe Merchaunte certeyñ
 I prey 3ou haueþ not^t me in disdayne 700

GROUP F. § 3. SQUIRE-FRANKLIN LINK. **Petworth MS.**

þou3e to þis man I speke a word̃ or twoo
 Telle on þi tale wiþ-outen wordes moo /
 Gladly sir' ooste *quod* he I wil obeye
 Vnto 3our wille now herkenēþ what I seye 704
 I wil 3ou not' contrarye in no wise.
 As ferre as my wittes wil suffise
 I prey to god þat it' may plesen 3ou
 þan woot I wele þat it' is good ynowe 708
 þus endeþ þe prologe /

And here by-
gynnep þe *Merchauntes tale*.

[on leaf 113]

Whilom þer was dwellinge in lumbardy ¶ The tale.
A worþi knyȝt þat born was at Pavy
In which he lyued in grete prosperite

And sixty ȝere a wyuelees man was he 1248

And folowed ay his bodely delite

On womman þer as was his Appetite

As doon þise fooles þat bene seculers

And whan þat he was past sixty ȝeres 1252

Were it for holynesse or ellis for dotage

I can not seye but suche a corage

had þis knyght to be a wedded man

That day and nyght he doþ al þat he can 1256

To aspie where he myȝt wedded be

Preiynge our lord to graunt hym þat he /

Might ones knowe þat blisful liff [leaf 113, back]

þat is bytwixe an husbonde *and* his wif 1260

And for to lyuen vnder þat holy band

Wiþ which god furste man to womman band

Noon oper lif seide he is worþ a bene

ffor wedloke is so esi and so clene 1264

That in þis world it is a paradys

Thus seiþ þis olde knyȝt þat was so wis

And certeynly as soþ as god is kinge

To take a wif it is a glorious þinge 1268

And namely whan a man is olde *and* hoore

þan is a wif þe frute of his tresore

þan shulð he take a ȝonge wif and a faire

On which he myȝt engender him an aire 1272

GROUP E. § 4. MERCHANT'S TALE. Petworth MS.

And lede his lif in Ioye and solace
 Wher as þe bachilers synggen alas
 Whan þei fynde eny aduersite
 In loue which þat' is but' childes vanite 1276
 And trewly it' sitte wel to be soo
 That' bachilers han ofte peyne *and* woo
 On brutel grounde þei beelde brutelnesse
 þei fynde whan þei wene sikernesse 1280
 þei lyue but' as a bridde or a beest'
 In liberte and vnder nyce areest'
 þer as a wedded man in his astate
 Lyueþ his lif blisful and ordynate 1284
 Vndere þe 3ok' of mariage ybounde
 Wel may his hert' in Ioye and blisse be founde
 ffor who can be so buxom as a wif
 Who is so trewe and eke so tentiff 1288
 To kepe him seke and hole as is his make
 ffor wel ne woo she wil not' hym forsake
 She nys not' very hym to loue *and* serue
 þou3e þat' he lye bedrede til he sterue 1292
 And 3it' somme clerkes sein þat' it' is not' soo
 Of which theofraste is oon of þoo./
 What' foorce þou3t' Thophrast' lusteþ lye [leaf 114]
 Ne take no wif *quod* he for husbandrye 1296
 As forto spare in household þi dispence
 A trewe seruante doþ more diligence
 Thi good to kepe þan þine owne wif
 ffor she wil cleyne half part' al her lif 1300
 And 3if þat þou be seke so god me saue
 Thi verrey frendes or a trewe knaue
 Wil kepe þe better þan she þat' waiteþ ay
 Aftere þi good and hap do mony a day 1304
 And if þou take a wif ¹þat' to þe is vntrewe
 fful ofte tyme it' shal þe Rwe ¹ [1-1 ? *spurious*]
 This entent' an hundred sipes wors
 writeþ þis man þer god his bonys curs 1308

GROUP E. § 4. MERCHANT'S TALE. Petworth MS.

But take no kepe of al such vanyte
 Defie Theofrast and herkenþ me
 A wiff is goddys 3ift verreyly
 Al oþer manere 3iftes hardely 1312
 As londes . rentes pasture or comune
 Or mebles al bene 3iftes of fortune
 þat passen as a shadowe on a waH
 But drede it nouȝt pleylnly speke I shaH 1316
 A wiff wil last and in þine hous endure
 Wel more þan þe list peraventure
 Mariegge is a ful grete sacrament
 Who haþ no wiff I telle hym shent 1320
 He lyueþ helplees and is al desolate
 I speke of folk in seculere astate
 And herken whi . I seie not þis for nouȝt
 þe womman is for mannes helpe ywrouȝt 1324
 þe highe god whan he had Adam maked
 And seghe him alone bely naked
 God of his grete goodnesse seide þan /
 Lat vs make an helpe vnto þis man 1328
 Like to hym self and þan he made Eue
 Here may 3ee see and herby may 3e preue
 þat þe wiff is mannys Comfort [leaf 114, back]
 His Paradys terrestre and his disport 1332
 So buxom and so vertuous is she
 þei moste nedes lyue in vnite
 Oo flessch þei bene and two soules as I gesse
 Haþ but oon hert in hele and in distresse 1336
 A wif a seynt Mary benedicite
 How myȝt a man han eny aduersite
 þat haþ a wiff certes I can not seie
 þe blisse þat is ytwixe hem tweye 1340
 þer may no tunge tellen or hert þenk
 If he be poor she helpeþ him to swynk
 She kepeþ his good and waasteþ neuer a dele
 Al þat her husbond lust she likeþ wele 1344

She seiþ not^t onys nay whan he seiþ 3e
 Doþ þis seiþ he. al redy sire seiþ she
 O blisful ordere of wedloke precious
 þou arte so mery and eke so vertuous 1348
 And so commended and so appreued eke
 þat^t euery man þat^t halt^t him worþ a leke
 Vpon his bare knees auȝt^t al his lif
 Thanken his god þat^t him haþ sent^t a wif 1352
 Oyþer prei to god him for to sende
 A wif to last^t vnto his lyues ende
 ffor þan his lif is sette in sikernesse
 He may not^t be desceyued as I gesse 1356
 So þat^t he worche after his wyues rede
 þan may he boldely bere vp his hede
 þei bene so trewe and also wys
 ffor which if þou wilt^t worchen as þ^e wis 1360
 Do alway so as wommen wil þe rede
 Loo howe þat^t Iacob as þise clerkes rede
 By good counseil of his modere Rebekke
 Boonde þe kyddes skyn about^t his nekke 1364
 ffor which his faders benyson he wan
 Loo Iudith as þe storie telle can
 Be wise counsail she goddes puple kepte [leaf 115]
 And selowe hym Olophernes while he sclepte 1368
 Lo Abygail by counseille how she
 Saued her husbonde Nabaþ whan þat^t he
 Shuld haue be selayne and loke aster alsoo
 By good counsaile delyuered out^t of woo 1372
 þe puple of god and made hym marche
 Of assure enchaunced forto be
 Ther is no þinge in grete superlatif
 As seiþ seneke [above] an humble wif 1376
 Suffre þi wifes tunge as Catoñ bitte
 She shal commaunde and þou shalt^t suffre it
 And ȝit^t she wil obeye of Curtesie
 A wif is keper of þine hushondrye 1380

GROUP E. § 4. MERCHANT'S TALE. Petworth MS.

wele may þe seke man by-weile *and* wepe
 þer as þer nys no wif þe hous to kepe
 I warne þe ȝif wisly þou wirche
 Loue wel þi wif as crist loueþ his chirche 1384
 If thou louest þi self wel. þou louest þi wif
 No man hateþ his flessch but in his lif
 He fostreth it and þefore bid I þe
 Cherisshe þi wif or þou shalt neuere the 1388
 Husbonde and wif what so men Iape or pleye
 Of worldly folk holde þe siker weye
 They bene so knytte þer may noon harme betide
 And namely vpon þe wives side 1392
 ffor which þis Ianuarie of which I tolde
 Considered haþ wip-in his daies olde
 þe lusty lif þe vertuous quiete
 þat is in mariage hony swete 1396
 And for his frendes on a day he sent
 To tellen hem the effecte of his entent
 wip face sadde his tale he haþ hem told
 He saide frendes I am hoor and olde 1400
 And almost god wote vpon þe pittes brinke
 Vpon my soule somewhat I most þenke
 I haue my body folily dispended / [leaf 115, back]
 Blessed be god it shal be amended 1404
 ffor I wil bene certeyn a wedded man
 And þat anon in al þe last I can
 Vnto some maide faire and tender of age
 I prey ȝou shapeþ for my mariage 1408
 Al sodeynly for I wil not abide
 And I wil foonden to asprie on my side
 To whom I may be wedded hastely
 But for as moche as ȝe bene more þan I 1412
 ȝe shul raþer such a þinge espie
 þan I and þer me lust best to alien
 But of on þing I warne ȝou my frendes dere
 I nyl noon olde wif haue in no manere 1416

She shal not^t passe xvj zere in fayn
 Old fissh and yonge flessch þat^t wil I haue certayn
 Bett^t is *quod* he a p[i]ke þan a pikereH
 And bette þan olde beef is þe tender^t veeH 1420
 I wil no womman of xxx^{ti} wynter^t age
 It^t is but^t bene strawe and grete forage
 And eke þise olde wyues god it wote
 þei konnen so moche craft^t on wades bote 1424
 So mochel broke harne whan þat^t hem lest^t
 That^t wiþ hem shuld^t I neuer^t lyuen in rest^t
 ffor sondry scoles makeþ subtile clerkes
 Womman of mony scoles. half a clerk es 1428
 But^t certeyn a yonge þing^t may man gye
 Riȝt^t as men may warme wax *with* handis plye
 Wherefore I seie ȝou pleyonly in a clause
 I nyl non olde wif han riȝt^t for þis cause 1432
 ffor if so were I had some meschaunce
 þat^t [I] in hire ne coupe haue no plesaunce
 þan shuld^t I lede my lif in auenture
 And so streite to þe deuel sure 1436
 Ne children shuld^t I noon vpon hure geten
 ȝit^t had me leuere þat^t houndes had me eten
 Than þat^t myne Heritage shulde falle [leaf 116]
 In straunge honde and þus I telle ȝou aH 1440
 I dote not^t. I not^t þe cause whi
 Men shuld wedde and ferthermore wote I
 Ther spekeþ mony a man of Mariage
 þat^t wote no more of it^t þan doþ my page 1444
 ffor whiche causes men shuld^t take a wif^t
 ȝif he may not^t chaast bene his lif
 Take him a wif wiþ grete deuocioñ
 Bycause of leefful procreacioñ 1448
 Of children to þe honure of god aboue
 And nouȝt^t only for *paramour* ne for loue
 And for þei shulden leccherie eschewe
 And ȝeelde her dettes while þat^t it^t is newe 1452

Or for þat eche man shuld helpe opere
 In meschief as sustere shal to broþere
 And lyve in chastite ful heuenly
 But sirs by 3oure leue þat am not I 1456
 ffor god byþonke it. I dar make auaunte
 I fele my lymmes sterke and suffisaunt
 To done al þat a man bylongeþ to
 I wote my self best what I may do 1460
 þou; I be hoor I fare as doþ a tre
 þat blometh er þe frute ywox[e] be
 þat blossometh tre is neiþer drie ne dede
 I fele no where hoor but on my hede 1464
 Myne hert and my lymmes ben as grene
 As lauriel is þorgh þe 3ere to sene
 And sythen 3e han herd al myn entent
 I prey 3ou to my wille 3e assent 1468
 Dyuers men dyuersly hym told
 Of Mariage mony ensamples olde
 Somme blamen it somme preisen it certayn
 But at þe laste shortely forto sayn 1472
 As alday falleþ altercaciō
 Bitwixen frendes in disputaciō
 þer fille a strif ytwix his breþeren two · [leaf 116, back]
 Of which þat oon is cleped placebo ./ 1476
 Iustinus soply called was þat other
 Placebo seide oo I am 3oure broþere
 fful litel nede han ye my lord so dere
 Counseile to aske of ony þat is here 1480
 But þat 3e bene so ful of Sapience
 That 3ou ne likeþ for 3oure high prudence
 To weyue from þe word of Salomon
 This word seiþ he vnto vs everechoñ 1484
 Wirk al þing by counseile þus seide
 And þan shalt þou not repent þe
 But þeiþ þat Salomon speke such a word
 Myn owne dere broþer and my lord 1488

So wisly god bring^t my saule at^t ese and rest^t
 I holde ³oure owe counse^{ll} is þe best^t
 ffor broþer myn take of me þis moti^f
 I haue bene nowe a courte man al my lyf^t 1492
 And god woot^t þou³e I vnworþi be
 I haue stonden in ful grete degre
 Abowen lordes of ful grete astate
 3it^t had I neuere wiþ none of hem debate 1496
 I neuere hem contraried trewly
 I wote wele þat^t my lord can more þan I.
 That^t he seiþ I holde it^t forme *and* stable
 I sieie þe same or ellis þing^t semblable 1500
 A ful grete fool is eny counselour^t
 þat^t serueþ eny lord of hie honour^t
 þat^t dar presume or ones þenk^t it^t
 That^t his counsaile shuld^t passe his lordes witte 1504
 Nay lordes bene no fooles be my fay
 3e haue ³oure self spoken here to day
 So high sentence so holy & so we^{ll}
 That^t I consent^t and conferme euery dele 1508
 3our wordes al & ³oure opynyoun
 By god þer is no man in al þis toun.
 Ne in Ytaile coupe bet^t han seide [leaf 117]
 Criste holdeþ of þis hym ful wel apaied 1512
 And trewly it^t is an hie corage
 Of eny man þat^t stoupeþ into age
 To take a 3onge wif be my fader^t kynne
 3oure hert^t hongep vpon a Ioly pynne 1516
 Dop now in þis matere ri3t^t as 3ou leste
 ffor fynally I holde it^t for þe best^t
 ¶ Iustinus þat^t ay stille satte *and* herde
 Ri3t^t in þis wise he to placebo ansuerde 1520
 Nowe broþer myn be pacient^t I prey
 Siþens þat^t 3e han seide herken what^t I sey
 Senek amonges oþer wordes wise
 Seiþ þat^t a man ou3t^t hym wel auise 1524

GROUP E. § 4. MERCHANT'S TALE. Petworth MS.

To whom he ȝeueth his land or his cateH
 And siȝens I ought' avise me riȝt' weH
 To whom I ȝeue my [gode aweye ffrome Me [MS Reg. 17 D 15, leaf 110, back. Not in Sloane 1685, leaf 91; or Reg. 18 C ii, lf 94; but in Addit. 5140, lf 153; Harl. 7333's rymes corrected to me, avised be, lf 70, col. 1.]
 WeHe more I aughte auysede be 1528
 To whome I yeue my] body for alway
 I warne you wel it' is no childes play
 To taken a wif wiȝ-out' avisement
 Men most' enquire þis is myn assent' 1532
 Whedere she be wis. sobre or dronklewe
 Eyȝer proude or oȝer wise a shrewe
 A chidere eiȝer a waaster' of þi good
 Or riche or poor / or ellis a man is woodȝ 1536
 Al be it' so þat' no man fynde shal
 Non in þis world' þat' treteȝ hool in aH
 Ne man ne beest' suȝh as men con devise
 But' naȝeles it' aught' ynowe suffise 1540
 Wiȝ eny wif ȝif so were þat' ȝe hadde
 Moo good thewes þan her vices badde
 And al þis askeȝ leisere to enquire
 ffor god wote I haue wepte mony a tere 1544
 fful priuely siȝens I had a wif
 Preise who so wil a wedded mannys lif
 Certeyn I fynde in it' but' cost' and care
 And obseruaunces of al blessed bare ./ 1548
 And ȝit' god þonk' my neighbours al aboute [leaf 117, back]
 A[nd] namely of wommen a grete route
 Sein þat I haue þe most' stedefast' wiff'
 And eke þe mekest oon þat' bereȝ liff 1552
 But I woote best wher wrieȝ [me] my shoo
 ȝe may for me riȝt' as ȝou list' doo
 Aviseȝ ȝou ȝe bene a man of age
 Howe þat' ȝe entren into mariage 1556
 And namely wiȝ a ȝonge wif and a feire
 By him þat' made water erȝe and Eyre
 þe ȝongest' man þat' is in al þis route
 Is bisy ynouȝe to bringe it' aboute 1560

To haue his wiff allone trestep me
 3e shullen not plesen hure 3eres pre
 This is to seyn to done her plesaunce
 A wiff axep ful mony an obseruaunce 1564
 I prey 3ou pat 3e ne be euel apaide
 Wel quod þis Ianuar' & hastowe al saide
 Strawe for þi senek & for þi prouerbes
 I count not a panyer ful of herbes 1568
 Of scole teermes wiser men þan thou/
 As þou hast herd assentep it riȝt now
 ¶ To my purpoos Placebo what say 3e
 I sey it is a cursed man quod he 1572
 That letteþ Matrimoyne Sikerly
 And wiþ þat word þei risen sodeynly
 And bene assented fully pat he shuld
 Wedded be whan hym list and where he wold 1576
 Thy fantasie and þi curiousnesse
 ffor day to day gan in þi soule inpresse
 Of Ianuar' about his mariage
 Mony faire shappe and mony faire visage 1580
 Ther passeþ his hert nyȝt by nyȝt
 As who so toke a myroure polshed bright
 And sette it in a comune Market place
 þan shuld he seen mony a figure pace 1584
 By his Miroure and in þe same wise [leaf 118]
 Can Ianuar' in wiþ his þouȝt devise
 Of Maidens which pat dwellen [him] beside
 O. He wist not where he myȝt abide 1588
 ffor þouȝe pat oon haue beute in her face
 A-noþer stant so in þe puples grace
 ffor her sadnesse *and* her benignite
 pat of þe puple grettest vois had she 1592
 And somme were riche and hadden badde name
 But na þe lees bytwixe earnest *and* game
 He atte last enpoynted hym in oon
 A[nd] lete al oper from his herte gooñ 1596

GROUP E. § 4. MERCHANT'S TALE. Petworth MS.

And chese hire of his owne auctorite
 ffor loue is blynde al day and may not se
 And whan þat he was in þe bedde brouȝt
 He purtreide in his hert and in his þouȝt 1600
 Her freisshe beaute and her age tendere
 Hir myddel smalle her armes longe and sclendere
 Her wise gouernaunce and her gentilnesse
 Her wommanly beringe and her sadnesse 1604
 And whan þat he to her was condescended
 Hym þouȝt his chois myȝt not be amended
 ffor whan þat he him self concluded had
 Hym þouȝt eche oper mannys witt so bad 1608
 þat impossible it were to replie
 Aȝeinst his chois þis was his fantasie
 His frendes sent he to at his instaunce
 And preieþ him to done hym þat plesaunce 1612
 That hastily þei wolde to hym come
 He wold abreggen her labour al and some
 Hit nedep no more to hem to goo ne ride
 He was apointed þer he wold abide 1616
 Placebo came and eke his frendes sone
 And alþer first he bad hem aȝ a bone
 þat noon of hem noon argumentes make
 Aȝeinst his purpoos which þat he haþ take . 1620
 Which purpoos was plesaunt to god as seide he [if ms, bk]
 And verrey grounde of his prosperite
 He saide þer was a mayden in þe toune
 Which þat of bewte haþ grete renoun 1624
 Al were it so she were of smal degre
 Suffiseth him her zoupe and her bewte
 Which mayde he seide he wold haue to wif
 To leden in eese and in holynesse his lif 1628
 And þonkeþ god þat he myȝt han hir aȝ
 þat no wizt his blisse part shaȝ
 And preieþ him to labour in þis nede
 And shapen þat he faile not to spede 1632

GROUP E. § 4. MERCHANT'S TALE. Petworth MS.

ffor þan he seide his spirit^t was at eese
 þen is quod he no þing^t me may displese
 ¶ Saue oon þinge prikkeþ in my conscience
 þe which I wil reherce in 3oure presence 1636
 I haue quod he herd saie ful 3ore agoo
 þer may no man han parfit^t blesses twoo
 þis is to saie in erþe and eke in heuene
 ffor þei he kepte him from þe synnes seuene 1640
 And eke fro euery brannche of thilk tree
 3it^t is þere so parfit prosperite
 And so grete eese and lust^t in mariage
 That^t euer I am a-gast^t nowe in myn age 1644
 þat^t I shal lede nowe so mery a lif
 [So delicat withouten wo or strif [MS Harl. 7335, leaf 118,
no gap in Petworth.]
 That y shal han myn heuene in erthe] here
 ffor siþens þat^t verrey heuene is bouzt^t so dere 1648
 Wiþ tribulaciō and grete penaunce
 how shuld I such in such plesaunce
 As alle wedded men done wiþ her wives
 Come to þe blisse þere crist^t eterne alyue es 1652
 This is my drede and 3e my breþere tweye
 Assoilleþ me þis question I 3ou preye
 ¶ Iustinus which þat hated his folý
 Answerd anon riȝt^t in his Iapry 1656
 And for he wold^t his longe tale abregge
 He wolde noon autorite alegge
 But^t seide sir^t so þere bene noon obstacle [leaf 119]
 Oper þan þis god of his hye myracle 1660
 And of his mercy may so for 3ou wirche
 That^t er 3e han 3oure 3iftes of holy chirche
 3e may repent^t of wedded mannys lif
 In which 3e seyn is neiþer woo ne strif 1664
 And ellis god forbede but^t 3if he sent^t
 A wedded man grace hym to repent^t
 Wel often raper þan a syngle man /
 And þerfor sir^t þe best^t rede I can 1668

Dispeireþ 3ou nouȝt haueþ in memorie
 Perauenture she may be 3our' purgatorie
 She may be goddis mene *and* goddys whippe
 Than shal 3oure soule vp to heuen skippe 1672
 Swifter þan doþ an arowe out' of a bowe
 I hope to god here aftere 3e shal knowe
 þat' þer nys noon so grete felicite
 In mariage ne neuere more shal be 1676
 þat 3ou shal lak of 3our' saluacion
 So þat' 3e vse as skille is and resoñ
 þe lustes of 3oure wif attemperally
 And þat' 3e plese hure not' to amerausly 1680
 And þat' 3e kepe 3ou eke fro oper synne
 My tale is done for my witte is þinne
 Beþ not agast' her-of my broþer'
 But' lat' vs wade from þis mater to an opere 1684
 þe wif of baþe if 3e wil vnderstonde
 Of mariage which 3e han on honde
 Declaren can ful wel in litel space
 ffareþ nowe wel god haue 3ou in his grace 1688
 And wiþ þis word' þis Iustyne *and* his broþere
 Han take her leue and ech of hem of opere
 ffor whan þei segħ it' most' nedes be
 þei wrouȝten so by wise and sclegħ trete 1692
 þat' she þis maide which þat' Mayus hiȝt'
 As hastely as euere þat' she myȝt'
 Shal wedded be vnto Ianuarye [leaf 119, back]
 I trowe it' were to longe 3ou to tary 1696
 If I 3ou tolde of euery scrite or bonde
 By which þat' she was festned in his londe
 Eiper forto herken of her riche aray
 But' fynaly ycommen is þe day 1700
 þat' to þe churche boþ[e] bene þei went'
 fforto receyue þe holy sacrament'
 fforþ commeth þe preest' wiþ stole about' his neke
 And bad hir' be ylik' sarra and rebek' 1704

GROUP E. § 4. MERCHANT'S TALE. Petworth MS.

In wisdom and [in] troupe of mariage
 And saide his orisons as is his vsage
 And crowched hem and bad god shuld hem blisse
 And made al siker ynough *with* holynesse 1708
 Thus bene þei wedded *with* solempnite
 And at þe feeste sitteþ he and she
 Wiþ oþer worpi folk' vpon þe dees
 Al ful of Ioye and blisse is þe paleys 1712
 And ful of instrumentes *and* of vitaille
 þe moste deyntevous of al Ytaile
 Byform hem of instrumentis which soun
 þat Orpheus ne of phebes ampheoun 1716
 Ne maden neuere suche a melody
 And at euery cours came loude mynstralcye
 That neuere Ioab trumped forto here
 Neiper Theodomas 3it' half so clere 1720
 And Thebes whan þe cite was in doute
 Bacus þe wyne hem shenkeþ al aboute
 And Venus laugheþ on euery wiȝt'
 ffor Ianuar' was bycome her knyȝt' 1724
 And wolde boþ assaien his corage
 In liberte and eke in mariage
 And wiþ hure fuyr bronde *with* her hand' aboute
 Daunseth byforne þe bride al aboute 1728
 And clenly I dar wel seyn right þis
 Emyneus þat god of weddyng' is /
 Segh neuere in his lif' so mery a wedded man [leaf 120]
 Holde þou þi pees þou poete Marcean 1732
 þat writest' vs þat ilk wedding' mery
 Of hure Philologi and of Mercury
 And of þe sanges þat þe muses songe
 So smale as eke þi penne *and* eke þi tunge 1736
 ffor to discryuen of þis mariage
 Whan tender zoupe hap wedded stouping' age
 þer is suche myrþe þat it' may not' be writte
 Assaieþ it ȝoure self þan may ȝe wite 1740

3if þat I lak or noon in þis matere
 Mayus þat sitte wiþ so benygne a chere
 Hire to biholde it semed faierye
 Queen Estre loked neuere wiþ such an ye 1744
 On assure so meke a loke as she
 I may 3ou not avise al her bewte
 But þus moche of her bewte telle I may
 þat she was like þe bri3t morowe of may 1748
 ffulfillede of Beaute and of plesaunce
 This Ianuar' is rauissht in a traunce
 And at euery tyme he loked on hir' face
 But in his hert' he gan hir' to manace 1752
 þat he þat ny3t in armes wold hir' streyn
 Harder þan euere Paris did Eleyñ
 But napelees 3it had he grete pite
 þat ilke ny3t offenden her most' he 1756
 And þought' alas o tender' creature
 Nowe god wold 3e my3t wel endure
 Al my corage it is so sharpe *and* kene
 I am agast' 3e shul it not sustene 1760
 But god forbede þat I did al my my3t
 Nowe wolde god þat it were wexen ny3t
 And þat þe ny3t wolde lasten euere moo
 I wold þat al þis puple were a-goo 1764
 And fynaly he dop al his laboure
 As he best' my3t sauynge his honoure
 To hast' hem fro þe mete in subtile wise
 The tyme came þat reson was to rise 1768
 And after þat men daunce *and* drinke fast'
 And spices al aboute þe hous þei cast'
 And ful of foye and blisse is euery man
 Ah sauf a squyer þat hi3t damyan. 1772
 which carf to-fore þe king' mony day
 He was so rauysshed on his lady may
 That for þe verrey peine he was ny3e wode
 Almost' he swalte an swowned *per* he stode 1776

[leaf 120, back]

GROUP E. § 4. MERCHANT'S TALE. Petworth MS.

As she him ladde daunsinge in her hand
 So fresshe she was and þerto so likand^t [spurious]
 And to his bedde he went^t hym hastely
 No more of him at^t this tyme speke I. 1780
 But^t þere I lete him wepe ynow and pleyñ
 Til fresshe may wil rewen on his peyn
 ¶ O perilous fyre þat^t in þe bedstrawe bredeþ
 O famulere foo þat^t his seruise bedep 1784
 O seruaunte traitoure fals [of] holy hewe
 Like to þe adder sclegħ. & in Basom vntrewe
 God shilde vs alle from þoure iniquitaunce
 O Ianuare dronken in plesaunce 1788
 Of Mariage se howe þi damyan
 Thyne owne squyer and þi born man
 Entendeþ to done þe vilanye
 God graunte þe þine harme forto aspie 1792
 ffor in þis world^t nys no wors pestilence
 Than homely foo alday in þi presence
 Parfourmed haþ þis day his arke dyurne
 No lenger may þe body of hym soiourne 1796
 þe Orisonte as in þat^t latitude
 Riȝt^t wiþ his mantel þat^t is derk^t and Rude
 Gan forto sprede þe mysprey aboute
 ffor which departed is þe lusty route 1800
 ffor Ianuare wiþ þonke on euery side
 Hoom to her howses lustely þei ride.
 Ther as þei done her þingges as hem lust^t [leaf 121]
 And whan þei segħ her tyme to go to rest^t 1804
 Sone aftere þat^t þis hastif Ianuar'
 Wol go to bedde he wil no lenger tar'
 He drinkeþ Ypocras clerre and vernage
 Of spices hote to encreesen his corage 1808
 And many a letuare had he ful fyne
 Such as þe cursed monk daune Costantyne
 Haþ writen in his boke of Coytu
 To eten hem al he nas no þing^t eschwe 1812

And þus to his privey frendes seide he
 ffor goddis loue as sone as it may be
 Lette voiden al þis hous in curteys wise sone 1815
 Men dronken and þe trauers drowe anōn 1817
 The bride was brouȝt to bedde as stille as eny stoñ 1818
 So hasted Ianuar' it most be dōn [spurious]
 And whan þe bedde was with þe preest yblessed
 Out of þe Chambre haþ euery wiȝt hym dressed 1820
 And Ianuare haþ fast in armes take
 His fresshe may his paradis his make
 He lulleth hure he kisseth hure ful oft
 Wiþ þilke bristels of his beard vnsoft 1824
 Ylike to þe skyn of hounde fissh sharpe as brere
 ffor he was shaue al newe in his manere
 He rubbeþ hure vpon her tendere face
 And seide þus alace I mote trespace 1828
 To ȝou my spouse *and* ȝou gretly offende
 Or tyme come þat I wil doune descende
 But napelees considereþ þis quod he
 þer nys no werkman what so euer he be 1832
 þat may boþe worche wel and hastely
 þis wil be done at leisere parfitely
 It is no force howe longe þat we pleye
 I trowe in wedloke coupled bene we tweye 1836
 And blessed by the yokke þat we bene Inne
 ffor in our actys we may do no synne /
 A man may do no synne wiþ his wiff [leaf 121, back]
 Ne hirt hym self wiþ his owne knyff 1840
 Now han we leue to pley vs by þe lawe
 Thus labowreþ he til þat þe day gan dawe
 And þan he takeþ a soppe in fyne clerre
 And vpriȝt in his bedde þan sitteþ he 1844
 And aftere þat he songe ful loude *and* clere
 And kissed his wiff and made wanton chere
 He was al coltiss and ful of ragerye
 And ful of Girgoun as is flecked pie 1848

GROUP E. § 4. MERCHANT'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

þe slak skyn about^t his necke shakeþ
 While þat^t he songe so chaunteþ he *and* crakeþ
 But^t good woote what^t may þouȝt^t in her hert^t
 Whan she him segþ vpsitting^t in his shert^t 1852
 In his nyȝt^t cappe and wiþ his necke lene
 She preiseth nouȝt^t his plesinge worþ a bene
 Than seide he þus my resting^t wil I take
 Nowe day is come I may no lenger wake 1856
 And doune he leide his hede *and* slept^t til prime
 And afterward^t whan þat^t he segþ his tyme
 Vp riseþ Ianuare but^t fresshe may
 Holdeþ her chambre vnto þe ferþe day 1860
 As vsage is of wives for þe best^t
 ffor euery laboure somtyme mot^t haue rest^t
 Oyþer ellis longe may he nouȝt^t endure
 þis is to saye no lyues creature 1864
 Be it^t of fissh . or brid of beest^t or man
 Now wil I speke of woful damyan
 þat^t languowreþ for loue as ȝe shul here
 Therfore I speke to him in þis manere 1868
 I say o. sely damyan allas
 Answere to þis demaunde as in þis cas
 Howe shalt^t þou to þi lady fressh[e] May
 Telle þi woo she wil alway sey nay 1872
 Eke if þowe speke she wil þi woo bywreye
 God bene þine helpe I can no better^t seye
 ¶ This seke Damyan in Venus fire [leaf 122]
 So brenneþ þat^t he deyeþ for desire 1876
 ffor whiche he putte his lif in auenture
 No lenger myȝt^t he in þis wise endure
 But^t priuely a penner^t gan he borowe
 And in a letter wrote he al his sorowe 1880
 In manere of a compleint^t oþer a lay
 Vnto þis faire and fressh[e] lady may
 And in a purs of selk hong on his shert^t
 He haþ yputte and yleide it^t at his hert^t 1884

þe mone þat at none was at thilk day
 þat Ianuare hap wedded þat fressh may
 yn two of taure was in þe Cancre gliden
 So longe hap she in her chambere bydeñ 1888
 As custumes is vnto þese nobles alle
 A bride shal not eten in þe halle
 Til daies foure eiper thre daies at þe lest
 Ypassed bene þan lat her goo to þe feest 1892
 þe *ferthe*¹ day complete fro none to none [1 MS iii]
 whan þat the highe masse was ydone
 In halle sitte þis Ianuare *and* may
 As fresshe as is þe briȝte somers day 1896
 And so bifelle howe þat þis good man
 Remembreþ hym vpon þis Damian
 And seide seint mary how may þis be
 That Damian entendeþ nouȝt to me 1900
 Is he ay seke or howe may þis betide
 His squyers which þat stoden hym beside
 Excusinge him bycause of his siknesse
 Which þat letted him to do his bysynesse 1904
 None oþer cause myȝt make hym care
 þat me forþenkeþ quod this Ianuare
 He is a gentile squyer be my troupe
 ȝif þat he deied it were harme *and* roupe 1908
 He is as wise discrete and secree.
 As eny man I woote of his degre
 And þerto manly and eke seruisable [leaf 122, back]
 And for to bene a prifty man riȝt able 1912
 But after mete as sone as euer I may
 I wil my self visite hym and eke may
 To done him al þe comfort þat I can.
 And for þat worde hym blessed euery man 1916
 þat of his bounte *and* his gentilnesse
 He wolde so conforten hym in his siknesse
 His squyer for it was a gentile dede
 Dame quod he þis Ianuare take good hede 1920

GROUP E. § 4. MERCHANT'S TALE. Petworth MS.

That at aftere mete 3e wiþ 3oure wommen alle
 Whan 3e han bene in chambre out of þis halle
 That alle 3e goon to se þis damyañ
 Doþ him disport he is a gentile man 1924
 And telleþ him þat I wil hym visite
 Hauē I no þinge but rested me a lite
 [And spede 3ou faste ffor I wol abyde [MS Reg. 17 D 15, leaf 116;
no gap in Petworth.]
 TyHe þat ye slepe ffastē by my syde] 1928
 Now wiþ þat word he gan to hym calle
 A sqwier þat was a marshal of his halle
 And tolde him certeyn þingges what he wold
 þis fresshe may haþ streight her way yhold 1932
 Wiþ aȝ her wommen vnto þis Damyan
 Doune by his beddes side satte she þan
 Confortinge him as she goodly may
 This Damyan whan he his tyme say 1936
 In secrete wise his purs and eke his bille
 In whiche þat he writen had al his wille
 Haþ putte into her honde wiþ-uten more
 saue þat he sikked wondere sore 1940
 And softly to hure riȝt þus seide he
 Mercy and þat 3e diskeuere nouȝt me
 ffor I am dede if þat þis þinge be kidde
 þis purs haþ she in her bosom hidde 1944
 And went her way 3e gete no more of me
 But vnto Ianuare ycommen is she
 And on his beddys side sitte ful soft
 He takeþ hur an kisseþ hure ful oft 1948
 And leide hym doune to slepe and þat anōn [leaf 123]
 She feyned hure as þoo she most gōn
 Ther as she woote þat euery wiȝt mote nede
 And whan she of þis bille haþ taken hede 1952
 She rent it al to cloutes at þe last
 And in þe priuee softly she it cast
 Who stodieth nowē but feire fresshe may
 And adoune by Ianuare she lay 1956

þat' selepte to þe Coughe haþ hym a-waked .
 Anon he preide hire to stripe hur' naked .
 He wold of hur he seide haue som plesaunce
 He seide hire clopes did hym encombraunce 1960
 And she obeieþ be he leef or loth
 But' lest' þat' precious folk' be wiþ me wroþe
 How þat' he wrouȝt' I dar to ȝou not' telle
 Eiper whedere þat' he þouȝt' on paradis or on helle 1964
 But' I lete hem worche in her wise
 Til euensonge ringe *and* þat' þei most arise
 were it' be destanye eiper be auenture
 were it' by influence eiper be nature 1968
 Eiper in constellaciōn þat' in such' estate
 þe heuene stood þat' tyme fortunate
 was forto putte a bille of Venus werkes/
 ffor al þing' haþ tyme as seine þise clerkes 1972
 To eny womman forto gete her loue
 I can not' seie but' þe grete god aboue
 That' knoweþ þat' none acte is causelees
 He demep' of aȝt for I wil holde my pees 1976
 But' soþ is þis howe þat' þis fresshe may
 Haþ take such' impressiōn þat' day
 On pite of þis sike Damyan
 That' from her hert' she ne drive can 1980
 The remembraunce forto done hym eese
 Certeine þouȝt' she whom þat' þis þing' displese
 I rek not' for here I him assure
 To loue him best' of eny creature ·/ 1984
 Though' he no more nad þan his shert' [leaf 123, back]
 lo pite renneþ sone in gentil hert'
 Here may ȝe se howe excellent' fraunchise
 In wommen is whan þei narowe hem avise 1988
 Somme tyraunt' þer is as bene mony oñ
 That' haþ an hert' as hard' as eny stoñ
 Whiche wold han lete him sterue in þe place
 Wel raper þan han graunted him þat' grace 1992

And hem reioysen in her cruel pride
 And recched nouȝt to bene an homycide
 This gentile may fulfilled of al pite
 Riȝt so of hure honde a *lette* made she 1996
 In whiche she graunteþ hym of hire verrey *grace*
 Ther lackeþ nouȝt only but day *and* space
 wher þat she myȝt to his lust suffice
 ffor it shal be riȝt as he wil deuise 2000
 And whan she seeghe her tyme vpon a day
 To visite þis Damyan goþ faire May
 And subtilly þis letter doune she þrest
 Vnder his pilowe rede if him lest 2004
 She takeþ him by þe hond and hard hym twist
 So secrely þat no wiȝt it wist
 And bad him be al hole and forþ she wente
 To Ianuare whan þat he for her sente 2008
 Vp riseþ Damyan the nexte morwe
 Al passed was his siknesse & his sorowe
 He kembeþ him and proyneþ hym *and* pykeþ
 He doþ al þat his lady lust and likeþ 2012
 And eke to Ianuare he goþ as lowe
 As euere did a dogge for þe bowe
 He is so plesaunt to euery man
 ffor craft is al who þat it can 2016
 þat euery wight is fayn to teche hym good
 And fully in his lady grace he stood
 Thus lete I Damyan aboute his nede
 And in my tale forþ I wil procede ·/ 2020
 Somme Clerkes holden þat ffelicite
 [leaf 124]
 Stant in delite and perfor he
 This noble Ianuare wiþ al his myȝt
 In honest wise as longeþ to a knyȝt 2024
 Shope him to lyve ful deliciously
 His howsing his aray al honestly
 To his degree was maked as of kinges
 Amonges opere as of honest þingges 2028

He had a gardyn walled al wiþ stoñ
 So faire a gardyne wote I nowhere noon
 ffor out of doute I verrely suppose
 þat he þat wrote þe romance of þe rose 2032
 Ne coupe of hit þe bewte wel devise
 Ne priapus ne myzt not suffice
 þough he be god of gardynes forto telle
 The bewte of þe gardyne and of þe wellle 2036
 That stood vndere a laurere alway grene
 fful ofte tyme king Pluto *and* his quene
 Preserpyna and al her fairye
 Disporten hem and maken melodye 2040
 Abouten þat wellle and daunceden as men told
 This noble knyght þis Ianuare þe olde
 Such deynte haþ in it to walken and to pley
 þat he wil suffre no wight to bere þe key 2044
 ssaue he him self for of þe smal wikett
 He bare alway of siluere a clikett
 Wiþ þe which whan þat hym lust vnshette
 And whan þat he wold pay his wiff his dette 2048
 In somer seson þidere wold he goo
 And may his wiff and no wight but þei twoo
 And pingges which þat were not doñ abedde
 þei in þe gardyn perfourmed han and spedde 2052
 And in þis wise mony a mery day
 Lyued þis Ianuare and fresshe may
 But worldly Ioye may not alway endure
 To Ianuare ne to no worldely creature 2056
 O sodeyn happe. o þou fortune vnstable [leaf 124, back]
 ylike to þe scorpion variable
 þat flaterest wiþ þine heued whan þou wilt stinge :
 Thy tale is deþ by þine enuenemyng 2060
 O brutel ioye o swete poyson queynt
 O mystery þat subtilly canst peynt
 Thyne ȝiftes vndere þe hwe of stidfastnesse
 þat þou desceyuedest boþ more and lesse. 2064

Why hast þou Ianuare þus desceyued.
 And haddest hym for þi ful frende receyued.
 And now þou hast byraft hym boþ his eyen
 ffor sorowe of whiche desireth he to dyen 2068
 ¶ Allas þe noble Ianuare þat is so fre
 Amydde his lust and his prosperite
 Is wexen blynde and al sodeynly
 His deep þerfore desireþ he vtterly 2072
 And þer-wip-aþ þe fuyre of Ielosie
 Lest þat his wif shuld falle in some foly
 So brent in his hert þat he wold fayn
 That somme man boþe hur and hym had slayn 2076
 ffor neuere aftere his deþe ne in his liff
 Ne wolde he þat she were loue ne wiff
 But euere lyue as a widowe in cloþes blake
 Sool as þe turtel doþ þat hap lost her make 2080
 But at þe last after a monþe or tweye
 His sorowe gan to swage soþ to seye
 ffor whan he wist it may noon oþer be
 He paciently toke his aduersite 2084
 Sauf out of doute may he not forgoñ
 þat he nas Ialouse euermore in ooñ
 Which Ialousie was so outrageous
 That neiþer in halle ne in noon oþer hous / 2088
 He nolde suffre hure forto ride ne goo
 Ne in noon oþer place neuer þe moo
 But 3if þat he [had] hande on hir alway
 ffor which ful ofte wepeþ frecche may 2092
 Thal loueþ Damyan so benygneþ
 That she mote eiþer dey sodeynly
 Or ellis she mote han him at her list
 She waiteþ whan [her] hert wold al to-brest
 Vpon þat oþer side DAMyan
 Bycommen is þe sorowfullest man/
 þat euer was for neiþere nyzt ne day
 Ne myght he speke a word to fresshe may 2100

[leaf 125]

As to his *purpoos* of no *suche* matere
 But *3if* *pat* *Ianuare* most *it* here
pat had oon honde vpon hir *euere* moo .
 And napeles by writing^t to and froo 2104
 And priveys signes wist^t he what^t she ment^t
 And she knewe of *pe* sygnes of his entent^t
 ¶ O *Ianuare* what^t my^{3t} *pe* availe
 Thowe my^{3test} se as ferre as shippes saile 2108
 ffor as good is a blynde desceyued be
 As to be disceyued whan a man may see
 Loo Arguys whiche *pat* had an C. eyen
 ffor al *pat* *euere* he couþe powre eyþere prien 2112
3it was he blent^t and god woot^t so bene moo /
 That^t wenen wisly *pat* *it* nys nat^t soo
 Passe ouer is an eese & say no more
pis fresshe May of which I speke of *3ore* 2116
 In warme wexe haþ enprinted *pis* clikett^t
pat *Ianuare* bere of *pat* smal wikett^t
 By which vnto his gardyne of[t] he went^t
 And Danyan *pat* knewe her entent^t 2120
pe Cliket^t countrefeted prively
 per nys no more to say but^t hastely
 Somme wondere by *pis* cliket^t shal betide
 Which ye shal here if *3e* wil abide 2124
 O noble Ovide soþe seist^t þou god wote
 What^t sele^{3t} is *it* þow *it* be longe & hote
pat he nyl fynde *it* out^t in somme manere
 By Piramus and Tisbe may men lere 2128
 þough þei were kepte ful longe streit^t oueraft^t
 þei ben acorded rownyng^t þorgh^t a waft^t
 Ther nys no wi^{3t} couþe han founde out^t such^t a selei^{3t} ^[lf 125, bk]
 But^t nowe to *purpoos* er *pat* daies viij. 2132
 were passed er the monþe of Iuyl byfille
 That^t *Ianuare* haþ caught^t so grete a wille
 þorowe eggyng^t of his wiff^t him forto pley
 In his gardyne and no þing^t but^t þei tweye 2136

GROUP E. § 4. MERCHANT'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

þat in a morwe vnto his may seide he
 Rise vp my wif my loue my lady free
 The turtels vois is herd my douve swete
 The wynter is goon *with* al his reynes wete 2140
 Come forþ now *with* þine eyen columbyne
 How feirer bene þi brestes þan bene wyne
 The gardyne is enclosed al aboute
 Come forþ my white spouse out of doute 2144
 þow hast me wownded in myn hert o wiff
 No spotte in þe nas in al þi liff
 Come forþ and lat vs take our disport
 I Cheese þe for my wiff and my comfort 2148
 Suche olde loude wordes vsed he
 On damyan a signe made shee
 That he shulde goo byform wiþ his clikett
 This damyan hap opned þe wikett 2152
 And in he stert and þat in such manere
 That no wizt myȝt it see ne here
 And stille he sitte vnder a bussñ anoñ
 This Ianuare so blynde as is a stoñ 2156
 Wiþ Maius in his honde *and* no wizt moo
 Into his fresshe gardyne is he goo
 And crape to þe wiket sodeynly
 Now wif *quod* he here nys but þou *and* I 2160
 That arte þe creature þat I best loue
 ffor by þat lorde þat sitte vs al aboue
 I had leuere dyen on a knyff
 þan ȝe offended dere trewe wiff 2164
 ffor goddes sake þenk how I þe chees
 Nouȝt for no coueityse doutelees /
 But only for þe loue I had to þe [leaf 126]
 And þough þat I be olde and may not see 2168
 Be to me trewe and I wil telle ȝou why
 Certes iij. þingges shul ȝe wynnæn þerby
 ffirst loue of Crist and to ȝoure self honour
 And al myne heritage tounne *and* toure 2172

I ȝeue it ȝou makeþ Cher[tr]es as ȝou lest
 This shal be doo to morowe er sonne¹ rest [1 first sonnesse]
 So wisly god my soule bringe in blisse
 I prey ȝou in couenant þat ȝe me kisse 2176
 And þouȝe þat I be Ialous wite me nouȝt
 ȝe ben so depe enprented in my þouȝt
 That whan I considere ȝoure bewte
 And þerwipal þe vnlikly elde of me 2180
 I may not certes þouȝe I shulde deie
 fforbere to bene out of ȝour companye
 ffor verrey loue þis is wip-oute doute
 Now kisse me wiff and lat vs rome aboute 2184
 ¶ This freesshe may whan she þise wordes herd
 Benignely to Ianuare she answerd
 But first and formest she bygan to wepe
 I haue quod she a soule to kepe 2188
 As wel as she and also myn honoure
 And of my wifhede pilke tendere floure
 whiche I haue assured in ȝoure hand
 whan þat þe preest to ȝou my body band 2192
 wherfore I wil answere in þis manere
 with þe leue of ȝou my lord so dere
 I prey god þat neuere dawe þat day
 þat I ne sterue as foule as womman may 2196
 If euer I do vnto my kynne þat shame
 Eiper ellis I enpeire so my name
 þat I be fals And if I do þat lakke
 To stripe me *and* putte me in a sakke 2200
 And in þe next ryuere do me drenche
 I am a gentil womman *and* no wenche.
 whi speke ȝe þus but men bene euere vntrewe [leaf 126, back]
 And wommen ha reproof of ȝou ay newe 2204
 ȝe can noon oþer countynancē I leue
 But speke to vs as vntrest and in repreue
 And wip þat worde she segħ wher damyan
 Satte in þe busshe and knele he bygan 2208

GROUP E. § 4. MERCHANT'S TALE. Petworth MS.

And wiþ her fynger signes made she
 þat Damyan shuld clymbe vpon a tree
 þat charged was wiþ frwte and vp he went
 For verreily he knewe al her entent 2212
 And euery signe þat she couþe make
 wel bette þan Ianuare her owne make
 ffor in a *lette* she had tolde him aH
 Of þis matere howe he worchen shaft 2216
 And þus I lat hym sitte in þe pirry
 & Ianuare and Mayus regnyng ful mery
 ¶ Briȝt was þe day *and* blewe þe firmament
 Phebus of gold doune haþ his stremes sent 2220
 To gladen euery floure wiþ his warmnesse
 He was þat tyme in Gemynys as I gesse
 But litel fro his declinaciō
 Of Canser, Louis exaltaciō 2224
 And so bifelle þat in a briȝt morowtide
 þat in þe Gardyne on þat ferþer side
 Pluto þat is þe kyng of ffairye
 And mony a lady in his companye 2228
 ffolowinge his wiff þe qwene proserpina
 Whiche þat he rauysshed out of proserpina
 whilis þat she gadered floures in a mede
 In Claudyan ȝe may þe stories rede 2232
 How in his Grisly carte he her fette
 This kinge of fairye adoune hym sette
 Vpon a benche of Turves fressh *and* grene
 And riȝt anon seide he þus to his quene 2236
 My wif quod he þat may no wiȝt say nay
 The experience proueth it euery day
 The treson which þat womman doþ to man
 x^e thousand telle I can [leaf 127] 2240
 Notable of ȝoure vntroupe *and* britelnesse
 O salamon richest of alle rychesse
 ffulfilled of sapience and of worldely glorie
 fful worþi bene þi wordes to memorie 2244

To euery wight^t þat^t witte and resoñ can/
 Thus preiseþ he 3it^t þe bounte of man
 Among^t a Mī men 3it^t fonde I oñ
 But^t of alle wommen fonde I neuere noon 2248
 Thus seiþ þis knyght^t þat^t knoweþ 3oure wickednesse
 And Ihesus filius C[i]rak as I gesse
 Ne spekeþ of 3ou but^t seelden reuerence
 A wilde fuyr a corrupte pestilence 2252
 So falle vpon 3oure bodies 3it^t to ny3t^t
 Ne Se 3e not^t þis honorable knyght^t
 By cause alas þat^t he is blynde *and* olde
 His owne man shal make him kokewold^t 2256
 Lo where he sitte þe leccheour in þe tree
 Nowe wil I graunte of my maieste
 Vnto þis olde blynde worþi kny3t^t
 That^t he shal han a3ein his eyen si3t^t 2260
 whan þat^t his wiff wold do him vilanye
 þan shal he knowe al her harlotrie
 Boop in repreef^t of hure and oþer moo/
 ¶ 3e Sire quod proserpyne and wil 3e soo 2264
 Nowe by my moders sire soule I swere
 þat^t I shal 3euen hire suffisant^t answere
 And alle wommen aftere for 3oure sake
 That^t þou3e þei bene in eny gilt^t ytake 2268
 Wiþ face bolde þei shullen hem self excuse
 And beren hem doune þat^t wolden hem accuse
 ffor lacke of answer noon of hem shul dyen
 Añ hadde 3e seie a þinge wiþ boþ 3oure yen 2272
 3it^t shullen we so visage it^t hardely
 And wepe and swere and chide subtyly
 þat^t 3e shullen bene as lewde as bene gees [le: f 127, back]
 what^t recketh me of such^t autoritees/ 2276
 I wote wel þis Iwe this salomon
 ffoonde of vs wymmen foles mony oñ
 But^t þou3e þat^t he ne fonde no good womman
 þer haþ yfounde mony anoþer man 2280

GROUP E. § 4. MERCHANT'S TALE. Petworth MS.

wommen ful trewe ful good ful vertuous
 witnesse of hem þat dwellen in cristes hous
 wiþ martierdome þei proued her constance
 þe Romayn geestes maken remembraunce 2284
 Of mony a verrey trewe wif also /
 But sir ne be not wroþ as be it soo /
 þough þat he seide he foonde no good womman
 I prei 3ou take þe sentence of þe man 2288
 He ment þus þat in souereyn bounte
 Nis noon but god but neipere he ne she
 Eye for verrey god þat nys but oon
 what make 3e so moche of Salomōn 2292
 what þou3e he made a temple goddys hous
 what þou3e he were riche and glorious
 So made he a temple of fals goddes ./
 Who my3t do a þinge þat more forbode es 2296
 Parde as faire as 3e his name enplasterē
 He was a leechoure and an ydolastre
 And in his elde he verrey god forsoke
 And 3if þat god nad as seiþ þe booke 2300
 yspared him for his faders sake he sholde
 haue lost his regne souner þan he wolde
 I sette nou3t of alle þe vyleynye
 þat 3e of wommen write a botterflie 2304
 I am a womman nede mote I speke
 Eiper ellis swelle to myn hert breke
 ffor siþen he seide þat we bene Iangler[ess]es
 As euer mote I brouke boþ my tresses 2308
 I shal not spare for no curtesye
 To speke him harme þat wold vs vilanye
 Dame quod þis Pluto be no lenger wroþe [leaf 128]
 I 3eue it vp but siþens I swore myn oþe 2312
 þat I wolde graunten him his sizt a3eyn
 My word shal stonde þat warne I þe certeyn
 I am a kinge it sitte me not to lye
 And I quod she a quene of fairye 2316

Her Answere she shal haue I vndertake
 Lat' vs no moo wordes make
 ¶ fforsoþ I wil no lenger 3ou contrarie
 Now lat' vs turne a3ein to Ianuarye 2320
 That' in þis Gardyn wiþ þis faire Maye
 Syngeþ wel merier þan þe popeniay
 3ou loue I best' and shal and oþer noñ
 So longe aboute þe alaies is he goñ 2324
 TiH he was come a3einst' þilk' piry
 where as þis damyan sitteþ ful mery
 On hegh amonge þe fresshe leues grene
 This fresshe May þat' is so bri3t' an shene 2328
 Gan forto sigh and seide alas my side
 Now sire quod she for ou3te þat' may bytide
 I moost' haue of þe peeres þat I see
 Or I mote dye so soore longeþ me 2332
 To eten of þe smale peres grene
 Helpe for her loue þat' is of heuene quene
 I telle 3ou wel a womman in my plite
 May haue to fruede so grete an appetite 2336
 þat' she may dyen but' she it haue
 Allas quod he þat' I nad here a knaue
 That couþe clymbe alas alas quod he
 ffor I am blinde 3e sire no fors quod she 2340
 But' wold 3e vouchesauf for goddis sake
 þe piry in wiþ 3oure arnes forto take
 ffor wel I wote þat' 3e mystrest me
 Ellis shuld I clymbe wel ynowe quod she 2344
 So I my fote my3t' sette vpon 3oure bak'
 ffor soþe seide he in me shal be no lak'
 Might' I 3ou helpe wiþ myn herte blood [leaf 128, back]
 He stoupeþ doune and on his bak' she stood 2348
 And cau3t' hure by a twist' and vp she goop
 Ladyes I preie 3ou þat' ye be nat' wroop
 I can not' glose I am a rude man
 And sodeynly anoon þis damyan 2352

Gan pullen vp þe smokke and in he þronge
 And whan þat Pluto segħ þis grete wronge
 To Ianuarie he 3aue his sizt' ageyn
 [And made him se / as wel as evir he myht
 And whan he hadde / cauht his syht ageyn]
 ne was þer neuer man of þinge so feyn
 But' on his wiff his þou3t' was euer moo
 Vp to þe tree he cast' his eyen twoo / 2360
 And segħ þat Damyan his wif' had dressed.
 In which manere it' may not' be expressed
 But' [3if] I wolde speke vncurteysly
 And vp he 3aue a roringe *and* a crye 2364
 As doþe þe modere whan þe childe shal dye
 oute helpe alas harowe I gan to crye
 O stronge lady stoor what' doostowe
 And she answerþ sire what' eileth 3owe 2368
 Haue pacience and reson in 3oure mynde
 I haue 3ou hulpen of boþ 3oure eyen blynde
 Vp perile of my soule I shal not' lyen
 As me was tau3te to hele wiþ 3oure eien 2372
 Was no þinge bette forto make 3ou see
 Than strogle wiþ a man vpon a tree
 God wote I did it' in ful good entent
 Stroggel quod he. 3e algate in it went' 2376
 God 3eue 3ou boþe a shames dep' to dyeñ
 He swyued þe I segħ it' wiþ myne eyeñ
 And ellis be I honged by þe hals
 Than is quod she þe medecyne fals 2380
 ffor certeynly if 3e my3ten see
 3e wold not' saye no wordes vnto me
 3e han some glymysing' *and* no parfit sizt'
 I see quod he as wel as euere I my3t' 2384
 Thonked be god wiþ boþ myn eyen twoo [leaf 129]
 And by my troupe me þought' he did þ' soo
 3e mase mase good sir' quod she
 This þonk' I haue for I haue made 3ou see 2388

[Addit. 5140, leaf
 167, bk, leaf 168.
 In Reg. 17 D xv,
 If 122, bk, If 123;
 not in Reg. 18 C2,
 leaf 104.]

Allas quod she þat euere I was so kinde
 Now dame quod he lat al passe out of mynde
 Come doune my leef *and* if I haue myssayd
 God helpe me so as I am euel apayd 2392
 But by my faders soule I wend haue seyn
 How þat þis Damyan had by þe leyn
 And þat þi smok had leye vpon þi brest
 3e sir quod she 3e may wene as 3ou lest 2396
 But sir a man þat wakeþ out of sclepe
 He may not sodeynly wel take kepe
 Vpon a þinge ne seen it parfityly
 To þat he be adawed verrelly 2400
 Riȝt so a man þat long haþ blynde ybe
 Ne may not sodeynly so wel yse
 ffirst whan þe siȝt is newe comen ageyn
 As he þat haþ a day or tweyen yseyñ 2404
 Til þat 3oure siȝt ystabled be a while
 Ther may ful mony a siȝt 3ou begile
 Beþ ware I preye 3ou for by heuene kinge
 fful mony a man wenep forto se a þinge 2408
 And it is al anoþer þan it semep
 He þat mysconceyueþ mysdemep
 And wiþ þat worl she lepe down fro þe tre
 This Ianuarie who is glad but he 2412
 He clippeþ hire and kisseþ hure ful oft
 And on hire wombe he strokeþ hure ful soft
 And to his Palays home he haþ hire lad
 Nowe good men I prey 3ou to be glad 2416
 Thus endeþ here my tale of Ianuarie
 God blesse vs and his modere seynt Marie , 2418

¶ Here endeþ þe tale of þe marchaunt

GROUP D. FRAGMENT V.

§ 1. WIFE OF BATH'S PREAMBLE.

PETWORTH MS.

And here bygynneþ þe prologe of þe wif of Bathe [leaf 129]

Experience thouȝe noon autorite [leaf 129, back]
were in þis worldȝ riȝt ynouȝe for me
To speke of woo þat' is in mariage
ffor lordingges siþ I twelue ȝere was of age 4
Thonked be god þat' is eterne alȝue
Husbondes atte churchȝ door haue I had fyve
ȝif I so often myȝt' han wedded be
But' alle were worþi men in her degre 8
But' me was tolde certeyn not' longe agoȝ is
That' siþen crist' ne went' neuer but' onys
To wedden in þe cane of galile
þat' by þilk ensample tauȝte he me 12
That' I ne shuld wedded be but' onys
Herk eek . loo such a sharpe word' for þe nones
Beside a welle Ihesu god *and* man
Spake in repreef of þe Samaritan 16
Thow hast' yhad .v. husbondes quod he
And þat' ilk' man þat' nouȝ haþ þe
Is not' thyne husbondȝ þus seide he certeyȝ
What' he ment' þer-by I can not' seyȝ 20
Wele! But þat' I aske whi the fift' man
Was non husbondȝ to þe Samaritan
How mony myȝt she han in mariage
ȝit' herd I neuere telle in myȝn age 24

GROUP D. § 1. WIFE'S PREAMBLE. Petworth MS.

vpoñ þis nombre diffinicioun
 Men may devise and glosen vp *and* down
 But wel I wote expresse wiþ-outen lye
 God bad us forto wexe and multiplie 28
 That ge[n]tile text can I wel vnderstond
 Eke wel I wote he seide myñ husbond
 Shuld lete fadere *and* modere *and* take to me ¶ *Relinquet homo*
 But of no nombre mencioñ made he & *adherebit vxori*
 Of bygamy or of octogamye sue & *cetera.* 32
 Whi shuld men þan of it han vilanye
 loke here the wise man . kyng Salomon
 I trowe he had wyues moo þan oðñ ¶ *Genesis ijº quam-obrem* 36
 Now wold god it lieful were to me [leaf 130]
 To be refreshed half so oft as he
 Which 3ift of god had he for aʃ his wyues
 No man haþ suč þat in þis world alyue es / 40
 God wote þis noble kinge as to my witte
 þe furst nyȝt had mony a mery fitte
 Wiþ eche of hem so wel was hym alyve
 Blessed be god . þat I haue wedded fyve 44
 Welcome þe .vi. whan þat euer he shal
 ffor siþ I wil not kepe me chaast in aʃ
 Whan myn husbond is fro þe world ygoñ
 Somme cristen man shal wedde me anoñ 48
 ffor þan the apostel seiþ þat I am fre
 To wedde a goddes half where it likeþ me
 He seiþ þat to be wedded is no synne
 Better is to be wedded þan to brenne
 What rekkeþ me þoo folk sey vylanye
 Of shrewde lameþe and his Bygamye
 I woot wel Abraham was an holy man
 And Iacob eke as fer as euer I can 56
 And eche of hem had wyues moo þan twoo
 And mony anoper holy man also
 Where can ȝe say in eny maner age
 That vs god defended mariage 60

¶ *Melius est nubere*
quam vri. //

By expresse woord I prei 3ou telleþ me
 Or where commaunded he virginite
 I wote as wel as 3e it is no drede
 þe Apostel whan he spekeþ of maydenhede 64
 He seide þerof precept had he noñ
 Men may counsaile a womman to be oñ
 But counseilling nys non comaundement
 He putte it in oure owne Iuggement 68
 ffor had god commaunded maidenhede
 þan had he dampned weddyng wip þe dede
 And certes 3if þer were no sede ysowe
 Virginite þan wherof shuld it growe. 72
 Paule durst not commaunde at þe leest [leaf 130, back]
 A þing of which his maister 3af hym no heest
 þe darte is sette vp for virgynite
 Chace who so may who so rennep best lat se 76
 But þis word is not take of every wizt
 But þer as god wold 3eue it of his myght
 I wote wel þat þe apostel was a mayde
 But napeles þough þat he wrote or seide 80
 He wold þat euery wizt were such as he
 All nys but counsaile to virgynite
 And forto be a wif he 3af me leue
 Of Indulgence so is it no repreue 84
 To wedde me 3if þat my make dye
 With-oute excepciō of Bygamye
 Al were it good no womman forto touche
 He ment as his body or in his couche 88
 ffor perile is boþ fire *and* towe to assemble
 3e knowe what þis ensample may resemble
 þis is al *and* somme he helde virginite
 More parfit þan wedded in freelte 92
 Freelte clepe I not but þat he *and* she
 Wolde lede her lif al in chaastite
 I graunte it wel I haue non envie
 þoo Maidenhede preferre bygamye 96

GROUP D. § 1. WIFE'S PREAMBLE. Petworth MS.

It likeþ hem to be clene in body and goost.
 Of myn estaat I wil make no boost
 ffor wel 3e knowe a lord in his houshold
 Haþ not euery vessel of gold 100
 Somme bene of tree and doñ her lord seruise
 God clepeþ folk to him in sondry wise
 And euery haþ of god a propre 3ift
 Somme þis somme þat as hym likeþ shift 104
 Virginite ys grete perfeccion
 And continence eke wip deuociõ
 But crist þat of perfeccion is welle
 Bad not euery wigt he shulde selle 108
 Al þat he had and 3eue it to þe poore [leaf 131]
 And in such wise folowe hym *and* his lore
 He spake to hem þat wold lyue parfitely
 And lordingges by 3oure leue þat am not I
 I wil bystowe þe floure of al myn age
 In charite and fruyte of mariage
 Telle me also to what conclusiõ
 Were membres made of generaciõ 116
 And of so parfit wise and whi ywrouzt
 Trestep rizt wel þei were not made for nouzt
 Glose who so wil I say boþ vp and down
 þat þei were made for purgacioun 120
 Of vryne and oure boþe þingges smale
 were eke to knowe a female from a male
 And for noon oþer cause. what seye 3e no
 þe experience woot þat it is so / 124
 So þat þe clerkes ben not wip me wroop
 I seie þis þat þei maked be² fore both [2 over a y rubd out.]
 This is to seyne for office *and* for eese
 Of engendringe ther we not god displese 128
 whi shuld men ellis in her bokes sette
 þat man shal 3elde to his wif his dette
 Nowe wherwip shuld he paye his payment
 3if þat he ne vsed his sely instrument 132

¶ Mt xlx.¹ Dixit
 autem Ihesus
 vade & vende
 omnia quæ habes
 & da pauperibus
 [1 Matth. xix. 21]

Than were þei made vpon a creature
 To purge vryne and eke for engendrure
 But I seye not þat euery wiȝt is holde
 þat haþ such harneys as I to ȝou haue tolde 136
 To goon and vsen hem in engendrure
 þan shuld men take of chastite no cure
 Crist was a mayde and shapen as a man
 And mony a seint siþ þat þe world bygan 140
 ȝit lyued þei euere in parfit chaastite
 I nyl envie wiþ no virginite
 Lat hem ete brede of pured whete sede
 And lat vs wyues ete Barle brede. 144
 And ȝit wiþ barle brede Mark telle can [leaf 131, back]
 Oure lord Ihesu refresshed mony a man
 In such astate as god haþ cleped vs /
 I wil perseuere I ne am not precious 148
 In wiȝhode wil I vse myn Instrument
 As frely as my maker haþ it sent
 If I be daungerous god ȝeue me sorowe
 Myn husbonde shal it haue boþ eue *and* morowe 152
 Whan þat him list come forþ *and* paye his dette
 An husbond I wil han I nyl not lette
 Which shal be boþ my dettour *and* my þral
 And han his tribulaciō wiþ-aȝ 156
 Vpon his flessch while þat I am his wiȝf
 I haue the power during al my liff
 vpon his propre body and not he
 Riȝt þus þe apostel told [it] vnto me 160
 And bad oure husbondes forto loue hym weȝ
 Al þis sentence me likeþ euery deȝ
Vp stert the pardonere and þat anoȝ
 Now dame quod he by god *and* by seynt Iohn 164
 ȝe bene a noble precheour in þis caas
 I was about to wedde a wiȝf alas
 What shuld I by it on my flessch so dere
 ȝit had I leuer wedde non to ȝere 168

¶ Ad corinthios vijo.
 vir sui corporis potes-
 tatem non habet. set
 mulier.

Ibyde quod she my tale is not bygonne
 Nay þou shalt drinken a noþer tonne
 Er þat I goo shal sauour wors þan ale
 And whan þat I haue told forþ my tale 172
 Of tribulacion in mariage
 Of whiche I am expert in myn age
 þis is to seye my silf haþ bene þe whippe
 þan maist þowe chese whider þou wilt scippe 176
 þilk tonne þat I shal abroche
 Be war of it or þou to nye aproche
 ffor I shal telle ensamples moo þan ten
 who that wil not be war by opere men./ 180
 By hym shul opere men corrected be [leaf 132]
 Thise same wordes writeþ ptholome
 Rede in his almagest and take it pere
 Dame I wold preȝ þou if þour wille were 184
 Seide þis pardonere as ȝe bygan
 Telle forþ þoure tale spare for no man
 And teche vs ȝenge men of þoure practyke
 Gladly quod she siþ it may þou like 188
 But þat I preȝ to al þis companye
 If þat I speke after my fantasie
 As takeþ nat a greef of þat I seye
 For myñ entent is not but to pleye 192
 ¶ Now sirs þan shal I telle þou my tale
 As euere mote I drinke wyne or ale
 I shal seie soþ þoo husbondes þat I hadde
 As iij. of hem were good *and* two were badde 196
 þe iij. were good men riche *and* olde
 Vnneþes myȝten þei þe statute holde
 In which þei were bounden vnto me
 ȝe wote wele what I mene of þis parde 200
 As god me helpe I laugh whan I þenke
 How pitously a nyȝt I made hem swynke
 But by my faye I tolde of it no store
 þei had me þoue her londe *and* her tresore 204

Me neded not do lenger diligence
 To wyne her loue and do hem reuerence
 þei loued me so wel by god aboue
 þat I ne told no deynte of her loue 208
 A wise womman wil bysy hure euere in oñ
 To gete her loue 3e þer as she hap noñ
 But siþe I had hem holy in myn honde
 And siþ þat þei hadde 3oue me al her londe 212
 what shuld I take kepe hem forto plese
 But 3if it were my profite & myñ ease
 But sette hem so a werke by my faye
 þat mony a ny3t þei songen weleaway 216
 The bacon was not fette for hem I trowe [leaf 132, back]
 þat somme men han in Essex at donmowe
 I gouerned hem so wel after my lawe
 þat eche of hem ful blisful was and fawe 220
 To bringe me gay þingges fro þe feire
 knyves and ryngges & purses wel faire
 ffor god it woot I chide hem spitously
 Now herkeneth how I bere me proprely 224
 3e wise wyues þat can vnderstonð
 þus shuld 3e speke and bere hem wrongt on hond
 ffor half so boldely þer can no man
 Swere and lye as womman can 228
 I say not þis by wyues þat bene wise
 But it be whan þat þei hem mysavise
 A wise wif shal if þat she can her goode
 Bere him an honde þat þe kowe is wode 232
 And take witnesse of hire owne mayde
 Of hure assent but harkeneth how I seide
 ¶ Sire olde keynard is þis þine aray
 whi is my neighboures wif so gay 236
 She is honoured oueral wher she goþe
 I sitte at home I haue no prifty clope
 what dostowe at myn neighbours hous
 Is she so faire art þou so amerous 240

what' rounē 3e wiþ our mayde. benedicite
 Sire olde lecchoure lat' þi Iapes be
 And if I haue a gossipe or a frende
 wiþ-outē gilt' 3e chide as a fende 244
 3if þat' I walk' or play vnto his hous
 þou comcest home as dronken as a mous
 An prechest' on þi benche wiþ euel preef'
 þou seist' to me it' is a grete meschief 248
 To wedde a poor womman for costage
 And if þat' she be riche of grete parage
 þan seist þou þat it' is a turmentrie
 To suffre her pride and her malencolie. 252
 And if þat' she be faire þowe verrey knaue [leaf 133]
 þowe seist þat' euery holoure wol hure haue
 She may no while in chaastite abide
 That' is assaiēd vpon eche side 256
 Thowe seist' somme folk' desire vs for richesse
 Somme for our shap and some for *our* fairnesse
 And somme for she can eiper sing' or dañce
 Thus seistowe wernard' god 3eue þ^e meschañce 260
 Somme for hure hondes *and* her armes smale
 Thus goþ al to þe deuēþ by þi tale
 Thow seyst men may not' kepe a casteþ walle
 It' may so longe assailed be oueraþ 264
 And if þat' she be foule þou saist' þat' she
 Coveiteþ euery man þat' she may se
 ffor as a spaynel she wil on hym lepe
 Til þat' she fynde somme man þat' wil hire chepe 268
 Ne noon so grey goos gos þer in the lake
 As seist þau þat' wil be wiþ-outen make
 And seist' it' is an harde þinge forto welde
 A wiȝt' þat' no man wil his þonkes helde 272
 Thus seist' þou lorel whan þou goost' to bedde
 And þat' no wise man nedep forto wedde
 And no man þat' entēdep to þe heuene
 with wilde ponder' dynt' and fire leuene 276

GROUP D. § 1. WIFE'S PREAMBLE. Petworth MS.

Mote þi welked nek^t be to-broke
 þou seist^t þat^t dropping^t houses and eke smoke
 And chidinge wyues maken men to fle
 Out^t of hir owne house. A benedicite 280
 What^t eileþ suchⁿ an old man forto chide
 þou seist^t we wyues wil oure vices hide
 Til we be fast^t *and* þan we wil hem schewe
 Wele may þis be a prouerbe of a schrewe 284
 þou seist^t þat^t Oxen. assen. hors. *and* houndes
 þei ben assaide at^t dyuers stoundes
 Basyns lauoyrs er þat^t men hem bye
 Spones. stooles. *and* suchⁿ husbondrye. 288
 And so bene pottes cloþes and oþer araies [leaf 133, back]
 But^t of wommen are maked none assaies
 Til þei ben wedded old dotard^t shrewe
 And seist^t howe þen we wiþ our vices shewe 292
 Thowe seist^t also þat^t it^t displeseþ me
 But^t ȝif þou wilt^t preise my bewte
 And but^t þou poure alway vpon my face
 And clepe me faire dame in euery place 296
 And but^t þou make a feest^t on þat^t ilk^t day
 þat^t I was born and make fressh *and* gay
 And but^t þou do to myn norys honoure
 And to my chambere *with* Inne my bour 300
 And to my faders folkes *and* his alyes
 Thus seist^t þou olde bareþ ful of lyes
 And ȝit^t of oure apprentice Iankyn
 ffor his crispe here shynyng^t as gold^t fyne 304
 And for he sqwiers me boþ vp *and* down
 ȝit^t hast^t þou þouȝt^t a fals suspecioun
 I wil hym not^t þei þou were dede to-morowe
 But^t telle me þis whi hidest^t þou wiþ sorowe 308
 þi keyes of þi chest^t away fro me
 It^t is my good as wel as þine parde
 what^t wenest^t þou make an ydyote of *our* dame
 Now by þat^t lord þat^t called is seint^t Iame 312

GROUP D. § 1. WIFE'S PREAMBLE. Petworth MS.

þou shalt not bop þouze þou were woode
 Be maister of my body and my goode
 þat oon þou shalt forgoen magre þine eizen
 what helpeþ it of me to quere *and* spien 316
 I trowe þoo þou woldest lokke me in þi chest
 þou shuldest seie wif go where þe lest
 Take þoure disport I wil leue no talis
 I knowe þou for a good wiff dame Alys 320
 we loue no man þat takeþ kepe ne charge
 where þat we go we wil be at *our* large
 Of alle men blessed mot he be
 þe wise astrologen daun ptholome 324
 That seip þis prouerbe in his almagest
 Of alle men his wisdom is hiest [leaf 134]
 þat rekkeþ not who haþ þe world in hond
 By þis prouerbe þou shalt wel vnderstonð 328
 Haue þou ynowe what ther þe rekke *and* care
 Howe merely þat opere folk fare
 ffor certes olde dotarde be þoure leue
 3e shul haue queynt right ynowe at eue 332
 He is to grete a nygard þat wil warne
 A man to lizt a candel at his lantarne
 He shal haue neuere þe lasse lizt parde
 Haue þou ynowe þe ther not pleyn þe 336
 Thou seist also þat 3if þou make vs gay
 with clopinge or wiþ precious aray
 That it is perile of our chaastie
 And 3it wiþ wordes þou mote enforce me 340
 And say pise wordes in þe apostels name
 In abite made wiþ chastite and shame
 3e wommen shuld apparaile þou quod he
 And not in tressed here and gay perre 344
 As perle ne wiþ gold *and* clopes riche
 Aftere þi text ne aftere þi rubriche
 I nyl not worche as mochel as a gnatte
 Thowe seidest als þat I was like a catte 348

Butt who so wolde senge a cattis skyn
 þan woldt þe catte wel dwellen in his Inn
 And if þe cattles skyn be selyke *and* gay
 She nyl nott dwel in hous half a day 352
 Butt forþ she wil er eny day be dawed
 To shewe her skyn and go a caterwawed /
 þis to seie if I be gay sir' schrewe
 I wil renne outt my burel for to shewe 356
 Sir' olde foole what helpeþ þe to spien
 þei þowe prey argus wiþ his M^t. eyen
 To be my warde corps as he can bestt
 In feiþ he shal nott kepe me butt if me lestt 360
 3itt coupe I make his beerde so mote I pee [leaf 134, back]
 þou seistt eke þat þer bene þinges þre
 þe which þingges trowblen al þis erþe
 And þat no wizt ne may endure þe ferþe 364
 O leue sir' schrewe Ihesu shortt þi liff
 3itt prechestowe and seistt an hatful wiff
 Yreckned is for oon of þise meschaunces
 Ben þere non oþer manere resemblaunes 368
 þatt 3e may likne 3oure parables too
 Butt 3if a cely wif be oon of þoo
 þow. liknest wommannys loue to helle
 To barayn londe þer water may nott dwelle 372
 Thou liknestt itt also to wilde fire
 þe more itt brennep þe more itt haþ desire
 To consume eny þing þat brentt wold be
 Thow seistt þat rízt a[s] wormes sheende a tre 376
 Rízt so a wiff distroieþ her husbonde
 þis knowe þei þat bene to wyues bonde
 ¶ Lordingges rízt þus as 3e han hunderstandt
 Bare I stifly myn olde husbondes on handt 380
 Thatt þus þei seiden in her dronkenesse
 And eke þat þei had suspeciõ of Ialousnesse
 On Iankin and on myn neef also
 O lord þe peyn I did hem *and* þe woo / 384

fful gyltelees by goddis swete pyne
 ffor as an hors I couþe boþ bite *and* whyne
 I couþe pleyne *and* I was in þe gilt
 Or ellis often tyme I had be spilt 388
 Who so þat first to mylle commeth first grynt
 I pleynd furst so was oure werre stint
 ¶ þei were ful glad to excusen hem ful blyue
 Of þinge of which þei agilt neuer her lyue 392
 Of wenches wold I beren hem on honde
 Whan þat for seke þei myȝt vneþ stonde
 ȝit tyled I his hert for þat he
 wende I had of hym so grete chierte 396
 I swore þat al my walkynge by nyȝt [leaf 135]
 Was forto asprie wenches þat he diȝt
 Vnder þat colour had I mony a myrþe
 ffor al such witte is ȝeuē vs in our birþe 400
 Deceyte. weping. spynnyng. god haþ ȝeuē ¶ *ffallere. fiere. nere*
 To womman kindly while þat þei lyue *s. atuit deus in muliere*
 And þus of on þing I auaunte me
 At þe ende I had þe best in eche degre 404
 By sleiȝt or force. or by somme maner þinge
 As by contynuel murmur or grucchinge
 Namely abed had þei meschaunce
 þer wold I chide and do hem no plesaunce 408
 I wolde no lenger in þe bedde abide
 ȝif þat I felt his arme ouere my side
 Til he had made his raunson vnto me
 þan wolde I suffre hym doo his nicete 412
 And þerfore euery man þis tale I telle
 Wiue who so may al are for to selle
 With empty hond men may non hauke lure
 ffor wyunnyng wold I al his lust endure 416
 And make me a feyned appetite
 And ȝit in bacon had I neuere delite
 That maked me þat euer I wold hym chide
 ffor þouȝe þe pope had sitte hym beside 420

GROUP D. § 1. WIFE'S PREAMBLE. **Petworth MS.**

I wolde not spare hym at his owne bord
 ffor be my troupe I quytte hym worde for word
 As helpe me verrey god omnipotent
 þow I riȝt now shuld make my testament 424
 I ne owe hym a word þat it nys quytte
 I brouȝt it so aboute by my witte
 þat he must ȝeue it vp as for þe best
 Or ellis had we neuer be in rest 428
 ffor þough he loked as a lyoñ
 ȝit shuld he faile of his conclusiō
 Than wold I seie nowe goode leef take kepe
 Howe mekely lokeþ wilkin our shepe. / 432
 Come nere my spouse lat me ba þi cheke [leaf 135, back]
 ȝe shul be al pacient and meke
 And han a swete spiced conscience
 Siþ ȝe so prech of Iobes pacience 436
 Suffreþ alway siþ ȝe so wel can preche
 And but ȝe doo certeyn we shul ȝou teche
 þat it is faire to haue a wif in pees
 Oon of vs mote bowen doutelees 440
 And siþ a man is more resonable
 þan womman is. sir ȝe moste be suffrable
 what eileth ȝou to grucche þus and grone
 Is it for ȝe wold han my queynt alone 444
 Wy take it alle lo haue it euery deff
 Peter I schrewe ȝou but ȝe loue me weH
 ffor ȝif I wolde selle my bele chose
 I couþe walk as frech as eny rose 448
 But I wil kepe it for ȝour owne toth
 ȝe be to blame be god I seie ȝou soth
 Such manere wordes had we on hond
 Now wil I speke of my ferþe husbonde 452
 ¶ Mi ferþe husbonde was a reueloure
 þis is to seie he had a paramour
 And I was ȝenge and ful of ragerye
 Stiborn and stronge and Ioly as a pie 456

GROUP D. § 1. WIFE'S PREAMBLE. **Petworth MS.**

lord I couþe daunce to an harpe smale
 And synge ywis as eny nyȝtingale
 whan I hadde dronke a draught of swete wyñ
 Metelyus þe foule cheerle þo swyñ 460
 þat wiþ a staft byraft his wif her lif
 ffor she dronk wyne þouȝe I had ben his wiff
 Ne shuld he not han daunted me fro drinke
 And aftere wyne on venus most I þenke 464
 ffor as siker as colde engendreþ haile
 A likerous mouþ most han a lykerous tale
 In womman vinolent is no defence
 þis knowe lecchours by experience 468
 But lord crist whan þat it remembreþ me [leaf 136]
 Vpon my ȝouþe and [on] my Iolite
 It ticleþ me aboute myn herte rote
 Vnto þis day It doþ myn herte bote 472
 þat I haue had my world as in my tyme
 But age alas þat al wil enueneyme
 Hap me byraft my bewte and my pith
 Lat it go fare wel þe deuel goo þerwith 476
 The floure is goñ þer nys no more to telle
 þe bren as I best can now mote I selle
 But ȝit to be riȝt mery wil I foonde
 Now forþe to telle of my ferþe husbonde 480
 I seie I had in hert gret despite
 þat he of eny oþer had delite
 But he was quytte by god and by seynt Iose
 I made hym of þe same wode a crose 484
 Nat of my body in no foule manere
 But certeynly I made folk such chere
 þat in his owne grece I made hym frye
 ffor Anger and for verrey Ialowsie 488
 By god in erþe I was his purgatorie
 ffor which I hope his saule be in glorie
 ffor god it woote he satte ful oft and songe
 whan þat his shogh ful bitterly hym wronge 492

ffor þer nas noon sauf god and he þat wist
 In mony wise where I hym twist
 He deyed whan I come fro Ierusalem
 And liþe in a graue vnder þe rode-beem 496
 All nys his tombe not so curious
 As was þe sepulture of hym darius
 which þat appelles wrouzt subtily
 It nys but waast to bury hym preciously 500
 Lat hym fare wel god ȝeue his soule rest
 He is now in his graue *and* in his chest
 ¶ Nowe of my .v. husbond wil I telle
 God lat neuere his soule come in helle 504
 And ȝit was he to me þe moost shrewe [leaf 136, back]
 þat fele I on my ribbes al by rewe
 And euere shal unto myn ending daye
 But in oure bed he was so fressh *and* gaye 508
 And þer wiþ al so wel couþe he me glose
 whan þat he wold han my bele chose
 þat þouze he had me bete on euery boñ
 He couþe wynne ageyn my loue anoñ 512
 I trowe I loued him þe bette for he
 Was of his loue daungerous to me
 We wommen han if þat I shal not lye
 In þis manere a queynte fantasie 516
 waite what þinge we may not liztly haue
 Theraftere wil we crie al day and craue
 fforbede vs þinge *and* þat desiren we
 Prees on vs fast and þan wil we fle 520
 with daungere oute we al oure chaffare
 Greet prees atte Market makeþ dere ware
 And to grete chepe is yholde atte litel pris
 This knoweþ euery womman þat is wise 524
 ¶ My fift husbonde god his soule blisse
 which þat I toke for loue and no ricchesse
 he some tyme was a clerk of oxenford
 And had left scole and went at home to boord 528

GROUP D. § 1. WIFE'S PREAMBLE. Petworth MS.

wiþ my gossip dwelling^t in our toūn
 God haue her soule her name was alisoun
 She knewe myn hert^t and al my priuete
 Better þan oure pariss^h preest^t so mot^t I the 532
 To hure bywried I my counseil aȝ
 ffor had myn husbonde pissed on a walle
 Or doon a þinge þat^t shuld^t have cost^t his liff^t
 To hure and to anoper worþi wiff^t 536
 And to my nece which I loue weȝ
 I wold han tolde his counseile euerideȝ
 And so I did ful often god it^t wote
 þat^t made his face often rede *and* hote . 540
 ffor verrey shame and blamed hym self for he [leaf 137]
 had tolde to me so grete a priuete
 And so byfelle þat^t ones in a lente
 So ofte tyme I to my gosype wente 544
 ffor euere ȝit^t I loued to be gay /
 And forto walke in marche Averil and may
 ffrom hous to hous to harken sonday tales/
 þat^t Iankin clerk *and* my gossip dame alys 548
 And I my self into þe feeldes wente
 Myn husbonde was at^t london al þat^t lente
 I had þe bettre leisere forto pley
 And forto see and eke forto be seye 552
 Of lusty folk what^t wist^t I wher^t my *grace*
 Was shapen forto be or in what^t place
 Therefore made I my visitacions
 To vigiles and to processions 556
 To preching^t eke and to þise pilgrimages
 To plaies of miracles and of mariages
 And wered vpon my gay scarlet gites
 Thise wormes ne þise mothes ne þise mytes 560
 Vpon my perile frete hem neuer a dele
 And woostowe whi for þei were vsed wele
 Now wil I tellen forþ what^t happed me
 I seie þat^t in þe feeldes walked we 564

GROUP D. § 1. WIFE'S PREAMBLE. **Petworth MS.**

Til trewely we had such daliañce
 þis clerk and I þat of my purviañce
 I spake to hym and seide how þat he
 3if I were widowe shuld wedde me 568
 ffor certeynly I seye for no bobañce
 þat I was neuere 3it withoute purveañce
 Of mariage ne of oþer þingges eke
 I hold a monnys witte nat worþ a leke 572
 þat haþ but oon hool forto stirten too
 And 3if þat faile þan is al ydoo /
 [I bare hym on hande he hadde enchauntede me [MS Reg. 17
 Dxx, on leaf
 132, back]
 My dame taughte me þat subtylte
 And eke I sayde I Mete of hym aH nyghte 577
 He wolde haue slayne Me As I laye vprighte
 And aH my bedde was ffuHe of vereye blode
 Butte yette I hope þat ye schuH do me gode 580
 ffor blode bitokeneþe golde As me was taughte
 And aH was ffalse I dremede of hitt righte noughte
 Butte as I ffollowede Ay My dames lore
 AsweHe of that as of oþer þynge more] [MS Reg. extract stops]
 But nowe Sir lat me se what shal I seyn
 A A. by god I haue my tale ageyn.
 whan þat my ferþ husbond was on bere [leaf 137, back]
 I wepte algates and made sory chere 588
 As wyues moten for it is þe vsage
 And with my keercheef keuered my visage
 But for þat I was purueide of a make
 I wepte but smale and þat I vndertake 592
 To church was myn husbond yborn on morowe
 wiþ neighbours þat for hym made sorowe
 And Iankyn our clerk was on of þoo
 As helpe me god whan þat I segH hym goo 596
 Aftere þe bere me þou3t he had a peire
 Of legges and of fete so clene and feire
 þat al my hert I 3aue vnto his holde
 He was I trowe xx^{ti} wynter olde 600

GROUP D. § 1. WIFE'S PREAMBLE. **Petworth MS.**

And I was xltⁱ 3if I shal seie soþe
 But 3it I had alway a Coltiss^h toþe
 Gat toþed I was *and* þat by-cam me weH
 I had þe printe of seynt venus sech 604
 As helpe me god I was a lusty oñ
 ffaire and riche . 3onge *and* welbygoñ
 And trewly as myn husbond tolde me
 I had þe best quoniam þat myzt be 608
 [ffor' sertes I Am aH veneryen] [MS Reg. 17 D xv,
 on leaf 133]
 In ffelenges And my herte is Mercyen
 Venus me yafe My luste my lykerousnesse
 And Mars yafe me my sturdye hardynesse] 612
 Myn ascendent was taure *and* mars þer-inne
 Allas alas þat euer loue was synne
 I folowed aye myn Inclinacioñ
 By vertue of my constellacioñ 616
 That made me I couþe not wiþdrawe
 My chambere of venus from a good felawe
 [Yette haue I Mars is Marke vpon my face] [MS Reg. 17 D xv,
 on leaf 133]
 And also in Anopere preuye place 620
 ffor' god so wysse be My saluacion
 I louede neuer by no discrecion
 I ffollowede euer Myne Appetyte
 AH were he longe schorte blacke or whyte 624
 I toke no kepe so þat he lykede me
 How poure he was And eke of whatte degre] [MS Reg.
 extract stops]
 What shuld I sei but at þe monþes ende
 This Ioly clerk Iankyn þat was so hende 628
 Hap wedded me wiþ grete solempnite
 And to hym 3aue [I] al þe londe and ffee
 þat euere was me 3euen þer-bifore
 But aftere[ward] repented me ful sore 632
 He nolde suffre no þinge of my lest
 by god he smote me onys on þe lest
 ffor þat I rent out of his boke a leef [leaf 138]
 That of þat stroke myn eeren wexen deef 636

Stiborn I was as is a leonesse
 And of my tunge a verrey Iangeleresse
 And walk^t I wold^t as I had doñ to-forn
 ffrom hous to hous al þouȝe he had it^t sworn 640
 fforþwip ful often tyme he wolde preche
 And me [of] olde Romaynes geestes teche
 How he · symplicius gallus laft^t his wiff
 And hure for-soke for terme of his lif 644
 Nat^t but^t for open hede he hure say
 Lokinge out^t at^t his door on a day
 Anoper romayn tolde he me by name
 þat^t for his wiff was at^t a somers game 648
 Wip-oute his wittying^t he forsoke her^t eke
 And þan wolde he vpon his bible seke
 þat^t ilk prouerbe of Ecclesiast^t
 Where he commaundeþ *and* forbedeþ fast^t 652
 Man shal not^t suffre his wif to rome aboute
 Than wolde he seie riȝt^t þus wip-uten doute
 Who-so þat^t beeldeþ his hous all of salous ¶ *Nota bene*
 And prickeþ his blynde hors ouere þe falous 656
 And suffereþ his wif forto seken halowes
 Is worpi forto be honged on þe galowes /
 ¶ But al for nouȝt^t I sette not^t an hawe
 Of his prouerbes ne of his olde lawe 660
 Ne I wold not^t of hym corrected be
 I hate hym þat^t my vice telleþ me
 And so doñ moo god wote of vs þan I
 þis made him wip me wode al vtterly 664
 I nold^t forbere hym in no cas
 Now wil I seye ȝou soþ by seint^t Thomas
 Whi þat^t I rent^t out^t of his booke a leef^t
 ffor which he smote me þat^t I was deef^t 668
 He had a boke þat^t gladly nyȝt^t *and* daye
 ffor his disport^t he wolde rede alway
 He cleped Valerye and theofraste
 Atte whiche boke he lowȝh alway ful fast^t 672

[leaf 138, back]

GROUP D. § 1. WIFE'S PREAMBLE. **Petworth MS.**

And eke þer was somtyme a clerk^t in Rome
 A Cardynal þat^t hight^t seint^t Ierome^s
 þat^t made a boke aȝein Iouean
 In which boke eke þer was Terculan 676
 Crisippus . Trocula . and holowys
 That^t was Abbas not^t fer fro Paris/
 And eke þe parables of Salomon
 Ovydes art^t and bokes mony oñ 680
 And alle þise were bounden in oo volom
 And euery nyȝt^t and day was his custom
 Whan he had leisere and vacacioñ
 ffrom oþere worldly occupacioñ 684
 To reden in þis boke of wicked wyues
 He knewe of hem mo legendys þan lyues
 þan bene of good wyues in þe bible
 ffor trusteþ wel it^t is an impossible 688
 þat^t eny clerk^t wil speken good of wyues
 But^t ȝif it^t be of holy seyntes lyues
 Ne of noon oþere womman neuere þe moo /
 who peinted þe lyon telle me who / 692
 By god ȝif^t wommen had ywriten stories
 As clerkes han wiþ-In her oratories
 Thei wold han writen of men more wickednesse
 Than al þe Mark^t of Adam may redresse 696
 The Children of mercury and Venus
 Ben in her worchinge contrarious /
 Mercury loueþ wisdom *and* science
 And Venus loueþ riote and dispence 700
 And for her dyuers disposicioñ
 Ech falleþ in oþer exaltacioñ
 As þus god wote mercure is disolate
 In pisces wher Venus is exaltate 704
 And Venus falleþ þer mercurye is reysed^t
 þerfor no womman of no man is preised .
 The clerk^t whan he is olde and may not^t do [leaf 139]
 Of Venus werkes worþ his olde shoo 708

þan sitte he doun *and* writte in his dotage
 þat' wommen can not' kepe her mariage
 But' nowe to purpoos whi I told þe
 þat' I was beten for a boke parde . 712
 Vpon a nyȝt' Iankin þat' was our sire
 Redde on his boke as he satte by þe fire
 Of Eua first' þat' for her wickednesse
 Was al mankinde brouȝt' to wrecchednesse 716
 [ffor' whiche þat' Ihesu Crist' hym selfe was slayne [MS Reg. 17D xv, on leaf 134, back]
 That boughȝte vs *with* his herte blode agayne
 Lo here expresse of' women) Maye ye ffynde
 That women) was the losse of' AH Mankynde] 720
 Tho redde he me howe sampsoñ lost' his heres
 Slepinge his lemman kitt' it' wiþ her sheres
 þourgħ whiche treson lost' he boþ his eyen /
 Tho redde he me if I shal not' lyen . 724
 Of Ercules and of his dyanyre
 þat' caused hym to sette hym self a fyre
 No þinge forgate he þe penaunce *and* woo
 þat' Socrates had wiþ his wyues twoo 728
 Howe þat' Ancipa cast' pisse on his hede
 þe Sely man satte stille as he were dede
 He wiped his hede no more durst' he seyn
 But' er þat' thonder' stint' commeþ a reyn) 732
 Of ¹pasipa þat' was þe quene of grete [¹ at first ph]
 ffor schrewdenesse hym þouȝt' þe tale swete
 ffye speke no more it' is a grisly þinge
 Of hure horrible lust' and [hure] lykyng 736
 Of Clitermistra for her lecherye
 þat' falsly made her husbond' forto dye
 He redde it' wiþ ful good deuocioñ
 He tolde me for what occasioñ 740
 Amphiorax at' thebes lost' his lif
 Myn husbonde had a legende of his wif
 Eriphilem . þat' for an ouch of gold
 hap prively vnto þe grekes told 744

wher þat her husbond hidde hym in a place
 ffor which he had at Thebes sory grace
 Of lyma tolde he mee and of lueye [leaf 139, back]
 þei boþ made her husbondes forto dye 748
 Thatt on for loue þat oþer was for hate
 lyma her husbonde on euene late
 Enpoysened had for þat she was his foo
 Lucia lykerous loued her husbond soo / 752
 þat for he shuld vpon her alway þinke
 She 3aue hym such a loue manere drinke
 That he was dede or it was by þ^e morowe
 And þus algates husbondes han sorowe 756
 ¶ Than tolde he me howe on latumys
 Compleyned to his felawe arius
 That in his gardyne growed such a tre
 On which he seide þat his wyues þre 760
 Hangged hem selue for hertes despitous
 O leue broþer quod þis arius
 3eue me a plant of þat blisful tre
 And in my gardyne planted shal he be 764
 Of latter date of wyues hap he redde
 þat han slayn her husbondes in þe bedde
 But lat hure lecchoure dizt hur' al þe nyzt
 Whan þat þe corps lay in þe floore vprizt 768
 And some han dryuen nayles in her brayn
 While þat þei selepe and þus þei han hem slayn
 Somme han 3euen poysen in her drinke
 He spak more harme þan hert may þenk' 772
 And þer-with-aȝ he knewe of moo prouerbes ¶ Solo melius est habitare.
 þan in þis world þer growen grasse or herbes /
 Bett' is quod he þine habitacioñ
 Be wiþ a leon or a foule dragoñ 776
 þan wiþ a womman vsing' forto chide
 Bet' is quod he high in þe roof abide
 þan wiþ an angry wif down in an hous
 þey bene so wicked and contrarious / 780

þei haten þat her husbondes louen ay
 He seide a womman cast her shame away
 whan she cast of her smokke *and* ferþermo [leaf 149]
 A faire womman but she be chaast also / 784
 Is lich a gold rynge on a sowes nose
 who wold wene or wold suppose
 The woo þat in myn herte was *and* pyne
 And whan I segh he wolde neuere fyne 788
 To reden on þis cursed boke al nyzt
 Al sodeynly þre leues haue I plizt
 Out of his boke rizt as he redde *and* eke
 I wiþ my fist so toke him on þe cheke 792
 That in our fire he fille bakward adoun
 And he vp stert as dop a wood lyoun
 And wiþ his fist he smote me on þe hede
 þat in þe flore I laie as I were dede 796
 And whan he seegh how stille þat I lay
 He was agast and wold han fledde away
 Til at þe laste out of my swowe I breide
 O hastowe slayne me fals þeef I seide 800
 And for my londe þus hastowe mordred me
 Or I be dede zit wil I kisse þee
 And nere he come and kneled faire adoun
 And saide dere sustere Alisoun 804
 As helpe me god I shal þe neuere smyte
 That I haue done it is þi self to wite
 fforzeue it me *and* þat I þe biseke
 And zit eftsones I hit hym on þe cheke 808
 And seide þeef þus moche am I wreke
 Nowe wil I dye I may no lenger speke
 But at þe last wiþ mochel care *and* woo
 We fille acorded by vs seluen two 812
 He 3aue me al þe bridel in myn honde
 To haue þe gouernaunce of hous *and* londe
 And of his tunge and his hand also
 And made him brenne his boke anon rizt þoo 816

GROUP D. § 1. WIFE'S PREAMBLE. **Petworth MS.**

And whan þat I had gotten vnto me
 By maistery al þe souereynthe.
 Than he seide myn owne trewe wif [leaf 140, back]
 Do as þou lest þe terme of al þoure lif 820
 kepe þoure honure and kepe eke myn astate
 Aftere þat day we had neuere debate.
 God helpe me so I was to him as kinde
 As eny wiff from denmarke into Ynde 824
 And also trewe / and so was he to me
 I prey to god þat sitte in mageste
 So blesse his soule for his mercy dere
 Now wil I seie my tale if þe wil here 828

¶ Thus endeþ þe prologe of þe wiff of bath

And here bygynneþ þe Tale.¹

<sup>[1 that is, The Wrangle between
the Summoner and the Friar.]</sup>

¶ The tale./

The frere lowe whan he had herd al þis
 Now dame quod he so haue I ioye or blis
 þis is a longe preamble of a tale
 And whan þis somnour herd þe frere gale 832
 Lo quod þe somnour goddis armes two
 A frere wil entremete hym euermoo
 Loo good men a flie and eke a frere
 wollen falle in euery dissh and eke matere 836
 what spekest þou of preambulacioun
 what amble or trotte or pees or go sitte down
 Thou lettest oure disport in þis manere
 3e wilt þou so somnour quod þe frere 840
 Now by my fay I shal er þat I goo
 Telle a somnour such a tale or twoo
 That alle þe folk shul laughen in þis place
 Now ellis frere I bishrewe þi face 844
 Quod þis somnour and I bishrewe me
 But 3if I telle þe tales two or þre
 Of freres er I come to sidyngburne
 þat I shal make þine hert for to mourne 848

GROUP D. § 1. WIFE'S PREAMBLE. Petworth MS.

ffor wel I wote þi pacience is goñ
 Our hoost' cried pees and þat' anoñ
 And seide lat' þe womman telle her tale
 3e faren as folk' þat' dronken beñ of ale ./ 852
 Do dame telle forth 3our tale þat' is þe best' [leaf 141]
 Al redy sire quod she ri3t' as 3ou lest'
 If I haue licence of þis worþi frere
 3is dame quod he telle forþ 3oure tale we wil here 856

[*No break in the MS.*]

[THE WIFE OF BATH'S TALE]

[on leaf 141]

IN þe olde dayes of þe king^t arthour ¶ ffabula
 Of which þat^t bretons speken grete honour
 Al was þis land fulfilled of fayry
 þe Elfe quene wiþ her Ioly companye 860
 Daunced wiþ out^t in mony a grene mede
 þis was þe olde opynyon as I rede
 I speke of mony an .C. 3ere a-goo
 But^t nowe can no man se noon clues moo 864
 ffor nowe þe grete charite and preiers
 Of lymytoures and oper poor freres
 That^t serchen euery londe and euery streme
 As þikke as motes in þe sonne beme 868
 Blessinge halles chambers and boures
 Citiees burghes castels hiȝe toures
 Thropes . beernys . shipnes . dayrys
 This makeþ þat^t þer bene no fayrys 872
 ffor þer as wonte to walke was an elf^t
 Ther walkeþ nowe þe lymytour hym self^t
 In vnder meles and in mornygges
 And seiþ his matyns and his hoȝy þingges 876
 As he goþ in his lymitacioun
 Wommen may go nowe sauf vp and down
 In euery bussþ or vnder euery tre
 þer nys noȝ oper Incubus but^t he 880
 And he wil do hem but^t dishonour
 And so felle it^t þat^t þis king^t Arthour
 Had in his hous a lusty bachilere
 That^t on a day come ridinȝ fro ryvere 884

And happed alone as she was born
 He seegh a maiden walking hym byfor
 Of which mayde Maugre her hede
 By verrey force he raft hure maydenhede 888
 ffor which oppression was such clamour [leaf 141, back]
 And such pursute vnto þe king arthour
 That dampned was þis knyzt forto be dede
 Be cours of lawe *and* shuld haue lost his hede 892
 Peraenture such was þe statute þoo /
 But þat þe quene and oþer ladis moo
 So longe preide þe kinge of grace
 Til he his lif him graunted in þat place 896
 And 3aue hym to þe quene al at her wille
 To chese whedere she wold hym saue or spille
 The quene þonkep þe kinge wiþ al her myzt
 And after þis þus speke she to þe knyght 900
 Whan þat she seegh her tyme on a day
 Thou stondest 3it quod she in such aray
 That of þi lif 3it hastowe no suerte
 I graunte þe lif if þou canst telle me 904
 ¶ What þing is it þat wommen most desiren
 Be ware and kepe þi nekbone fro yren
 And if þou canst not telle it me anon
 3it wil I 3eue þe leue forto goñ 908
 A xij. monþe *and* a daye. to seke *and* lere
 An answere suffisaunt in þis matere
 And suerte wil I han er þat þou passe
 þi body forto 3elde in þis place 912
 woo was þis knyzt and sorowfully he sikeþ
 But what? he may not do al as hym likeþ
 And at þe last he chese hym forto wende
 And to come a3ein ri3t at þe 3eres ende 916
 With suche answere as god wold hym purveye
 And takeþ his leue and wendeþ forþ his weye
 He sekep euery hous and euery place
 Where as he hopeþ forto fynde *grace* 920

To lere what þing wommen louen most
 But he nowe koude aryuen in no cost
 where as he myȝte fynde in þis matere
 Twoo creatures acording in fere 924
 Somme seiden wommen louen best ricchesse [leaf 142]
 Somme seide honour somme seiden Iolynesse
 Somme riche aray. some seiden lust a bedde
 And oft tyme to be wydowe and wedde 928
 Somme seiden þat we bene most yesed
 Whan þat we bene yflatered and yplesed.
 He goþ ful ny þe soþ I wil nat lye
 A man shal wynne vs best wiþ flaterye 932
 And wiþ attendaunce and wiþ bisynesse
 bene we alyned boþ more and lesse
 And somme men seyn howe þat we louen best
 fforto be free and do riȝt as vs lest 936
 And þat no man repreue vs of our vice
 But say þat we bene wise and no þinge nice
 ffor trewly þer nys noon of vs alle
 ȝif eny wiȝt wil clawe vs on þe galle 940
 þat we nyl loke or he saye vs soth
 Assaie and he shal fynde it þat he doþ.
 ffor be we neuer so vicious wiþ-Inne
 We wil be holden wise and clene of synne 944
 And somme seyn þat grete delit haue we
 ffor to be holden stable and eke secree
 And in oo purpos stedfastly to dwelle
 And not bewrey þing þat men vs telle 948
 But þat tale is not worþ a rake stele
 Parde we wommen connen no þing hele
 Witnesse on myda wil ȝe here þe tale
 Ovide amonges oþer þingges smale 952
 Seip Mida had vnder his longe heres
 Growinge vpon his hede two asses eres
 The whiche vice he hidde as he best myȝt
 fful subtilly from euery mannys siȝt 956

þat saue his wif þer wist it no moo
 He loued her most and trested to her also
 He preide hir most þat vnto no creature
 She shuld not tellen of his disfigure 960
 She swore hym nay for al þis world to wyne [leaf 142, back]
 She wold do þat vilanye or þat synne
 To make her husbond han so foule a name
 ffor reprevynge of hym and foule shame 964
 But napelees her þouzt þat she dide
 þat she so longe shuld a counseile hide
 Her þouzt it satte so sore about her herte
 þat nedely som word her mote a-sterne 968
 And siþe she durst [nat] tellen it no man
 Doune to a marise fast she ranne
 Til she came þere her herte was a fire
 And as a bitor bumleþ in þe myre 972
 She laide her mouþ vnto þe water down
 Bewrey me not þou watere wiþ þi souñ
 Qooþ she to þe I telle it and no moo
 Myñ husbonde haþ longe asses eren two 976
 Now is my hert al hole now is it oute
 I myzt no lenger kepe it out of doute
 Here may 3e se þouze we a tyme abide
 3ete oute it moot we mowe no conseil hide 980
 The remenaunte of þe tale if 3e wil here
 Redeþ ovide and 3e mowe it lere
 ¶ This knyzt of which my tale is specialy
 Whan þat he seegh he myzt not come þerby 984
 This is to seyn. what women louen most
 Wiþ-in his hert soryful was þe goost
 But home he goþe he myzt not sojourne
 þe day was come þat homward most he tourne 988
 And in his way it happed hym to ride
 In al his care vndere a forest side
 Where he seggh in oon daunce goo /
 Of ladis *foure and twenti*¹ and 3it moo [1 MS xxiiij.th] 992

Toward þe daunce he drowe hym 3erne
 In hope þat somme wisdom shuld he lerne
 But certeynly er he cam fully þere
 Vanysshed was þe daunce he nyst not where 996
 No creature seye he þat bare lif [leaf 143]
 Saue in þe grene he sey sitting a wif
 A fouler wizt þer may no man deuise
 Ageyn þe knyzt þe old wif gan arise 1000
 And seide sir knyzt here forþ ne lieþ no way
 Telle me what þat 3e seken be 3oure fay
 Perauenture it may þe better be
 Thise olde folk konne moche þing quod she 1004
 My leue modere quod þis knyzt certayn
 I am but dede but 3if þat I can sayn
 Whatt þinge it is þat wommen most desire
 Cowde 3e me wisse I coude wel quyte 3our hire 1008
 Plite me þi troupe here in my hand quod she
 The nexte þinge þat I require þe
 Thow shalt it doo if it lye in þi myzt
 And I wille telle it 3ou er it be nyzt 1012
 Haue here my troupe quod þe knyzt I graunte
 Than quop she I may me wel auaunte
 þi lif is sauf for I wil stonde þer-by
 Vpon my lif þe quene wil say as I 1016
 Lat se which is þe proddest of hem alle
 þat wereth on a kerchif or a calle
 þat dar seie nay of þat I shal 3ou teche
 lat vs goo forþ wiþ-oute lenger speche 1020
 Tho rowned she a pistel in his eere
 And bad hym to be glad and han no fere
 Whan þei be comen to þe courte þis knyzt
 Seide he had holde his day as he had hizt 1024
 And redy was his answeere as he seide
 fful mony a noble wif and mony a maide
 And mony a widowe for þat þei be wise
 þe quene her silf sitting as a Iustise 1028

Assembled ben þis answere forto here
 And aftere þis knyȝt^t was bode apere
 And þat^t þe knyȝt^t shuld^t telle *in* audience
 To euery wiȝt^t *commmaunded* was silence 1032
 what^t þing^t þat^t worldly wommen louen mest^t [leaf 143, back]
 This knyght^t ne stode not^t stille as dop a beest^t
 But^t to his question^t anoñ answerd^t
 wiȝ^t manly vois þat^t al þe courte it^t herde 1036
 My lege lady generally quod he
 wommen desiren to han souereyn^te
 As wel ouer hir husbond *and* her loue
 And forto be in maistrie *hym* aboue 1040
 This is ȝoure most^t desire þouȝe ȝe me kille
 Dop as ȝou list^t I am here at ȝoure wille
 In al þe courte ne was þer wif ne mayde
 Ne wydowe þat^t contraried what^t he saide 1044
 But^t seiden he was worþi han his lif
 And wiȝ^t þat^t word vp stert^t þat^t olde wif
 which^t þat^t þe knyght^t sey sitting^t on þe grene
 Mercy quod she my souereyn lady quene 1048
 Er þat^t ȝoure courte departe do me riȝt^t
 I taught^t þis answere vnto þis knyȝt^t
 ffor which^t he plizte me his troythe þere
 þe first^t þinge I wolde of him requere 1052
 He wold it^t doo ȝif it^t lay in his myȝt^t
 Bifore þe court^t þan prey I þe sir knyȝt^t
 Quod she þat^t þou me take vnto þi wiff
 ffor wel þou woost^t þat^t I. haue kepte þi liff 1056
 If I sey fals seye nay vpon þi faye
 þis knyȝt^t answerd^t allas *and* weleaway
 I woot^t riȝt^t wel þat^t such^t was my bihest^t
 ffor goddis loue chese a newe request^t 1060
 Take al my good *and* lat^t my body goo
 Nay þan quod she I schrewe vs boþe twoo
 ffor þouȝe þat^t I be foule *and* olde *and* poor
 I nold^t for al þe metal ne for ore 1064

þat' vnder erþe is graue or lith' aboue
 But' 3if þat' I þi wif were *and* þi loue
 My loue quod he nay my dampnaciō
 Allas þat' eny of my naciōn 1068
 Shuld euere so foule ydisparaged be [leaf 144]
 But' al for nouȝt' þe ende is þis þat' he
 Constreyned was he nedes most' her wedde
 And takeþ þis olde wif and goþ to bedde 1072
 Nowe wolden somme men seyn peraventure
 þat' for my necligence I do no cure
 To telle 3ou þe Ioie and þe araye
 þat' at' þe feest' was þat' ilk' day 1076
 To which þinge shortly answe're I shal
 I seie þer nas no Ioye ne feest' at aH
 þer nas but' hevynesse and mochel sorowe
 ffor priuely he wedded hure on a morowe 1080
 And alday aftere hid hym as an owle
 So woo was him his wif loked so foule
 Grete was þe sorowe þe knyȝt' had in his þouȝt'
 Whan he was wiþ his wiff a bedde brouȝt' 1084
 He waloweþ and turneþ to and froo
 His olde wiff laye smyling' euermoo
 And seide .o dere husbond' o benedicite
 fareþ euery knyȝt' þus wiþ his wif as 3e 1088
 Is þis þe lawe of king' Arthures hous
 Is euery knyȝt' of his loue þus dañgerous
 I am 3oure owne loue and eke 3oure wiff
 I am she which þat' saued hap 3oure lif' 1092
 And certes 3it' did I 3ou neuere vnriȝt'
 whi fare 3e þus wiþ me þe firste nyȝt'
 3e faren lich' a man had lost' his witte
 ffy what' is my gilt' for goddes loue telle it' 1096
 And it' shal ben amended if I may
 Amended quod þis knyȝt' nay nay
 That' wil not' bene amended neuere moo
 þou art' so loþly and so old' also 1100

And þerto commen of so lowe a kinde
 þat no wonder is þouȝe I walowe & wynde
 So wolde god my herte wolde bres
 Is þis quod she þe cause of ȝoure vnrest' 1104
 ȝe certainly quop he no wonder' is [leaf 144, back]
 Now sire quod she I couþe amende al þis
 If þat' me list' er it' were daies þre
 So wel ȝe myȝt' bere ȝou vnto me. 1108
 ¶ But' for ȝe speken of such gentillesse ¶ *No/a bene de nobilibus*
 As is descended out' of alle richesse
 þat' þerfore shulden ȝe be gentile men
 Such erroganŋce nys not' worþ an heñ 1112
 Loke who so is moost' vertuous alway
 Privey and aperte and best' endeþ ay
 To do þe beste dedis þat' he can
 And take him for þ[e] grettest' gentile man 1116
 Of criste cleyme we our' gentylesse
 Not' of oure elders for our old richesse
 ffor þouȝe þei ȝeue vs al *our* heritage
 ffor which we cleyme to be of hie parage 1120
 ȝit' may þei not' byqueþ for no þing'
 To noon of vs her vertuous lyuyng
 þat' made hem gentile men ycalled be
 And bad vs folowen in such degre 1124
 wel can þe wise poete of florence
 þat' hight' dañt' speke in þis sentence
 Lo in such manere Ryme is dantes tale
 fful seelde vpriseþ by his braunches smale 1128
 Prowesse of man for god of his prouesse
 wil þat' of hym we clayme our gentilnesse
 ffor of oure elders may we no þing' clayme
 But' temporel þing þat' man may hirt *and* mayme 1132
 Eke euery wiȝt' wote þis as wel as I
 þo gentelesse were planted naturelly
 Vnto a certeyn lynage down þe lyne
 Prive *and* apert' þan wold he neuere fyne 1136

To doñ of gentelesse þe fair' office
 þei myȝten do no vileny or vice
 Take fire and bere it' in þe derkest' hous
 By-twix þis *and* the mount' of Caucasous. 1140
 And lat' men shette þe doores and go þenne [leaf 145]
 Ȝit' wol þe fire as faire lye and brenne
 A[s] thowsand men myȝt' it' biholde
 His office naturel ay wil it' holde 1144
 Vp perile of liff til þat' it' die
 Here may ȝe se wel how þat' gentrie
 Is nat' annexed to possession
 Siþ folk do not' her operacion 1148
 Al waie as doþ þe fire lo in his kinde
 ffor god it' wote men may ful often fynde
 A lordes sone doo shame and vilenye
 And he þat' wil haue price of his gentrie 1152
 ffor he was born of a gentile hous
 And had his elders noble *and* vertuous
 And nyl him-seluen do no gentile dedys
 Ne folow his gentile Auncestre þat' dede is 1156
 He nys nat' gentile be he duke or erle
 ffor vileyns sinful dedes make a cheerle
 ffor gentilnesse nys but' reuent' renome
 Of þine ancestres for hir bewte bounte 1160
 Whiche is a strong' þing' for þi persone
 The gentilesse commeþ from god alone
 Than commeth our verrey gentilesse of grace
 It' was no þing' byqueþe vs *with* our place 1164
 Thenkeþ howe noble as seiþ valerius
 Was þilk Tullius Hostilius
 þat' out' of pouerte roos to hie noblesse
 Redeþ Senek and redeþ eke Boesse 1168
 þer shul ȝe sene expresse þat' it' no drede is
 þat' he is gentile þat' doþ gentile dedys
 And þerfore dere husbonde I þus conclude
 Al were it' þat' myn ancestres were rude 1172

GROUP D. § 2. WIFE'S TALE. Petworth MS.

3it may þat hie god an so hope I
 Graunt me grace to lyue vertuously
 Than am I gentile whan þat I bygynne
 To lyuen vertuously and leuen synne 1176
 And þer as 3e of pouert me repreue [leaf 145, back]
 The hie god on whom þat we byleue
 In wilful pouerte. chas to lede his lif ¶ *nota de paupertate.*
 And certes euery man boþ maide & wiff 1180
 May vnderstonde Ihesu heuen kinge
 Ne wold not chese a vicious lyuynge
 Glad pouerte is an honest þing certayn
 This wil senek and opere clerkes seyn 1184
 Who þat holte him paide of his pouerte
 I holde him riche al had he nouȝt serte
 He þat coueiteþ is a poor wȝt
 ffor he wold han þat is not in his myȝt 1188
 But he þat nouȝt hap ne keuiteþ to haue
 Is riche al þough men hold him but a knaue
 Verrey pouerte is signe proprely
 Iuuenal [saip] of pouert merily 1192
 The poor man whan he goþ by þe way
 Biform þe þeues he may singe and play
 Pouerte is hatel good and as y gesse
 A ful grete bringer out of bysynesse 1196
 A grete amender eke of sapience
 To him þat lackeþ it in pacience
 Pouerte is þis al þough it seme alenge
 Possession þat no wȝt wil chalenge 1200
 Pouerte ful often whan a man is lowe
 Makeþ his god and eke him self to knowe
 Pouerte in spectacle is as þenkeþ me
 þorowe which he may his verrey frendes see 1204
 And þerfor siþ þat I 3ou not greue
 Of my pouerte no more me repreue
 Now sire of elde 3e repreue me ¶ *Nota de senectute.*
 And certes sire þorowe noñ auctorite 1208

GROUP D. § 2. WIFE'S TALE. Petworth MS.

Where in no boke 3e gentile in honour
 Seyn þat mon shuld an olde wif do fauour
 And clepe hur' modere for 3oure gentilnesse
 And auctours shal I fynde as I gesse 1212
 Now þere 3e seyn þat I am foule *and* olde [leaf 146]
 Than drede 3ou not to bene a kokewold
 ffor filþe and helde¹ also mote I thee [1 at first helpe]
 Bene grete wardeyns vpon chastite 1216
 But napeles siþ I knowe 3oure delite
 I shal fulfille 3oure worldly appetite
 Chese nowe quod she oon of þise þingges twey
 To han me foule *and* olde til þat I dye 1220
 And be to 3ou a trewe humble wiff
 And neuere 3ou displese in al my lif
 Or ellis 3e wil haue me 3onge *and* faire
 And take 3oure auenture of þe repaire 1224
 That shal come to 3oure hous bycause of me
 Or in some opere place wel may be
 Nowe chese 3oure seluen wheþer 3ou likeþ
 This knyght avised him and sor sikeþ 1228
 But at þe last he seide in þis manere
 My lady. *and* my loue. *and* wif so dere
 I putte me in 3oure wise gouernaunce
 Geueþ 3oure self which may be most plesaunce 1232
 And most honour to 3ou *and* me also
 I do no force þe wheþere of þe two
 ffor as 3ou likeþ it suffiseþ me
 Than haue I gote of 3ou þ^e maistrie quod she 1236
 Siþ I may chese and gouern as me list
 3e certes wif quod he I holde it for þe best
 Kisse me quod she we be no lenger wroþe
 ffor by my troupe I wil be to 3ou boþe 1240
 þis is to seine boþ faire and goode
 I prei to god þat I mot steruen woode
 But I to 3ou be as sadde and trewe
 As euere was wiff syþ þat þ^e world was newe 1244

GROUP D. § 2. WIFE'S TALE. Petworth MS.

And but I be to morow as fair' to sene
 As eny lady Emperesse or quene
 þat' is by-twene þe Est' and eke þ^e west'
 doþ wiþ my liff and deþe riȝt' as ȝou lest' 1248
 Cast' vp þe Curtyne loke how it' is [leaf 146, back]
 And whan þe knyȝt' sawe al þis
 þat' she so faire was and so yonge þerto
 ffor ioie he hent' her in his armes twoo 1252
 His herte bathed in a bath of blisse
 A *thousand*¹ tyme a rowe hire gan he kisse [1 MS M¹.]
 And she obeied him in euery þinge
 That' myȝht' done hym plesaunce or likinge 1256
 And þus þei lyued vnto her lyues ende
 In parfitt Ioye and Ihesus crist' vs sende
 Husbonde . yonge . meke *and* fresssh abedde
 And grace to ouerlede hem þat' we wedde 1260
 And eke I prei to Ihesu short' her lyues
 That' wil not' be gouerned by her wyues
 And olde and angry nygard^t *and* dispence
 God sende hem sone a verrey pestilence 1264

¶ Thus endep þe tale of þe wif of bath /

And here bygygneþ þe prologe of þe frere [on leaf 146, back]

This worþi lymytour þis noble frere ¶ þe prologe
 He made alway louring chere
 Vpon þe somnour . but for honeste
 No vyleyns word as 3it speke he 1268
 But at þe last he seide vnto þe wif
 Dame good god 3eue 3ou riȝt good lyf
 3e han touchet here also mote I the
 In scole matere grete difficulte 1272
 3e han seide mochel þing riȝt wel I seie
 But dame here as we riden by þe weie
 Vs nedeþ not to speken but of game
 And late auctoritees a goddes name 1276
 To prechen *and* to scole eke of clergie
 But 3if it like vnto þis companye
 I wil 3ou of a somnour telle a game
 Parde I may wel knowe by þi name 1280
 That of no somnour may no good be seid
 I prey þat noon of 3ou be euel apeid
 A somnour is a romere vp and down [leaf 147]
 Wip a mendement of fornicacioun 1284
 And is ibete at euery townes ende
 Our hoost þoo spak a . sire 3e shuld beñ hende
 And Curteis as man of 3our astat
 In company we wil no debate 1288
 Telleþ 3oure tale and lat þe somnour be
 Nay quod þe somnour lat him say to me
 What so him lest . whan it commeþ to my lott
 Be god I shal hym quyte euery grott 1292
 I shal him telle swiȝh a grete honour
 It is to be a flaterynȝ lymytour
 And eke of ful mony an oper crime
 Which nedeþ not rehersen at þis tyme 1296
 And his office I shal hym telle ywis
 Our hooste answerd pees no more of þis
 And afterward he seide vnto þe frere
 Telle forþ 3oure tale my owen maister dere 1300
 ¶ Thus endeþ þe prologe of þe frere.

And

here begynneþ þe ffreres tale.

Whilom þer was dwelling in my contre ¶ The tale./
 An Archedeken a man of hie degre
 That boldely did execusioñ
 In punysshing of fornicacioñ 1304
 Of which craft and eke of baudry
 Of diffamacioñ and avoutrye
 Of chirche reues and of testamentes
 Of contractes and of lak of sacramentes 1308
 Of vsure and symonye also
 But certes lecchours did he grettest woo
 þei shulden syngen if þei were hent
 And Smale Tythers weren foule shent 1312
 If eny person wold vpon hem pleyne
 þer myȝt astert him no pecunyal peyne
 ffor smale tyþes and eke smale offringe
 He made þe puple spitously to singe 1316
 ffor er the bisshope kauȝt hem wiþ his hoke [leaf 147, back]
 þei weren in þe Archedekens boke
 And þan had he þorowe his Iurisdiccion
 Pouer to don on hem correccioñ 1320
 he had a somnour redy to his hand
 A selyer boye was non in engelond
 ffor sotilly he had his especiale
 That tauȝt hym where þat hym myȝt auaille 1324
 He coude spare of lecchours on or twoo
 To techen hym to *four and twenty*¹ moo [1 MS xxiiij]
 ffor þouȝe this somnour wode were as an hare
 To telle his harlotry I wil not spare 1328

ffor we bene out' of her correcciōn
 þei han of vs noñ Iurisdiction
 Ne neuere shullen teerme of al her lyues
 Peter' so bene þe wommen of þe stewes 1332
 Quod this somnour yput' out' of our cure
 Pees wip meschaunce *and* wip misaventure
 Thus seide our hoost' *and* lat' hym telle his tale
 Now telleþ forþ and lat' þe somnour gale 1336
 Ne spareth nouȝt' myn owne Maister' dere
 This fals þeef þis somnour quod þe frere
 Had alway baudes redy to his honde
 As eny hauke to lure in Engelande 1340
 That' telle him al þe secre þat thei knewe
 ffor hure a-queyntance was nat' come of newe
 þei weren his aprouers prively
 He toke hym silf a grete prophete þerby 1344
 His maistere knewe not' al way what' he wan
 wip-uten maundement' of a lewde man
 He coude sommon vpeyn of cristes curs
 And þei were inly glad to fille his purs 1348
 And made hym grete festes atte nale
 And rizt' as Iudas had purses smale
 And was a þeef rizt' such a þeef was he
 His maister' had but' half his dwete 1352
 He was ȝif I shal ȝeune hym his laude
 A theef and eke a somnour *and* a bawde
 He had eke wenches of his retenue
 That' whedere þat' sir' Roberde or sir' hwe 1356
 Or Iohn or rauf or who þat' it' were
 þat lay by hem þei tolde it' in his eere
 Thus was þe wenche and he of on assent'
 And he wolde focche a feyned maundement' 1360
 And somne hem to þe chapitere boþ twoo
 And pille þe man and lat' þe wenche goo
 Than wold he sei frend I shal for þi sake
 To strike þe out' of oure letters blake 1364

þe ther no more as in þis caas travaile
 I am þi frende þer I þe may availe
 Certeyn he knewe of bribers moo
 þan possible is to telle 3ou vnto to/ 1368
 ffor in þis world is no dogge for no bowe
 þat knoweþ and hert deer. from an olde bete kowe
 þan þat þis somnour knewe a sly lecchour
 Or auouter or ellis a paramour 1372
 And for þat was þe fruyte of al þe rent
 Therefore on hit he sette al his entent
 And so byfelle þat ones on a day
 This somnour euer wayting on his pray 1376
 Rode forto somne an old wif a ribibe
 fleynyng a cause for he wold haue a bribe
 And happed þat he sawe to-fore hym ride
 A gey 3eman vnder a forest side 1380
 A bowe he bare and Arowes bri3t and kene
 He had vpon a courtepie of grene
 An hatte vpon his hede wip stringges blake
 Sire quod þis somnour. haile and wel ytake 1384
 welcome quod he and euery good felawe
 whider ridest þowe vnder þis grene wood shawe
 Seide þis 3eman wilt thou fer to-day
 This somnour hym answerd and seide nay 1388
 Here fast by quod he is myne entent [leaf 148, back]
 To riden for to reisen vp a rent
 It longeþ to my lordes dewte
 Art þou þan a bailyf. 3e quod he 1392
 He durste not for verrey filþe and shame
 Say þat he was a somnour for þe name
 Depar-dieux quod þis 3eman dere broþer
 þou art a baillif and I am anoper 1396
 I am vnknownen as in þis contre
 Of þine aqueyntaunce I wil prey þe
 And eke of breþerhede if þat þou lest
 I haue gold and siluer in my chest 1400

3if þat þe happed come into our shire
 Al shal be þine riȝt as þou wold desire
 Graunte mercy quod þis somnour by my feiþe
 Euerech in oþeres honde his troupe leiþe 1404
 ffor to be swore breþeren to þei dye
 And wiþ þat word þei ride forþ her wey
 This somnour wiþ þat was as ful of Iangles
 As ful of venyme beñ þise waryangles 1408
 And euer enquiring vpon euery þinge
 Broþer quod he wher is ȝour dwellinge
 Anoþer day if I shuld ȝou seche
 þis ȝeman him answerd in softe spech 1412
 Broþer quod he ferre in þe north contre
 Wher as I hope somtyme I shal þe See
 Or we departe I shal þe so wel wisse
 þat of myn hous shalt þou neuere mysse 1416
 Now broþere quod þis somnour I ȝou pray
 Teche me while we riden by þe waye
 Sip þat ȝe bene a balif as am I
 Somme subtilite telle me feiþfully 1420
 In myn office howe þat I may most wyne
 And spareþ not for conscience ne synne
 But as my broþere telle me howe doo ȝe.
 Nowe by my treuþe broþere dere seide he 1424
 As I shal tellen þe a feiþful tale [leaf 149]
 My wages be ful streit and smale
 My lorde is hard to me and daungerous
 And myn office ful laborous 1428
 And þefore by extorcions y lyue
 ffor soþ I [take] al þat men wil me ȝeue
 Algate by scleyght or violence
 ffrom ȝeer to ȝeer I wyne al my dispence 1432
 I can no better tellen feiþfully
 Now certes quod þis somnour so fare I
 I spare not to take god it wote
 But ȝif it be to hevy or to hote 1436

GROUP D. § 4. FRIAR'S TALE. Petworth MS.

What I may gete in counseile prively
 No maner' conscience of þat' haue I
 Ner myn extorcioñ I myȝt' not' lyuen
 Of suche Iapes nyl I not' be shryuen 1440
 Stomake . ne for conscience ne knowe I noñ
 I schrewe þise shrift' faders euerechoñ
 Wel ben we mette by god and by seint' Iame
 But' leue broþer telle me þan þi name 1444
 Quop þis somnour in þis mene while
 þis ȝeman gan a litel forto smyle
 Broþer quod he wiltow þat' I þe telle
 I am a feende my dwellyng' is in helle 1448
 And here I ride aboute my purchasing'
 To wete where men wollen ȝeue me eny þing'
 My purchace is to fette of aȝ my rent'
 Loke how þou ridest' for þe same entent' 1452
 To wynne good þou recchest' not' howe
 Riȝt' so fare I for ride wold' I nowe
 Vnto þe worldes eende for a preye .
 A quod þis somnour benedicite what' ȝe seie 1456
 I wende ȝe were a ȝeman trewly
 ȝe han a mannes shappe as wel as I
 Han ȝe a figure þan determynate
 In helle þer ȝe bene in ȝour estate 1460
 Nay certeynly quop he þere haue we noon [leaf 149, back]
 But' whan vs likeþ we can take vs oon
 Or ellis make ȝou seme we bene shape
 Somtyme a man or like an ape 1464
 Or like an aungel can I ride or goo
 It' is no wonder' þing' þouȝe it' be so
 A lousy Iogelour can desceyue þe
 And parde ȝit' can I more craft' þan he 1468
 Why quop þis somnour ride ȝe þan or goñ
 In sondry shappe and not' alway in oon
 ffor we quod he wil vs in such forme make
 As most' able is our praies forto take . 1472

What^t makeþ þou to han al þis labour
 fful mony a cause leue sir^t somnour
 Seide þis feende but^t al þing^t hap tyme
 The day is short^t and it^t is passed prime 1476
 And 3it^t ne wanne I no þinge in þis day
 I wil entende to wynnyng^t 3if I may
 And nat^t entende our wittes to declare
 ffor broþer myne þi witte is alto bare 1480
 To vnderstonde þou3e I tolde hem þe
 But^t for þowe askest^t whi labouren we
 ffor somtyme be we goddes instrumentes
 And menes to do his comaundementes 1484
 Whan þat^t him list^t vpon his creatures
 In dyuers actes and in dyuers figures
 With-outen hym we han no my3t^t certeyn
 3if þat^t him list^t to stonden þer a3ein 1488
 And some tyme at^t our^t pray han we leue
 Only þe body and nat^t þe soule greue
 Witnesse on Iob whom þat^t we diden woo
 And somtyme han we my3t^t of boþ[e] two 1492
 þis is to seyn of soule and body eke
 And somtyme we bene suffered forto seke
 Vpon a man and do his soule vnrest^t
 And nat^t his body and al is for þe best^t 1496
 Whan he withstondeþ our temptaciōn [leaf 150]
 It^t is a cause of [his] saluaciōn
 Al be it^t þat^t it^t was not^t our entent^t
 He shulde be sauf but^t þat^t we wold^t hym hent^t 1500
 And somtyme be we seruantes vnto man
 As þe erchbisshope seint^t dunstan
 And to þe appostels seruante was I
 3it^t telleþ me quod þe somnour feiþfully 1504
 Make 3e þou newe bodies þus alway
 Of elementz þe feende answerd^t nay
 Somme tyme we feyne and somtyme we arise
 Wiþ-dede bodies in ful sondry wise 1508.

GROUP D. § 4. FRIAR'S TALE. Petworth MS.

And speke as resonably and faire welȝ
 As to þe Phitonessa . did samueȝ
 And ȝit wil somme men say it was not he
 I doo no fors of ȝoure dyvynite 1512
 But oon þing warne I þe I wil not Iape
 Thow wilt algates witte howe we be shape
 þou shalt here afterward my broþer dere
 Come þer þe nedep nat of me to lere 1516
 ffor þou shalt be þine owne experience
 Come into þe Chaierede þis sentence
 Bette þan virgil while he was a lyue
 Or Dante also now lat vs ride blyue 1520
 ffor I wil hold company wiþ þe
 Til it be so þat þou forsake me
 Nay quod þis somnour þat shal not betide
 I am a ȝeman knowe is ful wide 1524
 Mi troupe wil I holde to þe as in þis cas
 ffor þei þou were þe deuel Sathanas
 My troupe wil I holde to my broþer
 As I am sworn and eche of vs to oþer 1528
 ffor to be trewe broþer in þis caas
 And broþer we goon to our purchas
 Take þou þi parte what men wil þe ȝeue
 And I shal myne þus may we boþ[e] lyue 1532
 And ȝif þat eny of vs haue more þan oþere [leaf 150, back]
 Lat him be trewe and part it with his broþer
 I graunte quod þe deuel be my fay
 And wiþ þat word þei ryden forth her way 1536
 And riȝt at þe enteringe of þe townes ende
 To which þe sompnour shope hym for to wende
 þei sey a cart þat charged was wiþ hay
 Which þat a carter droof forþ on his way 1540
 Depe was þe way for which þe carte stooode
 This Carter smote and stroof as he were woode
 Haite broke haite scotte what spare we for þe stonys
 þe feende quod he ȝou fecche boþ body and bcyns 1544

As ferforþly as euere were ȝe foled/
 So moche woo as I haue for ȝou tholed
 þe deuel haue aȝ þoþ hors and carte *and* hay
 þouȝt this somnour here shul we haue a play 1548
 And nere þe feende he drouȝe as nauȝt ne were
 fful priueyly and rouned in his eere
 Harken my broþer herken be þi feiþ
 Herestow nat howe þe carter seiþ 1552
 Hent it anoȝ for he haþ ȝeuen þe
 Boþ hey and carte and eke his caples þre
 Nay quod þe deuel god wote neuer a dele
 It is not his entent trust me wele 1556
 Aske hym þi silf ȝif þou not trestest me
 Or ellis stint a while and þou shalt Se
 This Carter thakked his hors on þe croupe
 And þei bygonne to drowe and to stoupe 1560
 Haite nowe quod he þat Ihesu crist ȝou blisse
 And al his hond werk boþ more and lesse
 That was wel twite myn owne lyarde boy
 I prey god saue þe and seint loye 1564
 Now is my carte out of þe selough parde
 lo broþer quod þe feend. *and* what told I þe
 Here may ȝe se myne owne dere broþere
 þe Carle spak oo þinge but he þouȝt anoþer 1568
 lat vs go forþ abouten our viage [leaf 151]
 Here wyne I no þinge vpon cariage
 Whan þat þei comen somewhat out of þe town
 This somnour to his broþer gan to roun 1572
 Broþer quod he here wonneþ an olde rebeke
 þat had almost as leef to lese her nekke
 As forto ȝeue a peny of hire good.
 I wil haue xij. pans þouȝe þat she be wode 1576
 Or I wil somne hure to our office
 And ȝit good woote of hure knowe I no vice
 But for þou canst nat as in þis contree
 Wynne þi cost take here ensample of me 1580

GROUP D. § 4. FRIAR'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

This somnour knokkeþ at þe wydous gate
 Come out! he seide þou olde viritate
 I trowe þou hast somme frere or preest *with* þe
 Who clappeth þer seide þis wif *benedicite* 1584
 God saue þou sir! what! is þoure swete wille
 I haue quod he to somne þe here a bille
 Vp peyne of cursinge loke þat! þou be
 To-morowe by-forn our Archedeken kne 1588
 To answe're to þe courte of certeyn þingges
 Now lord! quod she *crist* Ihesu king! of kingges
 So wisly helpe me as I ne may
 I haue be sik! and þat! ful mony a day 1592
 I may not! goo so ferre quod she ne ride
 But! I be dede so prickeþ it! in my side
 May I not! axe a libe! Sir! somnour
 And answe're þere by my *procuratour* 1596
 To suche a þinge as men wolden opposen me
 3is quop! this somnour! pay anon! late See
 xij penys to me and I wil þe aquite
 I shal no profit! han þerby but lite 1600
 My maister hap! þe prophete *and* nat I
 Come and lat! me riden hastely
 3eue me .xij pans I may no lenger tarye
 xij. quod! she lady seinte Marye 1604
 So wisly helpe [me] out! of care *and* synne [leaf 151, back]
 þis wide world! þouze I shuld it! wyne
 Ne haue I not! xij pens wiþ-in my holde
 3e knowe wel þat! I am poor *and* olde 1608
 Kithe þoure almesse on me poor wrecche
 nay þan quop! he þe foule fende me fecche
 3if I þe excuse þouze þou shulde be spilt!
 Allas quod she god wote I haue no gilt! 1612
 Pay me quod he or by the swete Anne
 As I wil bere away þi newe panne
 ffor dette which! þou owest! me of olde
 Whan þat! þou made þine husbond! kukwold! 1616

I paide at home for þi correction
 þou lixte quod she be my saluacion
 Ne was I neuere or nowe widowe ne wiff
 Somned vnto þoure courte in al my liff 1620
 Ne neuere I nas but of my body trewe
 Vnto þe deuel blake & rowe of hwe
 3eue I þi body and my panne also
 And whan þe deuel herd her curse soo / 1624
 Vpon her knees he seide in þis manere
 Now mabely myn owne modere derè
 Is þis þou[r] wiþ in earnest þat 3e seye
 þe deuel quod she fette hym er he deye 1628
 And pan and al but he wil hym repent
 Nay olde stott þat is not myn entent
 Quod þis somnour for to repente me
 ffor eny þing þat I haue had of þe 1632
 I wold I had þi smokke and euery cloþe
 Nowe broþer quod þe deuel be not wroth
 þi body and þis panne is myn by riȝt
 þou shalt wiþ me to helle ȝit to-nyȝt 1636
 Where þou shalt knowe of our priuete
 More þan a maister of diuinite
 And wiþ þat word þis foule fende hym hent
 Body and soule he with þe deuel went 1640
 Wher þat somnours han her heritage [leaf 152]
 And god þat made after his ymage
 Man-kinde saue and gyde vs al and some
 And lene þis somnour good man to bycome 1644
 Lordingges I couþe han told þou quod þis frere
 Had I had leisere for þis somnour here
 Aftere þe text. crist. paule and Ioħn
 And of oure opere doctours mony on 1648
 Which peynes þat þour hertes myȝt agriȝe
 Al be it so no tunge may deuise
 pouȝe þat I myȝt a .Ml. wynter telle
 þe peynes of þilk cursed hous of helle 1652

GROUP D. § 4. FRIAR'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

But^t forto kepe vs from þat^t cursed place
 Wakeþ and preieth Ihesu for his grace
 So kepe vs fro þe temptour sathanas
 Herkenþ þis word^t beþ ware as in þis cas 1656
 þe lyon sitte in his awaite alway
 To sclee þe Innocent^t 3if þat^t he may .
 Disposeþ ay 3oure hertes to wiþstond^t
 þe fende þat^t 3ou wold^t make þral *and* bond^t 1660
 He may not^t tempten 3ou ouer 3our^t myzt^t
 ffor crist wil be 3oure champion and knyzt^t
 And preieþ þat^t þis somnour hym repent^t
 Of his mysdede er þat^t þe fende hym hent^t 1664

¶ Thus endep þe frere his tale .

¶ And here bygynnep þe prologe of þe somnour [on lf 152]

¶ This somnour in his stirop hiȝe stode ¶ þe prologe

Vpon þis frere his herte was so wode
 þat' like an aspen leef he quoke for Ire
 Lordingges quod he but' oo þinge I desire 1668

I ȝou biseche þat' of ȝour' curtesie
 Sipens ȝe han herde this fals frere lye
 As suffre me I may a tale telle
 þis frere boosteth þat' he knowep helle 1672

And god woote it' is litel wondere
 freres and feendes bene but' lite asonre
 ffor parde ȝe han oft' tyme herd telle [leaf 152, back]
 How þat' a frere rauysshed was in helle 1676

In spirit' ones by A visioun
 And as an aungel lad him vp & down
 To shewen him the peynes þat' þer were
 In aȝ þe place segȝ he not' a frere 1680

Of oper folk' he segȝ ynow in woo
 Vnto þis aungel speke þe frere þoo
 Nowe sire quod he han freres suche grace
 þat' noon of hem shal come to þis place 1684

ȝis quop þis aungel mony a mylioun
 And vnto Sathanas he lad hym down
 And now haȝ sathanas seiȝ he a tale
 Bradder' þan of þe Carike is a saile 1688

hold vp þi taile þou sathanas quod he
 Showe forȝ þine ers and lat' þe frere see
 Wher is þe nest' of freres in þis place
 And er þan half a forlonge wey of space 1692

GROUP D. § 5. FRIAR-SUMMONER LINK. **Petworth MS.**

Ryȝt as been swermen out of an hye
 Out of þe deuels ers þei gon drive
 xx^{ti}. thousand freres on a route
 And þought helle swarme al aboute 1696
 And comen aȝein as fast as þei mowe goñ
 And in his ers þei crepten euerechoñ
 He clapte his taile aȝein and lay stille
 This frere whan he loked had his fille 1700
 Vpon þise turmentz of þis sory place
 His spiret god restored of his grace
 Vnto his body aȝein *and* he awoke
 But napelees for fere ȝit he quoke 1704
 So was þe deueles ers ay in his mynde
 which is his heritage of verrey kinde
 God saue you alle saue þis *cursed* frere
 My prologe wil I ende in þis manere 1708

¶ Thus endep þe *prologe* of þe *somnour*

And here bygynneþ þe somnour tale

L Ordynnges þer/ is in york-shire as I gesse [leaf 153]
 A mershy contray called holdernesse
 In which þere went a lymitour aboute
 To preche and eke to begge it is no doute 1712
 And so byfelle þat on a day þis frere
 Had preched atte chirch in þis manere
 And specialy abouen euery þinge
 Excited he þe puple in his prechinge 1716
 To trentales and [to 3eue] for goddis sake
 Therwiþ men myzte holy howses make
 Ther as dyuine seruyse is honoured
 Nouzt þere as it is waasted and deuoured 1720
 Ne þere it nedep not forto be 3eue
 As to possessoures þat may ellis lyue
 Thonked be god in wele *and* habundaunce
 Trentales seide he delyuereþ fro penaunce 1724
 Her frendes soules as wel olde as yonge
 3if þat þei bene hastely ysonge
 Nouzt forto holde a preest Ioly *and* gay
 He syngþ not but oon masse on a day 1728
 Delyuereþ out quod he anoñ þe soules
 fful hard it is wiþ flessshoke eiper with oulys
 Nul spede 3ou hastely for cristes sake 1732
 To kepe 3ou from peynes of fendes blake 1731
 And whan þe frere had seide al his entente
 With qui cum patre forþ he wente
 Whan folk in chirche had 3eue hym what hem lest
 He went his way no lenger wold he rest 1736

GROUP D. § 6. SUMMONER'S TALE. Petworth MS.

Wiþ scrippe and tipped staf tukked ful hie
 In euery hous he gan to pore and prie
 And beggeþ mele or chese or ellis corñ
 His felawe had a staf tipped wiþ horn 1740
 A paire of tables of yuorie
 And a poyntel polsshed fetisly
 And w[r]ote alway þe names þer he stode
 And alle folk þat ʒaue hym eny goode 1744
 Ascaunce as he wold for hem preye [leaf 153, back]
 ʒif vs a busshel whete. malt or reye
 A goddys kechil or a trippe of chese
 A bosshel malt or ellis of peese 1748
 A goddys half peny or a masse penye
 Or ʒeue vs of ʒoure [bran] ʒif ye haue enye
 A dagon of ʒour blanket leue dame
 Our suster deer loo here I write ʒour name 1752
 Bacon or beef or such þinge as ʒe finde
 A sturdy harlot went alway behinde
 þat was her hoostes man and bere a sakt
 And what men ʒaue hym leide it on his bak 1756
 And whan he was out of þe door anoñ
 He pleynd away [þe] names euerechoñ
 þat he biforn had writen in his tables
 He serued [hem] wiþ nyfels and wiþ fables 1760
 Nay þer-In þu lixt somnour quod þe frere
 Pes quod oure hoost for cristes modere dere
 Telle forþ þi tale and spare it not at all
 ffor hym ne for noon opere what so fah 1764
 So longe he went hous by hous til he
 Come to an hous þer he was wont to be
 Refreshed more þan in an .C. places
 Seke lay þe good man þat of the place es / 1768
 Bedred vpon a couche lowe he lay
 Deus hic quod he . o thomas frende good day
 Seide þis frere curtesly and soft
 Thomas god ʒeeldt ʒou wel oft 1772

GROUP D. § 6. SUMMONER'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

Haue I vpon þis benche faren ful wele
 Here haue I eten mony a mery mele
 And from þe benche he droof away þ^e catt'
 And leide a doune his potent' *and* his hatt' 1776
 And eke his scripture and sette hym soft adoun
 His felawe was go walked in to þe toun
 fforþ wiþ his knaue into þat' hostelerye
 Where as he shope hym þilke nyȝt' to lye 1780
 O dere Maister' quod þis sike man [leaf 154]
 How haue ȝe farn siþ þat' march bygan
 I segȝ ȝou nouȝt' þis fourtenyȝt' day *and* more
 God wote' quod he labowred haue I ful sore 1784
 And specialy for þi saluacioȝ
 Haue I seide mony a precious orisoȝ
 And for our oþer frendes god hem blesse
 I haue þis day ben at' ȝour churcȝ at messe 1788
 And seide a sermon after' my symple witte
 Not' al aftere þe text' of holy writte
 ffor it' is hard' to ȝou as I suppose
 And þerfore I wil teche ȝou al þe glose 1792
 Glosinge is glorious þing' certeyȝ
 ffor letters sleþ so as we clerkes seyȝ
 There haue I taught' hem to be charitable
 And spende her good þer it' is resonable 1796
 And þer I seghe *our* dame a where is she
 ȝondere in þe ȝerde I trowe she be
 Saide þis man and she wil come anoȝ
 Ey maister' welcome be ȝe be seint' Iohȝ 1800
 Seide þis wif how fare ȝe hertely
 This frere riseþ vp wel curteisly
 And hure enbraseþ in his armes narowe
 And kisseþ hure swetely *and* chirkeþ as a sparowe 1804
 Wiþ his lippes. dame quod he riȝt' wel
 As he þat' is ȝour' seruauȝte euery deȝ
 Thonked be god þat' ȝou ȝaf soule *and* liff
 ȝit' sey I not' þis day so faire a wif 1808

In al þe churche god so saue me
 3e god amende aȝ fautes sir' quod' she
 Algates welcome be 3e by my fay
 Graunt' mercy dame þis haue I fonde alway. 1812
 But' of 3oure grete goodnesse be 3our leue
 I wold prey 3ou þat' 3e nold' not' greue
 I wil wiþ thomas speke a litel throwe
 Thise Curatours bene ful necligent' and selowe 1816
 To grope tenderly a conscience [leaf 154, back]
 In shrift' in preching' is my diligence
 And stody in peter wordes and poules
 I walke and fissue cristen mennys soules 1820
 To 3eelde Ihesu his propre rent'
 To speke his wordes is al myn entent'
 Nowe by 3oure feiþ dere maister' quod' she
 Chideþ him wel for seinte trinite 1824
 He is as angry as a pisse myre
 þou3e þat' he haue al þat' he can desire
 þou3e I wrie hym on nyȝt' and make hym warme
 And on hym lay my legge or myn arme 1828
 He groneþ lich oure boor þat' lieþ in þe stie
 Oper disport' of him non haue I
 I may not' plesse him in no manere cas
 O Thomas Ieo vous dye. thomas thomas 1832
 This makeþ þe fende this wil be amended.
 Ire is a þinge þat' hie god haþ defended
 And þerof wil I speke a word' or twoo
 Now maister quop þe wif er þat' I goo 1836
 What' wil 3e dyne I wil goo þerabout
 Now dame quod' he Ieo vous dye sanz doute
 haue I of a Capon nouȝt' but þe lyuere
 And of 3oure soft' brede but' a shyuere 1840
 And after þat' a rosted pigges hede
 But' þat' I nolde for me no beest' were dede
 þan had I wiþ 3ou homely suffisaunce
 I am a man of litel sustynaunce 1844

GROUP D. § 6. SUMMONER'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

My spirit haþ [his] fostrinȝ in þe bible
 þe body is ay so redy *and* so penyble
 To wake þat my stomak is destroyed
 I prei þou dame be þe nouȝt anoyed 1848
 þouȝe I frendly to þou my counsail shewe
 By god I nold not telle it it but a fewe
 Nowe sire *quod* she but oo word er þe goo
 My childe is dede *with-in* þise wekes twoo 1852
 Sone after þat þe wenten out of þis toun [leaf 155]
 His deþ I segħ by reuelacioun
 Seide þis frere at home in our dortour
 I dar wel seyñ er þat half an houre 1856
 Aftere his deþ I segħ hym born to blisse
 In myn avisiõ god me so wis
 So dyd our Sexten *and* our fermerer
 þat han bene trewe freres .l. þere 1860
 þei may now god byþonke of his lone
 Maken hir Iuble and walken alone
 And vp I aroos and aȝ *our* couent eke
 Wiþ mony a tere trilling vpon *our* cheke 1864
 Wiþ-oute noys of clateryng of bellys
 Te deum. was our songe *and* no þing ellys
 Saue þat to crist I seide an orison
 Thonkinge hym of my reuelacioñ 1868
 ffor sir and dame tresteþ me riȝt wel
 Our orisons bene more effectueȝ
 And more we seen of cristes secre þingges
 þan borel folk or þouȝe þei were kingges 1872
 We lyue in pouerte and in abstinence
 And burel folk in richesse *and* in dispence
 In mete and drink and her foule delite
 We han þis worldly lust al in dispite 1876
 ¶ Lazarus and Diues. liveden dyuersly
 And dyuers guardon had þei þerby
 Who so wil prey most fast *and* be clene
 And fat his soule and make his body lene 1880

GROUP D. § 6. SUMMONER'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

We faren as seiþ þe apostel . cloþe <i>and</i> fode	
Suffiseþ vs þouze þei be not ful goode	
The clannes and þe fasting of vs freres	
Makeþ þat criste accepteþ our preieres	1884
Loo Moyses fourty daies <i>and</i> fourty nyȝt	
ffast or þe hie god of myȝt	
Spak wiþ him in þe Mount synay	
Wiþ empty woombe of fasting mony a day	1888
Resceyued he þe law þat was writen/	[leaf 155, back]
wiþ goddys fyngere and hely wil ȝe witen	
In mount Oreb er he had eny speche	
Wiþ hie god þat is our saules leche	1892
he fast longe and was in contemplançe	
Aaron þat had þe temple in gouernaunce	
And eke þe oper preestes euerechoñ	
Into þe temple whan þei shuld goñ	1896
To prey for þe puple <i>and</i> to do seruise	
þei nold drinke in no manere wise	
No drink which þat hem dronke myȝt make	
But þer in abstinence prey and wake	1900
lest þat þei diden take hede what I saye	
But þei be sobre þat for þe puple praye	
war þat I seie no more for it suffiseþ /	
Our lorde Ihesu as holy writte deuysel	1904
ȝaf vs ensample of fastinge <i>and</i> preiers	
Therefore we mendenauntz we sely freres	
Be wedde to pouerte <i>and</i> contynence	
To charite humblenesse and abstinence	1908
To persecucion for riȝtwisnesse	
To wepinge misericord <i>and</i> clennesse	
And þerfore may ȝe see þat our preiers	
I speke of vs we mendenauntz we freres	1912
Bene to þe hie god more acceptable	
þan ȝoures <i>with</i> þe fest at þe table	
ffor paradis first if I shal not lye	
was man outhased for his glotenye	1916

And chaast^t man was in *paradis* certeyn
 But^t harken nowe Thomas wha[t] I wil seyn
 I haue no tixte *perof* as I suppose
 But^t I shal fynde it^t in a *manere* glose 1920
 That^t specialy our lorde swete *Ihesus*
 Spake by freres whan he seide þus
 Blessed be þei þat^t poor in spirite be
 And so forþ al þe gospel may 3e se 1924
 Wher^t it^t be like our profession [leaf 156]
 Or her þat^t swymmen in possession
 ffe on her^t pompe *and* on her glotenye
 And on her lewdenesse I ham defie 1928
 Me þenkeþ þei ben like Iouynyan
 ffatte as a whale and walking^t as a swan
 Al vinolent^t as þe betel in þe spence
 Her preier is of ful grete reuerence 1932
 Whan þei for soules seyn þe Psalme of davyd
 lo boþ þei seyn *Cor meum* eructauit^t
 Who foloweþ cristes gospel *and* his lore
 But^t we þat^t humyle ben *and* chast^t *and* pore 1936
 Worchers of goddis word [not] auditours
 þerfore riȝt^t as an hawke vp at^t a sours
 Vp springeþ into þe eire . so preiers
 And charitable chastite of bysy freres 1940
 Making^t her soures to goddes eren too
 Thomas riȝt^t so as mote I ride or goo
 And by þat^t lord þat^t cleped was seynt yve
 Ner þowe our broþer þou shuldest^t not thryve 1944
 In oure Chapitle prey we day *and* nyȝt^t
 To crist^t þat^t he þe sende hele *and* myȝt^t
 Thi body forto welden hastely
 God wote quop he no þing^t *perof* fele I 1948
 As helpe crist^t as I haue in fewe 3eres
 Spended vpon mony dyuers freres
 Wel mony a pounde ȝit^t fare I ne þe bette
 Certeyn my good is almost^t be-sette 1952

ffare wele my good for it^t is almost^t agoo
 þe frere answerð o Thomas dost^t þou so
 What^t nedep^t þou diuers freres seehe
 What^t nedep^t hym þat^t hap a perfit^t leche 1956
 To sechen oþer leches in þe toun
 3our inconstaunce is 3our confusioñ
 Holde 3e me þan or ellis *our* couent^t
 To prey for 3ou ben insufficient^t 1960
 Thomas þat^t Iape is not^t worþ a myte [leaf 156, back]
 3oure Maladie is for we haue to lite
 A 3eue þat^t Couent^t half a quarter otyz
 A 3eue þat^t Couent^t *four and twenti*¹ grotys [¹ MS 'xxliij^u] 1964
 A 3eue þat^t frere a peny *and* lat^t hym goo
 Nay nay thomas it^t may no þing^t be so
 What^t is a ferþing^t parted in twelve
 Lo eche þing^t is counted in hym selue 1968
 Is more stronge whan it^t is so sclatered.
 Thomas of me þou shalt^t not^t be flatered /
 þou woldest^t haue our labour al for nou3t^t
 þe hie god þat^t al þis world^t hap wrou3t^t 1972
 Seip^t þat^t þe werkman is worþi his hire
 Thomas nou3t^t for 3oure tresour I desire
 As for my silf but^t þat^t al *our* Couent
 To prey for 3ou is al *our* diligent^t 1976
 And forto beelden *cristes* owne chirche
 Thomas if 3e wil lerne forto wirche
 Of beeldinge vp of churches may 3e finde
 If it be good in Thomas lif of ynde 1980
 3e ligge here ful of anger and of yre
 wiþ which þe deuel sette 3our hert^t on fire
 And chiden here þis holy Innocent^t
 3our wif þat^t is so meke *and* pacient^t 1984
 And þefore trow me 3if 3ou list^t
 Ne strive not^t wiþ þi wif as for þe best^t
 And bere þis word^t away now by þi feip
 Touchinge such þing^t lo what^t þe wise man seip 1988

Wiþ-Inne þi hous ne be þou no lyoñ
 To þi sogettes do þou noon oppressioñ
 Ne make þou nat þine aqueyntaunce forto fle
 And 3it^t Thomas eftsones charge I þe 1992
 Be ware of yre þat^t in þi bosom slepeþ
 ware þe for the serpent^t þat^t so scily crepeþ
 vnder þe gras and stynges sotilly
 Be war my sone and harken paciently 1996
 That xx^{ti} þousand men han lost^t her lyues [leaf 157]
 ffor stryuyng^t *with* her lemmanes *and* her wyues
 Now siþ 3e han so holy meke a wif
 What^t nedep 3ou thomas to make strif 2000
 Ther nys iwis no serpent^t so cruel
 Whan men treden on his tale ne half so feþ
 As a womman is whan she haþ kau3t^t an Ire
 Vengeaunce is þan al þat^t þei desire 2004
 Ire is an synne oon þe grete of seuene
 Abhominable vnto god in heuene
 And to hym self it^t is distruccioñ
 Thus euery lewde vicar or parsoñ 2008
 Can seie how Ire engendres homie[id]e
 Ire is in soþ executour of pride
 I coude of Ire seie so mochel sorowe
 My tale shuld^t last^t vnto to-morowe 2012
 And þerfore I prei god boþ day *and* ny3t^t
 An yrous man god sent^t hym litel my3t^t
 It is grete harme and eke gret^t pite
 To sette an yrous man in hie degre 2016
 ¶ Whilom þer was an yrous potestate
 As seiþ senek þat^t during^t his estate
 Vpon a day oute riden kny3tes twoo
 And as fortune wolde it^t shuld^t be so/ 2020
 þat^t oon of hem come home þat^t opere nou3t^t
 Anon þe kny3t^t byfore þe Iuge was brou3t^t
 þat^t saide þus þou hast^t þi felawe sclayñ
 ffor which I deme þe to dep certeyñ 2024

GROUP D. § 6. SUMMONER'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

And to an oþer knyȝt^t *commañded* he
 Go lede him to deþe I charge þe
 And happed as þei went^t by þe way
 Toward^t þe place þer he shuld^t day 2028
 þe knyȝt^t come which men wende had ben dede
 þan þouȝt^t þei it^t was þe best^t rede
 To lede hem boþ to þe Iuge agayn
 þei seiden lord^t þe knyȝt^t nys not^t slayn 2032
 His felawe here he stant^t hool a lyue [leaf 157, back]
 He shal be dede quod he so mot^t I thryue
 þat^t is to seyn boþ on two *and* þre
 And þoo to þe first^t knyȝt^t riȝt^t þus spoke he 2036
 I dampne þe þe most^t algate be dede
 And þou also most^t nedes lese þine hede
 ffor þou art^t cause of þi felawes deþe
 And to þe *thridde*¹ knyȝte þus he seiþe [MS iii.] 2040
 Thou hast^t not^t done þat^t I commaunded þe
 And þus he did hem sleen al þre
 ¶ Irous Cambises was eke dronkenlewe
 And ay delited him to bene a shrewe 2044
 And so byfelle a lorde and his mayne
 That^t loued vertuous moralite
 Seide vpon a day bitwix hem two riȝt^t þus
 A lorde is lost^t if he be vicius 2048
 And dronkenesse eke is a foule record^t
 Of eny man and namely in a lord^t
 þer is wel mony an yre and mony an ere
 In waytinge and he note where 2052
 ffor goddes [loue] drynkeþ more attemperaly
 Wyne makeþ a man to lesen wrecchedly
 his mynde and his lymes euerechoñ
 þe reuerce shalt^t þou see quod he anoñ 2056
 And preue it^t by þine [owne] experience
 That^t wyne ne doþ to folk noñ such offence
 þer nys no wyne byreueþ me my myȝt^t
 of honde ne of foote ne of myn eye sight^t 2060

And for despite he dronke mochel more
 An .C. part þan he had doñ byfore
 And riȝt anon þis yrous cursed wreche
 lete piſe knyȝtes ſones to-fore hym fecche 2064
 Comaundyng hem þei ſhuld to-fore hym ſtonde
 And ſodeynly he toke his bowe on honde
 And vp the ſtrenghe he pulled to his ere
 And wiþ an arowe he ſelowe þ^e childe riȝt þere. 2068
 Nowe wheþer haue I a ſiker hond or noñ
 [leaf 158]
 Quod he is al my myȝt and mynde agoñ
 Haþ wyne byreued me myn eye ſiȝt
 What ſhuld I telle anſwere of þe knyȝt 2072
 His ſone was ſclayn þer nys no more to ſay
 Be ware þerfor wiþ lordes howe ȝe play
 Syng Placebo and I ſhal ȝif I can
 But if it be to a poor man 2076
 To poor man ſhuld he his vices telle
 But not to a lord þough he ſhuld goo to helle
 Lo Irous Arus pilk Percian
 how he diſtroied þe Ryuer of gysan 2080
 ffor þat an hors of his was dreynt þer Inne
 Whan he went babilonye to wynne
 He made þat þe Ryuer was ſo ſmal
 þat as men myȝt paſſed ouer al 2084
 lo þat he ſo wel teche can
 Ne be ȝe no felawe to non yrous man
 Ne wiþ no woode man þat walkeþ by þe way
 laſſe þe repent I wil no ferþere ſay 2088
 Now Thomas leue broþer leue þine Ire
 þou ſhalt me fynde as Juſte as is a ſquyere
 Hold not þe deuels knyf ay in þine herte
 Thyne anger doþ þe al to ſore ſmerte 2092
 But ſhewe it me al þi confeſſiõ
 Nay quod þe ſik man by ſeint Symeon
 I haue be ſhrive þis day at my curate
 I haue tolde hym alholy myne aſtate 2096

It nedep no more to speke of it seid he
 But if me list of myne humilite
 Zeue me þan of zoure gold to make our cloister
 Quod he for mony a muscle and mony an oyster 2100
 Whan oper men han bene ful wel at ese
 Hap bene our fode our cloister forto rese
 And god wote vnneþ þe foundement
 Perfourmed is and of our payvement 2104
 Is nouȝt a tyle wip-Inne our wonys [leaf 158, back]
 By god we owen xl pounde for stonys
 Now helpe Thomas for hym þat harowed helle
 ffor ellis mote we our bokes selle 2108
 And ȝif ȝou lakke our predicaciō
 Than goþ þis world al to distrucciō
 ffor who so wold from þis world vs byreue
 So god me saue thomas by zoure leue 2112
 He wolde byreue out of þe world þe sonne
 ffor who can techen and worchen as we konne
 And þat is nouȝt of litel tyme quod he
 But siþ Elie was or Elise 2116
 Han freres be þat fynde I of record
 In charite þon-kidde be our lord
 Now thomas [helpe vs] for seint charite
 Haue done anōn he sette hym on his kne 2120
 This sik man wex nye woode for Ire
 He wolde þat þe frere had be a fire
 Wip his fals dissimulaciō
 Such þing as is in my possession 2124
 Quoþ he þat may I zeue *and* non opere
 ȝe sein me thus hou þat I am ȝour broþere
 ȝe certes quoþ þis frere trustep wel
 I toke our dame þe letter of our seel 2128
 Nowe quoþ he wel *and* somewhat shal I zeue
 Vnto zoure holy Couent while I lyve
 And in þine honde þou shalt it haue anōn
 Vp þis condiciō and oper nōn 2132

GROUP D. § 6. SUMMONER'S TALE. Petworth MS.

That þou departe it so my dere broþer
 þat euery frere haue as moçh as oþer
 This shalt þou swere on þi profession
 Wip-outen fraude or cauellacioñ 2136
 I swere it quod þe frere by my faip
 And þerwipal his honde in his he laip
 lo here my feip in me shal be no lak
 Now þan put þine honde down by my bak 2140
 Seide þis man and grope wel behinde [leaf 159]
 Byneþ my buttok þer þou shalt fynde
 A þinge þat I haue hidde in priuete
 A þouzt þe frere þat shal go wip me 2144
 A-doune his honde he launsep to þe clift
 I hope for to fynde þer a zift
 And whan þis sik man felt þis frere
 About his trwel grope her and þere 2148
 A myddes his honde he lete þe frere a fart
 þer nys no capel drawing in a cart
 þat myzt han lete a fart of such a soun
 þe frere vp stert as doþ a [wood] lyoun 2152
 A fals cherle quod þe frere for goddis bonys
 This despite þou hast done for þe nonys
 þowe shal aby þis fart if I may
 His mayne þat harde þis affray 2156
 Come lepinge Inne and chased out þe frere
 And forþe he goþ with a ful angry chere
¹He ne had nat ellis for his sermoñ [*2159]
 To parten amonge his breþeren whan he come home [*2160]
 And þus is þis tale ydoñ } 2294
 ffor we were almost at þe toñ }

¶ Thus endep þe somnours tale.

[¹ *Spurious ending in the Petworth MS. For the genuine ending of the Tale, see the Appendix.*]

GROUP E. FRAGMENT VI.

§ 1. THE CLERK'S HEAD-LINK.

PETWORTH MS.

Ande here

bygynneþ þe prologe of þ^e clerk of Oxenford^d [on leaf 159]

Sir Clerk of Oxenford^d our oost^t saide ¶ The prologe :/

þe ride as stille as Coy as dop a maide

Were newe spoused sitting^t at þe borde

This day ne herd I of 3oure mouþ a word^t 4

I trowe þat^t 3e stodye about^t som sophyme

But^t Salomon seiþ al þinge haþ tyme

ffor goddes sake beþ of better^t chere

It^t is no tyme nowe to stody here 8

Telle vs some mery tale by 3our^t fay

ffor what^t man is entred into a play

he nedes mote into þat^t play assent^t

But^t pr[e]cheþ not^t as freres doñ in lent^t 12

To make vs for our^t olde synnes to wepe [leaf 159, back]

Ne þat^t þi tale ne make vs not^t to selepe

Telle vs somme mery þing^t of auentures

3oure termes. 3oure colours *and* figures 16

kepe hem in store til 3e hem endite

hi3e stele as whan men to kyngges write

Spekeþ so pleyñ at^t þis tyme I 3ou prey

That^t we may vnder-stonde what^t 3e sey 20

This worþi clerk^t benygnely answered

Hoost^t quod he I am vndere 3our^t 3eerde

3e han as nowe of vs þe gouernaunce

And þerfor wil I do 3ou obeysaunce 24

GROUP E. § 1. CLERK'S HEAD-LINK. Petworth MS.

As fer as reson askep hardely
 I wil 3ou tel a tale which þat I
 lerned at Padowe of a worþi clerke
 As preued by his wordys and his werk^t 28
 He is nowe dede and nailed in his chest^t
 I prei to god so send his soule good rest^t
 ffraunceys Petrak þe laureol poetē
 Hight/ þis clerke whoos retorike swete 32
 Enlumyneþ al Itaile þorgh poetrie
 As lynyan did of Philosophye
 Or lawe or oper art^t particulere
 But^t deþe þat^t nyl suffre no þing^t here 36
 But^t as it^t were a twynkelinge of an ye
 Boþ haþ he slayn and al shal we dye.
 But^t forto tellen of þis worþi man
 þat^t tau3t^t me þis tale as I first^t bygan 40
 I sey þat^t he first^t wiþ hygh steel enditeþ
 Or he þe body of his tale writeþ
 A procheyn in þe which disseuereþ he
 þe Mounde and of Saluse þe contree 44
 And spekeþ of Appenyn þe hilles hye
 þat^t ben þe bondes of west lumbarde
 And of Mount^t Resulus in special
 Wher as þe Poo out^t of a welle smal 48
 Takeþ his furst^t spryngginge *and* his sours [leaf 160]
 Wher as he holt^t euen strei3t^t way his cours
 To Emel ward^t to ferrare *and* to venyse
 The which a longe þinge were to devise 52
 And trewely as to my Iugement^t
 Mee thenkeþ it^t a þing^t impertinent^t
 Saue he wil conuey his matere
 But^t þis is þe tale which þat^t 3e shal here 56
 ¶ Thus endeþe þe prologe of þis tale .

And here bygynneþ þe clerk his tale

[on leaf 160]

Ther is at þe west side of ytayle

¶ The tale : /

Doune at þe rote of vesulus þe cold

A lusty pleyn abundant of vitaile

wher mony a toune & tour¹ þou maist bihold

[¹ & tour interlined by perhaps a later hand]

þat founded were in tyme of elders olde

And mony anoþer delectable sizt

And saluce þis noble cuntre hize

63

A Marquis whilom [lord] was in þat lond

64

As were his worpi elders hym bfore

And Obeisaunt and redy to his hond

Were alle his leeges boþ lasse and more

67

þus in delite he lyued and hap do 3ore

Be-loued and drad þourgh fauour of fortune

Boþ of his lordys and of his comune

70

Therwiþ he was as to speke of lynage

71

The gentelest y-born of al lumbardy

A faire persone . stronge and 3enge of age

And ful of honure and curteisie

74

Discrete ynouze his cuntrey forto gye

Saue in some þingges he was to blame

And Water was þis yonge lordes name

77

I blame him þus þat he considered nouzt

78

In tyme comynge what myzt betide

But on his lust present was al his þouzt

[leaf 160, back]

And forto hauke and hunte on euery side

81

Wel nye al oþer cures lete he slide

And eke he ne wold þat was worst of all

Wedde no wif for ouzt þat myzt byfath

84

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

Only þat^t pointe his puple bere so sore 85
 þat^t flok-mele on a day þei [to him] went^t
 And oon of hem þat^t wisest^t was of lore
 Or ellis þat^t þe lorde wold best^t assent^t 88
 þat^t he shulde telle hym what^t his puple ment^t
 Or ellis coude he wel shewe such^t matere
 He to þe Marquis seide as 3e mowe here 91

(6)

O Noble Marquis 3oure humanitee 92
 Assureþ vs *and* 3eueth vs hardynesse
 As ofte tyme as it^t is necessite
 That^t we 3ou mow telle our^t heuynesse 95
 Accepteþ lord of 3our^t gentilnesse
 þat^t we to 3owe wiþ pitous hert^t compleyne
 And lat^t 3oure eeres not^t my vois disdeyne 98

(7)

Al haue I nouȝt^t to done in þis matere 99
 More þan anoþer haþ in þis place
 ȝit^t for as moche as 3e my lord so dere
 Haue alway shewed [me] fauour *and* grace 102
 I dare þe better aske of 3ou a space
 Of audience to shewen our request^t
 And 3e my lord^t to done riȝt^t as 3ou lest^t 105

(8)

For certes lord so wel vs likeþ 3ou 106
 And alle 3oure werkes *and* euer han do þat we
 Ne cowde nat our owne silf devisen howe
 We myȝt^t more lyve in felicite 109
 Saue oo þinge lord if it^t 3our wille be
 That^t to be a wedded man if 3ou list^t
 Than were our^t puple in souereyn hertes rest^t [leaf 161] 112

(9)

Boweþ 3oure nekt^t vndere þat^t blisful ȝok^t 113
 Of souereynte nouȝt^t of seruise
 Which^t men clepe spousale or wedlok^t
 And þenkeþ lord among^t 3oure þouȝtes wise 116

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. Petworth MS.

That of wedloke *commep* grete emprise
 ffor þouze we slepe or wake romne or ride
 Ay fleep þe tyme it wil no man abide. 119

(10)

And þouze 3our' grene 3ouþe growe as 3it' 120
 In crepeþ age alway as stille as stone
 And deþe manaseþ euery age and smyt'
 In eche astate for þer ascapeþ noon 123
 And also certeyn as we knowe euerichon
 þat' we shul dye as vncerteyn we aþ
 Beñ of þat' day þat' deþ shal on vs falle 126

(11)

Accepteth þan of vs þe trewe entent' 127
 That' neuere 3it' refused your heest'
 And we wil al lord 3if 3e wil assent'
 Chese 3ou a wif in short' tyme at the lest' 130
 Born of þe gentelest' *and* of þe mest'
 Of al þis londe so þat' it' out' seme
 Honure to god *and* 3ou. so as we con deme 133

(12)

Delyuere vs of al þis bysy drede 134
 And take a wif for hiþe goddis sake
 ffor 3if it' byfelle so as god forbede
 þat' þourgh deþ 3our' lynage shuld' slake 137
 And a straunge lynage shuld' take
 3our' heritage. oo woo were vs alyue
 Wherfore we prey 3ou hastely to wif 140

(13)

Her meke preier' & her pitous chere 141
 Made þ^e Marquis haue such pite
 Wil 3e quod he myne owne puple dere [leaf 161, back]
 To þat' I neuer erst' þouzt' constreyne me 144
 I me reioyse not' of my liberte
 þat' seelden tyme is found' in mariage
 Ther I was free I mot' bene in seruage 147

But napelees I se 3oure trewe entent 148
 And trust vpon 3ou and haue doñ ay
 Wherfore of my fre wille I assent
 To wedde me as sone as euer I may 151
 But þer as 3e han profered me to day
 To chese me a wif I 3ou relese
 That chois : & prei 3ou of 3our propher cese 154

(15)

For god it wote þat children oft beñ 155
 Vnlike her worþi eldres hem bifore
 Bounte commeþ al of god not of þ^e strenne
 Of which þei ben engendred and ybore 158
 I Trust in goddys bounte and þerfore
 My mariage and my astate and rest
 I hym bitake he may do as hym lest 161

(16)

Lat me allone in chesing of my wif 162
 That charge vpon my bak I wil endure
 But I 3ou prey and charge vpon 3our lif
 þat wif þat I take 3e me ensure 165
 To worship hur whil our lyf endure
 In worde and werke boþ here and ellys where
 As she an emperours douzter were 168

(17)

And ferþermore þis shullen 3e swere þat 3e 169
 A3einst my chose shul neiþer grucche ne stryue
 ffor siþ I shal forgo my liberte
 At 3oure request as euer mot I thryue 172
 Ther as myn hert is sette þer wil I wyue
 And but 3e wollen assent in such manere
 I prey 3ou spekep no more of þis matere [leat 162] 175

(18)

Wip harty wille þei sweren and assenten 176
 To al þis þinge þer seide no wizt nay
 Bisechinge hym of grace er þei wenten
 That he hem wold graunten a certeyn day 179

Of his spousale as sone as euer he may ffor ȝit alway þe puple somewhat dredde Lesse þis Marquis wol no wif wedde	182
He graunted hem a day such as hym lest On which he wolde be wedded sikerly And seide he did al þis at her request And þei wiþ humble entent ful buxomly Knelinge vpon her knees ful reuerently Hym þonken alle and þus þei han an ende Of her entent and home aȝein þei wende	183 186 189
And here vpon he toke his officers Commaunding for þe fest to purueye And to his priuey knyȝtes and sqwiers Such charge ȝaf hem . as hym lust on hem to leye And þei his comaundementz to obeye And ech of hem dop his diligence To done vnto þe fest reuerence	190 193 196

[PART THE SECOND.]

Nouȝt fer from þilk place honorable wher as þis Marquis shope his mariage þer stode a Thrope of siȝt delectable In which poor folk of þat vilage Hadden her beestes and her harbigage And of her labour toke her sustinaunce After þe erþe hem ȝaue abundaunce	197 200
Among þise poor folk þer dwelled a man which þat was holden porest of hem all But heȝh god somtyme sende can His grace vnto a litel oxes staȝ Ianicula men of þat thrope hym calle A doughter had he faire and ȝong of siȝt And Grisild þis ȝonge maiden hiȝt	204 [leaf 162, back] 207 210

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

But ^t forto speke of vertuous bewte	211
þan was she oon þe fairest ^t vnder sonne	
fful poorly yfostred was she	
No licorousnesse was on her lust ^t yronne	214
Wel offer of þe weH þan of þe tunne	
She drank ^t / <i>and</i> for she wole vertue plese	
She knewe wel labour but ^t noñ ydel ese	217
(24)	
But ^t þouze þis maide were tender ^t of age	218
3it ^t in þe brest ^t of her virginite	
þere was enclosed ripe <i>and</i> sad corage	
And in grete reuerence <i>and</i> in grete charite	221
Her olde poor fadere fostred shee	
A fewe shepe spynnyng ^t on þe felde she kept ^t	
She wolde not ^t ben ydel til she slepte	224
(25)	
And whan she homward ^t come she wolde bringe	225
wortes and herbes tymes ful oft ^t	
whiċh she shradde <i>and</i> siþ for her lyuyng ^t	
And made her bedde ful hard ^t <i>and</i> no þing ^t soft	228
And euere she kept ^t her faders lif on loft	
wiþ euery obeisaunce <i>and</i> diligence	
That ^t childe may do to faders reuerence	231
(26)	
Vppon Grisilde þe poor creature	232
fful oft ^t haþ Marquis sette hys eye	
As he on hundyng ^t rode perauenture	
And whan it ^t felle þat ^t he myȝt ^t hir espye	235
he not ^t wiþ wa[n]toñ lokinge of foly	
his eyen cast ^t vpon hur ^t but ^t <i>in</i> sad wise	
Vpon her chere he wold ^t hym oft ^t avise	[leaf 163] 238
(27)	
Commending ^t in his hert ^t her wommanhede	239
And eke her vertue passing ^t eny wiȝt ^t	
Of so ȝonge age as wel in chere as <i>in</i> dede	
ffor þouze þe puple haue no gret ^t insiȝt ^t	242

In vertue he considered ful riȝt'
 Her bewte and disposed þat he wold
 Hir' wedde if euer he wedde shuld 245

(28)

The day of weddyng' come but no wiȝt can 246

Telle what womman it shuld be
 ffor which mervaille wondred mony man
 And seiden whan þei weren in priuete 249

wil not our lorde leue his vanyte
 wil he not wedde alas alas þe while
 whi wil he hym self *and* vs þus begile 252

(29)

But na-þe-lees þis marquis haþ do make 253

Of Gemmes sette in gold' *and* in asure
 Broches and ryngges for grisild' sake
 And of her cloþing' toke he þe mesure 256

Of a maide like to her stature
 And eke of oper ornamentes all
 þat to such a wedding' shul faþ 259

(30)

The tyme of vndern þe same day 260

Approcheþ þat þis wedding' shulde be
 And all þe paleys putt' was in aray
 Both halle *and* chambres ech in his degre 263

Houses of office. stuffed wiþ grete plente
 þer maist þou see of deynteuous vitaile
 þat may be found' as fer as lasteþ ytaile 266

(31)

This rial Marquis rially araied. 267

lordys and ladys in his companye
 þe which to þe feest' were preied / [leaf 163, back]
 And of his retenwe þe bachelerye 270

wiþ mony a soun of sondry melodye
 vnto þe vilage [of þe] which I told
 In þis aray þe riȝte way haþ hold' 273

Griseld^t god wote of þis ful Innocent^t 274
 þat^t for hure was shape al þis aray
 To fecchen watere at þe welle is went^t
 And commeþ home as sone as euer she may 277
 ffor wel she herd say þat^t ilk^t day
 þat^t Marquis shuld^t wedde *and* if she myȝt^t
 She wold^t fayn see somme of þat^t sizt^t 280

(33)

She þouȝt^t I wil wiþ oþer maidens stond^t 281
 þat^t bene my felawes in oure door *and* see
 The Marquis and þerfor wil I fonde
 To done at home as sone as it^t may be 284
 þe laboure which þat^t longeþ vnto me
 And þan may I at leisere it^t byhold^t
 If she þis way to þe castel holde 287

(34)

And as she wolde ouer þe thresshold^t goñ 288
 The Marquis come and can hur^t forto calle
 And she sette doune her water pot^t anoñ
 beside þe thresshold^t of þe oxes stalle 291
 And doun vpon her knees she gan to falle
 And wiþ sadde countenaunce kneled stille
 Til she had herde what^t was þe lordes wille 294

(35)

This þouȝtful Marquys spake vnto þis maide 295
 wel soberly and seide in þis manere
 where is ȝoure fader Griseld^t he seide
 And she wiþ reuerence and meke chere 298
 Answered lord he is al redy here
 And Inne she goop wiþ-out^t lenger lette
 And to þe Marquis she her fadere fette. [leaf 164] 301

(36)

He by þe honde þan toke þis olde man 302
 And seide him þus whan he hym had a side
 Ianicula I neiþer may ne can
 lenger þe plesaunce of myn herte hide 305

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. Petworth MS.

If þat' 3e vouchesauf what' so be-tide
 þi douȝter wil I take er þat' I wende
 As for my wif to my lyues end 308

(37)

Thow louest' me I woot' wel certeyn 309
 And art' my feiþ-ful liege man ybore
 And al þat' likeþ me I dar wel seyñ
 It' likeþ þe and specialy þerfore 312
 Tel me þat' poynt' þat' I haue seide byfore
 If þat' þowe wolde vnto þat' purpoos drawe
 To take me as for þine sone in lawe 315

(38)

The sodeyn caas þe man astonyed soo / 316
 þat' rede he wexe al basshed and al quakinge
 He stood *and* vnneþes seide wordes moo
 But' only þus lord quod he my willinge 319
 Is as 3e wol not' aȝeinst' ȝour' likinge
 I wil no þinge 3e be my lorde so dere
 Riȝt' as ȝou lest' gouerneþ þis matere 322

(39)

Than wil I do þus quod Marquis softly 323
 þat in to þe chambre I and þou. *and* she
 haue a collacioñ and woost' þou why
 ffor I wil aske hur' ȝif hir' wil be 326
 To be my wif and rewle hir' after me
 And al þis she shal done in þi presence
 I wil not' speke out' of þine audience 329

(40)

And in þe Chamberẽ while þei were aboute 330
 Her tretis which 3e shul after here
 þe puple come into þe hous *withoute*
 And wondred hem in howe honest' manere [leaf 164, back] 333
 And tentifly she kepte hur fadere dere
 But' vtterly grisild' wonder myȝt'
 ffor neuere erst' sey she shuch a siȝt' 336

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. Petworth MS.

- N**o wonder is þouȝe she be astonyed 337
 To se so grete a gest^t come in þat^t place
 She was neuere to suche gestys wonned
 ffor which she loked wiþ ful pale face 340
 But^t shortly fro þis matere forto pace
 Thise were þe wordes þat^t þis marquis saide
 To þis benygne verrey feiþful mayde 343
 (42)
Grisyle he seide ȝe wol wel vnderstonde 344
 It^t likeþ vnto ȝoure fadere *and* me
 þat^t I ȝou wedde *and* eke it^t may so stonde
 As I suppose þat^t ȝe wil it^t so be 347
 But^t þis demaunde I axe furst^t *quod* he
 That^t siþen it^t shal be doñ on hastif wise
 Wol ȝe assent^t or ellis ȝowe avise 350
 (43)
I seye þis be ȝe redy *with* good hert^t 351
 To al my lust^t *and* þat^t I frely may
 As me best^t þenkeþ do ȝou lawgh^t or smert
 And ȝe neuer gruch^t nyȝt^t ne day 354
 And eke whan I seie ȝe say ȝe not^t nay
 Neiþer be word^t ne fraward countenance
 Swere þis and here I swere *our* aliañce 357
 (44)
WOndringe vpon þis worde quaking^t for drede 358
 She seide Indigne and vnworþi
 Am I to þat^t [honour] þat^t ȝe me bede
 But^t riȝt^t as ye wil ȝour self riȝt^t so wil I 361
 And [here] I swere þat^t neuer willingly
 In word^t ne þouȝt^t I neuere ȝou disobeye
 ffor to be dede þouȝe me were loþe to deye 364
 (45)
This is ynowe Grisile mynⁿ *quod* he [leaf 165] 365
 And forþ^t he goþ wiþ a sobre chere
 Out^t at þe door after cam she
 And to þe puple he seide in þis manere 368

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

This is my wif quod he þat stondeþ here
 Honoureþ hir' and loueth [hire] I prey
 Who so loueþ me þer nys no more to seye 371

(46)

And for no þing of hure olde gere 372
 She shuld bring to his hous he bade
 þat wommen shulden spulen hir' rizt þere
 Of which þe ladies were not rizt glade 375
 To handel her cloþes in which she was clad
 But napeles þis maiden brizt of hwe
 ffrom fote to hede ycloþed han al newe 378

(47)

Her heres han þei kembed þat lay vntressed 379
 wel rwdely with her fyngeres smale
 And a crowne on her hede þei han dressed
 Isette ful of owches grete and smal 382
 Of hir' aray what shuld I make a tale
 Vnneþes þe puple hir' knewe for her fairnesse
 Whan she transformed was in such richesse 385

(48)

¶ This Marquis haþ hure spoused wiþ a rynge 386
 Bouzt for þe same cause an þan hir' sette
 vppon an hors snowe white and wel amblynge
 And to his palaies er he lenger lette 389
 Wiþ Ioiful puple þat he lad *and* mette
 Conveied hir' and þus þe day þei spende
 In reuel to þe sonne canne descende 392

(49)

And shortely forþ þis tale forto chace 393
 I sey þat to þis newe Marquissesse
 God haþ ysent such favour of his *grace*
 þat it semed not as by liknesse 396
 That she was born and fedde in rudenesse [leaf 165, back]
 As in a Cote ar in an oxes stalle
 But norshed in an Emperours halle 399

To euery wízt^t she woxen is so dere 400
 And worshipful þat^t folk^t þer she was bore
 And from her birth knewe her fro 3ere to 3ere
 Vnneþ trowed þei but^t durst^t haue swore 403
 þat^t to Ianicle of which I speke byfore
 She dou3tere ne were for as by coniecture
 hem þou3t^t she was a noþer creature 406

(51)

ffor [þou3e] þat^t euere vertuous was she 407
 She was encreased in such excellence
 Of thewe sette in high bounte
 And so discrete and faire of eloquence 410
 So benygne and digne of reuerence
 And coude þe puples hertes so embrace
 þat^t ech her loued þat^t loked on her face 413

(52)

Nou3t^t only of saluce in þe toun 414
 Publisshed was þe bounte of her name
 And eke be-side in mony a regioun
 If oon seide wel anoþer seide þe same 417
 So spradde of hure bounte þe fame
 That^t men and wommen boþ 3onge and olde
 Goon to saluse har^t to be-holde 420

(53)

This walter. lowly nay but^t ryally 421
 weddeþ wiþ fortune honeste
 In goddes pees lyuen wel esely
 At^t hoom and outward grace yno3e had he 424
 And for he sawe vnder lowe degre
 was oft^t vertue hid þe puple hym helde
 A prudent^t man and þat^t is sene wel selde 427

(54)

Nou3t^t only Grisile þus porgh her witte 428
 Couþe al þe fete of wively humblenesse [lea^e 166]
 But^t eke whan þe cas required it^t
 The comon profite coude she redresse 431

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. Petworth MS.

Ther nas no discord^l rancour ne heuynesse
 In al þe londe þat^t she ne coude it^t cese
 And bring^t hem al wisely in rest^t *and* ese 434

Though^h þat^t hur^t husbond^l present^t were anon 435
 3if Gentil men or oþer of her contre
 were wroop she cowde bringe hem at^t oñ
 So wise and rype wordes had she 438
 And Iuggement^t of so grete equite
 That^t she fro heuene was as men wende¹
 Puple to saue and euery wrong tamende. 441

[¹ this line is repeated in the MS.]

Not longe tyme aftere þat^t þis grisild 442
 Was wedded she a douȝter haȝ ybore
 Al had she leuer born a knaue^e child^l
 Glad was þe Marquis *and* his folk þefore 445
 ffor þouȝe a mayde childe come al byfore
 She may to a knaue childe atteyne
 By liklihede siȝens she is not^t bareyne 448

[THE THIRD PART.]

Therfor as it^t falleþ tymes moo 449
 That^t þis childe haȝ sowked but^t a thrawe
 This marquis in his hert^t longeþ so
 To tempte his wif her sadnesse to knowe 452
 þat he ne myȝt^t fro his hert^t throwe
 þis merveilous desire his wif tassay
 Naȝe-lees god wote he þouȝt^t hir^t to affray 455

He had assaied hir^t ynouȝe to-fore 456
 And fonde hur^t euer good what^t nedeþ It^t
 Hir^t forto torment^t and alway more *and* more
 þouȝe somme preise it^t for a subtile witte 459
 But^t as for me I saie þat^t euel it^t sitte
 To assaie a wif whan it^t is no nede
 And putten hure in angwiss^h *and* in drede 462

[leaf 166, back]

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. Petworth MS.

- For which þis Marquis wrouȝt in þis ma[ne]re 463
 He came a nyght alon þer as she lay
 wiþ steerne face and trouble chere
 And seide þoo Griseld quop he þat day 466
 þat I ȝou toke out of ȝoure poor aray
 And putte ȝou in estate of hie noblesse
 ȝe han not ȝit forȝeten as I gesse 469
 (60)
 I seye Griseld þis present dignite 470
 In which I haue put ȝou as I trowe
 Makeþ not ȝou forȝetful forto be
 þat I ȝou toke in poor estate ful lowe 473
 ffor eny þinge ȝe mote ȝoure seluen knowe
 Take hede of euery word þat I ȝou seie
 ther is no wiȝt þat hereþ þis but we tweye 476
 (61)
 ȝe wote ȝour self wele howe þat ȝe come here 477
 Into þis hous it is not long ago
 And þouȝe to me ȝe be leef *and* dere
 vnto my gentiles ȝe be no þing so 480
 þei seyn to hem it is grete shame *and* woo
 ffor to be sogette and in seruage
 To þe þat art born of so lowe lynage 483
 (62)
 And namely siþ þi douȝter was bore 484
 þise wordes han þei spoke doutlees
 But I desire as I haue don byfore
 To lyve my lif wiþ hem in rest *and* pees 487
 I may not in þis cas bene rechelees
 I most don wiþ [þi] douȝtere for þe best
 nouȝt as I wold but as my gentils lest 490
 (63)
 And ȝit god woot þis is ful loþ to me 491
 But napeles wiþ outen ȝour wetynge [leaf 167]
 I nyl not doo but þis I wil quod he
 þat ȝe to me assent as in þis þinge 494

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

Sheweþ now þoure pacience in *þour* worchinge
 That^t 3e me byhiȝt^t *and* swore in þour vilage
 That^t day þat^t maked was our mariage 497

(64)

Whan she had herde al þis she was not^t amoued^t 498
 Neiþer in word or chere or countenaunce
 ffor as it^t semed she was not^t agreued
 She seid lorde aȝ lith in þoure plesaunce 501
 My childe and I wiþ hertely obeisance
 Bene þoures aȝ *and* 3e may saue *and* spille
 þoure owne þing^t wheder^t þat^t 3e wille 504

(65)

Ther may no þinge so god my saule saue 505
 likinge to þou þat^t may displese me
 Ne I desire no þinge to haue
 Ne drede to lese saue only 3e 508
 This wille is my hert^t *and* ay shal be
 No length of tyme or deþ it^t may deface
 Neiþe chaunge my corage into oþer place 511

(66)

Glad was þe Marquis of hur^t answering^t 512
 But^t ȝit^t he feyned as he were not^t so .
 Al drery was his chere *and* his lokinge
 whan she shuld^t out of þe chamber goo 515
 Sone after þis a forlong^t way or twoo
 he pleyonly hap^t told^t his entent
 Vnto a man which he to his wif sent^t 518

(67)

A maner^t sergeaunt^t was þis privey man 519
 þe which þat^t feithful fond^t yhad
 In þingges grete *and* eke such folk^t wel can
 Don execucion of þingges bad 522
 þe lord knewe wel þat^t he hym loued *and* drad .
 And whan þis sergeaunt^t wist^t his lordes wiȝt [leaf 167, back]
 Into þe chambere he stalked hym ful stiȝt 525

- Madame he seide 3e mote forȝeue it^t me 526
 þough I do þinge to which I am constreyned /
 3e bene so wise þat^t wel knowe 3e
 þat^t lordes heestes may not^t be feyned 529
 þei mowen wel be wailed or compleyned
 But^t men mote nede vnto her lust^t obeye
 And so wil I þer nys no more to seye 532
 (69)
 That^t childe I am commaunded to take 533
 And spake no more but^t out^t þ^e child he hent
 Despitously and gan a chere make
 As he wold^t han slayn it^t þer he went^t 536
 Griseld^t mot^t al suffre and al consent^t
 And as a lombe she sitteþ meke *and* stille
 And lete þis cruel Seriaunt^t haue his wiþe 539
 (70)
 Suspecte was þe name of þis man 540
 Suspecte his face. suspecte his world^t also
 Suspecte þe tyme þat^t he þis bygan/
 ffor his douȝter þat^t she loued soo 543
 She wende he wold^t haue slayn it^t riȝt^t þoo
 But^t napelees she neiþer wepte ne seide
 Confeermyng^t hur to þat^t þe Marquis seide 546
 (71)
 And at^t þe last^t speke she bygan 547
 And nekely to þe sergeant^t preide
 So as he was a worþi gentil man
 þat^t she myȝt^t kisse her childe er þat^t it deide 550
 And in her barme þis litel childe she leide
 wiþ ful sadde face and gan þe childe to blisse
 And lulled it^t and after gan it^t kisse 553
 (72)
 And þus she seide in her benigne voys 554
 fare wele my child^t I shal þe neuere see
 But^t siþ I haue Marked þe wiþ croys
 Of þilk^t fadere yblessed mot^t þou be [leaf 168] 557

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. Petworth MS.

þat for vs deyed vpon þe rood tre.
 þi soule litel childe I hym bytake
 ffor þis nyȝt shalt þou dyen for my sake 560

(73)

I trowe þat to a norice in þis caas / 561
 It had ben hard þis rewþe forto see
 Wel myȝt a modere þan cry alas /
 But napeles so sadde *and* stedfast was she 564
 þat she endured al hur' aduersite
 And to þe Sergeant meke she seide
 Hauē here aȝein my litel ȝonge maide 567

(74)

And goþ now quod she *and* doþ my lordes heest 568
 And oon þinge wold I prei of ȝoure grace
 That but my lorde forbede ȝou at lest
 Burieþ þis litel body in som place 571
 þat no beestes no briddes it to-race
 But he no word to þo purpoos wold saye
 But toke þe childe *and* went vpon his way 574

(75)

This Sergeant come to þe lord ageyn 575
 And of Griseldes wordes *and* of her chere
 He tolde hym poynt by poynt in short *and* pleyñ
 And hym presented wiþ his douȝter dere 578
 Somwhat þis lord had rawþe in his manere
 But napeles his purpoos helde he stille
 As lordes doñ whan þei wil han her wille 581

(76)

And bad þis Sergeant ful prively 582
 he shuld ful soft þis child welde *and* wrappe
 with al þe circumstance tenderly
 And carie it in a coffre or in a lappe 585
 But vp peyn his hede of for to swappe
 þat no man shuld knowe of his entent
 Ne whens he come ne whidere he went 588

¶ But at Boloyn to his suster' dere	[leaf 168, back]	589
pat' þoo of Pavie was countesse		
He shuld her take <i>and</i> shew hir' þis matere		
Bisechinge hure to doñ her bysynesse		592
This childe to fostere in al gladnesse		
And whoos childe pat' it' was he bad hir' hide		
ffrom euery wiȝt' for ouȝt' pat' myȝt' betide		595
This Sergeaunt' goþ and haþ fulfilled þis þinge		596
But' to þis marquis nowe retourne we		.
ffor nowe goþ he wel oft' ymagynyng		
If by his wif' [chere] he myght' See		599
And by hir wordes perceyue pat' she		
Were chaunged but' he coude neuere fynde .		
But' euere in oon ylik' sad <i>and</i> kinde		602
As glad as humble as bysy in seruise		603
<i>and</i> Eke in loue as she was wont' to be		
Was she to hym in euery manere wise		
Ne of her douȝter' oon worde speke she		606
Noon accident' for noon aduersite		
Was seen in hir' ne neuere her douȝter' name		
Nempned she for ernest' ne for game		609

[THE FOURTH PART.]

In þis estate passed ben foure ȝere	610
Er she wiþ child' was but' as god wold'	
A knaue childe she bere by þis waltere	
fful gracious <i>and</i> faire to biholde	613
And whan folk' it' to hir fadere tolde	
Not' oonly he But' al þe contree mery	
Was for þe child' <i>and</i> god þei þonke <i>and</i> herye	616
Whan it' was two ȝere olde <i>and</i> from þe brest'	617
Departed from his norce vpon a day	
þis Marquis kaught' ȝit' anoth[er] lest'	

To tempten his wif^t after if he may 620
 O nedeles was she tempted in assay [leaf 169]

But^t wedded men knowen no mesure
 Whan þei fynde a pacient^t creature 623
 (82)

Wyf quod þis Marquis 3e herd^t er þis 624
 My puple sekely bereþ our mariage
 And namely siþen my sone born is
 Now it^t is wors þan euer in our age 627
 þe murmur sleep myn. her[te] and my corage
 ffor to myn eres comeþ þe vois so smerte
 þat^t it^t wel nye destroieþ al my herte 630
 (83)

Now seye men þus · whan walter is a goon. 631
 þan shal þe blood of Ianicle succede
 And bene our lord for oþer haue we nōn
 Such wordes seyn my puple it^t is no drede 634
 Wel ouzte I of such^t murmur taken hede
 ffor certeynly I drede such^t sentence
 þouze þei not^t pleynly speke in myn audience 637
 (84)

I wold lyue in pees if þat I myȝt^t 638
 Wherfore I am disposed vtterly
 As I his sustere serued by nyȝt^t
 Riȝt^t so I þenke to serue hym prively 641
 þus warne I ȝou þat^t ȝe not^t sodeynly
 Out^t of ȝoure self for no woo shuld^t outray
 Beþ patient^t and þerof I ȝou pray 644
 (85)

I haue quod she seide [þus] and euere shaþ 645
 I wil desire no þing^t certeyn
 But^t as ȝou lust^t not^t greueth me at all
 þouze þat^t my douȝtere *and* my sone be sclayn 648
 At ȝoure comaundement^t þis is to sayn
 I haue had no parte of children tweyn
 But^t furst^t siknesse and after^t woo *and* peyn 651

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

3e be our lord doo *with* 3our' owe þinge . 652

Riȝt as 3ou lust and askep no rede of me [leaf 169, back]

ffor as I left at home al my cloþinge

whan I come first to 3ou riȝt so quod she 655

left I my wiȝ and al my liberte

And toke 3oure cloþing wherfore I 3ou prey

Do 3oure wille I wille to it obeye 658

(87)

And certes 3if I had prescience 659

3oure wiȝ to knowe . or 3e 3oure lust me told

I wold it done wiȝ oute necligence

But now I wote 3oure lust *and* what 3e wolde 662

Al 3oure plesaunce feerme *and* stable I hold

ffor wist I þat my deȝ wold do 3ou ese

Gladly wil I suffre it 3ou to plese 665

(88)

Deth may make non comparisoun 666

Vnto 3oure loue and whan þis Marquis say

þe constance of his wiȝ he cast his hede adoun

And his eyen two and wondred how she may 669

In such penaunce suffre al þis array

And forþ he goȝ wiȝ drery countenance

But to his hert it was ful grete plesannce / 672

(89)

This ege sergeant in þe same wise 673

þat he her douȝtere kaught riȝt so he

Or wors if he coude wors devise

Hap kaught hire childe þat was ful of bewte 676

And euere in oon so pacient was she

þat she no chere made of hevynesse

But kiseȝ her sone and after can hym blesse 679

(90)

Saue þis she preide him if þat he myȝt 680

hir litel sone he wold on erȝe graue

his tendere lymmes delicat to siȝt

ffro fowles *and* beestes forto saue 683

But she noon answerē of hym myȝt haue
 He went his way as he no þing wrouȝt [leaf 170]
 But into boloyne tendrely it brouȝt 686

(91)

This Marquis wondreþ euere lenger þe more 687
 Vpon her pacience *and* if þat he
 Ne had sople knowe þerfore
 þat partly her children loued she 690
 He wold haue wende þat of some sotilte
 And of malice or cruel corage
 That she had suffred þis *with* sad visage 693

(92)

Wut he knewe þat next hym self certayn 694
 She loued her children best in euery wise
 But nowē of wommen wold I aske fayn
 ȝif þise assaies myȝt not suffise 697
 what cowde a stordy husbond [more] devise
 To preue her wifhode *and* her stedfastnesse
 And be contynuyng in stordynesse 700

(93)

But þer ben folk of such condicioñ 701
 þat whan þei han a certeyn purpoos take
 þey con not stinte of her entencioñ
 But as þei were bounden to a stake 704
 þei wil not of þat purpoos slake
 Riȝt so þis marquis haþ fully purposed
 To tempten his wif as he was first disposed 707

(94)

He waiteþ if by woordes or countenance 708
 ȝif she to hym was chaunged of corage
 But neuere coude he fynde variance
 She was euere in hert & in visage 711
 And euer þe ferþer þat he was in age
 þe more trewer if it were possible
 She was to hym in loue *and* more penyble 714

For which it' semeþ þus þat' of hem twoo	715
Ther was but' oon wiþ for as walter lust'	
The same lust' was her plesaunce also	[leaf 170, back]
And god be þonked al felle for þe best'	718
She shewed wel for no worldly vnrest'	
A wif as of her self no þinge shuld'	
Willen in effecte but' as her husbond' wold'	721
(96)	
The sclaunder of waltere oft' wide sprad	722
That' a cruel hert' wickedly	
ffor he a poor womman wedded had.	
Hap morþered boþ his children priuely	725
which murmur was amonge heme comonly	
No wonder was for to þe puples eere	
þer come no worde but' þat' þei murþered were	728
(97)	
For swich as of his puple þerþefore	729
had loued hym wel desclaundred of his name	
Made hem þat' þei hated hym therfore	
To bene a murdrere is an hatful name	732
But' napelees for ernest' ne for game	
He of his cruelte wold not' stynte	
To tempte his wif was al his entente	735
(98)	
Whan þis douȝtere xij ȝere was of age	736
he to þe courte of Rome in sotile wise	
Enformed of his wille sent' his massage	
Comaunding' hem such' billes to devise	739
As to his cruel purpoos may suffise	
howe þat' þe pope for his puples rest'	
Bad hym wedde anoþer wif if þat' hym lest'	742
(99)	
I sey he bad þat' þei shuld' counterfete	743
þe popes billes making' mencioñ	
þat' he hap leue his first' wif to lete	
As by þe popes dispensacioñ	746

To stinte rancoure *and* dissencion
 Bitwix þe puple *and* hym þus speke þe bulle
 The which þei han publisshed at þe fulle [leaf 171] 749

(100)

The rude puple as no wonder is 750
 Wende ful wel it had be riȝt soo
 But þise tydyngges comen to griseld is
 I deme þat her hert was ful woo 753
 But she was ylike sad euermoo
 Disposed was þis humble creature/
 þe aduersite of fortune al to endure 756

(101)

Abydinge euer his lust *and* his plesance 757
 To whom she was ȝeueue hert *and* aȝ
 As to her worldely suffisaunce
 ffor certeynly for his story telle I shaft 760
 This Marquis ywriten hap *in* speciaȝ
 A *lettre* in which he shewep his entent
 And sikerly he it to boloyne sent 763

(102)

To þe Erle of Pavie which þat he had so , 764
 wedded his sustere he preide specialy
 To bringen him aȝein his children two
 In honourable estaat al openly 767
 Bot of on þing he hym preide al vtterly
 That he to [no] wiȝt þough men wolde enquere
 Shuld not telle whoos children þei were 770

(103)

But seide þat þe mayde shuld wedded be 771
 Vnto þe Marquis of Saluce anon
 And as þe erle was preide so did he
 ffor at a day Isette he on his way is gon 774
 Toward Saluse *and* lordes mony on
 In riche aray þis maide forto gyde
 Hir yonge broþer ridyng by hir side 777

Araied was towards his mariage	778
This mayde fressh ful of gemmys clere	
Hir broþer that vij. ȝere was of age.	
Araied eke was fresshly on his manere	[leaf 171, back] 781
And in grete noblesse <i>and</i> glad chere	
Toward Saluce shapinge her iournay	
ffrom day to day þei riden forþ her way	784

[THE FIFTH PART.]

Amonge al þis aftere his wikked vsage	785
This Marquys ȝit his wif to tempten more	
To þe vttrest preef of his corage	
ffully to haue experience <i>and</i> lore	788
ȝif þat she were as stedfast as bifore	
he on a day in open audience	
wel boistously haþ seide hir þis sentence	791
Certes Griseld I had ynowe plesaunce	792
To han ȝou to my wif for ȝoure goodnesse	
And for ȝoure treuth <i>and</i> ȝour obeysaunce	
Nouȝt for ȝoure lynage ne for ȝoure richesse	795
But it is now knowen in verray sopnesse	
þat in grete lordship if I wil avise	
Ther is grete souereynthe in sondry wise	798
I may not done as euery plowe man may	799
My puple me constreynen forto take	
A noþer wiff and crien day by day	
And eke þe pope rancour forto sclake	802
Consenteþ it þat dar I vndertake	
And trewly þus moch wil I ȝou say	
My newe wif is commyng by þe way	805
Be stronge of hert and voiden anon her place	806
And þilk dowary þat ȝe brouȝt to me	
Take it aȝein I graunte it of my grace	

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

Retourneþ to 3oure faders hous quod he 809

No man may alway haue prosperite
wip euene hert I rede 3ou to endure
þe stroke of fortune or of auenture 812

(109)

And she a3ein answerde in pacience [leaf 172] 813

My lord quod she I wote and wist alway
howe þat I swore 3ou magnificence
And my pouert no man can ne may 816

Maken noon comparison it is no nay
I helde me neuere digne in no manere
To be 3oure wif ne 3it your chambrere 819

(110)

And in þis hous þer 3e me lady made 820

þe high god take I for my witnesse
So wisly as he my soule glade
I helde me neiþer lady ne maistresse 823

But humble seruauante to 3oure worþinesse
And euere shal while my lif may endure
Abouen euery worþi creature 826

(111)

That 3e so longe of 3our benygnte 827

haue holde me in honure and in nobleye
where I was not worþi forto be

þat þonk I god and 3ou [to] whom I prey 830

ffor-zeelde it 3ou þer nys no more to sey
Vnto my fadere gladly wil I wende

And wip hym dwelle to my lyves ende 833

(112)

Ther as I was fostred a child ful smaH 834

Til I be dede my liff [þer] wil I lede

A widowe clene in hert body and aH
ffor siþen I 3af to 3ou my maydenhede 837

And am 3oure trewe wif it is no drede

God shild such a lordes wif to take

Anoþer man to husbonde or to make 840

And of 3our' newe wif god of his grace 841

So graunte 3ou welþe and prosperite

ffor I wil gladly 3eeld' hir' my place

In which I was blisful wont' to be 844

ffor Sipeñ it' likeþ 3ou my lord' quod she [leaf 172, back]

That' whilom weren al my hertes rest'

That' I shal goon I wil goon whan 3ou lest' 847

(114)

But' þer 3e me profre such dowarie 848

As I furst' brou3t' it' is wel in my mynde

It' were my wrecched cloþes no þing' faire

þe which to me nowe were ful hard' to fynde 851

How god howe gentile *and* how kinde

3e semed by 3oure spech *and* 3our' visage

þe day þat' maked was oure mariage 854

(115)

But' soþ is seide algate I finde it' trewe 855

ffor in effecte is proued nowe on me

Lone is not' olde as whan it' is newe

ffor certes lord' for noñ aduersite 858

To dyen in þis cas it' shal not be

That' in worde or werk' I shal repent'

þat' I 3ou 3aue myn hert in good entent' 861

(116)

My lorde 3e wote þat' in my faders place 862

3e diden me stripen out' of my poor wede

And richely 3e cladden me of 3oure grace

To 3ou brou3t' I not' ellis out' of drede 865

But' fait' nakednesse *and* maidenhede

But' here a3ein 3oure cloþing' I restore

And eke my weddyng' ringe for euermore 868

(117)

The remenaunte of 3our Iwels redy be 869

wiþ in 3our' chambre dare I it seyuely seye

Naked out' of my faders hous quod she

I come/ and naked I mote turne ageyne 872

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

Al þoure plesaunce wil I folowe feyne
 But if I hope it be not þoure entente
 þat I smoklees out of þoure paleis went 875

(118)

þe cowde not do so dishonest a þinge 876
 That ilk wombe in which our children lay [leaf 173]
 Shuld byfore þe puple in my walkinge
 Be seyn al bare wherfor I þou pray 879
 lat me not like a worm gon by þe way
 Remembre þou myn / owne lorde so dere
 I was þoure wif þouze I vnworþi were 882

(119)

Wherfore in guerdon of my maidenhede 883
 Which þat I wrouȝt and not agein bere
 As voucheþ sauf to ȝeue me to my mede
 But such a smokke as I was wont to were 886
 þat I þerwiþ may hille þe wombe of here
 þat was þoure wif *and* here I take my leue
 Of þowe myn owne lord lest I þou greue 889

(120)

The smokt quod he þat þou hast on þi bakt 890
 Lat it be stille and bere it forþ wiþ þe
 But wel vnneþ þat word he spak
 But went his way for reuthe *and* pite 893
 Byfore þe folk hure self stripeþ she
 And in her smokt wiþ hede *and* fete al bare
 Toward her fadres hous forþ is she fare 896

(121)

The folk folowed weping in hir way 897
 And fortune euere þei cursed as þei goñ
 But she from weping kept her eyen day
 Ne in þis tyme word spak she noñ 900
 Her fader þat here of herd anoñ
 Cursed þe day *and* tyme þat nature
 Shope him to be a lyues creature 903

For out ^t of doute þis olde poor man	904
was euer ^t suspecte of her mariage	
ffor euer he demed siþen it bygan	
þat ^t whan þe lord yfyll ^d had his corage	907
hym wold þenk ^t it ^t was a desparage	
To his astate so lowe to a liȝt ^t	[leaf 173, back]
And voiden hir ^t as sone as euere he myȝt ^t	910
(123)	
Aȝeinst his douȝtere hastely goþ he	911
ffor he by þe noys of folk ^t knewe her commyng ^t	
And wiþ her olde cote as it myȝt be	
He keuereþ hir ^t ful sorowfully wepinge	914
But ^t on hur ^t body myȝt ^t he it ^t not bringe	
ffor rude was þe cloþ and more of age	
By dayes fele þan hur ^t mariage	917
(124)	
Thus with her fadere for a certeyn space	918
dwellleþ þis floure of wively pacience	
That ^t neuer by her wordes ne be her face	
Bifore þe folk ^t ne in her absence	921
Ne shewed she þat ^t to hir ^t was doñ offence	
Ne of hie astate in remembraunce	
Ne had she as by her countenaunce	924
(125)	
No wonder is for in [her] grete estate	925
Her goost ^t was euere in pley ⁿ humilite	
No tender mouþe ne hert ^t delicate	
Ne pompe ne semblant ^t of Rialte	928
But ^t ful of pacience and benygnite	
Discrete and pruydeles and euere honorable	
And to her husbonde euere meke <i>and</i> stable	931
(126)	
Men speke of Iob and most ^t of his humblesse	932
As clerkes whan hem lust ^t can wel endite	
Namely of men but ^t in soþfastnesse	
pouȝe clerkes preise wommen but ^t a lite	935

þer can no man in humblesse hem aquite
 As wommen can ne ben half so trewe
 As wommen bene but it be fallen newe 938

[THE SIXTH PART.]

Fro babyloyne is þis Erle of Pavie come 939
 Of which þe word spronge to more *and* lesse
 And to þe pules eeres al *and* somme
 was coupe eke a newe Marquyssesse [leaf 174] 942
 He wiþ hym brouȝt in pompe *and* such richesse
 þat was neuere sey wiþ mannys eye
 So noble aray in Westlombardye 945

The Marquis þat Shope an knewe al þis 946
 Er þat þis erle was commen sent his massage
 ffor cely poor Gryseldys
 And she *with* humble hert *and* glad visage 949
 Nouȝt wiþ swollen hert in her corage
 Come at his heest and on here knees her sette
 And reuerently and wisely she hym grette 952

Griseld quod he my wiȝ is vtterly 953
 þis maide þat shal wedded be vnto me
 Resceyued be to morowe as Really
 As it is possible in my hous to be 956
 And eke þat euery wiȝt in his degre
 Haue his estate in sittynȝ and seruise
 And also plesaunce as ȝe can best deuysel 959

I haue no womman suffisant certayn 960
 þe Chambres to aray in ordynaunce
 After my lust *and* þerfor wil I fayn
 þat þine were al such gouernaunce 963
 þou knowest eke of olde al my plesaunce
 þouȝe þine aray be bad and euel ysey
 Do þou þi deuoyre at þe lest wey 966

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

Nouȝt only lord þat I am glad quod she 967

To do ȝoure lust but I desire also

ȝoure forto plesse and *serue* in my degre

Without fayntise and shal euermoo 970

Ne neuer for no wele ne for no woo

Ne shal þe goost within my hert stynt

To loue ȝou best with al my trewe entent 973

(132)

And wip þat word she gan þe hous to dizt [leaf 174, back]

And tables to sette and beddys to make

And peyned hure to doo al þat she myȝt

Preying þe chambreres for goddis sake 977

To hasten hem and fast swope *and* shake

And she þe most seruisable at aȝ

Hap euery ychambre araied *and* his halle 980

(133)

Aboute vndern gan þis Erle alizt 981

That wip him brouȝt þise noble childre tweie

ffor which þe puple ranne to se þat sizt

And hure araye so richely beseye 984

And þan at arst amonges hem þei goȝ seye

That walter was no foole þough hym lest

To chaunge his wiff for it was for þe best 987

(134)

For she is fairrer as þei demen alle 988

Than is Griseȝ and more tender of age

And fairrer fruyte bytwene hem shuld falle

And more plesaunt for hir hiȝe lynage 991

Hir broþer so faire was of his age

þat hym to seen þe puple had kauȝt plesauce

Commendying nowe ȝe Marquis gouernaunce 994

(135)

O sterne puple vnsad and [vn]trewe 995

Euere vndiscrete and chaungyng as a fane

Delitinge euere in Rumour þat is newe

ffor like þe mone euere wexe ȝe *and* wane 998

Euere ful of clapping^t dere ynowe a Iane
 3our^t dome is fals 3our constaunce euel preueþ
 A wel grete fool is he þat^t on 3ou leueþ 1001

(136)

Thus seiden sadde folk in þat^t Cite 1002
 Whan þat^t þe puple gased vp *and* down
 ffor þei were glad ri3t^t for þe nouelte
 To make a newe lady of her toun 1005
 No more of þis make I menciouⁿ [leaf 175]
 But^t to griseld^t a3ein wil I me dresse
 And telle her constance *and* her bysynesse 1008

(137)

Wel bysy was gryseld in euery thinge 1009
 þat^t to þe feest^t was pertinent^t
 Ri3t^t naught^t was she abasshed of her clopinge
 pouze þei were Rude and eke somdel to-rent^t 1012
 But^t wiþ glad chere to þe gate is went^t
 wiþ oþer folk to greten þe Marquissesse
 And after dop^t she forþ her bysynesse 1015

(138)

Wiþ ful glad chere þe gestes she receyueþ 1016
 And Boxomly euerich in his degre
 That^t no man defawte þer perceyueþ
 But^t euere þei wondren what^t she my3t be 1019
 That^t in so poor aray was forto se
 And cowde such honure & reuerence
 And worþely þei preisen her prudence 1022

(139)

In al þis me[ne] while she ne stynte 1023
 This maiden and eke her broþer to commend^t
 Wiþ al her hert^t and benigne entente
 So wel þat^t no man koude her prise amende 1026
 But^t at^t þe last^t whan at^t þise lordes wende
 To sitten a down he gan to calle
 Griseld^t as she was bysy in þe halle 1029

- Griseld** quod he as it were in play 1030
 How likeþ þe my wif in her bewte
 Riȝt wel quod she my lorde for in good fay
 A fairrer sawe I neuere non quod she 1033
 I prey to god so ȝeue ȝou prosperite
 And so hope I he wil to ȝou sende
 Plesaunce ynouȝe to ȝoure lyues ende 1036
 (141)
Sut oon þing I biseche *and* warne also ./ 1037
 þat ȝe prik wiþ no tormentynge [leaf 175, back]
 þis tendere mayden as ȝe han doñ moo
 ffor she is fostred in her norshynge 1040
 fful tenderly in her ȝong pleyynge
 She coude not aduersite endure
 As coude a poor fostred creature 1043
 (142)
And whan þis Walter segh her pacience 1044
 her glad chere and no malice at aH
 And he so oft hap done hir offence
 And she euer constant and sad as a waH 1047
 Contynuyng euer her innocence oueraH
 This stordy marquis gan his herte dresse
 To Rwe vpon hur wifly stidfastnesse 1050
 (143)
This is ynouȝe **Griseld** myñ *quod* he 1051
 Be no more agast ne euel apayde
 I haue þi feiþ and þi benignyte
 As wel as euer womman was asaied 1054
 In gr[e]te astate and poorly araied
 Now knowe I dere wiff þi stedfastnesse
 And hure in armes toke *and* gan to kesse 1057
 (144)
And she for wonder toke þerof no kepe 1058
 She herd not what þing þat he seide
 She ferde as she had stert out of her slepe
 Til she out of þe maiednesse abreide 1061

Griseld^ȝ quod he by god þat^t for vs deyde
 þou art^t my wif *and* noon oþer I haue
 Ne neuere had as god my soule saue 1064

(145)

This is þi douȝter which þou hast supposed 1065
 To bene my wif and noon oþer feiþfully
 shal bene myn heir' as I haue euere disposed
 Thowe bere hem in þi body trewly 1068
 At boylen haue I kepte hem sikerly
 Take hem aȝein for þou myȝt^t not^t seyn [leaf 176]
 þat^t þow hast lorn eny of þi children tweyn 1071

(146)

And folk þat^t oþerwise han seide of me 1072
 I warne hem wel þat^t I haue done þis dede
 ffor no malice ne for no cruelte
 But^t forto assay þi wommanhede 1075
 And not^t forto sle my children god forbede
 But^t forto kepen hem prively *and* stille
 Til I þi purpoos knewe and al þi wille 1078

(147)

And whan she þis herd^t adoun in swowe she falleþ 1079
 ffor pitous ioying^t and after hire swowinge
 She boþ her yōnge children to hure calleþ
 And in hure armes pitously wepinge 1082
 Enbrased boþ tenderly kissyng
 Wel like a modere wiþ her salt^t teeres^t
 She bapēd boþ her visage *and* her heeres 1085

(148)

O such a pitous þinge it^t was to see 1086
 Her sownyng^t *and* her pitous vois to here'
 Gramercy my lord god y thenk ȝou quod she
 þat^t ȝe han saued me my children dere^t 1089
 Now rech I neuere to be dede riȝt^t here
 Siþ I stonde in ȝour' loue *and* in ȝour' grace
 No force of deþ ne whan my spirit pace 1092

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. Petworth MS.

A tender' o dere .o. 3enge children myn	1093
3oure wooful modere wende stedfastly	
þat' cruel houndes or some vermyñ	
Had eten 3ou but' god of his mercy	1096
And 3oure benigne fader' tenderly	
Hap done 3ou kepte <i>and</i> þat' same stounde	
Al sodeynly she swapte doun to þe grounde	1099
(150)	
And hin her swowne so sadly holdeþ she	1100
her children two whan she gan hem brace	
That' wiþ grete sleight' and difficulte	[leaf 176, back]
The children from her armes gan þei to rase	1103
O mony a tere .o mony a pitous face	
Doun ranne of hem þat' stoden hyr beside	
Vnneþ aboute hur' my3t' þei abide	1106
(151)	
Walter hir' vptakeþ <i>and</i> her' sorowe gladeþ	1107
She ariseþ vp al abasshed from her trance	
And euery wi3t' hir' Ioye and feest' makeþ	
To she haue kau3t' a3ein her countenance	1110
Walter her doþ so feiþfully plesaunce	
þat' it' was deynte for to se þe chere	
Bitwixe hem two nowe þei bene mette in fere	1113
(152)	
Thise ladys whan þei her tyme say	1114
han taken hur' and into chambre gone	
And stripen hir' out' of her rude aray	
And in a cloþe of gold' þat' brighte shone	1117
wiþ a crowne of mony a riche stone	
vpon hur' hede þei hir' into halle brou3t'	
And þer she was honoured as she ou3t'	1120
(153)	
Thus hap þis pitous day a blisful ende	1121
ffor euery man and womman doþ his my3t'	
This day in myrþe and reuel to dispende	
Til on þe welken shoon þe sterres bri3t'	1124

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. Petworth MS.

ffor more solempne in euey mannys sizt
 This fest^t was and gretter of costage
 þan was þe reuel of þe mariage 1127

(154)

fful mony a ȝeer in high prosperite 1128
 lyuen þise two in concord^ð and in rest^t
 And richely his douȝter^t married he
 Vnto a lord on of þe worþiest^t 1131
 Of aȝ ytaile and þan in pees *and* rest^t
 His wifes fader^t in his courte he kepeþ
 Til þat^t his soule out^t of his body crepeth [leaf 177] 1134

(155)

His sone entreþ into his heritage 1135
 In rest^t and pees aftere his faders day
 And fortunate was eke in mariage
 Al putte he not^t his wif in assay 1138
 This world^ð is not^t [so] stronge it^t is no nay
 As it^t haþ bene in olde tymes ȝore
 And harkenep^þ what^t þe auctour seiþ þefore 1141

(156)

þis storie is seide not^t þat^t wives shuld^ð 1142
 ffolowe Gryseld as in humilite
 ffor it^t were importable þouȝe þei wold^ð
 But^t þat^t euery wizt^t in hīs degre 1145
 Shulde be constant^t in aduersite.
 This storie which he wiþ high stile enditeþ
 Wiþ pacience Griseld^ð he qwriteþ 1148

(157)

ffor siþens a womman was so pacient^t 1149
 Vnto a mortall man moch^ð more we ouȝt^t
 Resceyue alle in gree þat^t god vs sent^t
 ffor grete scelys he preueþ þat^t he bouȝt^t 1152
 Mankynde þe which þat^t he wrouȝt^t
 As seiþ seint^t Iame if ȝe his pistel rede
 He preueþ folk al day it^t is no drede 1155

GROUP E. § 2. CLERK'S TALE. Petworth MS.

And suffreþ vs as for our exercise 1156
 Wiþ sharpe shoures of aduersite
 Wel ofte to be leten in sondry wise
 Nowe forto knowe vs for certys he 1159
 Er we were born knewe al our freelte
 And for our bestⁱ is al ourⁱ gouernaunce
 Latⁱ vs itⁱ haue þan in vertuous suffrance 1162

[Chaucer's addition to the Tale.]

Butⁱ oo witte harkenep lordyngges er 3e goo / 1163
 It were ful harde nowe adayes
 In al a toune fynde Griseldys þre or two
 ffor if þei were putte in such assaies 1166
 þe goldⁱ of hem hap nowe so hardⁱ alaies
 Wiþ bras þatⁱ þouze þe kynde be faire atte ye
 It wotⁱ raper brastⁱ a two þan plye 1169

(160)

[ffor whiche hiere . for the wifes love of bath
 whos lyfⁱ and al hers . swete god maynteigne¹
 In high maistrie . and ellis were itⁱ skathⁱ
 I wil with lusty hertⁱ . fressh and grene 1173
 Say now a songⁱ . to gladde yow I wene
 And late vs styntⁱ . of Ernestful matiere
 Herknyth my songⁱ . thatⁱ saith in this manere] 1176

[MS Reg. 17 D xv,
leaf 175, back:
not in Reg. 18 C
II, Sloane 1685,
or Harl. 1758.]

[1-line gap in the MS, after l. 1171.]

¶ Le Voy De Chaucere / [headline]

(161)

GRiseldⁱ is dede and eke her pacience [leaf 177, back]
 And bop atⁱ onys yburied in Ytalie
 ffor which I cry in open audience 1179
 No wedded man be hardy to assaile
 His wyves pacience in trust to fynde
 Griseldes for in certeyn he shal faile 1182

- O** noble wyues ful of hegh prudence
 lat' none humilite 3oure tonge nayle
 Ne lat' no clerk' haue cause ne diligence 1185
 To write of 3ou a storie of such meruaile
 As of griselde pacient *and* kynde
 lest' Chychyuache 3ou swelowe in hir entraile 1188
- F**oloweþ ekko þat' holdeþ no silence
 But' euere answerþ at' þe countretale
 Beþ not' bydaffed for our Innocence 1191
 But' sharpely take on 3ou þe gouernaile
 Emprinteþ wel þis lessoñ in 3oure mynde
 ffor Comon profit' sith it' may auaile 1194
- N**E drede hem nouzt' doth' hem no reuerence 1201
 ffor þou3e þine husbonde araied be in maile
 þe arowes of þi crabbed eloquence 1203
 Shal perce his brest *and* eke his aduentale
 In Ialowsie I rede eke þou hym bynde
 And þat' þou shalt make hym couche as doþ a quale 1206
- I**f þou be faire þere folk bene in present'
 Shewe þou þi visage and þine apparaile
 If þowe be fowle be free of þi dispence 1209
 To gete þe freendes ay do þi trauaile
 Be aye of chere as lizt' as leef on lynde
 And lat' hym care and wepe *and* wryng' *and* waile 1212
- 3**e Arche wiffes stondeþ at' 3our' defence 1195
 Sip 3e bene stronge as is a grete camaile
 Ne Suffreþ not' þat' man do 3ou offence 1197
 And sclendere wyves feble as in bataile
 Beth egre as a tygre 3ende in Ynde
 Ay Clappeþ as a mylle I 3ou counsaile. 1200

[For the Squire's Prologue of the Petworth MS see the *Man-of-Law-Shipman Link*.]

¶ The prologe of þe ffraunkeleyn. [headline of leaf 178, front]

EHY goddis mercy seide oure hoost þoo /
 Alle euel wyues god kepe vs fro 2420
 ffor mony sleiȝtes and sub[t]ilites
 Bene in wommen þat bene euere bisy as bees
 Vs foly men forto desceyue
 ffor from þe soþ euere wil þei weive 2424
 By mony ensamples it proueþ weH
 But doutelees as trewe as eny stele
 I haue a wiff þough she poor be
 But of her tunge a labbyng shrew is she 2428
 And she haþ an hepe of vices moo
 þerof no force lat al such þingges goo
 But wete ȝe what in counsaile be it saide
 Me rewep sore þat I am to her teide 2432
 ffor and I shuld rekne eue[r]y vice
 Which þat she haþ ywis I were not wis
 And cause whi for it shuld reported be
 And tolde to hure of somme of þis mayne 2436
 Of whom it nedep not to declare
 Siþ wommen kon out such chaffare
 And eke my witte suffiseþ not þerto
 To telle alle þefore my tale is doo 2440

[No break in the MS.]

GROUP F. FRAGMENT VII.

§ 1. THE SQUIRE'S HEAD-LINK.

PETWORTH MS.

Sir' ffrankeleyne come ner' if it' *3our* wille be [*on leaf 1781*
And say vs a tale for sertys *3e*
Can þeron as moeh̄ as eny man
Nay sir' quod he I wil say as I can 4
With hertely wille for I nyl be rebelle
Azeinst' *3oure* wille . a tale nowe wil I telle
HAue me excused *3if* I sey amys .
My wille is good *and* loo my tale is þis ·/ 8

¶ Here endep þe prologe of þe ffrankeleyñ

And here bygynneþ þe firannekeleyns tale [on leaf 178]

[THE PROEM.]

Thise olde gentile bretoynes in her' daies
 Of dyuers auentes maden laies
 Rymeden in her furst' bretoyne tonge
 Which layes wiþ her instrumentes þei songe 712
 Oip̃er ellis radden hem for her plesaunce [leaf 178, back]
 And oon of hem haue I in remembrance
 Which I shal seie wiþ as good wille as I can/
 But' sirs by cause þat' I am but' a buriht man 716
 At' my bygynnyng furst' I 3ou biseche
 Haue me excused of my rwde speche
 I lered neuere rethorike certeyne
 þinge þat' I speke it' mot' be bare *and* pleyne 720
 I slepte neuere on þe mounte of parnaso
 Ne I neuer lered. Marchus Tullius ne Cithero
 Colours of rethorike knewe I none *with-out'* drede
 But' such coloures as growen in þe mede 724
 Or ellis such as men dye or peynt'
 Colours of rethorike bene to me queynt'
 Mi spirit' feleþ not' of such matiere
 But' if 3ou lust' my tale shul 3e here 728
[No break in the MS.]

[THE TALE.]

Ther was a knyght' þat' loued *and* did his peyne 730
 In armorike þat' cleped is breteyne 729
 To seruen a lady in his best' wise
 And mony a laboure & mony a grete emprise 732

He for his lady wrouȝt^t er she were wonne
 ffor she was oon þe fairest^t vndere sonne
 And eke þerto come of so high kynrede
 þat^t wel vnneþes durst^t þis knyght for drede 736
 Telle hure his woo his peyne *and* his distresse
 But^t at þe last^t she for his worþinesse
 And namely for his meke obeysaunce
 Hap^t suche a pite kauȝt^t of his penaunce 740
 That^t prively she felle of his acorde
 To take hym for hure husbond^t *and* her lord^t
 Of suche lordship as men han ouer her wyves
 And forto lede þe more in blisse her lyves 744
 Of his fre wille he swore hure as a knyȝt^t
 þat^t neuere in his wille by day ne nyȝt^t
 Ne shuld^t vpon hym take no maistrie
 Aȝeinst^t her wille ne kith^t hure Ialousie 748
 But^t hure obeye and folowe her wille in aȝt
 As eny louyere to his lady shaȝt
 Saue þat^t þe name of souereynte
 That^t wolde he han for shame of his degre 752
 She þonkeþ hym and wiþ ful grete humblesse
 She seide sir^t siþ of ȝoure gentylnesse
 ȝe profre me to han as large a reyne
 Ne wolde neuere god betwix vs tweyne 756
 As in my gilt^t were eiþer werre or striff^t
 Sir^t I wil be ȝoure owne humble & trewe wiff^t
 Haue here my troupe til þat^t my hert^t brest^t
 Thus bene þei boþ in quiete *and* in rest^t 760
 ffor oon þinge sires saufly dar I seie
 That^t frendes euerich oþer most^t obeie
 ȝif þei wil longe holde companye
 loue wil not^t bene constreyned be maistrye 764
 whan maistrie commeþ þe god of loue anōn
 Betep^t on his wengges and fare-wele he is goȝn
 loue is a þinge as eny spirite free
 Wommen of kynde desiren liberte 768

And nouȝt to be constreyned as a þraȝ
 And so done men ȝif I þe soþe seie shaȝ
 Loke who þat is most pacient in loue
 He is at his avauntage aboue 772
 Pacience is an hie vertue certeyn
 ffor it venquyssheth as clerkes seyne
 Thingges þat rigoure shulde neuere ateyne
 ffor euery worde men may not chide ne pleyne 776
 Lerneþ to suffre or ellis so mote I goȝ
 ȝe Shul it lerne wheder ȝe wil or noȝ
 ffor in þis world certeyne no wight nys
 þat he ne doþ or seiþ some tyme amys 780
 Or oþer siknesse oþer constellacioȝ
 Wyne. woo. or chaunchynge of complexioȝ
 Causeþ ful oft to do amys eiper speken
 On euery wronge men may not be a-wreken 784
 Aftere þe tyme most be temperaunce [leaf 179, back]
 To euery wight þat can no gouernaunce
 And þefore haþ þis worþi wise knyȝte
 To lyue in ease suffraunce hure bihiȝte 788
 And she to hym ful wisely gan to swere
 þat neuere shuld þer be defaute in here
 Here may men seen an humble wif acordȝ
 Thus haþ she take her seruauȝte and her lord 792
 Seruauȝte nyl oȝ and lord in mariage
 þan was he boþ in lordship and seruage
 Seruage nay but in lordschip alloue
 Syþens he haþ boþ his lady and his loue 796
 His lady certys and his wif also
 The which þat lawe of loue accordeþ þerto
 And whan he was in þis prosperite
 Home wiþ his wif he goþ to his cuntre 800
 Not fer fro Pedmarke þer as his dwelling was
 Where as he lyueþ in blisse and in solas
 Who couthe telle but he had wedded be
 The Ioie þe ease and þe prosperite 804

That is bitwix an husbond and his wiff
 A ȝere and more lasted þis blisful lif.
 Til þat þis knyȝt of which I spake of þus
 That of kynrede was cleped Arueragus 808
 Shope hym to goon and dwelle a ȝere or tweyn
 In engelond þat cleped was breteyn ./
 To seche in arnes worship and eke honour
 ffor aȝ hit lust he sette in such labour 812
 And dwelleþ þere þe boke seiþ þus
 Now wil I stint of þis Arueragus
 And speken I wil of dorygen his wiff
 That loueþ her husbonde as his hertes lif 816
 And for his absence wepeþ she *and* sikeþe
 As done þise noble wyues whan hem likeþ.
 She mourneþ. wakeþ. waileþ. fasteþ & playneþ
 Desire of his presence hure so destreyneþ 820
 That aȝ þis wide world she sette at nouȝt
 [leaf 180]
 Her frendes which þat knewe her hevy þouȝt
 In al þat euere þei myȝt or may
 þei prechen hur þei tellen hur nyȝt *and* day 824
 þat causelees she sleep her self alas
 And euery comfort possible in þis cas
 They doon to hure wiþ al her bysynesse
 And al forto make hure late her heuynesse 828
 By processe as ȝe knowe wel euerechoȝ
 Men may so longe grauen in þe stoȝ
 Til some figure þer-Inne emprinted be
 So longe han þei confortd hure þat she 832
 Resceyued haþ by hope and by resoȝ
 The emprintyng of hure *constellacioȝ*
 Thorgh which here grete sorowe gan aswage
 She may not alway endure in such a rage 836
 And eke arueragus in al þis care
 Haþ sent her *lettres* home in al þis fare
 And þat he wold come hastely aȝeiȝ
 Oyþer ellis had þis sorowe hure hert sclayȝ 840

Her frendes segħ hure hert' gan to slake
 And preiden hure on knees for goddys sake
 To come and to Rome hure in companye
 Away to dryve hure derk fantasie 844
 And fynaly she graunted þat' request'
 ffor wel she seghe it' was for þe best'
 Nowe stode hure castel fast' by þe see
 And oft wiþ hure frendes walked she 848
 Hire to disporte on þe See bank' on hegh
 Where as she mony shippe *and* barge segħ
 Seilynge her cours where hem lust' to goo
 But' 3it' was þer a parcelle of her woo . 852
 ffor to hure self ful ofte seide she
 Is þer no shippe of so mony as I see
 wil bringe home my lord' þan wold' my herte
 Al warisshe of þise bittere peynes smerte . 856
 A-noþer tyme þer wil she sitte *and* þenke [leaf 180, back]
 And cast' her yen downward' fro þe brinke
 But' whan she segħ þe grissly rokkes blake
 ffor verrey fere wold hure hert' quake 860
 þat' on her fete she myȝt' not' hure sustene
 þan wold she sitte doune on þe grene
 And pitously into þe see she wolde biholde
 And seyn riȝt' þus with soroweful hert' cold' 864
 Eterne god þat' þourgh þi þurueaunce
 Ledest' þe worlde by certeyn gouernaunce
 In ydelnesse as men sayne ye no þinge make
 But' lorde þise grisly feendly rokkes blake 868
 That' semen raþer a foule confusion
 Of werk' þan eny faire creacion
 Of which a parfit' god *and* a stable
 why han ȝe wrouȝt' þis werk vnresonable 872
 ffor by þis werk' souþe . norþ . eest' & west'
 Ther nis yfostred man ne bridde ne beest'
 It' dop no good to my witte but' anoyeþ
 Se ȝe not' lorde how man-kynde it' destroieþ 876

An C. thousand bodies of man-kynde
 Han rokkes selayn al be þei nouȝt in mynde
 Which mankynde is so faire part of þi werke
 þat þow it maideſt like to þine honde werke 880
 þan ſemed it ȝe had a grete cheerte
 Toward mankynde but how þan may it be
 þat ȝe ſuche menes make it to deſtroien ./
 Which menes done no good but euer anoyen 884
 I wote wel clerkys wollen ſeyn as hem leſt
 By argument þat al þing is for þe beſt
 þough I ne can þe cauſeſſe forſoþ knowe
 But þilk god þat made wynde to blowe 888
 As kepe my lorde þis is my concluſiō
 To clerkes lete I al diſputaciō
 But wolde god þat aȝ þe rokkes blake
 Were ſonken into helle for his ſake 892
 Thiſe rokkes ſcleen myn hert for fere [leaf 181]
 Thus wold ſhe ſayn wiþ mony a pitous tere
 Hire frendes ſegh þat [it] was no diſport
 To Romen by þe ſee but diſcomfort 896
 And ſhopen for to pleyen ſomwher ellis
 They leden hure by ryuers *and* by wellys
 And eke in oþer places delitables
 Thei daunſen *and* pley atte cheſſe *and* tables 900
 So on a day riȝt on þe morowe tyde
 Vnto a gardyne þat was þer beſide
 In whiche þat þei had made her ordinaunce
 Of vitaille and of oþere purueaunce 904
 They goon *and* pleien hem al þe longe day
 And þis was on þe ſext morowe of may
 Which may had peinte wiþ his ſofte ſhoures
 Thiſe gardeyn ful of leues *and* of floures 908
 And wiþ craft of mannys honde ſo curioſly
 Araied haȝ þis gardyne trailly
 That neuere naſ þer gardyne of ſuch priſe
 But ȝif it were þe verrey paradyſe 912

The odour of floures and þe fresshe siȝt
 Wold haue made eny pensif hert' liȝt'
 That' euere was born' but' if to grete siknesse
 Oȝer to grete sorowe helde it' in distresse 916
 And aftere dynere gan þei to daunce 918
 So ful it' was of bewte wiȝ plesaunce 917
 And syngeſ also but' dirigen song' allone
 And made alway her compleinte *and* her mone 920
 ffor she ne segȝ him in þe daunce goo
 þat' was her husbonde *and* her loue also
 But' napelees she most' a tyme abide
 And wiȝ good hope lete she her sorowe glide 924
 ¶ Vpon þis daunce amonges oȝer men
 Daunsed a squier' afore Dorigen
 þat' fressher' was and Iolier of araye
 As to my dome þan is þe monȝe of may 928
 He syngeȝ and dounseȝ passinge eny man [leaf 181, back]
 þat' is or was siȝpens þis world' bygan
 þer-wiȝ he was if men shuld hym discriue
 On þe best' faring' man alyue 932
 Ȝong'. strong' riȝt' vertuous riche and wis
 And wel byloued and holden in grete pris
 And shortely if þe soȝ tellen I shal
 Vnwitting' of þis Dorigen at' aȝ 936
 This lusty squyere seruauſe to Venus
 Which þat' icleped was aurelius
 Had loued hure best' of eny creature
 Two ȝere and more as was his auenture 940
 But' neuere durst' he telle of his greuaunce
 Wiȝ-out' cuppe he dronke al his penaunce
 He was despeired no þing' durst' he saye
 Sauȝ in his sawe somewhat' wold' he wreye 944
 His woo as in generall compleynynge
 He saide he loued and was byloued no þing'
 Of suche matere made he mony laies
 Songges compleyntes roundelletes virrelaies 948

How þat' he durst' not' his sorowe telle
 þat' languyssheþ as a fuyre doþ in helle
 And deye he seide most I as did Ekko
 ffor Narsisus þat' durst' not' telle hure woo 952
 In oþere manere þan 3e here me saye
 Ne durst' he not' to hure his woo bywrey
 Saue perauenture somtyme at' daunces
 þere 3onge men kepen her obseruaunces 956
 It' may wel be he loked on hure face
 In such a wise as man þat' askeþ grace
 But' no þinge wiste she of his entent'
 Napeles it' happed er þei þens went' 960
 Bycause þat' he was hure neighbour
 And was a mon of worship *and* honour
 And had yknowe hym oft' tymes 3ore
 þei fylle in speche more *and* more 964
 Vnto his purpoos drowe aurelius [leaf 182]
 And whan he segħ his tyme he saide þus
 Madame quod he by god þat' þis world' made
 So þat' I wist' it' my3t' 3oure herte glade 968
 I wold þat' day þat' 3oure arueragus
 Went' to þe see þat' I Aurelius
 Had went' þat' I shuld neuere come a3ein
 ffor wel I wote my seruise is in veyñ 972
 My gwerdoñ is but' brestyng of myñ herte
 Madame rewep vpon my peynes smerte
 ffor as wiþ a swerde 3e may me scle or saue
 Here at 3oure fote god wolde I were in graue 976
 I haue as nowe no leisere forto seie
 Haue mercy on me swete or 3e wil do me die
 She gan to loke vpon Aurelius
 Is þis 3oure wille quod she and saye 3e þus 980
 Neuer erst' quod she ne wist' I what' 3e ment'
 But' nowe Aurely I knowe 3oure entent'
 By þilke god þat' 3af me soule *and* liff
 Ne shal I neuere be an vntrewe wiff 984

In worde ne werk as fer as I haue witte
 I wil bene his to whom þat I am knytte
 But aftere þat in pleyn þus seide she 988
 Take þis for fynal answere as for me 987
 Aurely quod she by hize god aboue
 3it wil I graunte 3ou to be 3oure loue
 Sipþe I see 3ou so pitously compleyne
 Loke what day þat euenlong breteyne 992
 3e remeue alle þe Rokkes stoon by stoon
 þat þei lat shippe ne bote none
 I saye whan 3e han made þise costes so clene
 Of Rokkes þat þer be no stone sene 996
 þan wil I loue 3ou best of eny man
 Haue here my troupe in al þat euere I can
 Is þere noon oþer grace quod he
 No by þat lorde quod she þat made me. 1000
 ffor wel I wote þat shal neuere betide [leaf 182, back]
 Lat such foly out of 3oure hert glide
 What deynte shuld man haue be his lif
 fforto loue an oþere mannys wiff 1004
 þat haþ hure body whan þat hym likeþ
 Aurelius ful ofte sore sikeþ
 Woo was Aurelius whan he þis herde
 And wiþ a sorowful hert þus answerde 1008
 Madame quod he þis were an impossible
 þan mote I deye a sodeyne deþe horrible
 And wiþ þat worde he turned hym anōn
 Tho come hire oþer frendes mony oñ 1012
 And in the aleis romed vp *and* down
 And no þing wist of þis conclusioun
 But sodeynly bygonne to reuel newe
 Til þat þe briȝte sonne lost his hwe 1016
 ffor þorisonth haþ raft þe sonne his liȝt
 This is as moche to say as it was nyȝt
 And home þei gone in Ioie and in solace
 Saue only wrecched Aurelius allas 1020

he to his hous is gone wiþ sorowful herte
 he seiþ he may not from his deþ asterte
 Hym semeþ he feleþ his hert colde
 Vp to þe heuene his hondys gan he holde 1024
 And on his knees bare he sette hym down
 And in his raving seide þis Orisoun
 ffor verrey woo out of his witte he breide
 He nyst not what he spake but þus he seide 1028
 Wiþ pitous hert hap he compleynt bygoñ
 Vnto þe goddesse and first vnto þe sonne
 He seide Appollo god and gouernour
 Of euery planete . herbe . tree *and* flour 1032
 þat zeuest aftere þi declinacioñ
 To ech of hem his tyme *and* his sesoñ
 And þine harborowe chaungeþ lowe *and* hie
 Lord Phebus cast þi merciablenesse 1036
 On wrecched Aurely which þat am but lorne . [leaf 183]
 loo lord my lady hap my deþ sworne
 Wiþoute gilt but þi benigne
 Vpon my dedly herte haue somme pite 1040
 But wel I wote lorde phebus if 3ou lest
 3e may me helpe to haue my lady best
 Now vouchep sauf þat I may 3ou devise
 How þat I may be hulpe and in what wise 1044
 3oure blisful sustre lucyna þe Shene
 þat of the see is cheef goddes *and* quene
 þouze Neptynus haue deite in þe See
 3it Emperesse abouen hem is she 1048
 3e knowen wel lord riȝt as hure desire
 Is to be qwykened and liztned of 3our fire
 ffor which she folweþ 3ou fu[1] bisily
 Riȝt soo þe See desireþ naturelly 1052
 To folowen hure as she þat is goddesse
 Boþe in þe See and in þe Ryuere more *and* lesse
 Wherefore lorde phebus þis is my requeste
 Do þis myracle or do myn herte to-brest 1056

That nowe next at þis opposicioñ
 Whiche in þe signe shal be of þe lyoñ
 As preie hure so grete a floode to brynge
 þat .v. fathme at þe leest it ouere sprynge 1060
 þe hiest rokke in harmorike Bretaigne
 And lat þis flode endure 3eres tweyne
 Than certis to my lady may I saye
 Holdeþ 3oure heeste þe rokkes ben awaye 1064
 Lord Phebus do þis miracle for me
 Preie hure she goo no faster cours þan 3e
 I seie þowe þus preie 3oure sustre þat she go .
 No fastere cours þan 3e þise 3eres two 1068
 þan shal she be euere at þe ful alway
 And springe floode lasteþ boþ nyȝt and day
 And but she vouche-sauf in such manere
 To graunte me my lady souereyn dere 1072
 Preie hure to synken euery rokke adoun [leaf 183, back]
 Into hure owne derkt regioun
 Vndere þe grounde þer Pluto dwelleþ Inne
 Oipere neuere more shal I my lady wynne 1076
 Thi temple in Delphos wil I barefote seke
 Lorde Phebus biholde 3e þe teeres of my cheke
 And of my peyne haue compassioun
 And wiþ þat worde in swoun he fille adoun . 1080
 And longe tyme he lay in a traunce
 his broþer which þat knewe of his penaunce
 Vp kauȝt hym and to bed hym brouȝt
 Despeired in his torment and his þouȝt 1084
 Loo I þis wooful creature lye
 May chese whedere to lyve or dye
 ¶ Arueragus wiþ hool and grete honour
 As he [that] was of chyualrie þe floure 1088
 Is comen home and oþer worþi men
 O blisful art þou Doregen
 þat hast þine lusty husbond in þine armes
 þat fresshe knyght þat worþi man of armes 1092

þat loueþ þe as his owne hertys lif
 No þing^t lest^t he to be ymagynatiff
 þouze eny wiȝt^t had spoke while he was oute
 To hure of loue he made þerof no doute 1096
 He nouȝt^t entendeþ to no such matere
 But^t daunseþ . Iusteþ . and makeþ good chere
 And þus in Ioye and blisse I lat^t hem dwelle
 And of þe swete Aurelius ¹ wil I telle [*first, Aruelius, in the MS.*]
 In langour and in furious torment^t þus
 Two ȝere and more lay wrecched aurelius .
 Or eny foote on erþe he myȝte goñ
 No comfort^t in þis tyme nad he noñ 1104
 Sauf of his broþere which þat was a clerke
 he knewe of aȝ þis woo and al þis werke
 ffor to noñ oþer creature certeyñ
 Of þis matere ne durste he no worde seyn 1108
 Vndere his brest^t he bere it^t more secree [*leaf 184*]
 Than euere did phamphilus for galathe
 His brest^t was hoole wiþ-outen for to sene
 But^t in his herte was ay þe arowe kene 1112
 And wel to knowe þat^t afore Sanure
 In Surgery ful perilous is þe cure
 But^t men myȝt^t not^t touche þe arowe þouze he come þerby
 His broþer wepeþ and weilleth prively 1116
 Til at^t þe last^t hym felle in remembrañce
 That^t whiles he was at^t orliañce in france
 As ȝonge clerkes þat^t bene likerous
 To reden artes þat^t bene curious 1120
 Seken in euery halke and euery herne
 Particulere sciences forto lerne
 He him remembreþ vpon a day
 At^t Orliaunce in stody a boke he saie 1124
 Of magike naturel which his felawe
 þat^t was þat^t tyme a bachilere of lawe
 Al were he þere to lerne anoþer craft^t
 And priuely vpon his desk he laft^t 1128

This boke which speke mochel of operaciōns
 Touchinge þe *eight and twenty*¹ mancions [1 MS xxviiij]
 þat longen to þe mone and such foly
 As in our daies nys nat' worþ a flye 1132
 ffor holy churchē seip in our bileue
 Ne suffreþ noon illusion vs to greue
 And whan þis booke was in remembraunce
 Anone for ioy he gan to daunce 1136
 And to hym self saide priuely
 My broþer shal be warissshed hastely
 ffor I am siker þat þer bene sciences
 By which men make dyuers apparences 1140
 whiche as þise subtile tregetours pleien
 ffor oft' at feestes haue I herde seyen
 That tregetours wiþ-in an halle large
 Han maden come water' in a barge. 1144
 And in the halle rowe vp and doune [leaf 184, back]
 Somtyme haþ semed [come] a grete lyoun
 [And somtyme flours spryng as in a mede [Add, MS 5140,
 Somtyme a vyne/ and grapes whyt and reede] leaf 190, back] 1148
 Somtyme a castel al of lyme and stoñ
 And whan hen liked voide it' anoñ
 Thus semed it' to euery mannys sizt'
 Now þan conclude I þus if þat' I myzt' 1152
 At' Orliaunce some olde felawe finde
 þat' had þe moons mancions in mynde
 Oiþer magike naturel aboue
 He shuld wel make my broþer han his loue 1156
 ffor wiþ apparens a man may make
 To mannys sizt' þat' alle þe Rokkes blake
 Of Bretoyne were ywent' euerechoñ
 And þat' shippes by þe brinkes myzt' comen and goñ 1160
 And in such forme enduren a zere or twoo
 þan were my broþer warsshed of his woo
 þan moste she nedis knowe hure byhest'
 Or ellis he shal shamen hure at' þe lest' 1164

What^t shuld^t I make a lenger tale of þis
 Vnto his broþer bedde commen he is
 And suche comforte he ȝaue hym forto goñ
 To orliaunce þat^t he vpstert^t anoñ 1168
 And on his way forþward^t is he fare
 In hope to bene ylyssed of his care
 Whan þei were come almost^t to þat^t cite
 But^t if it^t were a two forlonge or þree 1172
 A ȝonge clerk^t romyng^t by hemself þei mette
 Whiche þat^t in latyn thriftely hym grette
 And aftere þat^t he seide a wonder^t þinge
 I knowe quod he þe cause of ȝoure commynge 1176
 And er þei forþer eny foote went^t
 He tolde hem aȝ þat^t was in her entent^t
 þis bretoyne clerke hym asked of ffelewes
 þe whiche þat^t he had knowe in olde daies 1180
 And he answered hym þat^t þei dede were
 ffor whiche he wept^t ful mony a tere
 Doune of his hors Aurelius lyȝt^t anōn [leaf 185v]
 And forþ wiþ þis Magicien is he gōn 1184
 Home to his hous and made hem wel at^t eese
 Ham lackeþ no vitaile þat^t hem myȝt^t plesē
 So wel an araied hous as ther was oñ
 Aurelius in his lif ne segħ none 1188
 He shewed hem ere [þei] went^t to sopere
 fforestis and parkes ful of wilde dere
 [Ther sauhe he hertis / wiȝh ther hornys hihe [Addit. MS 5140,
 leaf 191]
 The grettest / that evir wer seyne wiȝh eye 1192
 He sauhe of hem an hundred / slayne wyth houndes
 And som wiȝh arwes / bleede of bytter woundes
 He sauhe whanne wyde were the wylde deer
 The fauconers vpon a fayr ryver] 1196
 And howe facouns han þe herowne selayñ
 þat^t segħ he knyghtes iusten in a playñ
 And aftere þis he did hym such plesazunce
 þat^t he hym shewed his lady in a daunce 1200

On which him self daunsed as hym pouzt'
 And whan þis maistere þat' þis magike wrouzt'
 Segh it' was tyme and clapped his hondys twoo
 A fare wele al oure reuel is ydoo 1204
 But' 3it' remeue þei neuere out' of þis hous
 whiles þei seghe al þis sizt' merveilous
 But' in his stody þere as his bokes be
 þei sitten stille and no wizt' but' þei þre 1208
 To him þis maastere called þan a sqwiere
 And seide him þus is it' redy oure sopere
 Almost' an houre it' is I vndertake
 Siþens I 3ou bad oure sopere to make 1212
 Whan þat' þise worpi men wenten with me
 Vnto my stody þer as my bokes be
 Sir' quod þis squiere whan it' likeþ 3ou .
 It' is al redy pou3e 3e wiH rizt' now 1216
 Go we þan soupe quod he & for þe best'
 þise Amerous folk' somtyme mote haue rest'
 And after sopere fille þei in trete
 What' somme shulde þis maisters guerdon be 1220
 To rem[u]e alle þe Rokkes of breteyne
 And eke from geroon to þe mouþe of Seyn
 He made it' straunge & swore so god hym saue
 Lasse þan a þousand pounde he nolde not' haue 1224
 Ne gladly for þat' somme he nold not' goon [leaf 185, back]
 Aurelius wiþ blisful hert' anon
 Answered þus . fie on a thousand pounde
 This wide world' þat' men seyn is rounde 1228
 þat' wold I 3eue if I were lord' of it'
 This bargayn is ful drive for we bene knyht'
 3e shullen be paide trewly be my troupe
 But' lokeþ now for no negligence ne sloupe 1232
 3e tary vs here no lenger þan to morowe
 Nay quod this clerke haue here my troupe to borowe
 To bedde is gone Aurelius whan hym list'
 And welnygh al þat' nyzt' he had his rest' 1236

þat for his laboure and for his hope of blisse
 His wooful herte of penaunce had a lisse
 Vpon þis morowe whan þat it was day
 To breteigne toke þei þe right way 1240
 Aurelius and þis magicien be side
 And bene descended *per* þei willen abide
 And þis was as þe bokes me remembre
 þe colde frosty seson of decembre 1244
 Phebus wexe olde and hwed like latoñ
 That in his hote declinaciōn
 Shoone as þe byrned cold *with* stremes brizt
 But nowe in scorpion a-doune he lizt 1248
 Where as he shone ful pale I dar wel seyn
 þe bitter frostes *with* þe sclete *and* reyn
 Destroied haþ þe grene in euery 3erde
 Ianus sitte by þe fuyr *with* double berde 1252
 And drynkeþ of his bugle horn þe wyne
 Byforn hym stant þe brawne of þe tusked swyne
 And a nowell crieþ euery lusty man
 Aurelius in al þat euere he can. 1256
 Doth to his maister chere *and* reuerence
 And preieþ him to doñ his diligence
 To bringgen him out of his peynes smerte
 Oipere wiþ a swerde þat he wold sclitte his herte 1260
 That subtil clerk which þat rouþe had of þis man [leaf 186]
 þat nyght and day he him spedde þat he ne lan
 To waite a tyme of his conclusiōn
 This to say to make illusion 1264
 I ne can no termes of Astrologie 1266
 By whiche an apparence of Iogelrie 1265
 þat she and euery wizt shuld wene *and* seie
 That of Breteyn þe rokkes bene away 1268
 Oipere ellis þei were sonken vnder grounde
 So at þe last whan he his tyme founde
 To make his iapes and his wrecchednesse
 Of which a supersticious cursednesse 1272

His tables colletanes forþ he brouȝt
 fful wel corrected for þer lacked nouȝt
 Ne his collectis ne his expans ȝeres
 Ne his rotes ne his oþer geres 1276
 As bene his Centrys *and* his argumentz
 And his proporcions conuenientz
 ffor his equaciõs and euery þinge
 And by his viiij spere in his wirkinge 1280
 He knewe howe fer alnape was yshoue
 ffrom þe hede of þilk fixe ariseþ aboue
 þat in þe *ninthe* ¹ spere considered is [1 MS ix]
 fful subtilly he cal[cu]leþ al þis / 1284
 And whan he had founde his first mancion
 He knewe þe remynaunte by proporcion
 And knewe þe arising of þe mone weþ
 And in whoos face and terme euery deþ 1288
 And knewe ful wel þe monys mancion
 Accordant to his operacion
 And knewe also his oþer obseruaunces
 ffor such illusions and such meschaunces 1292
 As heþen folk vsed þilk daies
 ffor which no lenger maked he delaies
 But þorgh his magike for a weke or tway
 It semed as al the Rockes were away 1296
 Aurelius which þat despaired is [leaf 186, back]
 whedere he shal han his loue or fare amys
 Awaiteþ nyȝt and day of þis myracle
 And whan he knewe þer was non obstacle 1300
 þat voiden were þise rokkes euerchoñ
 Doune to þis maisters fete he fille anon
 And seide I woful wreche Aurelius
 Thonke ȝou lorde and lady myne Venus 1304
 That me han hulpe from my carys cold
 And to þe temple forþ his way haþ hold
 Where he knewe he shuld þis lady se
 And whan he segþ his tyme anon riȝt he 1308

GROUP F. § 4. FRANKLIN'S TALE. Petworth MS.

With dredful herte and humble chere
 Salwed haþ his souereyn lady dere
 My riȝtful lady quod þis wooful man .
 Whom I most drede and loue as I best can . 1312
 And lopest were of al þis world displese
 Nere it þat I for ȝou haue suche dissesse
 That I most dye here at ȝoure fote anon
 ¶ But not wolde I telle howe me is woo bygoñ 1316
 But certes eiþer most I deye or pleien .
 Ȝe slee me gildelees for verrey peyne
 But of my deth þouȝe ye haue no rouþe
 Avise ȝou er þat ȝe lese ȝoure trouþe 1320
 Repentē ȝou for þilke god aboute
 Er ȝe me sleen by cause þat I ȝou loue
 ffor madame wel ȝe wote þat ȝe han hiȝt
 Not þat I chalence eny þing of riȝt 1324
 Of ȝou souereyn lady but ȝour grace
 But in a gardyne ȝonde in such a place
 Ȝe wote riȝt wel þat ȝe bihote me
 And in myn honde ȝoure trouþe bliȝt ȝe 1328
 To loue me best god wote ȝe saide so
 Al be þat I vnworþi am þerto .
 Madame I seie it for þe honure of ȝou .
 More þan to saue myn hertes lif riȝt nowē . 1332
 I haue done as ȝe comaunded me [leaf 187]
 And if ȝe vouchesauf ȝe may go see
 And as ȝou lust haueþ ȝoure bihest in mynde
 ffor qwikke or dede riȝt þus ȝe shullen me finde 1336
 In ȝou lif aȝ to do me lyve or deye
 But wel I woote þe rockes bene aweye
 He toke his leue and she astonyed stode
 In al her face þer nas on drope of blood 1340
 She wende neuere han commen in such a trappe
 Allas quod she þat this euere shuld happe
 ffor wende I neuere by possibilite
 þat such a meschaunce shuld euere be 1344

It is azeinst^t þe processe of nature ¹ [¹ These lines are trans-
posed in the MS.]
 And home she goþ a soriful creature ¹
 ffor verrey fere vnneþes may she goo /
 She wepeþ and weilleþ a day or twoo 1348
 And swowneþ þat^t it^t rauthe was to see
 But^t whi it^t was to no wiz^t tolde she
 ffor out^t of toune was goon Arueragus
 But^t to hure self she seide and speke þus. 1352
 In hure compleynte as ȝe shul aftere here
 With face pale *and* wiþ soriful chere
 Allas quod she on þe fortune I playn
 þat^t vnware hast^t wrapped me in þi chayn 1356
 ffor which^h þe eskaþe wote I.no socour^r
 Saue only deþ eiper dishonour^r
 Oon of þise two bihoueth me to chese
 But^t napelees ȝit^t had I leuer^r lese 1360
 My lif þan of my body to haue a shame
 Eiper knowe my self fals eiper lese my name
 And wiþ my deþ I may be quytte I-wis
 Han þer nat^t mony a wif er þis 1364
 And mony a maiden slayn her self allas
 Raper þan wiþ her bodies done trespas
 And certes loo þise stories beren witnesse
 Whan xxx.^{ti} tirauntz ful of cursednesse. 1368
 Had slayn Phidon in Athenes at^t þe lest^t [leaf 187, back]
 They commaunded his douȝters to arest^t
 And bringgen [hem] byforn hym in despit
 Al naked to fulfille her foule delite 1372
 And in her faders bloode þei made hem daunce
 Vppon þe pauement^t god ȝeue hem meschaunce
 ffor which^h þise wooful maidens ful of drede
 Raiþer þan þei wolde lese her maidenhede 1376
 þei prively bene sterte into a welle
 And dreinte hem self as þe bokes telle
 Thei of mesue lete enquire and seke
 Of lacedemye .l. maidens eke 1380

GROUP F. § 4. FRANKLIN'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

On which þei wolden doñ her lecherie
 But^t was þer none of al þat^t companye
 þat^t she nas slayn and wiþ a glad entent^t
 Chese þe rapere to die þan to assent^t 1384
 To bene enpressed of her maidenhede
 Whi shuld^t I þan to dye bene in drede
 Lo eke þe tiraunte Austoclides
 þat^t loued a maiden which hiȝt^t Symphalides 1388
 Whan þat^t hure fadere slayn was on a nyȝt^t
 Vnto Diances temple goþ she anoñ riȝt^t
 And hent^t þe ymage wiþ hure armes twoo /
 ffrom which ymage she nolde neuer goo 1392
 No wiȝt^t myȝt^t fro hit^t hure handis race
 Til she was slayn in þe self place
 Nowe siþens þat^t maidens had such^t despit^t
 To bene defouled wiþ mannys foule delite 1396
 Wel ouȝte a wiff rapere hure self slee
 þan ben defouled as þenkeþ me
 What^t shal I sayn of hasdrubaldys wif
 þat^t at Cartage biraft^t herself hur lif 1400
 ffor whan she segh^t þat^t Romayns wan þe toun
 She toke her chuldren alle and swept^t adoun
 Into þe fuyre and ches rather to dye
 þan eny Romayn did hure vilenye 1404
 Hap^t not^t lucres yslayn hure self allas [leaf 188]
 At Rome þere she oppressed was
 Of Tarquyne for hure pouȝt^t it^t was a shame
 To live whan þat^t she had lost^t her name 1408
 The .viij. maidens of Melesie also /
 Han slayn hem self for drede *and* woo /
 Rapere þan folk of gaule shuld^t hem oppresse
 Moo þan a Mⁱ stories as I gesse 1412
 Coupe I nowe telle as touching^t þis matere
 Whan habradas was slayn his wif so dere
 Her self sclowe and lete her blood to glide
 In Habradas woundes brood *and* wide 1416

And saide my body at þe leeste waye
 Ther shal no wight defoile if þat I may
 What shuld I moo ensamples herof sayn
 Sipeþ þat so mony han hem self selayn 1420
 Wel rapen þan þei wolde defowled be
 I wil conclude what is best for me
 [Tho sleen my self. than be defowled thus [MS Reg. 17 D 15,
 I wilbe trewe. vnto Arueragus] leaf 188] 1424
 Eiper rapen slee my self in some manere
 As did Demonycions douztere dere
 By cause þat she nolde defoiled be
 O Cedasus it is ful grete pite 1428
 To reden how þi douzters deiden allas
 þat sclowe hem self for suche manere cas
 As grete appetit was it or more
 The theban maiden þat for Nichasore 1432
 [Hir selfen slough right for suche a maner woo [MS Reg. 17 D 15,
 Another theban mayden dide right so] leaf 188]
 Hure had wedded and sore dressed. [spurious]
 For oon of Masidoigne had hure oppressed. 1435
 What shal I seyn of Nicharatyfs wiff
 þat for such caas biraft her self her lif
 Howe trewe was eke to Alcebiades
 His loue þat forto dyen [rapen] ches 1440
 þan forto suffre his body vmbreided be
 Loo which a wif was alcesteyn quod she
 What Emore of good Penelope
 Alle-Grece knowep of her chaastite 1444
 Parde of leodomya is written þus [leaf 188, back]
 That whan a Troy was slayn protheselayus
 No lenger nold she lyf aftere his day
 þe same of noble porcia telle I maye 1448
 Wip-outen brutus quod she not lyve
 To whom [s]he had alhole hure herte ȝeue
 The parfit wifhode of Archemesie
 Honoured is þorgh alle þe barberye 1452

O teuta quene in þi wifly chastite
 To alle wives may þou a myrour be
 [. . . no gap in the MS: these lines
 known only in Ellesmere MS.] 1456
 Thus playned Dorigen a day or tweye
 Purposinge euere þat she wolde deye
 But napeles vpon þe þred nyȝt
 Home came Arueragus þe worthi knyȝt 1460
 And asked hure whi þat she wepte so sore
 And she gan wepen euere þe lenger more
 Allas quod she þat euere was I borne
 Thus haue I seide quod she þus haue I sworȝ 1464
 I tolde hym alle as ȝe han herde bifore
 It nedep not rehersen it here-of no more.
 This husbonde wiȝ glad chere in sondry wise
 Answerde and seide as I shal [ȝou] devise 1468
 Is þer ouȝt ellis Dorigen but þis
 Nay nay quod she god helpe me so as wisse
 þis is to moche if it were goddes wille
 ȝe wiff quod he lat selepe þat is stille 1472
 It may be wel ȝit peraventure to saye
 ȝe shullen ȝoure troupe holden be my fay
 ffor god so wisly helpe me
 I had wel leuere ystikked forto be 1476
 ffor verrey loue which I to ȝou haue
 But ȝif ȝe shuldȝ ȝoure trouthe Saue
 Troupe is þe hiest þing þat man may kepe
 But wiȝ þat word he brast anȝon to wepe 1480
 And seide I ȝou forbede in peyn of deȝh
 That neuer whiles ȝou lastep lif & breȝh
 To no wiȝt telle of þis cure [leaf 189]
 As I may I most my lif endure 1484
 Ne make no countenaunce of heuynesse
 þat folk of ȝou may deme harme or gesse
 And forþ he clepeþ a sqwiere and a mayde
 Gop forþ anoȝn wiȝh Dorigen he saide 1488

And bringeþ hure to such a place anoñ
 Thei toke her leue and on her way þei goñ
 But þei ne wiste whi she thider went
 He nolde no wizt telle hure entent 1492

[.

 1496

 *no gap in the MS.*]

This Sqwier which þat hizt Aurelius
 On dorigen which þat was so ameraus 1500
 Of auenture happed hure to mete
 Amydde þe toune riȝt in þe qwikke strete
 As she was boune to goo þe way forþ riȝt
 Toward the gardeyn þer as she had hizt 1504
 And he was to þe gardeyn ward also
 ffor wel he aspied whan she wolde goo
 Out of her hous to eny manere place
 But þus þei mette by auenture or grace 1508
 And he salueþ her wiþ glad entent
 And axed of hure whidere þat she went
 And she answerd half as she were madde
 Vnto þe Gardyne as myn husbond badde 1512
 My troupe forto hold alleas allas
 Aurelius gan wondere of þis cas.
 And in his hert had grete compassion
 Of hure and of her lamentacioñ 1516
 And of Arueragus þe worþi knyȝt
 þat bad hure holde al þat she hight
 So lope he was hys wiff sholde breke her troupe
 And in his hert he cast of þis grete routhe 1520
 Consideringe þe best on euery side
 þat from his lust hym were better abide
 Than done so high a cherles wrecchednesse
 Aȝeinst fraunches and al gentillesse 1524

for which in fewe wordes seide he þus [leaf 189, back]
 Madame seiþ to 3oure lorde Arueragus .
 þat siþen I se his grete gentilnesse
 To 3ou and eke I see wel 3oure distresse 1528
 If 3e by me shulde breke 3oure troupe 1530
 Certes me þenkeþ it were grete roupe [spurious 1529]
 I haue wel leuer euere to suffre woo
 þan I departe þe loue ytwix 3ou twoo 1532
 I 3ou relese madame into 3oure honde
 Quite euery surement and euery bonde
 That 3e han made to me as here biforñ
 ¶ Siþens þilk tyme þat 3e were born 1536
 My troupe I plizt I shal 3ou neuer repreeft . . /
 Of no biheest and here I take my leue
 As of þe trewest & þe beste wiff
 þat euere 3it I knewe in al my lif 1540
 And euery wizt be ware of hure biheest
 On Dorygen remembreþ at þe leste
 Thus can a squyere doñ a gentile dede
 As wel as can a knyzt wiþ-oute drede 1544
 She þonked hym vpon hure knees al bare
 And home vnto hure husbonde is she fare
 And tolde hym alle as 3e han herd me seide
 And be 3e siker he was ful wel apaide 1548
 It were impossible to write
 What nedep lenger in þis cas endite
 ¶ Arueragus and Dorigen his wiff
 In souereyn blisse leden forþ her lif 1552
 Neuer aftere was þer anger hem bitwene
 He Shershed hure as þouze she were a quene
 And she was to hym trewe for euermore
 Of þise two folk 3e gete of me no more 1556
 ¶ Aurelius þat his cost hap forlorñ
 Curseþ þe tyme þat euere he was born
 Allas quod he alas þat I bihizt
 Of pured gold a thousand ponde of wizt 1560

Vnto þis philosophe how shal I doo [leaf 190r]
 I se no more but þat I am fordoo
 Mine heritage most I selle
 And bene a begger here I may not dwelle 1564
 And shamen al my kynrede in þis place
 But I of him may gete better grace
 But napelees I wil of hym assaie
 At certeyn dayes 3ere by 3ere to paie 1568
 And þonke him of his grete curtesie
 My troupe wil I kepe I wil not lie
 Wiþ herte sore he goþ vnto his cofre
 And brouȝte golde vnto þis philysophre 1572
 þe value of .v. C. ponde I gesse
 And hym bisecheþ of his gentilnesse
 To graunte hym daies of þe remenaunte
 And saide maistere I dar wel make auaunte 1576
 I failled neuere of my troupe 3it
 ffor sikerly my dette shal be quytt
 Towardes ȝou how þat euere I fare
 To goon a begger in my kirtel bare 1580
 But wolde ȝe vouche sauf vpon swerte
 Two 3ere or þre forto respite me
 þan were I welle for ellis mote I selle
 ¶ Myn heritage þer nys no more to telle 1584
 This Philisophre soberly answerde
 And seide þus whan he þis word herde
 Haue I not holde conaunte vnto þe
 ȝis certes wel and trewly quod he 1588
 hast þou not had þi lady as þe likeþ
 No no quod he and sorily he sikeþ
 What was þe cause telle me ȝif þou can
 Aurelius his tale anon bygan 1592
 And tolde hym alle as ȝe han herd bifore
 It nedep not to rehercen it no more
 He saide Arueragus of gentilnesse
 Had leuere dey in sorowe and distresse 1596

GROUP F. § 4. FRANKLIN'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

Than his wif were of hure trowþe fals [leaf 190, back]
 The sorowe of dorigen he tolde hym als
 Howe lope hire was to be a wicked wiff
 And þat she leuere þat day lost hure liff 1600
 And þat hure trouþe she swore þourgh Innocence
 She neuere erst herde speke of apparence
 That made me han of hure so grete pite
 And riȝt as frely as he sent hire me 1604
 As freely sent I hire to hym aȝein
 This is alle and some þer nys no more to seyn
 This Philisophre answerd leue broþer
 Euerich of ȝou did gentilich til oþer 1608
 Thou art a squyere and he a knyȝt
 But god forbede for his blisful myȝt
 But if a clerk couþe do a gentile dede
 As wel as eny of ȝou it is no drede 1612
 Sir I relece þe þi þousand ponde
 As þow riȝt now were copen out of þe grounde
 Ne neuere er nowe haddest þou knowe me
 ffor sir I nyl not take a peny of þe 1616
 ffor al my craft and my travaile
 þow hast ypaied wel for my vitaile
 It is ynowe and fare wele & haue good day
 And toke his hors and forþ he goþ his way 1620
 ¶ Lordingges þis question wil I aske nowe
 Which was þe most free as þenkeþ ȝou
 Nowe telleþ me er þat I forþer wende
 I Can no more my tale is at an ende 1624
 ¶ Thus endeþ þe ffrankleyn his tale

GROUP G. FRAGMENT VIII.

§ 1. THE SECOND NUN'S TALE.

PETWORTH MS.

[*THE PROEM.*]

[on leaf 190, back]

[No breaks between the stanzas in the MS.]

¶ And here byginneþ þ^e prologe of ij. nonne

(1)

T he mynystere and þe norice vnto vices	1
Which þat' men clepen in englissh ydelnesse	
The porter of þe gate is of delices	
To eschewe and by her contrary hure oppresse	4
þat' is to sayn by leeful bysynesse	
Wel ouȝt' we to doñ our entent'	
Lest' þat' þe feend' þorgh ydelnesse vs shent'	[leaf 191] 7

(2)

F or he þat' wiþ his þousande cordes selize	8
Continuelly vs waiteþ to be-clappe	
Whan he may man in ydelnesse asprie	
He can so liztly cacche him in his trappe	11
Til þat' a man be hent' rizt' by þe lappe	
He nys nat' ware þe fende hap hym on hond'	
wel ouȝt' vs worch and ydelnesse wiþstond'	14

(3)

A nd þouȝe men dradden neuere forto deye	15
ȝit' seen men wel by resoun doutelees	
That' ydelnesse is roten scloggardye	
Of whiche þer neuere commeth non encrees	18
And siþens þat' sclouth hure holdep in a lees	
Only to selepe and forto ete and drinke	
And to devouren alle þat' opere swynke	21

(4)

And forto putten vs from such ydelnesse	22
That cause is of þe grete confusiōn	
I haue here done my feipful bysynesse	
Aftere þe legende in translaciōn	25
Riȝt of þi glorious lif <i>and</i> passiō	
Thow wiþ þi garlond wrouȝt of rooses <i>and</i> lilie	
The mene I maiden and marter' seint' Cicile	28

(5)

And þou þat floure of virgynes art alle	29
Of whom þat Barnard lust so wel to write	
To þe at my bygynnyng' furst' I calle	
Thou comforte of vs wrecches do me endite	32
þine maidens deþ þat was þorgh þi merite	
þe eternal lif and of þe feende victorie	
Certes men may aftere reden in his storie	35

(6)

Thow maiden <i>and</i> modere douȝter' of þi sone	36
Thow welles of mercy synful soules cure	
In whom þat god for bounte chees to wone ¹	[¹ wone later]
Thowe humble and hegh ouere euery creature	39
Thou nobledest so ferre oure nature	
That no desdeyn þe maker had of kynde	
His sone in blood and flessch to cloþ <i>and</i> wynde	42

(7)

Wiþ-Inne þe cloystere blisful of þi sidys	[leaf 191, back]	43
Toke mannys shappe þe eterne loue <i>and</i> pees		
þat of þe trynie compas lorde and gide es		
Whom erþe and see and heuene wiþ out relees		46
Ay heryen and þou virgyne wemlees		
Bare of þi body and dwellest maiden pure		
þe creatour of euery creature		49

(8)

Assembled is in þe magnificence 50
 Wiþ mercy goodnesse *and* such pite
 That þou arte þe sonne of excellence
 Nouȝt only helpest hem þat preien þe 53
 But oftetyme of þi benignyte
 Ifful frely er þat men þine helpe biseche
 þow goost byforn and art her lyues leche 56

(9)

Now helpe þou meke and blisful faire maide 57
 Me flemed wrech in þis deserte of galle
 Thenk on þe womman Canane þat saide
 þat whelpes eten somme of þe crommes alle 60
 þat from her lordis table bene yfalle
 And þouȝe þat I þe vnworþi sone of Eue
 Be sinful ȝit accepte my bileue 63

(10)

And for þat feiþ is dede wiþ-out werkes 64
 So for to worchen ȝeue me witte *and* space
 þat I be quytte from place þat most derk es
 O þou þat art so faire and so ful of grace 67
 Be myne aduocate in so high a place
 Ther as wiþ-out ende is songe Osanna
 þou cristes moder and douȝter of Anna 70

(11)

And of þi liȝt my soule in prison liȝt 71
 þat troubled is by þe contagioñ
 Of my body and also by þe wiȝt
 Of erþly lust and fals affection 74
 O heuene o. refute .o. saluacioñ
 Of hem þat bene in sorowe *and* in distresse
 Nowe helpe for to my werk I wil me dresse 77

(12)

3it prey I 3ou þat' reden þat' I write	78
fforyeueþ me þat' I doo no diligence	[leaf 192]
þis ilk storie subtely to endite	
ffor boþ haue I þe wordys <i>and</i> þe sentence	81
Of hem þat' at' sey[n]tes reuerence	
þe storie wroot' and folowen her legende	
And prei 3ou þat' 3e wil my werk amende	84

(13) [*THE TALE.*]

First' wolde I 3ou þe name of seint' Cicile	85
Expounē as men in her stories see	
It' is to saye in engelisshe heuenes lilie	
ffor pure chaastnesse of virginite	88
Oyþer for she witnesse had of honeste	
Of grene of consciens <i>and</i> of good fame	
The swote sauoure lilie was hure name	91

(14)

Oyþere Cicile is to say þe way to blynde	92
ffor she ensample was by good techinge	
Or ellis Cicile as I writen fynde	
Is ioyned by a manere conioynynge	95
Of heuene and lya <i>and</i> hier in figurynge	
þe heuene is sette for þou3t' of holynesse	
And lya for hure lastinge bisynesse	98

(15)

Cicile maye eke be seide in þis manere	99
Wantyng' of blyndenesse for hure grete li3t'	
Of sapience and of her thewes clere	
Oyþer ellis loo þis maidens name bri3t'	102
Of heuene <i>and</i> leos commēþ for which by ri3t'	
Men my3t' þe heuene of puple hure calle	
Ensample of good and wise werkes alle	105

(16)

For leos puple in englissh is to say 106
 And riȝt^t as men may in þe heuen see
 The sonne and mone *and* þe sterres euery way
 Riȝt so [men] goostly in þis maiden fre 109
 Seen þe feiþ of magnificence
 And eke of helpe and of sapience
 And sondry werkes briȝt^t of excellence 112

(17)

And riȝt^t as þise philisophres write 113
 þat^t heuene is swift^t rounde *and* brennynge
 Riȝt^t so was faire Cicile þo white [leaf 192, back]
 fful swift^t and bisy euere in werkinge 116
 And rounde and hool in good perseuerynge
 And brenne euere in charite liȝt^t
 Now haue I declared ȝou what^t she hiȝt^t 119

¶ Thus endeþ þe prologe / & here bygynneþ þ^e.ij nonnes
 tale

(18)

This maiden briȝt^t Cicile as hure lif saiþ ¶ þe tale.
 was comen of Romaynes *and* of noble kynde
 And so forþe fostred vp in þe faip
 Of criste and bare hys gospel in her mynde 123
 She neuere sesed as I writen fynde
 Of hure preiere and god to loue and drede
 Bisechinge hym to kepe her maidenhede 126

(19)

And whan þis maiden shuld^t vnto a man 127
 ywedded be þat^t was ful ȝenge of age
 That^t ycleped was valirian
 And þe day was comen of hure mariage 130
 She fille deuoute and humble in her corage
 Vndere hure Robe of gold^t þat^t sat ful faire
 And next^t hure fless^h yclad was in an haire 133

(20)

And while þe Orgels maden melodie	134
To god allone þus in hert' songe she	
O lorde my saule <i>and</i> eke my body gie	
Vnwemmed lest' þat' I confounded be	137
And for his loue þat' dyed on a tree	
Euery secounde or <i>thridde</i> ¹ day she fast'	[1 MS. iij.]
Ay bidynge in here orisons ful fast'	140

(21)

The nyght' come and to bed she most' gooñ	141
Wiþ hure husbonde as aften is þe manere	
And priuely she seide anōn	
O swete and welbiloued spouse dere	144
þer is a counsaile <i>and</i> 3e wold' it' here	
Which þat' riȝt' fayn I wolde vnto 3ou seien	
So þat' 3e me assured it' nouȝt' bywreien	147

(22)

Valeryan gan fast' vnto hure swere	148
þat' for no caas ne þinge þat' myȝt' be	
He shold for no þinge neuere bewrien here	[leaf 193]
And þan at' arst' þus to hym seide she	151
I haue an aungeĥ which þat' loueþ me	
þat' wiþ grete loue whedere I wake or slepe	
Is redy ay my body forto kepe	154

(23)

And ȝif þat' 3e may felen out' of drede	155
þat' 3e wil 3ou gouerne no þinge amys	
He wil 3ou saue and kepe to 3e be dede	
ffor 3oure clene lyuyng' & 3oure goodnesse	158
And bring' 3ou streiȝte into heuene blesse	
He wol 3ou loue as me for 3oure clennessse	
And schewen 3ou of his Ioye and his briȝtnesse	161

(24)

Valerian corrected as god wolde 162
 Answerde aȝein if I shal trust to þe
 lat me þat aungel se and hym biholde
 And ȝif þat it a verrei aungel be 165
 þan wil I done as þou hast preide me
 ¶ And ȝif þou loue anoþer man þan me
 riȝt wiþ þis swerde I wil slee ȝou boþe 168

(25)

Cicile Answerde anone in þis wise 169
 And if ȝou lust þat aungel shul ȝe see
 So þat ȝe trowe on criste and ȝou baptise
 God forþ to Via Apia quod she 172
 þat from þis toune ne stant but myles þre
 And to þe pore folk þat þere dwelle
 Say hem riȝt þus as þat I shal ȝou telle 175

(26)

Say þat I Cicilie ȝou to hem sent 176
 To shewe ȝou þe good vrbān þe olde
 ffor secrete nede and for good entent
 And whan þat ȝe seint Vrbān han byholde 179
 Telle him þe wordes which I to ȝou tolde
 And whan þat he haþ purged ȝou fro synne
 þan shul ȝe seen þat aungel er ȝe twyrne 182

(27)

Valerian is to þat place ygōn 183
 And riȝt as hym was tauȝt by his lurnynge
 He fonde þis holy Vrbān anoñ ./
 Amonge þise seintes buriels lowtyngge [leaf 193, back] 186
 And he anoñ wiþ-out taryngge
 Did his massage and whan he had [it] tolde
 Vrbān for ioie gan his hondes vp holde 189

(28)

The teeres from his eien lete he falle	190
Almyȝty god o Ihesu crist ^t quod he	
Sowere of chaast ^t counsaile & herde of vs alle	
The fruyte of þilke seede of chaastite	193
þat ^t þou haste sawe in cicile take to þee	
Loo like a bisy bee wiþ-out ^t gile	
þe serueth ay þine owne thralle Cicile	196

(29)

For þilk spouse þat ^t she toke but ^t nowe	197
fful like a ferce leon she sendeþ here	
As meke as eny lombe was to ȝou .	
And wiþ þat ^t worde anoñ þer gan apere	200
An olde man clad wiþ white cloþes clere	
And had a boke wiþ lettres of golde in honde	
And gan biforne Valerian stonde	203

(30)

Valerian as dede fille doune for drede	204
whan he hym segħ and hym vphent ^t þoo .	
And on his boke þus he gan to rede	
Oo lord oo feiþ oo god wiþ-oute moo	207
Of cristendome and fadere of aH also .	
Abouen alle <i>and</i> oueral euery where	
þise wordes al wiþ gold [y]writen were	210

(31)

Whan þis was radde þat ^t seide þis olde man	211
Leuest ^t þou þis þing ^t or no sai ȝe or nay	
I leue al þis þin[g] / [quod Valerian [Harl. 7335, leaf 93, back]	
ffor sother thyng ^t] & ¹ þis I dar wel saye [¹ than Harl.]	214
Vndere þe heuene no wiȝt ^t ne þenk may	
¶ Tho vashed þat ^t olde man he nyst ^t wher	
And pope Vrban hym cristened riȝt ^t þere	217

(32)

Valerian goþ home to seint ^t Cicile	218
And wit ^h Inne his chambre an Aungel he seg ^h stande	
þis aungel had of rose <i>and</i> of lilie	
Corownes two þe whiche he bare on hande	221
And first ^t to Cicile as I vnderstande	
Be 3af þat ^t oon and aftere gan he take	[leaf 194]
þat ^t oþer to Valerian her make	224

(33)

Wiþ body clene and wiþ vnwemmed þou3 ^t	225
kepeþ ay wel þise corownes quod he	
ffrom paradise to 3ou haue I hem brou3 ^t	
Ne neuere more shul þei roten be	228
Ne lese her swete sauoure tresteth me	
Ne neuere wi3 ^t shal seene hem wiþ his ye	
But ^t he be chaast ^t and hate vilenye	231

(34)

And þou valerian for þou so sone	232
Assentest ^t to good counsaile also	
ffay what ^t þe lust ^t and þou shalt ^t haue þi bone	
I haue a broþer quod Valerian þoo	235
þat ^t in þis world ^t I loue no man soo /	
I prey 3ou þat ^t my broþere may haue grace	
To knowe þe troupe as I do in þis place	238

(35)

The aungel answerde god likeþ 3our request ^t	239
And boþ wiþ þe palme of marterdome	
3e shul come vnto þe blisful fest ^t	
And wiþ þat ^t worde tiburce his broþere come	242
And whan þat ^t he þe sauoure vndernome	
Wiþ þat ^t þe roses and þe lilies caste	
Wiþ-Inne his herte he gan to wonder faste	245

(36)

And saide in þis tyme I wondere of þe ȝere 246
 whennys þis swete sauoure *commeþ* soo /
 And roses and lilies þat I smelle here
 ffor þouȝe I had hem in myn hondes twoo 249
 þe sauoure myȝt in me no depper goo
 þe swete smelle þat in myn hert I fynde
 Haþ chaunged me al in a noþer kinde 252

(37)

Valerian saide two corownes haue we 253
 Snowe white and rose rede þat shyneþ clere
 which þat pine eyen han no myȝt to see
 And as þowe smellest hem þouȝe þi preiere 256
 So Shalt þou sene hem leue broþer dere
 ȝif it so be þou wilt wiþ-oute scloupe .
 Byleue a riȝt and knowe þe verrey troupe [leaf 194, back]

(38)

Tyburce answerd seist þou þis to me 260
 In soþnesse or in dreeme herken ȝe þis
 In dremes *quod* Valerian han we be
 Into þis tyme broþer myn ywis 263
 But nowe at arst our troupe dwelling is
 Howe woost þou quod Tiburce & in what wise
 Quod Valerian þat shal I þe devise 266

(39)

The Aungel of god haþ me þe troupe tauȝt 267
 Which þat þou shalt seen if þat þow wilt reneye
 The ydoles and be clene and ellis nauȝt
 But of þe myracles of þise corownes tweye 270
 Seint Ambrose in his preface list to seie
 Solempnely this noble doctour dere
 Commendeþ it and seiþ in þis manere 273

(40)

The palme of marterdome forto receyue	274
Seint ^t Cicile fulfilled of goddys ȝift ^t	
þe worlde and [e]ke hure chambre gan she weyue	
Witnesse Tiburce and Cicilees shrift	277
To which god of his bountee wolde shift ^t	
Corownes two of flowres wel smellynge	
And made þe aungel hem þoo corownes bringe	280

(41)

This made haþ brouȝt ^t þise men to blisse aboue	281
þe world ^t haþ wist ^t what ^t it is worþ certeyne	
Deuocion of chastite to loue	
Tho shewed hym Cicile open and pleyne	284
That ^t alle ydoles nys but ^t þing ^t in veyne	
ffor þei bene dombe and þerto þei bene defe	
And charged hym his ydols forto lef	287

(42)

Who þat ^t þis trouep nat ^t a beest ^t he is	288
Quod þoo tyburce if þat ^t I shal not ^t ly	
She gan þan kisse his brest ^t & þat ^t herd ^t þis	
And was ful glad he couþe trouþ aspie	291
This daye take I þe for myne alye	
Saide þis blesful maide faire & dere	
ffor aftere þat ^t she saide as ȝe may here ./	294

(43)

Loo ryȝt ^t so as þe loue of crist ^t quod She	[leaf 195]	295
Made me þi broþeres wif riȝt ^t in þat ^t wise		
Anoon for myn alie here take I þe		
Sipens þat ^t þou wolt ^t þine ydoles despise		298
Go wiþ þi broþer nowe and þe baptise		
And make þe clene so þat ^t þou maist ^t beholde		
þe Aungels face of which þi brother tolde		301

(44)

Tyburse answerd and seide broþer dere 302
 ffurst telle me whidere I shal and to what man
 To whome quod he come forþ wiþ riȝt goode chere
 I wil þe lede vnto þe pope Vrban 305
 To Vrban broþer myne Valerian
 Quod þoo Tiburce wilt þou me þidere lede
 Me þenkeþ þat it were a wondere dede 308

(45)

Remenest þou nat Vrban quod he þoo 309
 That is so ofte dampned to be dede
 And wonneþ in halkes to and froo
 And dar nat onys put forþ his hede 312
 Men shul hym brenne in a fire so rede
 If he were founde þat men myȝt hym spie
 And we also þat bere hym companye 315

(46)

And whiles we seken þilk Dyuinyte 316
 þat is ihidde in heuene prive
 Algate ybrent in þis world shul we be .
 To whom Cicile answerd bodily 319
 Men myȝt drede wel and skilfully
 This lif to lese myn owne dere broþer
 ȝif þis were lyuyng only and noñ oþer 322

(47)

But þer is better lif in oþer place 323
 That neuere shal be lost drede þe nouȝt
 Which goddes sone vs tolde þourgh his grace
 [That fadres sone hath alle thynges wrought
 And al that wrought is with a skilful thoght
 The gost that fro the fader gan procede
 hath sowled hem with-uten ony drede 329

[Harl. 7335,
leaf 95, bk]

(48)

By word and by myracle he goddes sone	[Harl. 7335]	330
whan he was in this world declared here		
That ther was other lif ther men may wone		
Tho answerde Tiburce o. suster dere		333
Ne sei-destow right now in this manere		
Ther nys but o god lord in sothfastnesse		
And now of three how maisthow bere witnesse		336

(49)

That shal y telle quod she or y go]	[Harl. 7335 <i>extract ends</i>]	
Riȝt as a man haȝ sapiences þre		
Memorie engeyne and intellecte also		
So in oo beinge of diuinite		340
Thre persones riȝt wel þer may be		
Tho gan she hym bisily preche.		
Of cristes come and of his peynes teche	[leaf 195, back]	

(50)

And mony poyntes of his passiō		344
How goddys sonne in þis wiȝ-holde		
To do mankynde pleyn remyssiō		
That was ybounde in cares colde		347
Al þis þinge she vnto Tiburce tolde		
And after þis Tiburce in good entent		
To pope Vrban wiȝ Valerian went		350

(51)

Which þonked god and wiȝ glad hert and liȝt		351
He Cristned hym and made hym in þat place		
Parfit in his lyuynge goddys knyȝt		
And after þis Tiburce gate such grace		354
þat euery day he seiē in tyme and space		
þe Aungel of god and euery maner bone		
þat he god asked it was spedde ful sone		357

GROUP G. § 1. SECOND NUN'S TALE. Petworth MS.

(52)

It were ful harde by order forto seyne	358
Howe mony wonders Ihesu for hym wrou3t	
But atte last to telle short and pleyñ	
The sergeaunt of þe towne of Rome hem sou3t	361
And hem byforn Almachē þe prouost brou3t	
Whiche hem opposed and knewe al her entent	
And to þe ymage of Iubiter he hem sent	364

(53)

And saide who so wil not sacrificise	365
Swap of his heued þis is my sentence here	
Anone þise marteeers þat I 3ou deuise	
On maximius þat was an officere	368
Of þe prefectis and of Corniculere	
Hem hent and whan he forþe þe seyntes ladde	
Hym self he wepte for pite þat he hadde	371

(54)

Whan maximius had herde þe seintes lore	372
he gate hem of þe turmentours leue	
And had hem in his hous wiþ-out more	
And wiþ her preching er þat it were eue	375
þei gone from þe tormentours to reue	
And fro maximius and fro his folk echone	
þe fals feith to trowe in god allone.	378

(55)

Cicile come whan it was woxen ny3t	[leaf 196]	379
Wiþ preestes þat hem cristened al in fere		
And afterward whan day was waxen li3t		
Cicile hem seide wiþ a sobre chere		382
Now cristes owne kny3tes leef and dere		
Castē al away þe werkes of derknesse		
And armeþ 3ou in armure of li3tnesse		385

(56)

3e han forsoþe ydone grete bataille	386
Which is nowe done 3oure feiþ han 3e confermed	
Gop to þe corowne of lif þat may not faile	
The Ri3t Iuge which þat 3e han disserued	389
Tofore hym 3e bene feiþfulli preserued	
And whan þis þinge was seide as I deuise	
Men ladde hem forþe to done þe sacrificise	392

(57)

But whan þei were vnto þe place brou3t	393
To telle shortly þe conclusioun	
þei nolde ensence ne sacrificise ri3t nou3t	
But on her knees þei setten hem adoun	396
Wiþ humble hert and sad deuocioun	
And losten boþ her hedes in þe place	
Her saules wenten to þe kinge of grace	399

(58)

This Maximius þat see þis þinge betide	400
wiþ pitous tales tolde it anon ri3t	
That he her sawles seghe to heuene gl'ide	
Wiþ aungels ful of cleernesse and of li3t	403
And wiþ his worde conuerted mony a wi3t	
ffor which Almachius did hym so to bete	
Wiþ whippe of lede til he his lif gan lete	406

(59)

Cicile hym toke and buried hym anon	407
By Tiburce and Valerian softly	
Wiþ-Inne her heriyng place vnder þe stoñ	
And aftere þis Almachius hastely	410
Bad his mynystres fecchen opynly	
Cicile so she my3t in his presence	
Don sacrificise and Iubiter ensence	413

(60)

But ^t þei conuerted þorgh her wise lore	414
Wepten sore and 3af credence	[leaf 196, back]
Vnto her worde <i>and</i> criden more <i>and</i> more	
Crist ^t goddes sone wiþ-oute difference	417
Is Verrey god þis is all oure sentence	
þat ^t haþ so good a seruante hym to serue	
Thus wiþ oo vois we trowe þou3e we sterue	420

(61)

Almachius þat ^t herde al this [doinge]	421
Bad foche Cicile þat ^t he my3 ^t hure se	
And alderfurst ^t loo þis was his askinge	
What ^t maner womman art ^t þou þo quod he	424
I am a gentile womman born quod she	
I aske quod he þou3e it ^t þe greue	
Of þi religioñ and of þi bileue	427

(62)

Whi þan bygan 3oure question folily	428
Quod she þat ^t woldest ^t two answers conclude	
In oon demannde 3e asked lewedely	
Almachy answerde to þat ^t similitude	431
Of whennys [comth thyn answeyng ^t so rude [Harl. 7335, 1797]	
Of whennys] quod she whan þat ^t she was refreyned	
Of conscience and of good feiþ vnfeyned	434

(63)

Almachius seide takest ^t þou non hede	435
Of þine answeere and she hym answerd ^t þus	
3oure my3 ^t quod she litel is to drede	
ffor euery morteß mannys power nys	438
But ^t lich a bladdere ful of wynde ywis	
ffor wiþ a nedelys poynte whan þat ^t is blowe	
May al þe boost ^t of it ^t be laide ful lowe	441

(64)

Ful wron[g]fully bygonne þou quod he	442
And 3it in wronge is þi perseueraunce	
Woost þou nat how oure my3ty prynces fre	
Ben þus comaunded <i>and</i> maken ordinaunce	445
þat euery cristen wizt shal han penaunce	
But 3if þat he his cristendome wiþseynd	
And goon al quite if he wil it receyne	448

(65)

3oure prynces aren as 3oure noblen dop	449
Quod þoo Cicile and a woode sentence	
3e make vs gilty and it nys nat soth	
ffor 3e þat knowen wel our Innocence	452
ffor as moch as we done Reuerence	
To criste and for we bere a cristen name	
3e put on vs a cryme and eke a blame	455

(66)

But we þat knowen þilk name soo	456
ffor vertuous we may it not say	
Almacy answerde chese on of þise twoo	
Do sacrificise or cristendome reney	459
þat þowe may nowe scapen by þat way	
At which þe holy blisful maide	
Gan forto lau3e and to þe Iuge she saide	462

(67)

O Iuge confuse in þi nycete	463
Wilt þou þat I reneye Innocence	
To maken me a wicked wizt quod she	
loo he dissimuleþ here in audience	466
He stareþ and wodeþ in his aduertence	
To whom Almachius o vnsely wrecch	
Ne woost þow not howe ferre my my3t may strecc	469

(68)

Hap nouȝt^t our myȝty prince to me yȝouen 470
 Ȝe boȝ powere and auctoritee
 To make folk^t to dien or to lyuen
 Whi spekest^t þou so proudly þan to me 473
 I ne speke but^t stedfastly quod she
 Nouȝt^t proudly for I saie as for my side
 I hate dedly pilke vice of pride 476

(69)

And ȝif þou drede nouȝt^t a soȝe to here 477
 þan wil I shewen al openly by riȝt^t
 þat þou hast^t made a ful grete lesinge here
 Thow seist þi princes han ȝeue þe myȝt^t 480
 Boȝ to sleene and forto quyke a wiȝt^t
 Thowe þat^t ne maist^t but^t only lif here by-reue
 Thow nast^t þerto neiȝere power ne leue 483

(70)

[But þou mayst sayn thi prynces han the maked] ^[Harl. 7335, leaf 98]
 Mynyster^t of deȝ for ȝif þou speke of moo
 þow liest^t for þi power^t is ful naked
 Do way þi boldnesse saide Almachius þoo 487
 And sacrificse to our goddys twoo .
 I ne recche nouȝt^t what^t wronge þat^t þou me profre [lf 197, bk]
 ffor I can suffre it^t as a filosofre 490

(71)

But^t pilke wronges may I nat^t endure 491
 þat^t þou spekest^t of oure goddes here quod he
 Cicele answerde oo nyce creature
 þow seidest no word siȝ þou spekest^t to me 494
 þat^t I ne knewe þerwiȝ þi nycete
 And þat^t þowe were in euery maner^t wise
 A lewde officere and a veyn Iustise 497

(72)

Ther lackeþ no þinge to þine vtter eyen	498
þat þou nart blynde for þing þat we seen alle	
þat is a stone þat men may wel asprien	
That ilke stoon a god þou wolt it calle	501
I rede þe lat þine h[ond] vppon it falle	
And taast it wel and stoon þou shalt it fynde	
Sipe þat þou seest it nat wiþ þine eyen blynde	504

(73)

It is a shame þat þe puple shal	505
So scorne þe and lauþe at þi foly	
ffor comonly wommen wote it. weþ ouerall	
That myzty god is in heuene hie	508
And þise ymages wel þan maist þou spie	
To þe ne to hem self may þei nat profite	
And in her effecte þei bene nat worth a myte	511

(74)

Thise and such oþer wordes saide She	512
And he wexe wrooþ and bad she shuld be lede	
home to her hous and in her hous quod he	
Brenne hure in a fuyre wiþ flawmes rede	515
And as he bad ryzt so was done þe dede	
And in a bath. þei gan hure fast shetten	
And nyght and day grete fuyre vnder þei maden	518

(75)

Al þe longe nyzt and eke þe day also	519
ffor al þe fuyre and eke þe baþes hete	
She satte al colde and felt of it no woo	
Ne made hure a drope nouzt forto swete	522
But in þat bath her lif She most lete	
ffor he Almachie wiþ ful wicked entent	
To scleen hure in þe bath his sonde sent /	[leaf 198]

(76)

Thre strokes in þe nekke he smote hure þoo 526
 The turmentour but for no manere chaunce
 He myȝt not smyten al her necke a two
 And for þer was þat tyme an ordynaunce 529
 That none shuld to no man do such penaunce
 þe ferþe stroke to smyten soft or sore
 This turmentour ne durst do no more . 532

(77)

But half dede wiþ her necke ycoruen þere 533
 He laft hure lye and on his waye he went
 þe Cristen folk which aboute hure were
 Wiþ shetes home ful faire hure hente 536
 Thre daies lyued she in þis torment
 And neuere cesed hem þe feiþ to teche
 Whom she had fostred hem she gan to preche 539

(78)

And hem she ȝaf her meueables *and* her þinge 540
 And to þe pope Vrban bytoke hem þoo
 And saide þus I asked þis of heuene kynge
 To han respite . þre daies and no moo 543
 To recomaunde to ȝou er þat I goo
 Thise soules loo *and* þat I myȝt to wirche
 Here of myn hous perpetuelly a chirche 546

(79)

SEynt Vrban wiþ his dekenes priuely 547
 The body fette and buried it by nyȝt
 Amonge his oper seintes honestly
 Hure hous þe churche of seint Cicile hiȝt 550
 Seint Vrban halawed it as he wel myȝt
 In þe which into þis daye in noble wise
 Men done to crist and to his seinte servise . 553

¶ þus endeþ þe tale of þe seconnde nonne

[on leaf 198] ¶ The prologe .

And here bygynneþ þe prologe of þe chanouns ȝeman

Whan ended was þe lif of seinte Cecile
 Er we fully had ryden five myle
 An boghton vnder þe ble vs gan a take
 A man þat' cloþed was in cloþes blake 557
 And vnder þat' he had a white surplis.
 His hakeney þat' was so pomel gris [leaf 198, back]
 So swete þat' it' wondere was to see
 It' semed he had prikked myles þre 561
 þe hors eke þat' his ȝeman rode vpon
 So swette þat' vnneþes myȝt' he goñ
 Aboute þe peitreH stood þe foom ful hie
 He was of fome al flekked as a pie 565
 A male twifolde on his cropour laye
 It' semed þat' he caried litel araye
 Al liȝt' for somer roode þis worþi man /
 And in myn herte wondre I bygan 569
 What' þat' he was til I vnderstode
 How þat' his cloke was sewed to his hode
 ffor which whan I longe had avised me
 I demed hym some chanoñ forto be 573
 His hatte honge at' his bak' doune by a laas
 ffor he had ryden more þan trotte or paas
 He had aye prikked like as he were wood
 A clote leef he had vnder his hode 577
 ffor swote and forto kepe his hede from hete
 But' it' was ioie forto seen hym swete
 His forhede dropped as a Stillatorie
 Were ful of planteyne and of Pyritorie 581

And whan þat he came he gan to crie 582
 God saue quod he þis Ioly companye
 ffast^t haue I prikked quod he for ȝoure sake
 Because þat I wolde ȝou ouertake 585
 To ryden in þis mery company
 His ȝeman eke was ful of curtesie
 And sirres now in þe morowe tide
 Out^t of ȝoure ostelrie I segħ ȝoⁿ ride 589
 And warned here my lorde and my souereyn
 Which þat to ride wiþ ȝou is ful fayn
 ffor his disporte he loueþ daliaunce
 ffrende for þi warnyng^t god ȝeue þe good chaunce 593
 Seide oure hoste certes it^t wolde seme
 Thi lorde were wise and so I may wel deme [leaf 199]
 He is ful iocounde also dar I lay
 Can he ouȝt^t telle a mery tale or twaye 597
 Wiþ which he glade may þis company
 Who sir^t my lord^t : ȝe ȝe wiþ-outen lie
 He can of merth and eke of Iolite
 And þat ynouȝe also sir^t tresteth me 601
 And ȝe hym knewe as wel as do I
 ȝe wolde wonder howe wel and thriftelie
 He couþe worche and þat in sondry wise
 He haþ take on hym mony sondry aprise 605
 Which were ful hard^t for eny þat is here
 To bringe aboute but^t þei of hym it^t lere
 As homely as he ritte amonge ȝou
 If ȝe hym knewe it^t wolde be ȝour prowe 609
 ȝe nolde nat^t forgoñ his aqueyntaunce
 ffor mochel good I dar laie in balaunce
 AH þat I haue in myn possession
 He is a man of hize discrecion 613
 I warne ȝowe wel he is a passing^t man
 Wel kope our^t hoost^t I prey þe telle me þan
 Is he Clerk^t or noon telle what^t he is
 Nay he is gretter þan a clerk^t ywis 617

Seide þe ȝeman and in woordes fewe 618
 Oost of his craft somewhat I wil ȝou shewe
 I saie my lorde can such a sotilte
 But all his craft ȝe may not wit at me 621
 And Somwhat helpe I ȝit to his worchinge
 þat al þis grounde which þat we ben on ridyng
 Til þat we come to caunterberye touñ
 He coude al clere turne vp so down 625
 And paue it al of siluer and of golde
 And whan þis ȝeman had þus ytolde
 Vnto oure hooste he seide Benedicite
 This þing is wonder meruelous to me 629
 Sipens þat þi lord is of so hiȝe prudence
 Bycause of which men shulde hym reuerence [leaf 199, back]
 þat of his worship rekkeþ he so lite
 His ouerscope nys nat worþ a myte 633
 As in effecte to him as mot I goo/
 It is al baudy and to-tore also
 Whi is þi lord so schluttish I þe prey
 And is of power better cloþes to beye 637
 If þat his dede accorde wiþ þi speche
 Telle me þat I þe biseche
 Whi quod þis ȝeman wherto aske ȝe me
 God helpe me so for he shal neuere the 641
 But I wil nat avowe þat I say
 And þefore kepe it secre I ȝou pray
 He is to wise in feiþ as I bileue
 That þat is ouerdone it nyl not preue 645
 And riȝt as clerkes seyn it is a vice
 wherfore in þat I holde hym lewde and nyce
 ffor whan a man haþ ouer grete a witte
 ful often it haddeþ to misusen it 649
 So doþ my lord and þat me greueþ sore
 God it amende I can seye now no more
 Therof no fors good ȝeman quod our hoost
 Syþ of þe konyng of þi lord þou wost 653

Telle howe he doþ I prey þe hertely	654
Sipþes þat he is so crafty and so sely	
Where dwellen ȝe if it to telle be	
In þe Subarbes of a toune quod he	657
Lurkyng in hernes <i>and</i> in lanes blynde	
Where þise Robbers and þeues be kynde	
Holden her p'rve feerful residence	
As þei þat dar not shewen her presence	661
So fare we if I shal say þe soþe	
ȝit quod [our] oste lat me talke to the	
Why art þou discolowred on þi face	
Peter quod he god ȝeue it harde <i>grace</i>	665
I am so vsed þe fire to blowe	
That it haþ chaunged my colour as I trowe	[leaf 200]
I ne am not wonte in no myrour to prie	
But swynke sore and lerne to multiplie	669
We Blundren euere <i>and</i> powren in þe fire	
And for alle þat we faillen of our desire	
ffor euere we lacken our conclusiō	
To moche folk we bene but illusion	673
And borowe golde be it a pound or twoo	
Or ten or twelue or mony <i>sommes</i> moo	
And make hem wenen at the leest wey	
þat of a pounde we cowde make twey	677
ȝit is it fals and ay we han good hope	
It forto doon and aftere it we grope	
But þat science is so fer vs biforne	
We mowe not alle þouȝe we had it sworne	681
It ouertake it slitt away so fast	
It wil vs make beggers at þe last	
þe whiles þis ȝeman was þus in his talkyng	
This Chanoñ drowe hym nere <i>and</i> herd al þinge	685
Which þat þis ȝem[an] spake for suspeciō	
¶ Of mennys speche euere had þis chanoñ	
ffor Caton seiþ he þat gilty is	
Demeþ al þinge be spoke of hym ywis	689

By cause of þat^t he gan so nyȝe to drawe 690
 His ȝeman þat^t herd alle his sawe
 And þus he seide vnto his ȝeman þoo
 Holde now þi pees and speke no wordes moo 693
 ffor if þowe doo þu shalt^t it^t dere aby
 þow sclanderest^t me here in þis company
 And eke diskeuerest þat^t þou shuldest^t hide
 ȝe quod oure hoost^t telle on what^t so betide 697
 Of al þis þretynge rech^h þe not^t a myte
 In feiþ quod he no moore I doo but^t lite
 And whan þis chanon segh^h it^t wold^t nat be
 But^t þat^t his ȝeman wolde telle his priuete 701
 He fledde a-way for verrey sorowe *and* shame
 A quod the ȝeman here shal arise a game [leaf 200, back]
 AH þat^t I can anoñ wil I telle
 Sipens he is goon þe foule fende hym quelle 705
 ffor neuere here after^t wil I wiþ hym mete
 ffor peny ne for pounde I ȝou bihete
 He þat^t me brouȝt^t furst^t vnto þat^t game
 Er þat^t he dye sorowe haue he *and* shame 709
 ffor it^t it is earnest^t to me by my feiþe
 þat^t fele I wele what^t so eny man seiþe
 & ȝit^t for all my smerte *and* al my greff
 ffor al my sorowe . labour *and* meschieff 713
 I kouþe neuere leue it^t in no wise
 Now wold god my wittes myȝt^t suffise
 To tellen al þat^t longen to þat^t art^t
 But^t napeles ȝit^t wil I telle ȝowe part^t 717
 Sipens þat^t my lorde is goon I wil not^t spare
 Suþ þinge as I knowe I wil declare

¶ Thus endeþ þe prologe of þe chanons ȝeman

[on leaf 200, back] & here bygynneþ þ^e tale

[THE PREAMBLE.]

With þis chanon [I] dwelt haue seuene ȝere ¶ The
 And of his science am I neuer þe nere tale ./
 Al þat I had I haue ylost þerby
 And god woo so han many moo þan I
 Ther I was wonte to be rizt fressh and gay
 Of cloþinge and of good aray 725
 Now may I were an hose vpon myne heued
 And where my coloure was boþ fresh and rede
 Now is it wan and of a lewde hwe
 Who so it vseþ sore shal he rwe 729
 And of my swynk ȝit blered is myn ye
 Loo suche auantage it is to multiplie
 That selydinge science haþ me made so bale
 That I haue no good wher so euer y fare 733
 And ȝit am I endetted so þerby
 Of golde þat I haue borrowed trewly
 That whil I lyve I shal it quite neuere
 Lat euery man be ware by me for euere 737
 What maner man þat casteþ hym þerto [leaf 201]
 If he contynue I holde his thrift ydo
 ffor so helpe me god þerby shal he nat wynne
 But empty his purs and make his wyttes þinne 741
 And whan he thorgh his madnesse and folye
 Haþ lost his owne good þorgh Iopardye
 þan he exciteþ oþer men þerto
 To lese her good as hym self haþ doo / 745
 ffor to shrewes Ioies it is an ese
 To haue her felawes in peyn and dissese

Thus was I ones lerned of a clerk'
 Of þat' no charge I wil speke of our' werk' 749
 Whan we bene þere as we shul exercise
 Oure eluessh craft' we seme wonder' wise
 Our teermes bene so clergial *and* so queynte
 I blowe þe fyre til þat' myn hert' feynte 753
 What' shuld' I telle eche *proporcioñ*
 Of þingges which þat we worchen vpon
 As on .v. or .vj. vnces may wel be
 Of Siluere or of som oþer *quantite* 757
 And bisy me to telle 3ou þe names
 Of Orpyment'. brent' bonys yren . squames
 Thatt into powdere grounden bene ful smaþ
 And in an erthen pot' howe þat' pitte is alle 761
 And salt' ypitte In . and also paupere
 Byfore þise powdres þat' I speke of here
 And wel ykeuered wiþ a laumpe of glas
 And of moche oþer þinge what' þer was 765
 And of the potte and glas englutynge
 That' of þe eyre myȝt' passe no þinge
 And of þe Esy fire and smert' also
 Which þat' was made *and* of the care *and* woo 769
 That' we had in our maters sublymynge
 And in amalgamyng and calcenyng
 Of quik siluere ycleped Mercurie crude
 ffor aþ oure sleightes we can not' conclude 773
 Our orpyment' and sublymed Mercurye [leaf 201, back]
 Our grounde litarge eke on þe porphirie
 Of eche of þise of vnces a certeyñ
 Nat' helpeþ vs oure labour is in veyñ 777
 Ne eke oure spirites assencioun
 Ne eke our maters þat' lyen al fixe a-down
 Mowen in oure worchinge no þing' vs availe
 ffor lost' is al our laboure *and* traaille 781
 And aþ þe cost' on twenty deuel weye
 Is lost' also whiche we vpon it' laye

Ther is also mony a nother þing
 That^t is to our craft^t appertenynge 785
 þouȝe I by ordere hem here ne reherce kan
 Because þat^t I am a lewde man
 ȝit^t wil I telle hem as þei come to mynde
 þouȝe I ne can sette hem in her kynde 789
 As boole armonyak . verdegrees . boras
 And sondry vessels made of erþe *and* glas
 Our vrynales and our^t dyscensories
 Violles Creseletys . and sublimatories 793
 Concurbites *and* alembykes eke
 And oþer suche dere ynowe a leke
 Nat^t nedep^t it^t to rehersen hem alle
 Waters rubyfyng *and* bolles galle . 797
 Arsenyke sal armonyak *and* brymston
 And herbes coude I telle eke mony oñ
 As Egrymoyn Valerian *and* lunarie
 And oþer such^t ȝif þat^t me list^t tarie 801
 Our^t lampes brennyng^t boþ nyȝt^t *and* day
 To bringe about^t our craft^t ȝif þat^t we may
 Our furnayes eke of Calcynacioñ
 And of waters albificacioñ 805
 Vnslekke lyme . Chalk *and* gleire of an ey
 Powders divers . Ashes . dunge . pisse . *and* cley
 Sered pockettes . sal peter^t . *and* vitriole
 And dyuers fires made of wode *and* Cole 809
 Salt tartre . alcalie *and* salt^t preparete [leaf 202]
 And combust^t maters and coagulate
 Cley made wiþ horses or mannys here *and* oyle
 Of Tartere . alem glas berme wort^t & argoille 813
 Rysalgere and oþere mateers enbykinge
 And eke of oure mateers encorporinge
 And of [our] Siluer citrinacioñ
 Our sementynge and fermentacioñ 817
 Our ingotes testes *and* mony moo /
 I wil ȝou telle as was me tauȝt^t also

þe four spirites and þe bodies seuene
 By ordre oft' as I herd my lord hem neuene 821
 The first' spirit' quyk-siluere cleped is
 þe Secounde orpyment' þe *thrid'* ywis [1 MS ii]
 Sal Armonyak and þe ferþ bremstone
 þe bodies seuene eke lo hem here anoñ 825
 Sol gold is *and* luna siluer we threpe
 Mars. yren Mercurie quyksiluer' we clepe
 Saturnus lede. and Iubiter is tynne`
 And Venus Coper' be my fadere kynne 829
 This cursed craft' who so wil exercise
 He shal no good han þat' may hym suffise
 ffor al þe good he spendeþ *per*-aboute
 He lese shal þerof haue I no doute 833
 Who so þat' list to outen his folý
 Lat' hym come forþ *and* lerne forto multiplie
 And euery man þat' haþ ouzt' in his cofre
 Lat' [him] apere and wexe a filosofre 837
 Ascaunce þat' craft' is so lýt' to lere
 Nay nay god wote al be he monke or frere
 Preest' chanon or eny *oper* wízt'
 þouze he sitte at' his boke boþ day *and* nyzt' 841
 In lernyng' of þis elvissh nyce lore
 Al is in veyn and parde moche more
 Is to lere a lewde man þis sotille
 ffy speke nat' þerof for it' wil nat' be 845
 Al coude he lettrure or coude he none [leaf 202, back]
 As in effecte he shal fynde it' all one
 ffor boþ twoo be my saluacioñ
 Concluden in multiplicacioñ 849
 Illiche wel whan þei han al ydoo
 This is to seyn þei failen boþ two
 But' 3it' for þat' I to moche rehersaille
 Of waters corosif and of lymaille 853
 And of bodyes mollificacioñ
 And also of her induracioñ

Oilles abluciōn & metal fusible
 To tellen alle wold passen eny bible 857
 þat' owhere is wher as for þe best'
 Of aȝt þise names now wil I me rest'.
 ffor as I trawe I haue ȝou tolde ynowe
 To reisen a feende loke he neuere so rowe 861
 A nay lat' be þi philosophres stone
 Elixir cleped we sechen fast' echone
 ffor had we hym þan were we siker ynouȝe
 But' vnto god of heuene I make avowe 865
 ffor al our craft' whan we han al ydoo
 And al oure sleiȝte he wil not' come vs too/
 He haȝ vs made spende moche good
 ffor sorowe of which almost' we wexen wode 869
 But' þat' good hope crepeȝ in our' hert'
 Supposinge euere þouȝe we sore smert'
 To be releued by hym afterward'
 Supposinge þat' hope is sharpe *and* hard' 873
 I warne ȝou wele it' is to seken euere
 þat' future temps haȝ made men disseuere
 In trest' þerof from alle þat' euere þei hadde
 ȝit' of þat' art' þei koude not' wexen sadde 877
 ffor vnto hem it' is a bitterswete
 So semeȝ it' for ne had þei but' a shete
 Which þei myȝt' wrap hem in a nyȝt'
 And a bak' to walken In by day liȝt' 881
 They wold hem Sellen and spenden on þis craft' [leaf 208]
 They can not stynt' til no þinge be laȝt'
 And euermore wher þat' euere þei gone
 Men may hem knowe by þe smelle of bremstone 885
 ffor al þe worlde þei stynken as a gote
 Her sauour is so rammyssh and so hote
 þat' þouȝ a man fro hem a myle be
 þe Sauour' wil enfecte hym tresteȝ me 889
 Lo Thus by smellyng' and be threde bare aray
 ȝif þat' men lust' þise folk' þei know may

And if a man wil aske hym prively
 Whi þei bene cloþed so vnthriftily 893
 Rizt anone þei wil rownen in his eere
 And seie if þey aspied were
 Men wolde hem slee by cause of her science
 Loo þus þise folk bitraien Innocence 897
 Passe ouer þis I go my tale vnto
 Er þan þe potte be on þe fuyre ydoo
 Of metalles wiþ a certeyn quantite
 My lorde hem tempref and no man but he 901
 Now he is goon I dar saie boldely
 ffor as men seyne he can do craftely
 Algate I wote wel he haþ such a name
 And 3it ful ofte he renneþ in þe blame 905
 And wete 3e how ful ofte it happeth soo /
 The potte to-brekeþ and fare-wel al is goo
 Thise metalles bene of so grete violence
 Our walles may not maken hem resistence 909
 But 3if þei [weren] wrou3t of lyme *and* stone
 þei percen so þat þor3e þe waht þei gone
 And somme of hym synken into þe grounde
 Thus haue we lost by tymes mony a pound 913
 And somme are scatered al the flore aboute
 Somme lepen into þe Roof with-out doute
 Thou3e þat þe feende nat in our 3it hym shewe
 ¶ I trowe þat he wiþ vs be þat schrewe 917
 In helle wher þat he is lord *and* sire [leaf 203, back]
 Ne is þer no more woo angere ne Ire
 Whan þat oure pot is broke as I haue saide
 Euery man chitte and halt hym euel paide 921
 Som saide it was longe on þe fire makinge
 Som saide nay it was on þe blowynge
 Than was I aferde for þat was myn office
 Strawe quod þe þred 3e bene lewde *and* nyce 925
 It was nat tempred as it au3t be
 Nay quod þe ferþe stynt *and* harken me

GROUP G. § 3. CAN.-YEOM. PREAMBLE. **Petworth MS.**

Be cause oure fire was not^t made of beche
 þat^t is þe cause noon opere so theche. 929
 I can not^t telle wheron it^t is alonge
 But^t wel I woot^t gret^t strif is vs amonge
 What quod my lorde þer nys no more to done
 Of þise periles I wil be ware eft^t sone 933
 I am riȝt^t syker^t þat^t þe pot^t was craised
 Be as be may be ȝe no þinge amased^t
 As vsage is lat^t swepe þe flore as swithe
 Pluk vp ȝoure hert^t and be ȝe glad *and* blithe 937
 þe Mullok^t on an hepe yswoped was
 And on þe floore cast^t a canvas.
 And al this Mullok in a sif yth[r]owe
 And ysifted and yplukked many a throwe 941
 Parde quod oon somewhat^t of oure metaH
 ȝit^t is þer here þouȝe we haue nat^t aH
 And þouȝe þis þinge myshapped haþ as nowē
 Anoper tyme It^t may be wel ynowe 945
 Vs most^t putt^t our good in auenture
 A Marchaunte parde may not^t ay endure
 Trestep me wel in his prosperite
 Somtyme his good is drowned in þe see 949
 And somtyme commeth it^t sauþ vnto þe londe
 Pees quod my lorȝ þe next^t tyme I wil fonde
 To brynge our craft^t al in anoper plite
 And but^t I doo sirs lat^t me haue þe wite 953
 Ther was defaute in somewhat^t wel I wote [leaf 204]
 And oper seide þe fire was ouere hote
 But^t be it^t hote or cold I dar saie þis
 þat^t we concluden euer more amys 957
 We failen of that^t which þat^t we wold^t haue
 And in oure madnesse euermore we raue
 And whan we bene to-gidere euerechoñ
 Euery man semeþ as wise as Salomoñ 961
 But^t al þinge which þat^t seineþ¹ as þe golde [1 or semeþ]
 Is nat^t golde as I haue herȝ it^t tolde

Ne euery appel þat is faire at ye	
Ne is not god what so men clappe or crie	965
Riȝt so loo fareþ it amonges vs /	
He ¹ þat semeþ þe wisest by Ihesus	[¹ or Ho]
Is moost foole whan it commeþ to þe preef	
And he þat semeþ trewest is a þeef	969
That shul ȝe knowe er þat I from 30 ^u wende	
Be þat I of my tale haue made an ende	

[No break in the MS.]

[THE TALE.]

Ther is a chanon of Religioun	¶ 2 ^a pars. 1.
Amonges vs wolde enfecte al a town	973
Thouze it as grete were as was Nyniue	
Rome . Alisaundre . Troie & oper þre	
his sleightes and his infinite falsnesse	
Ther couþe no man writen as I gesse	977
Thouze þat he myȝt lyuen a thousand ȝere	
In al þis world of falsenesse nys his pere	
ffor in his teermes he wil hym so wynde	
And speke his wordes in so sleȝe a kynde	981
Whan he comune shal wiþ eny wiȝt	
That he wil make hym dote anoñ riȝt	
But it þe feende be as hym seluen is	
fful mony a man haþ he bygyled er þis	985
And wil if þat he may lif a while	
And ȝit men riden and goon ful mony a myle	
Hym forto seke and haue of a-queyntaunce	
Nat knowing of his fals gouernaunce	989
And ȝif ȝe lust to ȝeue me audience	[leaf 204, back]
I wil it tellen in wiþ ȝoure presence	
But worshipful Chanoñ Religious	
Ne demeþ not I slaundere ȝour hous	993
Al-þouze my tale of a chanon be	
Of euery ordere som shrewe is parde	
And god forbede þat aȝ a companye	
Shulde rewe a syngule mannys foly	997
To slaundere ȝou is nat myn entent	
But to correcten þat mys I-ment	

This tale was not^t only told^t for 3ou
 But^t eke for oþer moo 3e wote wel howe 1001
 That^t amonges *cristes* apostels twelue
 þer ne was no traitour but^t Iudas selue
 Than whi shulde þe remenaunte att haue blame
 þat^t giltlecs were be 3ou saye I þe same 1005
 Sauf only þis if 3e wil harken me
 If eny Iudas in 3oure couent^t be
 Remeueth hym be tyme I 3ou rede
 If shame or losse may causen eny drede 1009
 And beþ no þinge displesed I 3ou pray
 But^t in this caas herkneþ what^t I say
 In london was a preest^t an annuelere
 That^t *per*Inne dwelled had mony a 3ere 1013
 Which was so plesaunt^t *and* so seruisable
 Vnto þe wiff where he was att table
 That^t she wolde suffre hym no þing^t forto paye
 ffor borde ne. cloþinge went^t he neuere so gay 1017
 And spending^t siluere had he ri3t^t ynowe
 Therof no force I wil procede as nowe
 And telle forþ my tale of þe chanoñ
 þat^t brou3t^t þis preest^t to confusioñ 1021
 This fals chanoñ came vpon a day
 Vnto þe preestes chambere þer he lay
 Bysechinge hym to lene hym a certeyñ
 Of golde and he wolde quyte hym ageyñ 1025
 Leneþ me a marke quod he but^t daies þre
 And at^t my day I wil it^t quite þe
 And it^t so be þow fynde me fals
 An oþer day honge me by þe hals 1029
 This prest^t him toke a marke and þat^t as swithe
 And þis chanon hym þonked ofte sithe
 And toke his leue and went^t forþ his way
 And at^t þe þred day brou3t^t his monay 1033
 And to þis preest^t he toke his gold ageyñ
 Therof þis preest^t was glad and fayñ

[leaf 205]

GROUP G. § 4. CANON'S-YEOMAN'S TALE. Petworth MS.

Certes quod he no þinge anoyeþ me
 To lene a man a noble or twoo or þree 1037
 Or what þinge were in my possession
 Whan he so trewe is of condicioñ
 That in no wise he breke wil his day
 To such a man I can neuere say nay 1041
 What quod þis chanon shuld I be vntrewe
 ¶ Nay þat were þinge fallen al of nwe
 Treuþe is a þing þat I wil euer kepe
 Vnto þe day in which þat I shal crepe 1045
 Into my graue and ellis god forbede
 Bileueþ þis as siker as is þoure crede
 God thonke I and in good tyme be it seide
 That þer was neuere man 3it euel apaide 1049
 ffor gold ne siluere þat he to me lent
 Ne neuere falshede to myne hert I ment
 And sire quod he nowe in my private
 Sipens 3e so goodly haue bene to me 1053
 And kyþed to me so grete gentilnesse
 Somwhat to quiten wiþ þour kyndenesse
 I wil þou shewe and 3if þou lust to lere
 I shal it shewe to þou anon riȝt here 1057
 How I can worchen in philosophie
 Takeþ good hede 3e shullen see wel at ye
 That I wil done a maistrie er I goo
 3e quod þe preest 3e sir and wil 3e so 1061
 Marie þerof I prei þou hertely [leaf 205, back]
 At þoure comaundement sir trewly
 Quod þe chanon and ellis god forbede
 Loo howe þis þeef kouþe his seruise bede 1065
 fful soþ it is þat such propferd seruise
 Stynkeþ as witnessen þise olde wise
 And þat ful sone I wil it verifie
 In þis chanon is rote of al trecherye 1069
 That euere more delite haþ and gladnesse
 Such feendly þouȝtes in his hert empresse

How cristes puple he may to meschief bringe /
 God kepe vs from his fals dissimulynge 1073
 What' wist' þis preest wiþ whom þat' he delte
 Ne of his harme commyng' no þing' he felte
 O sely preest' o. sely Innocent'
 Wiþ couetise anon þou shalt' be blent' 1077
 O gracelees ful blynde is þi conseite
 No þing' art' þow war of þe deceite
 Which þat' þis fox shapen haþ to þe.
 His wily wrenches þou maist not' flee 1081
 Wherefore to goo to þe conclusion
 þat' referreþ to þe confusion
 Vnhappy man anon I wil me hye
 To tellen þine vnwytte and þi foly 1085
 And eke þe falsnesse of þat' oþer wrecche
 As ferforþ as my conyng' wil strecche
 þis chanoñ was my lorde 3e wolde wene
 Sir' Oost' in feiþ and by þe Heuene quene 1089
 It was anoþer chanon and nat he
 þat' can an hundred fold more sotilte
 he haþ bytraied folk' mony tyme
 Of his falsnesse it' dulleþ me to ryme 1093
 Euere whan I speke of his falshede
 ffor shame of him my chekes wexen rede
 Algates þei bygonne forto glowe
 ffor redenesse haue I now riȝt wel I knowe 1097
 In my visage for funnes dyuers [leaf 200]
 Of metalles which 3e han herde me rehers
 Consumed and waasted han my Redenesse /
 Take nowe hede of þi[s] chanons cursednesse 1101
 Sir' quod he to þe preest' lat' 3our man gone
 ffor quyk siluere þat' we it' had anōn
 And lat' hym brynge vneces twoo or þre
 And whan he commep as fast' shul 3e se 1105
 A wonder þinge whiche 3e see neuere er þis
 Sir' quod þe preest' it' shal be done ywis

GROUP G. § 4. CANON'S-YEOMAN'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

He bad his seruaunte fecchen him þis þinge
 And he al redy was at his biddyng 1109
 And went hym forþ and come anon ageyn
 wiþ þis quyk siluere shortely forto seyn
 And toke þise vnces þre to þe chanoun
 And he it laide faire and wel adoun 1113
 And bad þe seruaunte colys forto brynge
 þat he anon myzt goo to his worchis
 The Colis rizt anon weren sette
 And þis Chanon toke out a croslette 1117
 Of his besom and shewed it þe preest
 This instrument quod he which þat þou seest
 Take in þine hond and pitt þiself þerInne
 Of þis quyk siluer an vnce an here bygynne 1121
 In þe name of crist to wex a philosophre
 þer bene ful fewe whiche þat I wold profre
 To shewen hem þus mochel of my science
 ffor 3e shullen see here by experience 1125
 That þis quik siluer I wil mortefie
 Rizt in 3oure sizt anon wiþ-out lye
 And made it as good siluer and as fyne
 As þer is eny in 3oure purs er myne 1129
 Or ellis where and make it malliable
 And ellis holde me fals and vnable
 Amonges folke euer to apere
 I haue a powder here þat cost me dere 1133
 Shal make al good for it is cause of aH
 [leaf 206, back]
 My konyng which þat I 3ou shewe shaft
 Voideþ 3our man and lat hym be þer out
 And schitte þe door þe whiles we bene aboute 1137
 Our primate þat no man vs espie
 Whiles we worchen in þis philosophie
 Al as he bad fulfilled was in dede
 This ilke seruaunte anon rizt out zede 1141
 And his maistere shitte þe dore anone
 And to her laboure spedely þei gone

This preest^t at^t þis cursed chanons biddynge
 Vppon þe fure anon sette þis þinge 1145
 And blewe þe fire and busied hym ful fast^t
 And this chanon into þis croslette cast^t
 A powdere I note wherof it^t was
 I-made eiper of chalk^t or ellis of glasse 1149
 Or somewhat^t ellis was not^t worþ a flie
 To blynde wiþ þis preest^t *and* bad hym hie
 Thise coles forto cowchen al aboue
 The crosselette^t for in token þat^t I þe loue 1153
 Quod þis Chanon þine hondes twoo
 Shal worche al þing^t which as shal be doo
 Graunt^t mercy quod þe preest^t *and* was ful glad
 And cowched coles as þe chanoñ bad 1157
 And þe whilys he bisy was þis feendly wreche
 This fals chanon þe foule fende hym fecche
 Out^t of his bosom toke a bechen cole
 In which ful sotilly was made an hole 1161
 And þer-in pitte was of siluere lymaille
 An vnce and stopped was wiþ-out^t faille
 This hoole wiþ wex to kepe þe lymaille Inne
 And vnderstondeþ þat^t þis fals gynne 1165
 was not^t made þere but^t it^t was made bifore
 And oþer þingges I shal telle more
 Here-afterward^t which þat^t he wiþ hym brouzt^t
 Ere he come þere to begile hym he þouzt^t 1169
 And so did er þei went^t atwynne [leaf 207]
 Til he had turned hym coupe he nat^t blynne
 It^t dulleþ me whan þat^t I of hym speke
 On his falshede fayn wolde I be a-wreke 1173
 If I wist^t howe but^t he is here *and* there
 He is so variaunt^t he bitte no where
 But^t takeþ hede nowe sirs for goddys loue
 He toke his cole of whiche I speke aboue 1177
 And in his honde he bare it^t prively
 And whiles þe preest^t couched bisyly

GROUP G. § 4. CANON'S-YEOMAN'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

þe coles as I tolde 3ou er þis
 þis Chanon seide frende 3e done a-mys 1181
 þis is not^t couched as it^t ouȝt be
 But^t sone I shal amende it^t quod he
 Now lat^t me medle *þerwip* but^t a while
 ffor of 3ou haue I pite be seint^t gyle 1185
 3e bene riȝt^t hoo^te I se wel howe 3e swete
 Haue here a cloþe and wipe away þe wete
 And whilys þe preest^t his wy haas
 þis chanon toke his cole I shrewe his faas 1189
 And laide it^t vpon abouen þe mydward^t
 Of þe Crosselette and blewe wel afterward^t
 Til þat^t þe Coles gonne fast^t brenne
 Nowe 3eue vs drynk^t quod þe chanoñ þen . 1193
 As swith . al shal be wel I vndertake
 Sitte we a-doun and lat^t vs mery make
 And whan þe chanons bechen cole
 Was brentte al þe lymaille out^t of þe hole 1197
 Into þe Crosselette anoñ fille adoun
 And so it^t most^t nedes by resoun
 Sip it^t so euen aboue couched was
 But^t þerof wist^t no þing^t þe preste allas 1201
 He demed al þe coles liche good
 ffor of þe scleizt^t no þinge he vnderstood
 And whan this Alkamystere segh his tyme
 Riseþ vp sire preest^t *and* stondeth by me . 1205
 And for I wote wele Ingot^t haue 3e none eaf 207, back]
 Gop walkeþ forþ and bringeþ a chalk stone
 ffor I wil make it^t of þe same shap
 That^t is an Ingot^t ȝif I may haue happe 1209
 And bringe wiþ 3ou a bolle or a panne
 fful of water and 3e shul see þan
 Howe þat^t oure bysynesse shal happe *and* preue
 And ȝit^t for 3e shul haue no mysbileue 1213
 Ne wronge conceite of me in 3oure absence
 I wil not^t bene out^t of 3oure presence

But^t go wiþ þou and come wiþ þou agayn
 þe Chambere door shortely to sayn 1217
 They opned and shette *and* went^t forþ her way
 And forþ wiþ hem þei karied þe kay
 And comme ageyn wiþ-out^t eny delay
 What^t shuld I tary al þe longe day 1221
 He toke þe chalk^t and shope it^t in þe wise
 Of an Ingot^t as I shal þou deuyse
 I saie he toke out^t of his owne seleue
 A teyne of siluere euel mote he cheue 1225
 Whiche þat^t was but^t an vnce of weiȝt^t
 And takeþ hede nowe of þis cursed seleiȝt^t
 He shope his Ingot^t in length^t *and* in brede
 Of þe teyne wiþ-out^t eny drede 1229
 So selyȝly þat^t þe preest^t it^t not^t aspied
 And in his seleue agayn he gan it^t hide
 And from þe fire toke vp his matere
 And into þe Ingot^t it^t pitt *with* mery chere 1233
 And into þe water vessel he it^t cast^t
 whan þat^t him list^t *and* bad þe preest^t as fast^t
 Loke what^t þer is pitte in þine honde *and* grope
 Thow shalt^t fynde þere siluer as I hope 1237
 What^t deuel of helle shuld it^t ellis be
 Shavynge of siluere. siluere is *parde*
 He pitte In his honde and toke vp a teyne
 Of Syluere fyne and glad in euery veyne 1241
 was þis preest^t whan he segþ þat^t it^t was so [leaf 208]
 Goddys blessing^t and his moders also
 And alle halowes haue ȝe sir^t chanōn
 Saide þe preest^t and I her malysoñ 1245
 But^t and ȝe vouche-sauf to teche me
 This noble craft^t and þis sotilte
 I wil be ȝour in all þat^t euere I may
 Quod þe Chanoñ ȝit^t wil I make assay 1249
 The secounde tyme þat^t ȝe mow take hede
 And bene expert^t of þis and in ȝour nede

GROUP G. § 4. CANON'S-YEOMAN'S TALE. Petworth MS.

An^oper day [assaie] in myne absence
 This disciplyne and þis crafty science 1253
 ¶ Lat^t take an^oper vnce quod he þoo
 Of quik siluer^t wip-out^t wordes moo /
 And doo þerwip as 3e han done er þis
 With þat^t oþer which þat^t now siluer^t is 1257
 This preest^t hym busieþ in al þat^t he can
 To done as þis chanon þis cursed man
 Comaundeþ hym and fast^t bloweþ þ^e fuyre
 fforto come to þe effecte of his desire 1261
 And þis chanon riȝt^t in þe mene while
 Al redy was þis preest^t eft^t to begile
 And for a countenaunce in his hand bare
 An holowe stik^t take hede and be ware 1265
 In þe eende of which an vnce *and* no more
 Of syluere lymaille put^t was al bifore
 was in his cole and stopped w^{ith} wex wel
 fforto kepe in his lymaille euery deþ 1269
 And whilis þis preest^t was in his bysynesse
 This Chanon wip his stik gan hym dresse
 To hym anon and his powdere cast^t Inne
 As he did eer þe deucl out^t of his skynne 1273
 Hym turne I prey to god for his falshede
 ffor he was euer fals in oþe and dede
 And wip his stik^t aboute þe crosselette
 That^t was ordeyned wip þat^t fals gette. 1277
 He stireþ þe coles til relente gan [leaf 208, back]
 The wex a-gayn þe fuyr as euery man
 But^t it^t a fool be wote wele & mote nede
 And alle þat^t in þe hole was. out^t ȝede 1281
 And into þe crosselette hastely it^t felle
 The preest^t supposed no þing^t but^t wel
 But^t bisied him fast^t and was wonder^t fayn
 Supposing^t nouȝt^t but^t trouþe soþ to sayn 1285
 He was so glad I can not^t expresse
 In no manere his myrth^t and his gladnesse

And to þe Chanon he *profred* eft' sone
 Body and good 3e quod þe chanon sone 1289
 pou3e poor I be crafty þow shalt me fynde
 I warne þe 3it' is þer more behinde
 Is þere eny copoure here In saide he
 3e sir' quod þe preest I trowe þer be 1293
 Ellis goo by some and þat' as swithe
 Now sir' go forþ þi way *and* hithe.
 And went' his way and *with* þis coper he cam
 And þis chanon it in his honde it' nam. 1297
 And of þat' copere weyed out' but' an vnce
 Al to symple is my tunge to pronunce
 His monstre as his witte þe doublenesse
 Of þis Chanon roote of cursednesse 1301
 He semed frendly to hem þat' knewe hym nou3t'
 Bot' he was feendly boþ in werk and þou3t'
 It' werieþ me to telle of his falsenesse
 And nathelees 3it' wil I it' expresse 1305
 To þat' entent' men may be ware þerby
 And for noon opere cause trewly
 He putt þis vnce of copere into þe crosselette
 And on the fuyre as swithe he hap it' sette 1309
 And kest' In powdere and made þ^e preest' to blowe
 And in his worching' for to stoupe lowe
 As he did erst' and al nys but' a Iape
 Ri3t' as him list' þe preest' he made his Ape 1313
 And afterward' into the Ingot' he it' cast' [leaf 209]
 And in þe panne pitt' it' atte last'
 Of watere and in he pitte his owne honde
 And in his seleue as 3e to-fornhonde 1317
 Herd me telle he had a siluer' teyne
 He selily toke it' out' þis cursed heyne
 Vnwetinge þis preest' of his fals craft'
 And in þe pannes botme he hap it' laft'. 1321
 And in þe watere rombleþ too and froo /
 And wondere prively toke it' vp also

GROUP G. § 4. CANON'S-YEOMAN'S TALE. Petworth MS.

þe Copere teyne nat^t knowing^t þis preest^t
 And hid it^t and hente hym by þe breest^t 1325
 And to hym spake and þus seide in his game ./
 Stowpeþ a-downe by god 3e be to blame .
 Helpeþ me nowe as I did 3owe whilere
 Putte Inne 3oure honde and lokeþ what^t is þere 1329
 This preest^t toke vp þis siluere teyne anone
 And þan seide þe chanoñ lat^t vs gone
 Wiþ þise pre teynes whiche þat^t we han wrou3t^t
 To somme goldsmyth^t and wit^t 3if it^t be ou3t^t 1333
 ffor be my feiþe I nolde for myne hode
 But^t if þei were siluere fyne *and* goode
 And þat^t as swiþe proued shal it^t be
 Vnto þe goldsmythe wiþ þise teynes þre 1337
 went^t þei and pitte þise teynes in assay
 To fyre and hamere my3t^t no man say nay
 But^t þei were as hem ou3te to be
 This sotted preest^t who was glad but^t he 1341
 Was neuere bridde gladdere a3einst^t þe day
 Ne ny3tyngale in þe sesoñ of may .
 was neuere noon þat^t list^t better to synge
 Ne lady lustyer in Carolynges . . . 1345
 And forto speke of loue and wommanhede
 Ne knyght^t in armes done an hardy dede
 To stonden in grace of his lady dere .
 Than had þis preest^t þis craft^t to lere . 1349
 And to þe chanon þus he speke *and* saide
 ffor þe loue of god þat^t for vs deyde ./
 And as I may deserue it^t vnto yowe [leaf 209, back]
 What^t shal þis Receyte cost^t telleþ nowe 1353
 By oure lady quod þis chanon it^t is dere /
 I warne 3ou . for saaf I and a frere
 In Engelonde þer can no man it^t make
 No fors quod he nowe sir^t for goddys sake / 1357
 What^t shal I paye telle me I þe pray
 Iwis quod [he] it^t is ful dere I saie /

Sir' at' oon woord' if þat' þe lest' it' haue
 3e shul paye xl. ii. so god me saue. 1361
 And ne were þe frendship þat' 3e did er þis
 To me / 3e shuld paie more ywis ./
 This preest' þe some of fourty pounde anoñ
 Of nobles fette and toke hem euerechoñ 1365
 To þis Chanoñ for þis ilk receite
 AH his worchinge was strawe *and* deceite
 Sir' preest' he saide I kepe forto haue no loos
 Of my craft' for I wold it' were kept' cloos 1369
 And as 3e loue me kepeþ it' secre
 ffor and men knewe al my sotilte
 By god men wolde haue so grete envie
 To me by cause of my philosophie 1373
 I Shuld be dede þer nys noon oþer waye
 God it' for-bede quod þe preest' what' say 3e.
 3it' had I leuere spenden al þe good'
 Which þat' I haue and ellys wexe I wood / 1377
 Than þat' 3e shuld fallen in such meschief'
 ffor 3oure good wille sir' haue 3e riȝt' good preef'
 Quod þe Chanōn. and sir'. oft' graunt mercy
 He went' his way þat' neuere þe preest' hym sie 1381
 Aftere þat' day and whan þis preest' shulde
 Maken assay at' suche tyme as he wolde
 Of þis Receite. fare wel it' wold nat' be
 Loo þus byiaped and begiled was he 1385
 Thus makeþ he his Introducciōn
 To bringe folk to her destruction
 Considereþ surs howe þat' in eche astaaf'
 Bytwix men and gold þer is debaat' 1389
 So fer forþ þat' vnneþes þer is oon
 [leaf 210]
 This multiplyinge so blendeþ mony òñ
 That' in good faip I trowe þat' it' be
 The cause grettest' of þe grete scarcete 1393
 Thise philosophres spoken so mystely
 In þis craft' þat' men can not' come þerby

GROUP G. § 4. CANON'S-YEOMAN'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

ffor eny witte þat men han now adayes .
 þei may wel Chitere and iangle as doñ þise Iaies 1397
 And in her teemes sette lust *and* peyne
 But to her purpoos shul þei neuere atteyne
 A man may liztly lerne 3if he haue ouzte
 To multiplie and bringe his good to nouzte 1401
 Loo suche a lucre is in þis lusty game .
 A mannes merþe wil it turne al to grame
 And empty also grete and heuy purses .
 And make folk to purchasen curses 1405
 Of hem þat han þerto her good ylent
 O. fy for shame þei þat han be brent
 Allas can þei nat flee þe fires hete
 3e þat it losen I rede 3e it lete 1409
 lest 3e lesen aH. for bette þan neuere is late
 Neuere to þrive were to longe a date
 Thouze 3e prolle ay 3e shul it neuer fynde
 3e bene as bolde as is bayard þe blynde 1413
 That blundreþ forþ and perile casteþ noñ
 He was bolde to renne azeinst a stoñ
 As forto goo he sides in þe way
 ¶ Soo faren 3e þat multiplien I say 1417
 3if þat oure eyen can nat seen arizt
 Lokep þat 3oure mynde lak nat his sizt
 ffor þouze 3e loke neuere so brode and stare
 3e shul nat wynne a myte in þat chaffare 1421
 But waasten aH þat 3e may rappe *and* renne
 Wiþdrawe þe fuyre lest it so fast brenne
 Medleth no more wiþ þat art I mene .
 ffor 3if 3e doon 3oure þrift is goon ful clene 1425 .
 And rizt as swiþe I wil 3ou telle here
 What þat þe philosophres seyn in þis matere
 Loo þus seiþ alnold of þe newe tounne [leaf 210, back]
 As his rosarie makeþ mencioun 1429
 He seiþ rizt þus wiþ-out eny lie
 Ther may no man mercury mortefie

But^t 3if it^t be wiþ his broþers knowlecchinge
 Howe þat^t he which þat^t ferst^t seide þis þinge 1433
 Of philosophres fader was hermes
 He seiþ how þat^t þe dragon doutelees /
 Ne dyeþ nat^t but^t 3if he be sclayn
 Wiþ his broþer and þat^t is forto sayne 1437
 By þe dragon mercurye and noon oþer
 He vnderstood þat^t bremstone were his broþer
 þat^t out^t of sol and luna were ydrawe
 And þerfore saide he take hede to my sawe 1441
 Lat^t no man bisie him þis arte forto seche .
 But^t he þat^t þe entenciōn and speche
 Of philosophres vnderstonde can
 And if he doo he is a lewde man . 1445
 ffor þis science and þis conyng^t quod he
 Is of þe secrete of secretes parde
 Also þer was a disciple of plato
 þat^t on a tyme saide his maister^t too . 1449
 As his boke somere wil bere witnesse
 And þis was his demaunde en soþfastnesse
 Tel me þe name of a priue stoōn
 And plato answered vnto hym anoōn 1453
 Take þe stoon þat^t Titanos men name
 Which is þat^t quod he magnasia is þe same
 His disciple seide 3e sire and is it^t þus
 þis is ignotum per ignocius 1457
 What^t is magnasia good sire I pray
 It^t is a watere þat^t is made I saye
 Of elementes foure quod Plato .
 Telle me þe roche good sire quod he þoo . 1461
 Of þat^t watere if it^t be 3oure wille
 Nay nay quod Plato certeyn þat^t I nyht
 The philosophres were sworn echoñ
 þat^t þei shulde diskeuere it^t to no moñ 1465
 Ne in no booke it^t write in no manere
 ffor vnto crist^t it^t is so leef and dere .

[leaf 211]

GROUP G. § 4. CANON'S-YEOMAN'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

þat he wil nat þat it diskeuered be
 But where it likeþ to his deite 1469
 Man to enspire and eke forto defende
 Whan þat him likeþ loo þis is þe ende
 Than conclude I þus siþens þat god of heuene
 Ne wil not þat þe philisophres neuene 1473
 How þat a man shal come vnto þis stone
 I rede as for the best lat it gone
 ffor who so makeþ god his aduersarye
 As forto worche eny þinge *in* contrarie 1477
 Vnto his wille certes neuere shal he thryve
 pouze þat he multiplie teerme of his lyue
 And þer a poynt for eended is my tale.
 God seende euery trewe man boote of his bale / 1481
 ¶ Thus endep þe chanons zeman his tale

And here bigynneþ þe prologe of þe doctour of Phisike
[on leaf 211]

Whan þat þis zeman his tale ended hadde ¶ **The prolog.**
 Of þis fals Chanon which þat was so badde
 Our hoost gan say trewly & in certayn
 þis preest was begiled soply forto sayn 4
 He wenyng forto be a philosophre
 Til he lift riȝt nouȝt in his Cophre
 And soply þis preest had a liȝer Iape
 This cursed chanon put in his hode an ape 8
 But al þis passe I ouer as nowe
 Sir doctour of phisik I prey ȝou
 Telle vs a tale of some honest matere
 It shal be done ȝif þat ȝe wil it here 12
 Saide þis doctour *and* his tale bygan anon
 Now good men quod he harkenþ euerechoñ

¶ Thus endep þe prologe of þe doctour of phisik

GROUP C. FRAGMENT IV.

§ 1. THE DOCTOR'S TALE.

PETWORTH MS.

And here bygynneþ þe tale .

[on leaf 211]

T her was as telleþ vs tytus lyneus	¶ The tale ./
A knyght þat cleped was virgineus	
ffulfilled of honoures and worþinesse	
And stronge of frendes and of richesse	4
A douzter he had be his wiff	[leaf 211, back]
And neuere had hee moo in al his lif	
ffairst was þis maide in excellent bewte	
Abouen euery wight þat man may see	8
ffor nature hap wiþ souereyn [diligence]	
fformed hir in so grete excellence	
As þouze she wold say loo I nature .	
Thus can I forme and peynte a creature	12
Whan þat me list who can me countrefete	
Pigmalyon noght þouze he alway forge <i>and</i> bete	
Or graue or peynt for I dar wel sayn	
Apollus Zephirus shulde worche in veyn	16
Te graue . peynte . or forge or bete	
If þei presumed me to countrefete	
ffor he þat is þe fourmer principal	
Hape made me his vikere general	20
To forme and peint eche erþely creature	
Riht as me list for al þinge is my cure .	
Vnder þe mone þat may wayne <i>and</i> waxe	
And for my werk ' no þinge wil I axe	24

My lorde and I bene fully atte acorde
 I made hir' to þe worship of my lorde
 So doo I alle myne oþer creatures
 Of what' coloure þei be or what' figures 28
 Thus semeþ me þat' nature wolde say
 This maide was of age .xij. ȝere *and* tway
 In whiche þat' nature haþ such delite
 ffor riȝt' as she can peynt' aȝ lily white 32
 And roody as roose riȝt' wiþ such peynture
 She peynted haþ þis noble creature
 Er she was born vpon her lymes fre
 Were also briȝt' as such coloures myȝt' be . 36
 And phebus died had her tresses grete
 Like to þe stremes of his boorned hete
 And ȝif þat' excellent' was her bewte
 A thowsand folde more vertuous was she 40
 In hur' ne lackeþ no condicioñ
 þat' is to preise as by discrecioñ .
 As wel in body as goost' chaast' was she [leaf 212]
 ffor which she flowred in virginite 44
 Wiþ al humilite and abstinence
 Wiþ alle attemperance and pacience
 Wiþ mesure eke in beringe of araye .
 Discrete she was in answering' alwaye 48
 And she was wis as pallas dar I seyn
 Hir' facoñ eke ful womanly *and* pleyñ
 Noon counterfeted teermes had shee
 ¶ To seme wise but' after her degree . 52
 She spak and alle her wordes more *and* lasse
 Sownynge in vertue and in gentelnasse
 Shamefast' she was in maidens shamfastnesse
 Constant' in hert' and euere in bysynesse 56
 To drive hur' out' of her selloggardrie
 Bachus had of her mouþe no maistrie
 ffor wille and þouȝt' done Venus encrece
 As men in fire wil casten oile or grece 60

GROUP C. § 1. DOCTOR'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

And of her owne vertue vnconstreyned .
 She haþe ful oft tyme hur' seke feyned .
 ffor þat' she wolde flee þe companye
 where likly was to treten of folye 64
 As is at feestys . Reuels . and daunces
 Whiche bene occasiõ of daliaunces
 Suche þingges maken children forto be .
 To sone ripe and bolde as men may see 68
 Which is ful perilous and haþ bene 3oore
 ffor al to sone may she lerne lore .
 Of boldnesse whan she is a wiff
 And 3e Maistresses in 3oure olde liff 72
 þat' lordes dou3ters han in gouernaunce
 Ne takeþ of my wordes no displesaunce
 Thingges þat' bene sette in gouernynnges
 Of lordys dou3ters oonly for two þingges 76
 Oyþer for 3e han kepte 3oure honeste
 Oyþere ellis 3e han falle in freelte
 And knowen wel ynou3e þe olde daunce
 And konne for-sake fully [such] meschaunce . 80
 ffor enermoo þerfor for cristes sake [leaf 212, back]
 kepeþ wel þoo þat' 3e vndertake
 A theef for venyson þat' hath forlaft'
 His likerousnesse and al his þeeues craft' 84
 Can kepe a forest' best' of eny man .
 Now kepeþ hem wel for and 3e wil 3e can .
 lokeþ wel to no vice þat' 3e assente .
 Lest' 3e be dampned for 3oure euel entente . 88
 ffor who so doþ a traitoure is certeyn .
 And takeþ [kepe] of þat' þat' I shal seyn .
 Of al treson suffreyñ pestilence .
 Is whan a wizt' bitraieþ innocence . 92
 3e faders and 3e moders eke also .
 þou3e 3e han children be it' on or twoo .
 3oure is þe charge of al her suffraunce .
 Whiles þei bene vnder gouernaunce 96

Be ware þat by ensample of 3our lyuynge
 Eþere by necligence in chaastisinge
 þat þei ne perisshe for I dar wel saye
 3if þat 3e done 3e shul ful sore abaye 100
 vndere a sheparde . soft and negligent
 þe wolf haþ mony a shepe and lomb to-rent
 Suffiseþ oon ensample nowe as here
 ffor I mot/ turne a3ein to my matere 104
 ¶ This maide of which I telle my tale expresse .
 She kept her self her neded no maistresse .
 ffor in her lyuynge maidens my3t rede
 As in a booke euery good woord and dede 108
 þat longeþ to a maide vertuous
 She was so prudent and so bounteuous .
 ffor whiche [þe fame] out spronge on euery side .
 Both of her bewte and of her bounte wide . 112
 þat þorowe þe londe þei preised hure echōn .
 þat loued vertue sauf envie allone .
 þat sorie is of oþer mennys wele
 ¶ And glad is of his sorowe and vnhele 116
 The doctoure makeþ þis descriptioun
 This maide went on a day into þe toun
 Toward þe temple wiþ her modere dere [leaf 213]
 As is of yonge maidens þe manere 120
 Now was þer a Iustice in þe toune
 þat gouernere was of þat Regioun
 And so bifelle þis Iuge his eyen cast
 Vppon þis mayde avisinge hir ful fast 124
 As she came forþe by þere þe Iuge stood .
 Anon his hert chaungeþ and his mood .
 So was he kau3t wiþ þe bewte of þis maide
 And to him silf ful priuely he saide 128
 This maide shal be myn for eny man .
 Anoñ þe feende into his hert ran
 And tau3t him sodeynly by what scli3t
 The maide to his purpoos wyne he my3t 132

ffor certis by no force ne by no mede
 Him pouȝt he was not able forto spede.
 ffor he was stronge of freendes *and* eke she
 Confeirmed was in such souereyn bewte 136
 þat wel he wist he myȝt her neuere wynne
 As forto make here wiþ hur body synne
 ffor whiche wiþ grete deliberacioun
 He sent after a clerk into þe toune. 140
 þe whiche he knewe for subtile or for bold
 This Iuge vnto þis clerk his tale haþ told
 In secre wise and made him to assure
 He shulde telle it to no creature. 144
 And if he did he shulde lese his hede
 whan assented was þis cursed rede
 Glad was þe Iuge and made glad chere
 And ȝaue hym ȝiftes precious *and* dere 148
 whan shapen was all þis conspiracie
 ffrom poynt to poynt how þat þis lecherie
 Perfourmed shulde be ful sotelly
 And ȝe shul here afterward openly 152
 Home gooþ this clerk þat hiȝt Claudius
 This fals Iuge þat hiȝt apius
 So was hiȝ name for it is no fable
 But knowen for an historial þing notable. 156
 The sentence of hit soþ is out of dowte
 [leaf 213, back]
 This fals Iuge goþ now fast aboute
 To hasten his delit and þat he may
 And so bifelle sone after on a day. 160
 This fals Iuge as telleþ vs þe story
 As he was wonned in his consistorie
 And ȝaf his doomes vpon sondrie caas
 This fals Clerk came forþ a wel good paas. 164
 And saide lord if þat it be ȝoure wille
 As doþ me riȝt vpon þis pitous bille
 In whiche I pley n vpon Virginius.
 And ȝif þat he wol sayn it is nat þus 168

I wiþ proue it and fynde good wittnesse
 þat soþe is þat my bille wil expresse
 þe Iuge answerde of þis in his absence
 I may not ȝeue diffinitif sentence 172
 Lat doon hym calle *and* I wiþ gladly here
 þou shalt haue riȝt and no wronge here
 Virginius came to witte þe Iuges wille
 And riȝt anoon was rad þis cursed bille 176
 ¶ The sentence of hit was as ȝe shul here
 To ȝowe my lord sir Apius so dere
 Sheweþ ȝour poor *seruaunte* Claudius
 How þat a knyȝt called Virginius 180
 Aȝeinst þe lawe aȝeinst al equite
 Holdeþ expresse aȝeinst þe wille of me.
 My seruaunt which þat is þral be riȝt
 Which from myn hous was stolen on a nyȝt 184
 þe whiles she was ful ȝenge I wil it preue
 By wittnesse lord so þat ȝe ȝou nat greue
 She is nat his douȝtere what so he saye
 wherfore my lord þe Iuge to ȝou I praye 188
 ȝeelde me my thraff if þat it be ȝour wille
 loo þis was alle þe sentence of þe bille
 Virginius gan vpon þe clerk biholde
 ¶ But hastily er he his tale tolde 192
 he wold haue defended it as shuld a knyȝt
 And by wittnesse of mony a trewe wiȝt
 That al was fals þat saide his aduersarie [leaf 214]
 This cursed Iuge wold no lenger tarye 196
 Ne here oon woord more of Virgyneus
 But ȝaf his Iugement and saide þus.
 I deme anoon þis clerk his *seruaunte* haue
 Thow shalt no longer in þine hous hir saue 200
 Goo bringe hir forþ and put hur in our warde
 This Clerk shal haue his þraff þus I awarde
 And whan þis worþi knyȝt Virgineus
 Thorgh þe assent of þe Iuge Apius 204

GROUP C. § 1. DOCTOR'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

Most^t by force his dere douȝtere ȝeuen
 Vnto the Iuge in lechery to lyuen.
 He goop hym home and sette hym *in* his halle
 And lete anon his deer douȝter³ calle. 208
 And wiȝ a face dede as asshen colde
 Vpon her humble face he can biholde
 Wiȝ faders pite stikyng^t þorgh his herte
 Al wold he nat^t from his purpoos *conuerte* 212
 Doughtere *quod* he Virginea be þi name
 þer bene twoo weies. oiper deȝ oiper shame
 þat^t thou most^t suffre allas þat^t I was bore
 ffor neuer þou deseruedest^t wherfore 216
 To dyen wiȝ a sweerd or wiȝ a knyft^t
 O dere douȝter ender of my lif
 Which I haue fostred vp wiȝ such plesaunce
 þat^t þou ne were out^t of my remembraunce 220
 O doughtere which þat^t art^t my last^t woo.
 And in lif my last^t Ioie also
 O gemme of chastite *in* pacience
 Take þou þi deȝ for þis is my sentence 224
 ffor loue and nat^t for hate þou most^t be dede
 My pitous honde mote smyten of þine hede
 Allas þat^t euer Apius þe say
 Thus haȝ he falsly Iuged þe to day 228
 And tolde hur^t al þe caas as ȝe bifore
 Haue herd it^t nededeȝ telle it^t no more
 Mercy dere fadere *quod* þis maide
 And wit^t þat^t word^t she boȝ hure armes laide. 232
 Aboute his nek as she was wonned to doo [leaf 214, back]
 þe teeres brosten out^t of her eyen twoo
 A[n]d saide good fadere shal I dye
 Is þere no grace is þer no remedye 236
 No certes dere douȝter myn *quod* he.
 Than ȝeue me leue fader myn *quod* she.
 My deȝ [for] to compleyn a litel space
 ffor parde Ieffa ȝaue his douȝtere grace 240

fforto compleyn er he her sclouze alas .
 And god it' woot' no þing' was his trespas
 But' þan she ranne her fader first' to see
 To welcome him wiþ grete solempnite 244
 And wiþ þat' word' she felle a swoun anō
 And aftere whan her swownyng' was agoñ
 She riseþ vp and to her fadere saide
 Blessed be god þat' I shal die a maide 248
 3eue me my deef er þat I haue a shame
 Doþ wiþ 3oure childe 3our' wille a goddys name
 And wiþ þat' word she preieþ [him] ful oft'
 That' wiþ his swerde he shuld smyte her soft' 252
 And wiþ þat' woord' in swowne doune she felle
 Hur' fadere wiþ ful sorowful hert' *and* felle
 Hure hede of smote and by þe top it' hent'
 And to the Iuge he 3aue it' to present' 256
 As he satte in his doome in consistorie
 And whan þe Iuge it' seie as seiþ þe storie
 He bad take him and honge hym also fast'
 But' riȝt' anoon al þe puple in þrast' 260
 To saue þe knyȝt' for rewþe *and* for pite
 ffor knowen was þe fooles iniquite
 The puple anoon had suspecte in þis þinge
 By manere of þis clerkes chalengynge 264
 þat' it' was by passent' of Apius .
 þei wist' wel þat' he was lecherus
 ffor which vnto þis Apius þei goñ
 And casten hym in prison riȝt' anō 268
 Wher as he sclough hym self *and* Claudius
 þat' Seruaunte was vnto þis Apius
 Was demed forto honge vpon a tree [leaf 215]
 But' Virginius of his grete pite 272
 Preide for hym þat' he was exiled
 And ellis certys he had be begiled
 The remenant' were honged more *and* lesse
 þat' consented were to þis cursednesse / 276

GROUP C. § 1. DOCTOR'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

Here may men see howe synne hap his merite
 Be ware for no man woote how god wil smyte
 In no degree ne in which manere wise
 þe worme of conscience wil arise . 280
 Of wicked lif pough it so prive be
 þat no man woote of it. but god and hee
 Where he be lewde man or lered
 He note howe sone he may be afered . 284
 Therfore I rede 3ou this counsel take
 fforsakeþ synne er synne 3ou forsake

|| **The prologe of
þe Pardoner.**

Our hoost gan swere as he were wood 288
Harowe quod he by nailles and by blood
This was a cursed þeeƿ a fals Iustise
As shameful deef as herte can deuise .
Come to þe Iustise and her aduocas .
Aigates þis sely womman is sclayn alas . 292
Allas dere abouȝte she bewtee .
Wherfore I say alday þat man may se
That ȝift of fortune or of nature
Bene cause of deþ of mony a creature 296
[Hir' beaute was hir' deth I dar' well sayn . [Harl. 1758, on leaf
150, back]
Allas so pitously as sche was slayn .]
As boþ ȝiftes as I speke of nowe
Men han ful oft' more harme þan prowē 300
But' trewly myne owne maister dere
This is a pitous tale for to here
But' napelees passe ouer is no fors
I prey to god to saue þi gentile cors / 304
And þine vrynales and þi Iordans
þine ypocras and eke þi Galyans
And euery box ful of þi letwarye
God blesse hem and our' lady seint' Marye 308
So mote I the þou art a propre man .
And like a prelate by seynt' Runyan .
Saue þat I can not speke wel in terme [leaf 215, back]
But' wel I woote þou doost' myn hert' eerme 312
That I haue almost' kaught' a Cardyacle
By corps boones but' I haue triacle
Or ellis a drauȝt' of moist' or corny ale
Or but' I here anon a mery tale 316

GROUP C. § 2. DOCTOR-PARDONER LINK. **Petworth MS.**

My hert^t is lost^t for pite of þis maide
 þowe belamy Iohñ pardonere he saide
 Telle vs some merþe or Iapes riȝt^t anōn
 he shal be done quod he be seynt^t Runyōn 320
 But^t furst^t quod he here at^t þe next^t ale stake
 I wil boþ drink^t and ete of a cake
 But^t riȝt^t anōn þise gentiles goñ to crye
 Nay lat^t hym telle vs of no Rybaudrye. 324
 Telle vs some moral þing^t þat^t we may lere
 Somme witte and þan wil we gladly here
 I graunt^t Iwis quod he but^t I mote þink^t
 Vpon som honest^t þinge whiles þat^t I drink^t / 328
 ¶ Thus endeþ þe prologe of þe pardonere.

And here bygynneþ the tale.

[on leaf 215, back]

<p>Loldingges quod he in church whan I preche I peyn me to haue an haütyñ speche I ryngi it out as rounde as goþ a belle ffor I can al by roote þat I telle My teeme is alway oon and euere was. <i>Radix omnium malorum est cupiditas.</i> ffirst I pronouns whennys þat I come And þan my bulles schewe aß and some / Our liege lordes seel on my patent þat shewe I furst my body to warent That no man be so bolde preest ne clerk Me to distrowbe of cristes holy werk And after þat telle I forþ my tales Bulles of popes and of Cardynales. Of patriarkes and bisshoppes I shewe. And in latyn I speke a wordys fewe To sauer wiþ my predicaciõ And forto stirre men to deuociõ Than shewe I forþ my longe cristal stones Ycrommed ful of clowtes and of bones. Relikes þei bene as wene men echoñ þan haue I in laton a sholdere bone Which þat was an holy Iwes shepe Good men say I take at my wordes kepe 3if þat þis boon be wasshen in a welle 3if kowe or calf. shepe or oxe swelle þat eny worme hath ete or stonge About þe hert or ellis þe longe</p>	<p>¶ The tale 332 336 340 344 [leaf 216] 348 352 356</p>
--	---

GROUP C. § 3. PARDONER'S PREAMBLE. **Petworth MS.**

It is hool anon and ferþermore
 Of pokkes and of scabbe *and* of euery sore
 Shal euery shepe be hool þat of þis welle
 Drynkeþ a drauȝt take hede what I telle 360
 Ȝif þat þe good man þat þe beest oweþ
 Wil euery weke er þat þe Cok hym croweþ
 ffastinge drink of þis welle a drauȝte .
 As þilk holy Iwe our eldere tauȝte 364
 His beestes and his stoor shal multiplie
 And sirs also it heleþ Ialowsie
 And þouȝe a man be fallen in a Ialous rage
 Lat maken wiþ þis watere his potage 368
 And neuer shal he [more] his wif mystrust
 þouȝe he þe sop of hure defaute wost
 Al had she taken · preestes tweyn · or þree
 Here is a myten eke þat ȝe may see 372
 He þat his honde wil putte in þis myteyn
 He shal haue multiplynge of his greyn
 Whan he haþ sawen be it whete or otys
 So þat he bringe me good pans or ellis grotys . 376
 And men and wommen · oo þing I warne ȝowe
 Ȝif eny wiȝt be in þis churche nowe
 þat haþ doo synne horrible [so] þat he
 Dar not for shame of it shryuen be 380
 Or eny womman be she ȝong or olde
 That haþ made her husbonde Cukwold
 Suche folk shal haue no power ne no grace
 To offre to my relikes in þis place . 384
 And who so findeþ hym out of such blame [leaf 216, back]
 Thei wil come vp and offre in goddis name
 And I assoille hym by þe autorite
 Such as my bulle was graunted to me 388
 By þis gaude haue I wonnen euery ȝeere
 An .C. Mark sipens I was pardonere .
 I stonde like a clerk in my pulpitte
 And schewe lewde puples synne ysette 392

I preche so as I haue lered by-fore
 And telle an hundred Iapes more.
 Than peyne I me to streche forþ þe necke
 And eest^t and west^t vppon þe puple I bekke 396
 As doþ a dowue sitting^t vppon a beerne
 Myne hondes and my tunge goñ ful 3eerne
 þat^t it^t is ioye to see my bysynesse
 Of auarice and suche cursednesse. 400
 Is al my prechinge for to make hem free
 To 3eue her pans and namely vñto me
 ffor myn entent^t is nat^t but^t forto wynne
 And noþinge for correction of synne 404
 I rekke neuere whan þat^t þei bene buried
 þouze þat^t her saules goo o blakburied.
 ffor certes mony a predicacioñ
 Commeþ ofte tyme of euel entencioñ 408
 Somme of plesaunce of folk^t and of flaterye
 To bene auaunced by ypocresie
 And somme for veynglorie and for hate
 ffor whan I dar nat^t oþer waies debate 412
 Than wil I styngge hem wiþ my tunge smerte
 In prechinge so that^t he shal not^t sterte
 To bene defamed falsely so þat^t he
 haþ trespassed to my breþeren or to me 416
 ffor þouze I telle nat^t his propre name
 Men shal wel knowe þat^t it is þe same
 By somme signe and oþer circumstaunces
 Thus smyte I folk^t þat^t doñ vs displesaunces. 420
 Thus spitte I out^t my venyme vnder hwe
 Of holynesse to semen holy and trewe
 But^t shortely myne entent^t I wil devise ./ [leaf 217]
 I preche of no þinge but^t of Couetise ./ 424
 þerfore my teeme is 3it^t and euer was
 Radix omnium malorum est cupiditas
 Thus can I preche a3einst^t þe same vice
 Which þat^t I vse and þat^t is Auarice 428

GROUP C. § 3. PARDONER'S PREAMBLE. **Petworth MS.**

But þouze my self be giltif in þat synne.
 3it can I make oþer folk to wyne
 ffrom auarice and soor hem repent
 But þat nys not my principal entent 432
 I preche nat but for coueityse
 Of þis matere it ouȝt ynowe suffise
 Than telle I hem ensamples mony ooñ
 Of olde stories longe tyme agoñ 436
 ffor lewde puple louen tales olde
 which þingges þei conne report and hold
 What trow 3e þe whiles I may preche
 And wyne gold and siluere forto teche 440
 þat I wil lyve in pouert wilfully
 Nay nay I þouȝt it neuere trewly.
 ffor I wil preche and begge in sondry londys
 I nyl do no laboure wiþ my hondes. 444
 Ne make baskettes for to lyve þer-by
 Because I wil not lyuen ydelly
 I wil noon of þe apostels counterfete
 I wil haue money. malt chees and whete 448
 Al were it 3euen of þe poorest page
 Eyfere of þe poorest wydowe in a vilage
 Al shulde her children sterue or famyne
 And I wil drink þe licourest of þe wyne 452
 And haue a ioly wenche in euery toun
 But harken þe lordes in conclusioun
 3oure liking is þat I shal telle a tale
 Now haue I dronken. a drauȝt of corny ale 456
 By god I hope I shal tel 3ou a þinge
 þat shal of reson be at 3oure liking
 ffor þouze my self be a vicious man.
 I morale tale 3it I 3ou telle can. 460
 Whiche Iames went to preche forto wyne. [leaf 217, back]
 Now holdeþ 3oure pees my tale I wil bygynne.

<p>In flannndres whilom was a companye Of yonge folk þat' haunted folye As hasard' Riot' / stewes . <i>and</i> tauernes . Harpes . Rubibes . lutes and giternes . þei dauncen and pleyen at' þe dys nyzt' <i>and</i> day <i>and</i> Eten also ouer þat' her myzt' may Thorgh whiche þei do þe deucl sacrifice Wip-in þe deucls temple in sondry wise By superfluite abhominable Her opes bene so grete <i>and</i> damnable þat' it' is grisly forto here hem swere Our blessed lordys body þei to-tere Hem þouzt' þe Iwes rent' hym nat' ynowe And ilk' of hem at' oþer synne loowe And rízt' anoñ commen Inne þan tomblesters ffetys and smale and 3ong' fruters Syngers wip harpes . bawdes <i>and</i> waiffrers Such' bene verrey þe deucls officers . To kyndel and blowe þe fyre of leccherye That' is annexed [vn]to glotenye The holy writt take I to witenesse þat' lecherie is in wyne <i>and</i> dronknesse ¶ Lo howe þat' dronken Lotli vnkindely Lay by his douzters two vnwittyngly So dronken he was he nyst' what' he wrouzt' Herodes who so hap' þe stories souzt' [. <i>no spurious lines in this MS.</i>]</p>	<p><small>[on leaf 217, back]</small></p> <p>464</p> <p>468</p> <p>472</p> <p>476</p> <p>480</p> <p>484</p> <p>¶ <i>nolite inebriari vino in quo est luxuria</i></p> <p>488</p>
--	---

whan he of wyne was replete at^t his feest^t 489
 Rigt^t at^t his owne table ȝaf his heest
 To sleen þe baptist^t Iohⁿ ful giltelees
 Senec^e saiþ a good word^t doutelees. ¶ Seneca 492
 He seiþ he can no difference fynde
 Betwix a man þat^t is out^t of his mynde
 And a man þat^t is dronklewe
 But þat^t woodenesse is fallen in a shrewe 496
 Perseuereþ lenger þan doþ dronknesse
 O glotený ful of Cursednesse .
 O cause furst^t of our^t confusioⁿ [leaf 218]
 Oryginal of our dampnacioⁿ 500
 Til crist^t had bouȝt^t vs wiþ his blood agayⁿ
 Lo how dere shortely forto sayne
 About^t was þe Cursed vilanye
 Corrupte was as þis world^t þorghⁿ glotenýe
 Adam oure fadere *and* his wif also
 ffrom paradís to labour and to woo
 Were driven for þat^t wise it^t is no drede
 ffor whiles þat^t adam fasted as I rede 508
 He was in paradýs and whan þat^t hee
 Ete of þe fruyte defended on þe tree .
 Anoon he was out^t cast^t to woo & peyne
 O glotenýe on þe wel ouȝt^t vs pleyne 512
 O wist^t a man how mony maladyes
 ffoloweþ of excesse and of glotonýes
 He wolde bene þe more mesurable
 Of his diete sitting^t at^t his table 516
 Allas þe short^t þrote þe tender mouþe
 Makeþ þat^t Est^t and West^t norþe & souþe
 In erthe in eire in watere men to synk^t
 To geten a gloton deynte mete *and* drink^t 520
 Of þis matere o poule wel cast^t þou trete
 Mete vnto wombe and wombe eke vnto mete
 Shal god distroie boþ as Powle seiþ
 Allas a foule þinge it^t is be my feiþ. 524

¶ *Ieronymus contra Io-
 uinianum Quamdiu ie-
 iunauit adam in para-
 diso . fuit. Cmedit &
 eiectus est statim*

To saie þis worde and foulere is þe dede
 Whan men so drinken of þe white *and* rede
 þat of his þrote he makeþ his priuee
 Thorgh þilk' cursed Superfluite 528
 þe Apostel wepinge seiþ ful pitously
 þer walken mony of which tolde haue I
 I saie it' nowe weping' wiþ pitous vois
 þer bene enemyes of cristes croys 532
 Of whiche þe eende is deþ. Wombe is her god
 O wombe o baly. o stynging' cod.
 ffulfilled of donge. and of corrupciõ
 At eiper eende of þe foule is þe sesoñ 536
 Howe grete cost' and labour is to fynde [leaf 218, back]
 Thise Cokes howe þei stampe streyne *and* grynde
 And turnen substañce into accident'
 To ffulfille alle þe likerous talent' 540
 Out of þe hard bones knocke þei
 þe mary for þei cast' nat' away
 þat' may goo þorgh þe golett' sauf' *and* soote
 Of spicery of leeuës berk' and roote 544
 Shal bene his sause ymade be delite
 To maken hym ȝit' a newe appetite
 But' certes he þat' haunteþ suche delices
 Is dede whiles þat' he lyueþ in þoo vices 548
 A lecherous þinge is wyne *and* dronknesse
 It is ful of strivinge and of wrecchednesse
 O dronken man disfigured in þi face
 ffoule is þi breeþ foule art' þou to enbrace 552
 And þorgh þi dronken nose souneth þ' sounē
 As þouze þou seidest ay Sampson Sampsoun
 And ȝit' god woot sampson dronk neuere no wyne
 þow fallest' as it' were a dronken swyne 556
 þi tunge is lost' and alle þine honest' Cure
 ffor drunknesse is verray sepulture
 Of mannys witte and his discreciõ
 In whoom þat' drink' haþ dominaciõ 560

He can no counsaile kepe it^t is no drede
 Nowe kepe 3ou from þe white *and* fro þe rede
 Namely from þe white wyne of lepe
 þat^t is to selle in fisshstrete *and* in chepe 564
 This wyne of spayn crepeþ subtilly
 In oþer wynes growinge faste by
 Of woche riseth suche fumosite
 þat^t whan a man haþ dronke a drauȝt^t or þre 568
 And weneþ þat^t he be at home in chepe
 þan is he in spayn riȝt^t at þe toune of lepe
 Nouȝt^t at the rocheH ne at burdeux town
 And þan wil þei say . Sampson sampson 572
 But^t harkeneþ lordingges oo þing^t I 3ou pray
 þat^t alle þe souereyn actes dar I say
 Of victories in olde testament^t [leaf 219]
 þat^t þorghe verrey god þat^t is omnipotent^t 576
 Weren doon in abstinence *and* in preiere
 Lokeþ þe bible and þer 3e may it^t lere
 Lokeþ Attila þe grete conquerour^t
 Deide in his slepe wiþ shame *and* dishonour 580
 Bleding at his nose in dronknesse
 A Captayn shuld live in sobrenesse
 And ouer al þise avise 3ow riȝt^t weH
 What^t was comaunded vnto lamueH 584
 Not^t Samuel but^t lamuel say .I. ¶ *Noli vinum dare*
 Redeþ þe bible and fyndeþ it^t expresly
 Of wyne 3euynge of hem þat^t aren Iustise
 No more of þis for it^t may suffise 588
 And now þat^t I haue spoken of glotenye
 Nowe wil I defende 3ou hasardye
 ¶ *Hasard^t is verrey modere of lesingges* ¶ *Policratici* [Jo.
 And of disceite cursed forswerynges *Sarisburyensis*] li-
 Blaspheme of crist^t manslaughter and waast also/ *bro i. mendaciorum*
 Of bataile and of tyme and of ferþermoo *& periuriarum mater*
 It is reпреef^t and contrarie to honour *est alea*
 florto be holden a comon hasardoure 596

And euer þe hier he is of estate
 The more he is holden desolate
 3if þat a prince vse hasardie
 In al gouernance and polecye 600
 He is as by comon opinioñ
 Holde þe lasse in reputacioñ
 ¶ Stilboon þat was holde a wise embassatour ¶ Stilboon .i.
 Was sent into Corinth with grete honour. Me,curius.
 ffor Calidoynes to make hem alliañce
 And whan he came happed þis chañce
 And al þe grettest þat were of þat lond
 Pleiynge at þe hasard he hem fond 608
 ffor which as sone as þat myzt be
 He stale hym home azein to his cuntre
 And saide þere I wold not lese my name
 I wold nat take on me so gret diffame. 612
 ffor to allye 3ou to noon hasardours / [leaf 219, back]
 Sendeþ oþer wiser embassatours ./
 ffor by my troupe me were leuere dye
 þan I shuld. 3ow to hasardours allie 616
 But 3e þat bene so glorious in honoures.
 Shal not allie 3ou wiþ hasardoures .
 As by my wille ne as by my trete
 This wis philisophre þus seide hee 620
 Loke eeke þat to þe kinge Demetreus
 The kyng of partes as þe booke seiþ þus
 Sent hym a paire of golden dys in scorne
 ffor he had vsed hasardrie þer byforne 624
 ffor whiche he heelde his glorie and his renoun
 ffor no value of reputacioun
 lordes myght fynde oþer manere playe
 Honest ynowe to dryue þe day awaye 628
 Now wil I speke of oþes fals and grete
 A worde or twoo as oþer bookes entrete .
 Grete sweringe is a þing abhominable
 And fals sweringe is moche more reproueable 632

The highe god forbere sweryng^t at^t alle ¶ *Nolite omnino iurare*
 Witnesse of mathewe but^t *in* specia^l
 Of swerynge [seip] þe holy Ieremye. ¶ *Ieremie .4^o Iu-*
 Thowe shalt^t swere soþe þine oþes *and* not^t lie *rabis inquit in*
 And swere in doome and eke in riȝtwisnesse *veritate in iu-*
 But^t ydel sweringe is a cursednesse *dicio & iusticia*
 Biholde and see þat^t in þe first table . 640
 Of hie goddes heestes honorable
 How þat^t twoo heestes of hym is þis
 Take not^t my tale in ydelnes amys
 Loo raþer he forbedeþ such swerynge
 Than homicide or eny oþer þinge . 644
 I saie as þus by order it^t stondeþ
 This knowen þat^t heestes vnderstondeþ
 How þat^t þe Secounde heest of god is þat
 And ferþer ouer I wil þe telle al þat^t 648
 þat^t vengeance shal not^t part^t from his hous
 þat^t of his oþes is so outrageous .
 By goddys precious hert^t and his nailles [leaf 220]
 And by his blood þat^t is in hailles 652
 Seuen is my chaunce and his .v. *and* thre
 By goddys armes ȝif þou falsly plaie me
 This daggard shal þorgh þine hert^t goo .
 This fruite *commeþ* of þilk bones twoo . 656
 ffor-sweringe Ire falsenesse homyside
 Now for þe loue of crist^t þat^t for vs dyde
 Leueþ ȝoure oþes bothe grete and smale
 ffor I shal telle ȝou a mervelous tale / 660
 Thise Riotours of which I telle .
 Longe erste er prime . ronge eny belle
 Were sette in a tauerne for to drynke
 And as þei satte þei herd a belle chink^t 664
 Byforn a corps was caried to his graue
 þat^t oon of hem can calle to his knaue /
 Goo bette quod he and aske redely
 What^t coors is þat^t þat^t passeþ forþ by 668

And loke þat þou report his name weH
 Sire quod þis [knaue] it nedep neuer a deH
 It was me tolde eer 3e came heer two houres
 He was parde an olde felawe of 3oures 672
 Al sodeynly was he sclayn to-nyzt
 ffor-dronken as he satte vpon his bench vprizt
 Ther come a prive þeef men clepen deþe
 þat in his contray al þe puple scleep 676
 And wip his speer he smote his hert atwoo
 And went his way wip-oute wordes moo
 He hap a thousand sclayn þis Pestilence
 And maistere er 3e come in his presence 680
 Me þenkep þat it were necessarie
 ffor to be war of such an aduersarie
 Beep redy forto mete hym euermore
 Thus tauzt me my dame I saye no more 684
 ¶ By seint marye saide þis tauernere
 þe Childe seiþ soop for he hap sclayn to 3ere
 hens ouer a myle wip-Inne a grete vilage
 Both man and womman childe *and* page. 688
 I trowe his habitacioun be þere [leaf 220, back]
 To bene avised grete wisdom e it were
 Er þat he did a man dishonoure
 3e goddes arnes quod þis Riatoure 692
 Is it suche perile wip hym forto mete
 I shal hym sechen by stie and by strete
 I. make a vowe by goddys digne bones.
 Harkenep felawes we þre bene al ones. 696
 Lat eche of vs holde vp his honde to opere
 And eche of vs bycome opers broþer
 And we wil slee þis fals traitour deþe
 He shal be slayne he þat so monye sleeþe 700
 By goddys dignite er it be nyzt
 To-gidere han þise þre her hertes plizt.
 To lif and to dye ilk of hem wip oper
 As þouze he were his owne born broþer 704

And vp þei sterten and dronken in þis rage.
 And forþ þei goon towardes þat vilage
 Of which þe tauernere haþ spoke byforne
 And mony a grisly ooþe han þei sworne 708
 And cistes blessed body þei to-rent'
 þat' deeth shal be dede if we may hym hent'
 Whan þei han goon nat' fully a myle
 Riȝt as þei wold' haue troden ouer a stile 712
 An olde and a poor man wiþ hem mette
 This olde man ful mekely hem grette
 And saide þus nowe lordes god ȝou see
 þe Prowdest' of þise Riatours thre 716
 Answerde aȝein what' cherlde wiþ harde grace
 Why art' þou al forwrapped sauf þi face
 Whi lyuest' þou so longe in so grete age
 This olde man gan loke in his visage 720
 And seide þus for I can nat' fynde
 A man þouȝe I walked into Ynde
 Neipr in Cite ne in noon vilage
 þat' wil chaungen his ȝouþe for myñ age 724
 And perfore mote I haue myn age stille
 As longe tyme as it is goddys wille /
 Ne deþ allas nyl not' haue my lif' [leaf 221]
 Thus walk I like a restlees catif 728
 And on þe grounde which is my moder' gate
 I knokke wiþ my staf erly and late
 And saie leue moder lat' me Inne
 Loo howe I vanyssh flessħ blood *and* skynne 732
 Allas whan shul my bones bene at' reste
 Modere with ȝou wold I chaunge my chest'
 That' in my chambere longe tyme haþ be.
 Ȝe for an heeren cloute to wrappe me 736
 But' ȝit' to me she wil nat' do þat' grace.
 ffor whiche ful welked is my face
 And sirs to ȝou it' is no curtesie
 To speken vntil an olde man vilany 740

But^t he trespase in word or ellis in dede
 In holy writte 3e may 3oure self wel rede
 ¶ Azeinst an oolde man hoor vpon his hede ¶ *Coram canuto*
 3e shuld arise þerfor I 3eue 3ou rede *capite consurge.*
 744
 Ne doþ vnto and olde man harme as nowe
 No more þan 3e wolde a man did 3owe
 In age if þat^t 3e so longe abide
 And god be wiþ 3ow wheder 3e goo or ride 748
 I mote goo þidere as I haue to goo
 We nay olde cherle by god þou shalt^t nat^t soo.
 Seyde þise oþer hasardours anone
 Thow partest^t nat^t so liztly be seynt^t Iohn 752
 Thow spak^t rizt^t now of þilk^t tratour deþe
 þat^t in þis cuntre alle our frendes sleepe
 Haue here my troupe as þou art^t his aspie
 Telle wher he is or ellis þou shalt^t dye 756
 By god and by þe holy sacrament^t
 ffor sobly þou art^t [on] of his assent^t
 To scleen vs 3enge folk^t þou fals þeef
 Nowe sirres if it^t be to 3ou so leef 760
 To fynde deþ turne vp þis croked way
 ffor in þat^t groue I left^t hym be my fay
 Vnder a tree and þere he wil abide
 Ne for 3oure boost^t he nyl hym no þinge hide 764
 See 3e þat^t ooke rizt^t þere 3e shul hym fynde [leaf 221, back]
 God saue 3ou þat^t bouzt^t azein mankynde
 And 3ou amende þus saide þis olde man
 And euery of þise Riatours ranne 768
 Til þei come to þe tree and þer þei fonde
 floreyne of gold^d fyne. ykoyned rounde
 Wel nyghe a seuen bussshells as hem þouzt^t
 No lenger than aftere deþ þei souzt^t 772
 But^t eche of hem so glad was of þat^t syzt^t
 ffor þat^t þe floreyne so faire be and brizt^t
 That^t doune þei sette hem by þe precious hoorde
 The worst^t of hem he spak^t þe furst word 776

GROUP C. § 4. PARDONER'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

Breperen quod he take hede what I say
 My witte is grete þough I bourde *and* play
 This tresour hap fortune to vs zeuen
 In myrþe and iolite our lyf to lyuen 780
 And lightly so as it *commeþ* so wil we spende
 Ey precious goddys hert' who wende
 To-day þat' we shulde haue so faire a grace
 But' myȝt' þis gold be caried fro þis place 784
 Home into myne hous or ellis to ȝoures
 ffor wel I woote þat' aȝ þis gold is oures/
 Than were we in high ffelicite .
 But' trewly by day it' may nat' be 788
 Men wold say þat' we were þeues stronge
 And for oure owne tresour' done vs honge
 As wisely and as seligly as it' myȝt'
 This tresour most' yearied be be nyȝt' 792
 Wherefore I rede lat' loke among' vs alle
 To drawe and lat' see where þe Cut wil falle
 he þat' hap þe curt' wiþ herte blith
 Shal renne to toune and þat' ful swith 796
 To bringe vs brede and drink' ful priuely
 And two of vs shal kepen sotilly
 This tresour wel and if he wil not' tarie
 Whan it' is nyȝt' we wil þis tresor carie 800
 By oon assent' where as vs likeþ best'
 That' oon of ham broȝt' gras in his fest'
 And bad hem drawe and loke wher it wolde falle [leaf 222]
 And it' felle on the ȝongest' of hem alle 804
 And forþ toward' þe towne he went' anoon
 And also sone as that he was goone
 That' oon of hem spak' vnto þat' opere
 Thowe woost' wel þou art' myn owne sworn broþere 808
 Thi prophite wil I telle þe anon
 Thowe woost' wel þat' our' felawe is goon
 And here is gold' and þat' grete plente
 þat' shal departed be amonges vs þree 812

But nafelees if I can shape it soo
 þat it departed were amonges vs twoo
 Had I not done a frendes turne to þe
 þat oþer Answered I not howe þat myȝt be 816
 I wold wel þat þe gold were oures twoo.
 What shuld wee doo þat it myȝt be soo.
 Shal it be counsaile said þe first schrewe
 And I shal telle [þe] in wordes fewe 820
 What we shul doon and bringe it aboute
 I graunt quod þat oþer out of doute
 That by my troupe I nyl þe nat bywreien
 Now quod the furst þou woote wel we be tweyen 824
 And twoo of vs shul strenger be þan oon
 loke whan he is sette and þat anon
 Arise as þouze þou woldest wip hym play
 And I shal ryuen hym þorgh þe sides twey 828
 Whiles þat þow strogelest with hym as in game
 And wip þi daggere loke þou doo þe same
 And þan shal al þis golde departed be
 My dere freende bytwixe þe and me 832
 Than may we boop our lustes fulfille
 And play at þe dice at our owne wille
 And þus accorded bene þise shrewes tway
 To sceen þe þred as ȝe han herd me say 836
 ¶ This ȝongest which þat went to þe toune
 fful oft in his hert rolled vp *and* doune
 þe bewte of þise floreyne faire *and* briȝt
 O lord quod he ȝif it so were I myȝt 840
 Haue al þis tresour to myself alone [leaf 222, back]
 Ther nys no man þat lyueþ vnder trone
 Of golde þat shuld lyve so mery as I
 And at þe last þe feende oure enemye 844
 Put in his þouȝt þat he shuld poysen bey
 wip which he myȝt sceen his felawes twey
 ffor whi þe feende fonde him in such liuyng
 That he had leue hym to sorowe bringe 848

ffor þis was vtterly his entent^t
 To scleen hem boþe and neuere to repent^t
 And forþ he goþ no lenger wold^t he tarye
 Into þe towne vnto apotecarye 852
 And preide hym þat^t he hym wolde selle
 Somme poysen þat^t he myȝt^t his rattes kelle
 And eke þer was a polcat^t in his hawe
 þat^t as he seide his capons had Isclawe 856
 And seide he wolk wreke hym ȝif he myȝt^t
 On vermyn þat^t destroyen hem by nyȝt^t
 The appoticarie answerd^t þou shalt^t haue
 A þinge þat^t as god my saule saue 860
 In al þis worlde þer nys no creature
 þat^t ete or drink^t of þis confecture
 Nouȝt^t but^t þe mountance of a corn of whete
 þat^t he ne shal his lif anoon forlete 864
 Ȝe sterue he shal and þat^t in lasse while
 þan þow wilt^t goon a pace nat^t but^t a myle
 This poysen þat^t is so hard^t and violent^t
 This cursed man haþ in his honde it^t hent^t 868
 This poysen in a boxe and sipens he ranne
 Into þe nexte strete vnto a man
 And borrowed hym large botelles þre
 And to his felawes aȝein repaireþ he 872
 The iij. he kepte clene for his drinke
 ffor alle þe nyȝt^t he shope hym forto swynk^t
 In caryng^t of þat^t gold^t out^t of þat^t place
 And whan þis riotour wiþ sory grace 876
 Had filled wiþ him his grete botels þre
 To his felawes aȝein repaireþ he ./
 What^t nedep^t it^t to sermon þerof more [leaf 223]
 ffor riȝt^t as þei had cast^t his deef byfore 880
 Riȝt^t so þei han hym selayn and þat^t anoñ
 And whan þat^t þis was doon þan speke þat^t oñ
 Now lat^t vs sitte and drink^t and make vs mery
 And afterward^t we wil his body bery 884

And after þat hit happed hem percas
 To taken a boteH wher-in the poyson was
 And drank and ȝaue his felawe drink alsoþe
 þorghe whiche anoon þei steruen bothe 888
 But certes I suppose þat Auicen
 Wroote neuer in no canon ne in no fen
 Moo wondere sorowes of empoysenyng
 Thus had þise wrecches two her endinge 892
 Thus eended be þise homycydes twoo
 And eke þis false enpoysoner alsoo
 O. cursed synne ful of al cursednesse
 O. traterous homycides .o. Wickednesse 896
 O. glotenye luxurye and hasardrye
 Thow blasphemour of crist wiþ vileny
 And oþes grete of vsage and of pride
 Allas mankinde howe may it betide 900
 That to þi creatour which þat þe wrouzt
 And wiþ his precious blood þe bouzt
 Thowe art so fals and so vnkynde allas
 Now good men god forȝeue ȝou ȝour trespas 904
 And kepe ȝou from þe synne of auarice
 Myne holy pardoñ may ȝou aH warisshe
 So that ȝe offer nobles or sterlyngges
 Oīper ellis Siluere. spoones. broches. or ryngges 908
 Bowep ȝoure hede vnder þis bulle
 Commeþ vp ȝe Wyues offrep ȝour wille
 ȝoure name I entre here in my rolle anō
 In to þe blisse of heuene shul ȝe al goon 912
 I ȝou assoille be my highe powere
 ȝe þat wollen offre as clene and eke as cleere
 As ȝe were born and loo sirs þus I preche
 And Ihesu crist þat is our saules leche. 916
 So graunte ȝou his pardon to receyue ./ [leaf 223, back]
 ffor þat is best I wil ȝou not deceyue
 ¶ But sirs oon word forgate I in my tale
 I haue relikes and pardon in my male 920

As faire as eny man in engelond^t
 Whiche were zeue me by þe popes hond^t
 3if eny of 3ow wol of deuociōn
 Offre and han myn absolucioñ 924
 Commeþ forþ anon and kneleþ here adoun
 þat^t 3e may haue part^t of my pardoun
 Or ellis takeþ pardon as 3e wende
 Al newe and fressh at^t euery townes ende 928
 So þat^t 3e offre alway newe *and* newe
 Nobles and pans which^h þat^t bene good and trewe
 It^t is an honure to euery þat^t bene here
 þat^t 3e may haue a suffisañt^t pardonere 932
 To assoile 3ou in contree as 3e ride
 ffor auentures which^h þat^t may be-tide
 ffor parauenture þer may falle oon or twoo
 Doune of her hors and breke her nek^t atwoo 936
 Looke swiche a swerte it^t is to 3ou alle
 That^t I am in 3oure felawship yfalle
 þat^t may assoile 3ou boþ more *and* lasse
 Whan þat^t þe soule shal fro þe body passe 940
 I rede þat^t hour [hooste] shal bygynne
 ffor he is most^t enuolupte of synne
 Come forþ sire hoost^t and offre first^t anoñ
 And þou shalt^t kysse þe relikes euerechoñ 944
 3e for a groot^t vnbokel anoñ þi purs
 Nay nay quod he þan haue I cristes curs
 lat^t be quod he it^t shal nat^t be so theche
 þow woldest^t make me kissen þine olde breche 948
 And swere it^t were þe relike of a seynt^t
 þouze it^t were wiþ þi foundement^t depeynt^t
 But^t by þe crosse which^h seint^t Elyne fonde
 I wold I had þi culyons in myne honde 952
 In stede of relikes of seint^t-wary
 Lat^t kitte hem of *and* I wil helpe hem cary
 They shulde be schryned in an hogges toord^t
 This Pardonere answered nat^t a woord^t 956

[leaf 224]

GROUP C. § 4. PARDONER'S TALE. Petworth MS.

So wroþ he was he wolde no word say
 Nowe quod our oost I nyl no lenger play
 Wiþ þe ne wiþ noon oþer angry man
 But riȝt anoon þe worþi knyȝt bygan 960
 Whan þat he seegh þat alle þe puple louȝe
 No more of þis for it is riȝt ynoghe
 Sir Pardonere be mery *and* glad of chere
 And ȝee sir Hoost þat bene to me so dere 964
 I prei ȝou þat ȝe kisse þe Pardonere
 And pardonere I prei ȝou drawe ȝè nere
 And as we did lat vs lauȝe and play
 And anon þei kissed and riden forþ her way 968

¶ Thus endep þe pardoners tale.

And here bygynneþ

The prologe of Thoppas

¶ The prologe

[on leaf 224]

WHan saide was þis tale euery man
As sober was þat wonder was to see
Til þat our oost lape byganne
And þan at erst he loked vpon me . . . i. chaucers. 1884
And saide þus what man art þou quod he
Thow lokest as þow woldest fynde an hare
ffor euer vpon þe grounde I se þe stare 1887

¶ Approche nere and loke meryly
Now war 3ou sirs and lat þis man han plas
He in þe waast is shape as wel as I
This were a popet in armes to embrace 1891
ffor eny womman smal and faire of faice
He semeþ Elynssh be his cuntenaunce
ffor vnto no wight dop he daliaunce 1894

Say nowe somewhat sipens opere folk han saide
Telle vs a tale of merth and þat anon
Oost quod I ne be nat euel paide.
ffor oper tale certes can I noon. 1898
But of a ryme I lered longe agoñ
3e þat is good quod he shul we it here
Som deynte þing me semeþ by his chere. 1901

[No break in the MS, and no spaces between the stanzas
above and after.]

¶ Here bygynneþ be tale of chaucere by Sire Thopac.

¶ Capitulum xix^m ¶ Sire Thopace.

[*Fytte I.*]

L Estneth lordes in good entent^t [leaf 224, back]
 And I wiþ telle verrement^t
 Of myrth¹ and of solace [¹ in a later hand] 1904
 Of a knyȝt^t was faire and gent^t
 In bataile and in tornament^t
 His name was sir thopacc. 1907

I-born he was in fer cuntree
 In fflaunders al byzonde þe see
 Att^t Poperinge in þe place 1910
 His fader was a man ful free
 And lorde he was of þat^t cuntre
 As it^t was goddes grace 1913

Sir^t Thopas was a doughty swayn
 White was his face as payndemayn
 His lippes rede as Roos. 1916
 His rudde is like scarlett^t in grayn
 And I ȝow telle in good certayn
 He had a semely nose 1919

His heer his beerd was lik saffron
 þat^t to his girdel kauȝt^t adoune
 His shoon of Cordewayne/ 1922
 Of brugges were his hosen broun
 His Roobe was of Ciclatoun
 That^t cost^t mony a rayn 1925

He coupe hunte at wylde dere
 And Ride on hawkyng for þe Ryuer
 Wiþ grey goshauke on honde 1928
 Therto he was a good archere
 To wrastling was þer noon his peer
 Ther eny ram shulde stonde 1931

fful mony a maide brizt in boure
 þei morn for him *Paramoure*
 Whan þei were bette to slepe. 1934
 But he was chaast *and* no lecchoure
 And swete as is þe bremble floure
 That bereþ þe reede heppe 1937

And so byfelle vppon a day
 ffor soþþe as I ȝowe telle may
 Sire Thopaas wold out ride [leaf 225] 1940
 He worþ vp on his stede gray
 And in his honde a launce gay
 A longe swerde be his side 1943

He prikkeþ þorowe a faire forest
 Ther-in is mony a wilde beest
 ȝa boþ bukke and hare 1946
 And as he prikkeþ norþ and eest
 I telle ȝowe hym had almost
 By-tidde a sory care 1949

There springen herbes grete *and* smale
 þe lykorice and þe Setuale
 And mony a clowe gyloffre 1952
 And notemuges to put in ale
 Wheþere it be moyst or stale
 Or forto lay in Coffre 1955

þe birdes syngen it is no nay
 þe sparhauke and þe popeniay
 þat Ioie it was to here 1958
 The þrostel cok made eke his lay
 The woode douve vpon þe spray
 She songe ful loude *and* clere/ 1961

Sire Thopas felle in loue longynge
 And whan he hard þe þrostel synge.
 He prikkes as he were woode 1964
 His faire stede in his prikinge
 So swette þat men myȝt hym wringe
 His sides were al blood 1967

Sire Thopas eke so wery was
 ffor prikinge on þe soft gras
 So feers was his corage 1970
 That doune he laide hym in þat plas
 To maken his stede som solas
 ffor he was so Sauage 1973

O seint Marie Benedicite
 What aileþ þis loue at mee
 To bynde me so sore 1976
 Me dremed al þis nyȝt parde
 An Elfe quene shal my lemman be [leaf 225, back]
 And slepe vndere my gore 1979

And elf quene wil I loue ywis
 ffor in þis world no womman is
 Worþi to be my make 1982
 in toun
 Al oper wommen I forsake
 And to an elfe quene I me take
 By dale *and* eke by doune 1986

GROUP B. § 8. SIR THOPAS. Petworth MS.

Into his sadel he came anone
 And prikkeþ ouere stile *and* stone
 An helf quene forto asprie 1989
 Til he so longe haþ riden and goon
 That he fonde in a privee wooñ
 þe Cuntry of fary. 1992

¶ so wild
 ffor in þat cuntre nas þer noon
 [. *no gap in the MS.*]
 Neiþer wif ne child 1996

Til him þer come a Ioly geaunt
 His name was clepede Sir Olyfaunte
 A perilous man of dede 1999
 He seide childe by tirmagaunt
 But þif þou prik out of myn haunt
 Anoon I sclee þi stede. 2002

¶ wiþ mace
 Here is þe quene of fairie
 Wiþ harpe wiþ pipe and Simphony
 Dwelling in þis place 2006

The Childe saide so mot I þee
 To morowe wil I meten þee
 Whan I haue myn Armure 2009
 And ȝit I hope *par* ma faye
 þat þou shalt wiþ þis launcelay
 Abien it ful sore 2012

¶ Thorgh þi mawe
 Shal I perce ȝif I may
 Er it be fully prime of day
 ffor here þow shalt be sclawe 2016

Sire Thopas drogh a-bak ful fast
 This Geaunt at him stoness cast
 Out of a felle staf selynge 2019
 But faire eskeape child thopa
 And al it was þorgh goddes *grace* [leaf 226]
 And þorgh his faire beringe 2022

3it listneþ lordes to my tale
 Murier þan þe ny3tingale
 ffor now I wil 3ou rowne 2025
 Howe Sire Thopas wip sides smale
 Prickinge ouer doune *and* dale
 Is come a3ein to tounne 2026

His mery men commaunded he
 To make hym boþ game and glee
 ffor nedes most he f3zt 2031
 Wip oon geaunt wip hedes þre
 ffor *paramoure* and Iolite
 Of oon þat shoon ful brizt 2034

Do come he seide myn menstralles
 And geestours for to telle vs tales
 Anon in myn armynge 2037
 Of Romance þat bene reales
 Of popes and of cardynales
 And eke of loue likyng 2040

þei fatte hym first þe swete wyne
 [.
 2043
 *no gap in the MS.*]
 And licorice *and* eke comyne
 Wip sugre þat is cree 2046

GROUP B. § 8. SIR THOPAS. Petworth MS.

He did next^t his white leer
 Of cloþ of lake fyne *and* clere
 A breche and eke a sherte 2049
 And next^t his shert^t an aketoñ
 And ouer þat^t an haberioñ
 for peercyng^t of an herte 2052

And ouer þat^t a fyne hawberk
 Was al ywroug^t of Iwes werk^t
 fful stronge it^t was of plate 2055
 And ouer þat^t his cote armour^u
 As white as is þe lily flour^t
 In which he wil debate 2058

His sheeld was of gold so rede
 A þer-in was a bores hede
 A charbocke by his side 2061
 And þere he swore on ale *and* brede [leaf 226, back]
 Howe þat^t þe geaunt^t shal be dede
 Betide what^t bytide 2064

His Iaumbeuxe were of ^lquirboile [1? *soniurboile*]
 His sweerde scheep^t of yuory
 His helme of laton brizt^t 2067
 His sadel was of Rowel bone
 His bridel as þe sonne shone
 Or as þe moon lizt^t 2070

His spere was of fyne Cipres
 That^t bodeþ werre & no þing^t pees
 The hede ful sharpe ygrounde 2073
 His stede was al dapple grey
 It^t goþ an aumble by þe wey
 fful softely and rounde 2076

¶ In londe

Loo lordys myne here is a fitte

If 3e wil eny more of it

To telle it wil I fonde

2080

[Fytte II.]

Now holde 3oure mouth for charite

Boþ knyzt and lady fre

And harkneþ to my spelle

2083

Of BateH and of Chivalrie

And of ladies loue drurye

Anoon I wil 3ou telle

2086

Men speken of romances of price

Of horn childe and of ypotice

Of Befes and of sire gie

2089

Of Sy le boyx and Pleyndamour

But sire Thopace he bereþ þe flour

Of royal chyualrie

2092

His good stede he bystrode

And forþ vppon his way glode

As sparke out of þe brond

2095

Vpon his creest he bere a tour

And þer-Inne stiked a lilye flour

God shilde his corps fro shonde

2098

And for he was a knyzt auntrous

He nolde selepen in non hous /

But ligge in his hode

[leaf 227]

His brizt helme was his wongere

And by hym baite his deistrere

Of eerbes fyne and good.

2104

GROUP B. § 8. SIR THOPAS. **Petworth MS.**

Hym self drank watere of þe welle

As did þe knyȝt sire percyvelle

So worþely vnder wede

[. *no gap in the MS.*]

2108

NO more of þis for goddys dygnite
 Quod our hoost for þou makest me
 So wery of þi verrey lewdenesse
 That also wisly god my soule blesse 2112
 Myn eeres aken of þi drasty speche
 Now such a ryme þe deucl I byteche
 ¶ This may wel be cleped ryme dogrel quod he
 Whi so quod he whi wilt þou lette me. 2116
 More of my tale þan an oþer man
 Siþ þat it is þe best ryme þat I can
 By god quod he for pleyntly at a worde
 Thi drasty rymyng nys nat worþ a torde 2120
 Thow dost not ellis but spendest tyme
 Sire atte oon worde þou shalt no lenger ryme
 Lat see wher þou canst tellen ouzt in geeste
 Or ellis in prose somewhat at þe leest 2124
 In whiche þer be somme merth or doctrine
 Gladly quod I by goddys swete pyne
 I wil ȝow telle a litel þinge in prose
 þat auȝt like ȝou as I suppose 2128
 Or ellis certes ȝe bene to daungerous
 It is a moral tale vertuous
 Al be it tolde somtyme in sondry wise
 Of sondry folk as I shal ȝou devise 2132
 As þus ȝe woote þat euery euaungelist
 That tellen vs þe peyn of Ihesu crist
 Ne seiþ al þing as his felawe dooþ
 But napeles her sentence is aft soop. 2136
 And al accorden as in her sentence
 Al be þer in her tellyng difference

ffor somme of hem seyn more and somme lesse [leaf 227, back]

Whan þei his pitous passioun expresse 2140

I mene of mark^t mathewe luke *and* Iohn

But^t doutelees her sentence is al oñ

Therfore lordynggs al I 3ou biseche

3if þat 3e þenk^t I vary as in my spech 2144

As þus þou3e þat I telle somewhat^t more

Of prouerbes þat^t 3e han herd byfore

Comprehended in þis litel^t tretys here

To enforsen wiþ þe effecte of my matere 2148

And þou3e I not^t þe same wordes say

As 3e han herde 3it to 3oⁿ aH I pray

Blameþ me nat^t for in my sentence

Shul 3e nowhere fynde difference 2152

ffro þe sentence of þis tretys lite

Aftere þe which þis mery tale I write

And þerfor harkenep what I shal say

And lat^t me telle al my tale I pray 2156

¶ Here endeþ þe tale of Sir Thopas

[*No break in the MS.*]

[*There are no line-numbers or breaks between the paragraphs in the MS. Tyrwhitt's breaks are kept here to prevent slight differences in the Six Texts throwing out many lines. Some of the omissions in the MS are supplied from the print of the French original in Le Ménagier de Paris, ed. 1847, i. 186, as that proves the omissions to be such.*]

[*Petworth MS, on leaf 227, back.*]

And here bygnnep þe tale of Melebius & prudence.

[2157] **A** 3ong^t man called Melebius myȝty and riche bygate vpon his wif þat^t called was Prudence a doughter^r which þat^t called was Sophie.

[2158] Vpon a day byfelle^t þat^t he for his disporte is went^t into þe felde^s. him to play^t [2159] his wif and his doughtere he haȝ bylaft^t in-wiȝh his hous. of which þe doores weren fast^t shette. [2160] Ther of his olde foen had espied. and satten ladders to þe walles of his hous. and by þe wyndowes bene entred. [2161] and bete his wif and wounded his douȝter^r wiȝ^r .v. mortal woundes in .v. sondry places. [2162] This is to sayn in her feete. in her hondes. in her eeres. in her nose. and in her mouȝe. and laften her^r for dede. and wenten her way

[2163] Whan Melebius retourned^t was into his hous and seȝh al þis meschief. He like a mad man reending^t his cloþes gan to wepe and crie.

[2164] ¶ Prudence his wif as ferforȝ as she durst^t. bysouȝt^t hym of his weping^t for to stynt^t. [2165] but^t not forþi. he gan wepe *and* crye euere lenger þe more.

[2166] This noble wif prudence remembred her^r vpon þe sentence of Ovide in his booke þat^t cleped is þe remedy of loue. 'De remedio Amoris. Where as he seip. [2167] He is a foole þat^t distroubeȝ þe modere to weepe in þe deef of her childe. til she haue wepte her fulle. as for a certeyn tyme. [2168] And þan shal man / doon his dyligence wiȝ amyable chere hir^r to recomforte *and* prei hyr^r of

GROUP B. § 10. MELIBEUS. Petworth MS.

her wepinge forto stynt^t. [2169] ffor which reson þis noble wiff Prudence suffred her husbonde forto wepe and crie as for a certeyn space. [2170] ¶ And whan she seggh her tyme she saide to him in þis wise ¶ Allas my lord quod she whi maken 3e 3our' self forto [*sembler fol?* [2171] *Il n'appartient pas à sage homme de*] maken such a sorowe. [2172] 3oure dou3tere with þe grace of god shal warisshe and scape. [2173] And al were is so? þat' she ri3t' nowe were dede. 3e ne au3t' not' as for her deth 3our self destroie. [2174] ¶ Senec' seiþ / þe wise man shal not' take to gret' discomfort' for-þee deep of his children. [2175] but' certes he shuld suffre it' in pacience / as wel as he abideþ þe deep of his owne propre persone.

[2176] ¶ This Melebius answerd' anon and sayde. What' man quod he shulde of his weping' stent'. þat' hap so grete a cause as I haue. [2177] Ihesu our lord him self wepte for þe deep of lazarus his frende ¶ Qualiter Ihesus christus fleuit propter mortem Lazari. [2178] ¶ Prudence answerde. Certes wel I woot' attempre wepinge is no þinge defended to him þat' soroweful is. amonges folk in sorowe. but' it' is rather graunted hym to wepe. [2179] The Appostel paul vnto þe Romayns. Apostolus a Romanos writeþ. Man shal reioyse wiþ hem þat' maken Ioie. and wepe with suche folk as wepen: [2180] But' pou3e attempre wepinge be graunted. certes outrage wepinge is defended. [2181] ¶ Mesure of wepinge shulde be considered aftere þe loor þat' techeth vs senec' [2182] ¶ Whan þat' þi frende is dede seiþ he. lat' not' þine eyen to moist' bene of teeres. commynge to þine eyen. lat' hem nat falle. [2183] And whan þowe hast' forgoon þi freende. Do diligence to geten anoþer. and þis is more wisdomen þan forto wepe for þi frende which þat' þow hast' lorne. for þer-in nys no boote. [2184] And þer-fore 3if 3e gouerne 3ou by sapience. putte away sorowe from 3oure hertes. [2185] Remembreþ þat' Ihesus Sirak seiþ.

GROUP B. § 10. MELIBEUS. Petworth MS.

A man þat is Ioious and glad in hert it conserueþ hym florsshyng in his age But soly sorowful hert makeþ his bonys drie. [2186] He seiþ eke þus. þat sorowe in hert scleeþ ful mony a man. [2187] Salomon seiþ: þat riȝt as mothes in þe shepes fleese annoyen to þe cloþes. and þe smale wormes to þe tree. Riȝt so annoieþ sorowe to þ^e herte [2188] ¹Wherfore vs auȝt as wel in þe deef of oure children as in þe losse of our goodes temporeles haue pacience.

[2189] Remembreþ ȝowe `vpon pacient Iob. Whan he had lost his childere and his temporell substaunce and in his body endured mony a greuous tribulaciō ȝit saide he þus. [2190] Our lorde haþ [ȝeue it me / our lorde haþ] byraft it me Riȝt so as our lord wolde riȝt so is it done. yblessed be þe name of our lord [2191] ¶ To þise forseide þinges answered Melebius vnto his wif Prudence AH þise wordes quod he bene trewe. and þerto profitable. But trewly myn hert is troubled soo. wiþ þis sorowe. so grisly þat I note what to doon. [2192] Lat calle quod prudence þi trewe frendes alle. and þine lynage which þat bene wise. telleþ ȝour caas and herkenep what þei say in counsailinge And ȝou gouerne aftere her sentence. [2193] Salomon seiþ wirk al þi þing by counsail and þou shalt neuere repent

[2194] ¶ Than by þe counsaile of [his wif Prudence] [*Mellibée appella moult de*] folk. [2195] as Sirurgyens. Phisiciens. olde folk and ȝonge. and som of his olde enemyes reconciled as by her countenaunce to his loue and into his grace. [2196] And þerwiþal þer commen somme of his neiȝboures þat didden him reuerence. more for drede þan for loue as it happeþ oft [2197] ¶ Ther commen also ful mony subtile flaterers and wise aduocates lered in þe lawe.

[2198] And whan þise folk to-gydere were assembled. this Melebius in sorowful wise shewed hem his caas.

[2199] And by þe manere of his speche it^t semed þat^t in his hert^t he bere a cruel yre. redy to do vengeance vpon his foon. And sodeynly þan desired þat^t þe werre shuld bygynne [2200] But^t napelees 3it^t axed he her counsaile vpon þis matere./ [2201] ¶ A Sirurgien by licence and assent^t of such as were wise vp aroos and vn-to melebius saide as 3e shul here

[2202] ¶ Sir *quod* he as to vs Syrurgience appentep þat^t we doo to euery wight^t þe best^t þat^t we can · wher as we bene wipholden. and to our pacience þat^t we do no damage. [2203] Wherfore it^t happeþ mony tyme and oft^t þat^t whan þat^t twey men had euerich wounded opere oon Sirurgien heleþ hem boþe. [2204] Wherfore vnto our art^t it^t is not^t appertenent^t to norsshe werre ne parties to supporte / [2205] But^t certes as to þe warisshing^t of 3oure doghtere al be it^t so þat^t she perilously be wounded we shullen do so ententif bysynes fro day to nyght^t That^t wip þe grace of god she shal be hool and sounde as sone as is possible [2206] ¶ Almost^t riȝt^t in þe same wise þe Phisicien answerd saue þat^t þei seiden a fewe woordes moore. [2207] That^t riȝt^t as maladies ¹bene by hure contraries saued Riȝt^t soo shal man warisshe werre by vengeance. [2208] His neighbours ful of envie his feyned frendes þat^t semeden reconsiled his flaterers [2209] made semblant^t of wepinge and enpeiren and engreggen mochel of þis matere in preising^t gretely meleby of myȝt^t. of power. of Richesse *and* of frendes. Dispisinge þe power of his aduersaries / [2210] and seiden vtterely þat^t he anon shuld wreke hym. on his foes and bygynne werre.

[2211] ¶ Vp roos þan an aduocate þat^t was wise. by leue and by counsaile of opere þat^t were wise. and saide. [2212] ¶ Lordingges þe nede for þe which we bene assembled in þis place is ful heuy þinge. and a grete matere [2213] by cause of þe wronge and of þe wikkednesse þat^t hap bene doon. and eke by resoñ of a grete damage þat^t

in tyme commyng^t is possible to fallen. for þe same. [2214] and eke by resoñ of þe grete riches and power^t of þe parties boþe. [2215] ffor þe which resons it^t were a ful grete perile to erren in þis matere. [2216] Wherfore melebius þis is oure sentence. we counsaile 3ou abouen al þinge. þat riȝt^t anoon 3e do diligence in þe kepinge of 3oure propre persone in such a wise þat 3e ne wante noon espie ne wacche. 3oure body forto saue. [2217] And after þat^t we counsaile þat^t in 3oure hous 3e sette suffisant^t harnays. so þat^t þei mowe as wel 3oure body as 3our hous defende [2218] But certes forto moue werre. or sodeynly to doo vengeance we mowe not^t deme in so litel tyme þat^t were profitable [2219] wherfore we axen leisere and space to haue deliberacioñ in þis caas to deme. [2220] ffor þe Comon prouerbe seiþ þus. He þat^t sone demep^t sone shal repent^t. [2221] And eke men sayñ þat^t þilk Iuge is wis þat^t sone vnderstondep^t a matere. and Iuggeþ by leisere. [2222] ffor al be it^t soo þat^t taryinge be noyful. algate it^t is nat^t to repreue in 3euyng^e of Iuggement^t ne in Vengeance takinge whan it^t is so suffisaunt^t and resonable. [2223] & swed oure lorde Ihesu crist^t by en-sample. ffor whan þe womman þat^t was taken in avoutrie / was brouȝt^t in his presence to knowen what^t shulde be doon of her persone. al be it^t þat^t he wist^t wel him self what^t he wold answere [*toutesvoies il ne respondi pas*] sodeynly. but he wolde haue deliberacioñ. And in þe grounde he wroot^t threse. [2224] and by þise causes we axe deliberacioñ. And we shul þan by grace of good counsaile doo þinge that^t shal be profitable

[2225] ¶ Vp sterten þen þe 3onge folk at onys and þe moost^t partie of þat^t companye han scorne of þis wise olde man and bygonnen to make noyse and saide. [2226] Riȝt^t soo þe while þat^t yren is hoote. men shulde smyte. Riȝt^t soo shuld^t men wreken her harmes and wrogges.

þe while þei bene fresshe and newe. And wiþ lowde voice þei criden werre.

[2227] .Vp roos þoo oon of þise olde wise and wiþ his hondes made countenaunce þat men shulde holden hem stille and ȝeuen hym audience. [2228] ¶ Lordingges quod he þer is ful mony a man / þat crien werre werre þat woten ful litel what werre amounteþ. [2229] Werre at his bygynnynges hap so grete an entre *and* so large þat euery wight may entre whan him likeþ and listly fynde werre. [2230] But certes what ende shal falle it is nat list to knowe. [2231] ffor soþely whan þat werre is onys bygonne. þer is ful mony a childe vnborn of his modere. þat steruen. ȝonge by cause of pilk werre or ellys lye in swowe and dye in wrecchednesse. [2232] And þerfore er þat eny werre be bygonne men most han grete counsaile and grete deliberaciō [2233] And whan þis olde man had wende to enforsen his tale by resons. wel nygh aȝ at onys bygonne to rise forto breken his tale. and beden hym ful oft his wordes forto abrigge. [2234] ffor soþly he þat precheþ to hem þat list nat here his wordes his sermon availleþ not. [2235] ffor Ihesus Sirak. seiþ. þat musike in wepinge is noyous þinge. This is to saien as moche availleþ to speke to-fore folk to which his speche availleþ not. as it is to synge byfore hym þat wepeþ. [2236] And whan þis wise man segȝ þat hym wanted audience al shamefast he sette hym doune ageyne. [2237] ffor Salomon seiþ. Ther as þou ne maist not haue audience. enforce þe nat to speke [2238] ¶ I se wel quod þis wise man þat þe comon prouerbe is soþe. þat good counsaile whan it is most nede availleþ

[2239] ¶ ȝit had þis Melebius in his counsaile moche folk þat priuely in his eere counsailed hym moche þinge *and* counsailed hym þe contrarye in general audience

[2240] ¶ Whan Melebius had herd þe grettest

partye of his counsaile were acorded þat he shuld make werre. Anon consented to her counsellinge and fully affermed her sentence [2241] ¶ Than dame Prudence whan þat she seye howe þat her husbonde shope forto wreke hym on his foon and bygynne werre. she in ful vnble wise whan she segh her tyme saide hym þise ¹wordes [2242] ¶ My lord quod she I ȝow biseche as hertely as I dare *and* can no hast ȝou nat to fast. and for aȝ guerdons as ȝeue me audience. [2243] ffor Pirus Alfons. seiþ þus. who so þat doþ þe good or harme. hast þe nat to qwiten it. ffor in þis wise þi frende wil abide and þine enemye shal þe lenger lyve in drede. / [2244] ¶ The prouerbe seiþ. He hastep wel þat wisely can abide. And in wicked haast nys no profit

[2245] ¶ This Meleby answerd to his wif Prudence I. purpoos not quod he to wirken after þi counsaile ffor mony causes and resons. ffor certes eury wigt wolde holde me þan a fooȝ [2246] ¶ This is to sayne If I for þi counsailing wold chaunge þingges þat aren affermed by so mony wise men. [2247] Secoundly I saye þat alle wommen bene wicke. and non good of hem aȝ. for of a thowsande men seiþ Salomon .I. foond oon good man. But certes of alle wommen good womman fonde I neuer one. [2248] And also certys ȝif I gouerned me by þi counsaile it shuld seme þat I had ȝeue þe euere þe maistrie as god forbede þat it so were. [2249] ffor Syrak seiþ þat if þe wif haue þe maistrie she is contrarious [*à son mary*]. [2250] And Salomon seiþ Neuere in þi lif to þi wif ne to þi childe ne to þi frende ne ȝeue no power ouer þi self. ffor bettere it were þat þi children asken of þi persone þinge þat hem nedeþ þan þou sese þi self in þe hondes of þi children [2251] ¶ And also ȝif I wolde wyrk by þi counsaillinge. Certes my counsaile most somtyme be secree. til it were tyme þat it most be

GROUP B. § 10. MELIBEUS. Petworth MS.

knowe and þis ne may not be [2252. For it is written, 'þe Iangelarie of women can hide þingges þat þei woote nouȝt' [2253] Furthermore, the philosopher saith, 'In wicked counsaile wommen venquissȝ men;' and for these reasons I ought not to make use of thy counsel. (*See l. 2274, 2280, p. 209, 210, below.*)]

[2254] ¶ Dame Prudence ful debonairly and wiþ grete pacience had harde aȝ þat her husbonde liked to say. þan axed she of hym licence forto speke and saide in þis wise. [2255] ¶ My lord quod she as to ȝoure furst reson certes it may listly be answerde. for I say þat it nys no foly to chaunge counsaile whan þe þinge is chaunged. ffor ellis whan þe þinge semeþ oþer wise þan it was byforn [2256 *Après, je dy encores plus, car se tu avoies promis et juré de faire*] ȝoure emprise. And naþelees ȝe wayn to [per]foreme þilk same emprise. by iust cause. Men shuld not seyn þat ȝe were a lyer or forsworne. [2257] ffor þe booke seiþ The while man makeþ no lesinge: whan he turneþ his corage to þe better'. [2258] And al be it soo þat ȝoure emprise be estabed and ordeyned by grete multitude of folk. ȝit ther ȝou not acomplise þilk same ordynaunce but ȝou like. [2259] ffor þe troupe of þingges and þe profite bene raper founden. in fewe ¹folk þat bene wise and ful of reson þan by grete multitude of folk þer eury man criep and clatereþ what hym likeþ. Sooply such multitude nys not honest [2260] And to þe secounde reson wher as ȝe seyn þat wommen bene wicked. saue ȝoure grace Certes ȝe dispise aȝ wommen in þis wise. and [he] þat al dispiseth [al displeseth]. as seiþ þe boke. [2261] And Senec seiþ. Who-so wil haue sapience shal no man dispreise. but he shal gladly teche þat he can. wiþ[out] presumpcioun or pride. [2262] and suche þinge as he nouȝt ne can he shal not bene ashamed to lerne hem / and enquere of lasse

folk^t þan hym self. [2263] And þat^t þer haþ bene
 ful mony good wommen. [*l'en le puet prouuer légèrement.*
 [2264] *Premièrement, car nostre Seigneur Ihésu-Crist ne*
se fust oncques daigné descendre en femme] 3if alle
 wommen had be wikke. [2265] but^t for
 þat^t grete bounte þat^t is in wommen: our lorde Ihesus crist^t
 whan he was risen from deþe to lyf appered raper to a
 womman þan to his apostels. [2266] And þouze
 þat Salomon say. þat^t he ne fonde neuer no good womman:
 It^t foloweþ not^t þefore þat^t alle wommen bene
 wikke. [2267] ffor þouze. þat^t he ne foonde noon good
 Certes mony an oþere man haþ founde
 mony a womman ful good and trewe. [2268] Or ellis
 perauenture þe entent^t of Salomon þis. as in
 souereyn bounte he saide no womman. [2269] This to
 sayn þat^t þer is no wizt^t þat^t haþ souereyne bounte
 sauf god allone. as he hym self recorderþ in his euaun-
 gely. [2270] ffor þer nys no creature so good þat^t hym
 ne wanteþ somewhat^t of þe perfeccioun of god þat^t is his
 [maker] [2271] ¶ 3oure iij. resoñ is þis. 3e seyne þat^t if
 3e gouerned 3ou by counsaile of me it^t shulde seme þat^t 3e
 had 3eue me þe maistrie and þe lordship Ouer 3oure
 persoñ. [2272] sire saue 3oure grace: it^t is not^t soo. ffor
 3if it^t so were þat^t man shulde be counsailed but^t only
 of hem þat^t had maistrie and lordship ouer his persone.
 men wold nat^t be counsailed so oft^t. [2273] ¶ ffor sople
 þilk man þat^t axeþ counsaile of a purpoos. 3it^t haþ he
 free chois wheþer he wil wirk^t by þat^t counsaile or
 nōōn. [2274] ¶ And as to 3oure ferþe resoñ þer as 3e
 sayn þat^t þe Iangelarie of wommen can hide þingges þat^t
 þei woote nouzt^t as who seiþ. þat^t a womman can not^t
 hide. [2275] Sire Thise woordes bene vnder-
 stonde of wommen þat^t bene Iangelers and wicked
 [2276] of which womme men seiyn þat^t þre þingges
 dryuen a man out^t of his hous. That^t is to seyn Smoke.
 dropping^t of Reyn/ and wicked wyues [2277] ¶ And

such womman seith Salomon . þat it were better a man were
 in desert by hym self . þan wiþ a womman at home þat is
 riotours . [2278] And Sire by 3oure leue ¹þat am nat I .
 [2279] ffor 3e haue ful oft assaied my grete silence and my
 grete pacience . and eke how wel I can hiden and hele jinges
 þat men ouzten secrely to hyde [2280] ¶ And soply as to
 3oure .v. resoñ . where as 3e sayn þat in wicked coun-
 saille wommen venquissþ men / god woote þilk is no reson
 in no stede . [2281] ffor vnderstondeth nowe . 3e
 axen counsaile forto doo wikkednesse . [2282] and if 3e wilt
 wirk wikkednesse and 3oure wiff restreyn þilk
 wikkednesse & ouercommeth 3ou by reson and by
 good counsaile / [2283] certis 3oure wiff ouzt raper to be
 preysed þan yblamed [2284] ¶ Thus shuld 3e vnder-
 stonde þe philosophre þat saip . In wikked counsaile
 wommen venquyssþ her husbondes [2285] And þer
 as 3e blamen alle wommen *and* her resons I shal shewe
 3ou by mony ensamples þat mony a womman hap
 bene ful good an 3it bene . and her counsaile hoolsom
 and profitable [2286] Eke somme men han saide þat þe
 counsail of wommen is eiper do dere or to
 litel of price [2287] But al be it soo þat ful mony
 womman is badde and her counsaile vile and not worþe /
 3it han men founden ful mony a good womman and ful
 discrete and wise in counsailynge [2288] ¶ Loo Iacobe by
 counsaile of his modere Rebekka wan þe benyson of
 Isaak his fadere *and* þe lordship of al his //
 [2289] Iudith by her good counsaile delyuered þe Cite of
 Bethulye in which she dwelled out of þe hondes of
 Olyfernes þat had it biseched and wolde it destroye
 [2290] abigaille deliuered Nabell her husbonde from
 dauid þe [*roy qui le voloit occire, et appaisa*]
 þe kinge by her witte and by þe good counsail-
 inge [2291] ¶ Hester By hure good consaile enhaunsed
 gretly þe puple of god in þe regne of Assuerus . The kinge
 [2292] and þe same bunte in good counsailynge of

mony a good womman may men telle / [2293] and more-
ouer whan our lorde had create Adam our forme fadere
he saide in þis wise [2294] ¶ It is nat good to be a
man allone. make we to hym an helpe s[e]mblable to him
self [2295] ¶ Here may 3e see þat 3if womman
were nat good and her counsaile good and profitable
[2296] Oure lord god of heuen wolde neiþer haue wrouȝt
hem. ne called hem helpe of man. but raþer confusion to
man. [2297] And þat seide onys a clerk in twoo vers.
What is bette þan gold. Iasper. And what is better þan
Iaspe. Wisdome. [2298] And what is better þan
wisdom Womman. and what is better þan good
womman no þinge. [2299] And sire by mony oþer
resons may 3e see þat wommen bene good
[et leur conseil bon] and profitable. [2300] And þerfore
3if 3e wil trest to my counsaile I shal restore 3ou
3oure douȝtere hool¹ and sounde. [2301] And eke I wil do
to 3ou so moche þat 3e haue honure in þis caas

[2302] ¶ Whan meleby harde þe wordes of his
wif Prudence he saide þus. [2303] I see wel þat þe
wordes of Salomon bene soþe. He seiþ þat wordes þat
bene spoken discretely by ordinaunce. bene hony combes
for þei 3euen swetnesse to þe soule and hoolsomnesse
to þe body [2304] And wif by cause of þi swete
wordes and eke for I haue assaied and preued þi grete
sapience and þi grete troupe I wil gouerne me by þi
counsaile in al þinge

[2305] ¶ Now sire quod dame prudence and siþen 3e
vouche sauf to be gouerned by my counsaile I wol
enforme 3owe howe 3e shul gouerne 3oure selfe in chesing
of 3oure counsaile. [2306] 3e shal first in al 3oure
werkes mekely bysechen to þe hiȝe god þat he wil
be 3oure conseilour [2307] and shapeþ as to such
entent þat he 3eue 3ou counsaile and comforte as tauȝt
Thebye his sone. [2308] At al tymes þow shalt blesso

god and prey hym dresse þi waies. and loke alle
þi counsailes bene in hym for euermore [2309] ¶ Seint
Iame eke saiþ. If eny of 3owe haue nede of Sapience. axe
it of god. [2310] and afterward þan shal 3e take
counsaille in 3oure self. and examyne wel 3oure pouztes of
such þingges as 3ou þenkeþ þat is best for 3oure profit.
[2311] And þan shal 3e driue from 3oure hert þoo
þat bene contrarious to good counsayle. [2312]
þat is to sayn Ire. Couetise and hastinesse.

[2313] ffurst he þat askep counsaile of hym self certys
he most bene wiþ-out Ire. for many causes [2314]
¶ þe furst is þis. He þat hap grete Ire and wreþe in
hym self he wenep alway þat he may doo þat he
may nat doo [2315] ¶ And secoundly he þat is Irous
and wroth. he ne may nat wel deme. [2316] [and he þat]
may nat wel [deme may nat wel] counsaile [2317] ¶ The
iiij. is this þat he þat is Irous and wroþe as saiþ
Senec ne may nat speke but blameful þingges / [2318]
and wiþ his vicious wordes he stireþ oþer folk to
angre and to Ire. [2319] And eke *sir* 3e most dryue
Couetise out of 3oure hert. [2320] ffor þe appostel seiþ
þat Couetise is roote of alle harmes. [2321] And trustep
wel þat a couetous man ne can nat deme [ne thinke]
but only to fulfille þe eende of his couetise [2322] and
certes þat may neuer ben accompliced. ffor euer
more þe habundance þat he hap of Ricchesse þe more
he desireþ. [2323] ¶ And sire 3ou most also dryue ¹away
from 3oure hert hastynesse [2324] for certes 3e may
not deme for þe best a sodeyn pouzt þat falleþ in
3oure hert. ¶ but 3e most averse 3ou on it ful oft.
[2325] ffor as 3e herde he[re]-to-form þe comon prouerbe. It
is þis þat he þat sone demep. sone repentep.

[2326] Sire 3e bene not alway in like disposicion
[2327] for certes some þinge þat semep somtyme to
3ou good to do. Anoper tyme it semep to 3ou
þe contrarie

[2328] ¶ Whan 3e han taken counsaile in 3oure self and so han demed by good deliberaciōn such pingges as 3ou semed best / [2329] þan rede I 3ou þat 3e kepe it Secre [2330] Bywrey nat 3oure counsaile to no persone. but if so be þat 3e wenen þat sikerly þat þorgh 3oure bewreying 3oure condiciōn shal be þe more profitable. [2331] ffor Ihesus Cirak seiþ. neipere to þi ffoo ne to þi freende diskeuere not þi secree ne þi folye [2332] for þei wil 3eue þe audience and lokinge and supportaciōn in þi presence *and* scorne þe in þine absence [2333] ¶ Anoper clerk seiþ þat scarcely shalt þow fynden eny persone þat may kepe counsaile secrely. [2334] þe boke seiþ. Whilst þat þou kepest þi counsaile in þine herte þou kepest it in þi prison. [2335] And whan þou bywreiest þi counsaile to eny wight he holdeþ þe in his snare [2336] And perfore it is better hide þi counsaile in þine hert. þan preien hym to whom 3e han bywreied 3oure counsaile þat he wil kepen it clooce and stille [2337] ¶ ffor Senec seiþ. If so be þat þou ne may þine owne counsaile hide. how maist þou preien eny oper wigt þi secree counsaile to kepe [2338] ¶ But napeles 3if þou wene sikerly þat þi bewrying of þi counsaile to a persone wil make þi condicion stonden in a better plite. þan shalt þou telle him þi counsaile in þis wise [2339] ¶ ffurst þou shalt make no semblant whedere þe were leuer pees or werre. or þis or þat. ne schewe hym not þi wille and þine entent. [2340] ffor trest wel þat comonly þise counsailours bene flaterers [2341] and namely þe counseilours of grete lordys. [2342] ffor þei enformen hem alway raper to speke plesannt wordys enclynyng to þe lordes lust þan woordes þat bene trewe and profitable [2343] ¶ And perfore men sayne þat þe riche man haþ seelden good counsaile. but 3if he haue it of hym self [2344] And aftere þat þow shalt considere þi frendes and þine enemyes. [2345] and as touchinge þi freendes þou shalt con-

sidere ¶ which of hem bene most feipful. and most wyse *and* eldest 'and most approued in counseillynge / [2346] of hem shalt þowe axe þi counsaile as þe caas requireþ

[2347] I say not furst 3e shul clepe to 3oure counsaile 3oure frendes þat bene trewe [2348] ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ. þat riȝt as þe hert of a man deliteþ in Sauour þat is swete. riȝt so þe counsaile of trewe frendes ȝeueþ swetnesse to þe sowle. [2349] He seiþ also þat þer may no þing be likned to þe trewe frende. [2350] ffor certes gold ne siluer bene not so mochi worþ as þe good wille of a trewe frende. [2351] ¶ And eke he seiþ þat a trewe frende is a grete defence / who so þat it fyndeþ. certis he fyndeþ a grete tresoure. [2352] Than shul 3e eke considere if þat 3oure trewe frendes bene discrete and wise. for þe boke seiþ Aske alway þi counsaile of hem þat bene wise. [2353] And by þis same reson shulde 3e clepen to 3oure counsaile of 3oure frendys þat bene of age such as han sayn mochi and bene expert in mony þingges and bene approued in counsailinge. [2354] ffor þe boke seiþ þat in olde men is þe sapience [*et en moult de temps est prudence*] [2355] ¶ And Tullius seiþ þat grete þingges ne ben not accomplished by strenght ne by delyuernesse of body but by good counsaile By auctorite of persones and be science þe which iij. þinges ne bene not feble by age but certes þei enforsen and encresen day by day. [2356] And þan shal 3e kepe þis for a general rewle ¶ ffurst shal 3e kepe to 3oure counsaile a fewe of 3oure frendes þat especial bene [2357] ffor Salomon seiþ Mony frendes haue þowe but among a thousand chese þe oon to be þi counsellour. [2358] ffor al be it soo þat þowe furst ne telle þi counsaile but to a fewe. þou maist afterward telle it to more folk. ȝif it be nede. [2359] But loke alway þat þi counsailers haue þilk thre condiciouns þat I haue saide

byfore. þat' is to say þat' þei bene trewe and wise *and* of olde experience. [2360] and wrik' not' alway in euery nede by oon counsaillere alloñ. for some it' byhouep be counsailed by mony [2361] ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ [salvation] of þingges: is wher þer bene mony counselours

[2362] ¶ Nowe seeþ what' I haue tolde 3ou of which folk' 3e shuld' be counsailed. Now wil I telle 3ou which counsaile 3e au3t' eschewe [2363] ¶ ffirst' 3e shul eschewe þe counsaile of foolis. So seiþ Salomon. Take no counsaile of a foole ffor he can no counsaile. but' aftere his owne affeccioñ [2364] ¶ The boke saiþ. þat' þe proprete of a fool is þis. He troweth listly harme of euery wi3t'. and listly trowep aH bounte ¹in hym self' [2365] Thow eke shal eschewe þe Counsaillynge of aH flaterers suche as enforsen hem rap' to preise þe persone by flaterye þan forto telle 3ou þe soþfastnesse of þingges./

[2366] ¶ Therfore Tullius seiþ ¶ Amonge alle þe pestilences þat' beñ in frendship þe grettest' is flaterye. And þerfore is moor nede. þat' þowe eschewe and drede and flee from þe swete wordes of flaterers þan of eny oþer puple [2367] ¶ The booke seiþ. Thow shalt' rap' drede and flee from þe swete wordes of flaterers and preisers þan fro þe eger wordes of þi frende þat' saiþ þe þi soþes. [2368] ¶ Salomon seiþ: That' þe wordes of a flaterer is a snare to cacchen innocentes wipe. [2369] He seiþ also þat' he þat' spekep to his frende. wordes of swetnesse and of plesaunce setteþ a nett' byfore his foote to cacchen him [2370] And þerfore seiþ Tullius ¶ Encline nat' þine eeres to fflaterers. ne take no counsaile to wordes of flaterye [2371] And Caton seiþ ¶ Auise þe wel and eschewe wordes of swetnesse and of plesaunce. [2372] And eke þou shalt' eschwe þe counsaile of þine olde enemyes [*qui sont reconciliés*, [2373] *car il est escript: nul ne retourne seurement en la*

grâce de son ennemy.] [2374] ¶ And Isope seiþ. Ne trest' not' to hem to þe which þow hast' hadde somtyme werre or enemyte. ne telle not' hem þi counsaile [2375] ¶ And senec' telleþ · þe cause whi · it' may nat' be. He seiþ where þat' grete fuyre haþ longe endured. þat' þer dwelleþ somme vapour of warmnesse [2376] ¶ And þerfore seiþ Salomon./ In þine olde foo trest' neuere. [2377] ffor sikerly þouze þine enemye be reconsiled and makeþ þe chere of humilite. and lowteþ to þe his hede. ne trust' him neuere. [2378] for certes he makeþ þilk fayned humilite more for his profite þan for eny loue. of þi persone. [*afin qu'il puisse avoir victoire de toi*] by swich feyned countenance. þe which victory he myzt' not' haue wiþ stryf or werre [2379] ¶ And Peter Alfons seiþ ¶ Make noon felawship wiþ þine olde enemyes. for ȝif þowe doo hem bounte. þei wil peruerten it' into wykkednesse [2380] ¶ And eke þou most' eschwe þe counsaile of ham þat' beñ þi se[r]uauntes. and beren þe grete reuerence. for peraenture þei sayñ it' more for drede þan for loue [2381] ¶ And þerfore seiþ a Philosophre in þis wise: Ther nys no wizt' perfittly trwe to hym þat' he to fore dredeþ [2382] ¶ And Tullius saiþ ¶ Ther is noo myzt' so grete of noon Emperour that' longe may endure but' ȝif he haue more loue of þe puple þan drede [2383] ¶ Thow shalt' also e[s]cheu þe counsaillynge of folk þat' bene dronklewe. for þei ne can no counsaile hide [2384] ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ ¶ Ther is no counsaile þer as regneþ dronknesse [2385] ¶ Ȝe shul also haue in suspecte þe counsaile of such folk' as counsaile ȝowe prively. oon. and þe contrarie openly [2386] **ffor Cassiodorie seiþ.**/ That' it' is a manere sleiȝt' to hindere. whan he sweweth to doon oon þinge openly and werkeþ þe contrarie prively. [2387] ¶ Thow shalt' also haue in suspecte the counsailing' wiþ wickeþ folke **ffor þe boke saiþ** The counsaillynge of wicked folk' is alway ful

of fraude [2388] And *dauid* seiþ Blessed is þat man
þat hap not folowed þe counsailling of wikked men or
schrewen [2389] ¶ Thow shalt also eschewe þe counsaile
of 3onge folk. for her counsaile is not ripe

[2390] ¶ Now Sire sip I haue shewde 3ou of such
folk 3e shuld take 3oure counsaile And of which folk 3e
shul take 3oure counsaile. and of which folk 3e shul
folowe þe counsaile [2391] ¶ Now shal I telle 3ou howe 3e
shul examyne 3oure counsaile. after þe doctrine of Tullius
[2392] in examynyng. þan of 3oure counseillour.
3e shul considere mony þingges [2393] ¶ Alþer furst 3e
shul considere þat in þilk þinge þat þowe purposest.
and vppon what þinge þow wolt haue counsaile þat verrey
troupe be saide and considered. This is to sayn telle
trewly þi tale. [2394] for he þat seiþ fals may not
wel be counsailed in þat tale [in which he lyeth] [2395]
And after This þou shalt considere þoo þingges þat
accorden to þat þou purposest forto doo by þi counsail-
lours. 3if reson. accorde þerto. [2396] & eke 3if þi
myght may atteyne þerto. And 3if þe more party and þe
better part of þi counsailours accorde þerto anon.
[2397] þan shalt þou considere þat þinge þat shal
folowe of þat counsailleng. as. pees. werre.
grace. profite or damage and mony oþer þingges.
[2398] [*et en toutes ces choses*] þow shalt chese þe
best and wayue all oþer. [2399] ¶ Than
shalt þow considere of what roote is engendred þi matere
of þi counsaile and whatt fruyte may be conseyued and
engendred þer-of [2400] ¶ Thow shalt also considere all þise
cases from whannes þei bene sprongen [2401] And
whan 3e han examyned 3oure counsaile as I haue saide.
which parte is þe better *and* more profitable and
haue approued it by mony wise folk and eelde. [2402]
Than shalt þow considere if þow maist performe it and
make of it a good ende. [2403] ffor reson wil not
þat eny man shuld bygynne a þinge but 3if he myght
performe it as hym lest or au3t [2404] Ne no wi3t shuld

take vpon him so heuy a charge þat he myȝt not bere
 it. [2405] ffor þe prouerbe seiþ. He þat to moche
 embraiseth: destrayneth litel . [2406] And Caton seiþ
 ¶ Assaie to doo such þingges as þow hast pouer to doo.
 lest þat þi charge oppresse þe so soor þat þe
 byhoueþ to wayue. þinge þat þou hast bygonne
 [2407] ¶ And ȝif so be ¹þat þowe be in doute whedere þou
 maist performe a þinge or noon. chese raþer to suffre
 þan bygynne [2408] **And Petrus Alfons** / seiþ: If
 þou hast myght to done a þinge of which þe most
 repent. it is bettere nay þan ȝee. [2409] This is
 to sayn þat þe is bettere to holde þi tunge stille. þan
 forto speke. [2410] Than may ȝe vnderstonde by
 strengre resons. þat ȝif þou hast powere to perfourme a
 warke of which þou shalt repent. þan is it better
 þat þowe suffre þan bygynne [2411] ¶ Wel sayne þei þat
 defenden euery wiȝt to assay a þing of which he is
 in doute whedere he may performe it or noon. [2412]
 And after whan ȝe han examyned ȝoure counsaile as I
 haue saide biforn. and knowen wel ȝe may per-
 fourme ȝoure emprise. conforme it þan sadly til it be at
 an eend

[2413] ¶ Nowe is it reson and tyme. þat I shewe
 when and wherfore þat ȝe may chaunge ȝoure counsail-
 lours wiþ-out reproof [2414] ¶ Sopely a man
 may change his counsaile. and his purpoos if þe cause
 seseþ. or whan a newe cause byndeþ. [2415] ffor þe
 lawe seiþ þat vpon þingges þat newly betiden byhoueþ
 newe counsaile. [2416] **And Seneca** seiþ / ȝif þi counsaile
 be comen to þe eeres of myn enemye: chaunge þi counsaile
 [2417] ¶ Thow maist also chaunge þi counsaile. ȝif so
 be þat þou fynde þat by errour or by oþer
 cause harme or damage may be-tide [2418] ¶ Also ȝif þi
 counsaile be dishonest. or ellis comen of dishonest cause
 chaunge þi counsaile [2419] **ffor þe lawes sayn** . þat
 al byheestes þat bene dishonest bene of no valewe.

[2420] And eke ȝif it' so be þat' it' be impossible or may not' goodly be performed or kept'.

[2421] And take þis for a general rewle þat' euery counsaile þat' is affermed so strongly þat' it' may nat' be chaunged for no condiciō þat' may be-tide I saye þat' þilk' counsaile is wikked

[2422] ¶ This Melebius whan he had herde þis doctrine of his wiff Dame Prudence: Answerde in þis wise.

[2423] ¶ Dame quod he as ȝit' into þis tyme ȝe han wel and connably tauȝt' me. as in generall howe I shal gouerne as in chesinge and in wiþholding' of my counsaillours [2424] But' nowe wolde I fayn þat' ȝe wolden condescenden in especiaH. [2425] and tel me howe likeþ. or what' semeþ ȝowe by our counsaillours þat' we haue chosen in our present' nede

[2426] ¶ My lord' quod she I biseche ȝowe in alle humblesse þat' ȝe wil not' wilfully replie aȝeinst' my resons / and mystemper nat' ȝour hert' þouȝe I¹ say or speke þinge þat' ȝou displeseþ. [2427] ffor god woote þat' as þat' as in myn entent' I speke it' for ȝoure best' for ȝoure honure and ȝoure profite. [2428] and soþly. I hope þat' ȝoure benignite wil taken in pacience. [2429] Trestep' me wel quod she þan þat' ȝoure counsaile as in þis caas ne shuld nat' as forto speke proprely. be called a consaillinge. but' a mociō or mouynge of foly. [2430] in which counsaile ȝe han erred [*en moult de manières*]

[2431] [*Premièrement, tu as erré*] in þe assembling' of ȝoure counsaillers. [2432] ffor ȝe shuld' first' haue cleped a fewe folk' [*et puis après plusieurs*] ȝif it' had bene nede. [2433] But' certes ȝe han sodeynly cleped to ȝoure counsaile a grete multitude of puple. fful chargeant' and ful noyous forto here [2434] Also ȝe han erred. for þere as ȝe shuld' oonly haue cleped to ȝoure counsaile ȝoure trewe freendes olde and wise [2435] ȝe haue ycleped straunge folk'. ȝonge folk'. fals flaterers and enemyes

GROUP B. § 10. MELIBEUS. Petworth MS.

reconsiled and folk^t þat^t done 3ou reuerence without
loue [2436] ¶ Also 3e haue erred. for 3e haue
brouȝt^t wiþ 3ou to 3oure counsaile. Ire. Coueityse.
and hastynesse [2437] þe which þre þingges [*sont*
contraires à conseil, et] [2438] 3e han not^t
avyncesed or destroyed hem / neiþer in 3oure
self ne in 3oure counsaillours as 3e ouȝt [2439]
¶ 3e haue erred also for 3e han shewed to 3oure
counsailers 3oure talent^t and 3oure affection to make
werre anon and forto do vengeance. [2440] þei han
espied by 3oure wordes to what^t þing^t 3e bene enclined.
[2441] & þefore han þei counsailled 3ou raþer to
3oure talent^t þan to 3oure prophete [2442] ¶ 3e haue erred
also. ffor it semed þat^t 3ou suffised to haue bene coun-
sailled by þise counsailloures oonly & wiþ þat^t litel avice. /
[2443] Where as in so grete and so highe a nede it^t had
ben necessarie moo counsaillours and more deliberacioñ to
performe 3oure emprise [2444] ¶ 3e haue erred also. for
3e haue nat^t examened 3oure counsaile in þe forseide
matere ne in dwe manere. as þe cace requireþ [2445] ¶ 3e
han erred also for 3e han maked no dyuysioñ bytwix
3oure counsaillours. þis is to sayñ bytwix 3oure
frendes & 3oure fayned counsaillours [2446] ne 3e han
not^t knowe þe wille of 3oure trewe frendes. olde and wise
[2447] But^t 3e han cast^t aH her wordes in an hochepote
and enclyned 3oure herte to þe more parte and to þe
gretter nombre and þer by 3e condescended. [2448]
And siþ 3e wote wele þat^t men shal fynde a
gretter multitude of fooles þan of wise men. [2449] and
þerfor þe counsaillours þat^t ben at congregacions and mul-
titudes of folk^t þer as men take more reward^t to þe
nombre þan to þe sapience of persones [2450] ¶ 3e se wel
þat^t ¹in such counsaillyngges fooles haue þe maistrie [2451]
. Melebius answerd^t ageyn and saide ¶ I graunte wel þat^t
I haue erred. [2452] but^t þer as þowe saist^t me here
bifore þat^t he nys nat^t to blame þat^t chaungeþ his coun-

saillours in certeyn cases and for certeyn iust causes
 [2453] I am al redy to chaunge my counsaillours riȝt
 as þowe wolt devise [2454] ¶ The prouerbe seiþ. þat
 forto do synne is mannyssh But certes forto perseuere
 longe in synne is werke of þe deueth

[2455] ¶ To þis sentence anon answered dame prudence
 and saide [2456] Examyneþ quod þan she ȝoure counsaile.
 and lat vs see whiche of hem haþ spoken moost resonable
 & taught ȝou best counsaile. [2457] And for as moche as
 þat þe examynacioñ is necessarie lat vs bygynne at Cirurgi-
 ens and at þe phisiciens þat furst speken in þis matere.
 [2458] I say ȝou þat þe Cirurgiens and þe phisiciens
 haue seiden ȝou in ȝoure counsaile discretly as hem auȝte.
 [2459] and in her speche seiden ful wisely as to þe office
 þat hem appenteth to done to euery wight honoure and
 profite and no wight to anoye [2460] and aftere her craft
 to doon grete diligence vnto þe cure of hem which þat
 þei han in gouernance. [2461] And sir riȝt as þei han
 answered wisely and discretly [2462] riȝt so rede I þat
 þei bene highly and souereynly guerdoned for her noble
 speche. [2463] and eke for þei shuld do þe more ententif
 bysynes in þe Curacioñ of ȝoure douȝter / [2464] ffor al
 be it soo þat þei bene ȝoure freendes perfore shal ȝe
 not suffre þat þei serue ȝou for nouȝt [2465] But ȝe
 auȝt þe rapier to gerdone hem and shewe hem ȝour
 largesse. [2466] And as tochinge þe propositioñ þe
 which þe phisiciens encresden in þis caas. þis is to
 sayn [2467] þat in maladies. þat oon contrarieþ is
 warshed by anoþer contrarie [2468] .I wold fayn knowe
 how þei vnderstonde þilk text And what is her sentence
 [2469] ¶ Certes quod Melebius vnderstondeñ it in þis
 wise. [2470] þat riȝt as þei han [m'(ont) fait un contraire,
 que je leur face un autre, [2471] et pour ce qu'ils (se) sont] venged
 ham on me and done me wronge Riȝt so shal I venge me
 vpon hem.

and done hem wronge [2472] and þan haue I cured oon contrary by a noþer

[2473] ¶ lo lo quod dame Prudence. how listly is euery man enclyned to his owne desire and to his awne plesaunce [2474] Certes *quod* she. wordes of þe phisiciens ne shulden nat^t haue bene vnderstonden in þis wise. [2475] ffor certys wikkednesse is nat^t contrarie to wicknesse. ne vengeance to vengeaunce. ne wrong^t to wronge. but^t þei bene semblable [2476] and þerfor on vengeaunce is not^t warissed by anoþer vengeaunce. ne oon wrong^t by a noþer ¹wronge. [2477] but^t euer-yeh of hem encreseþ and angreþ and greggeþ oþer. [2478] But certes þe wordes of þe phisicien shuld ben vnderstonden in þis wise. [2479] ffor goodnesse and wikkednesse ben two contraries and pees and werre *and* vengeaunce and suffrance. discord^t and accorde and mony oþer þingges. [2480] But^t certes wikkednesse shal be warssed by goodnesse. discord^t by accord^t. werre by pees. *and* so forþ of oþer þingges. [2481] And also to hem accordeþ [*saint Pol*] þe appostel in mony places [2482] He seiþ. ne zeldeþ nouzt^t harme for harme ne wikked speche for wikked speche. [2483] but^t doþ wel to hem þat^t don 3ou harme. and blesse hem þat^t sayn to þe harme [2484] *and* in mony oþer places he amonestep^t pees and accorde. [2485] ¶ But^t now wil I speke to 3ou of þe counsaile which^t þat^t was 3euen to 3ou by þe men of lawe and þe wise folk^t [2486] þat^t seiden aȝ by oon acorde as 3e han herd^t bifore. [2487] That^t ouer alle þingges 3e shal do 3oure diligence to kepe 3oure persones and to warnestore 3oure hous [2488] and saiden also. þat^t in þis 3e ouzt^t forto worchen ful wisely and bisily and wiþ grete deliberacion [2489] And sire as to þe furst^t poynt^t þat^t toucheþ to þe keping^t of 3our persone [2490] 3e shul vnderstonde þat^t he þat^t haþ werre shal euermore deuoutely and mekely preien by-forn alle þingges [2491] þat^t Ihesu crist of his mercy. wol

haue hym in his protection and bene his souereyn helpinge
 at his nede. [2492] ffor certes in þis world þer nys no
 wȳt þat may be counsailled or kepte sufficiently wȳ-
 out þe kepinge of our lord Ihesu crist. [2493] To þis
 sentence accordeþ þe profete Dauid þat seiþ. [2494]
 ȝif god ne kepe þe Citee in ydel waiteþ he þat it kepeþ.
 [2495] Now sire þan shul ȝe committe [*la garde*] of
 ȝoure persone to ȝoure trewe frendes þat bene appreued
 and yknowe [2496] and of hem shul ȝe asken helpe ȝoure
 body forto kepe ffor caton seiþ ¶ ȝif þou hast
 nede of helpe aske it of þi frendes [2497] ffor þer is
 noon so good a phisicien as þi trewe frende [2498]
 ¶ After þis þan shal ȝe kepe ȝou from al
 straunge folk and fro leers and haue alway in suspecte
 her companye [2499] ¶ ffor Pers Alfons seiþ þus ne
 take no company by þe waye of a straunge mon. but ȝif
 so be þat þowe knowe him of a lenger tyme. [2500]
 And ȝif so be þat he falle to þi companye per-
 aventure wȳ-outen þine assent [2501] enquire þan
 as sotilly as euer þou maist of his conuersacion and of his
 lyf byfore and feyne þi way. Say þow wolt goo þidere
 as þou wilt not goo. [2502] and ȝif he bere a spere
 holde þe on þe riȝt side. And ȝif he bere ¹a swerde
 holde þe on þe left side [2503] and so after þis
 þan shal ȝe kepe ȝou wisely from al such manere
 puple as I haue saide byfore and hem and her counsaile
 eschewe. [2504] And þan after þat shal ȝe kepe ȝou
 in such a manere [2505] þat for eny presumpcion of ȝoure
 strength. þat ȝe ne despise nat þe myȝt of ȝoure
 enemye and of ȝour aduersarie. so lite þat ȝe lete þe
 kepinge of ȝoure persone for ȝoure presumpcion. [2506]
 ffor euery wise man dredeþ his enemye. [2507]
 Salomon saip. wakeful is he þat oft haþ drede.
 [2508] ffor certes he þat þorowe hardynesse of his
 hert and þorowe þe hardynesse of hym self haþ to
 grete presumpcion him shal euel betide [2509] ¶ Than

GROUP B. § 10. MELIBEUS. Petworth MS.

shal 3e euermore countrewaite enbusshmentys and al
 specials. [2510] ffor Senec^e saiþ. þat þe wise man
 þat dredeþ harmes: escheweþ harmes. [2511] he ne
 falleþ not into periles: þat periles escheweþ [2512] ¶ And al
 be it so þat it seme þat þou art in siker place 3it
 shaltowe alway doo þi diligence in kepinge of þi persone.
 [2513] þis is to sayn be not necligent to kepe þi
 persone not oonly from þi grettest enemyes: but fro þi
 leest enemyes. [2514] Senec^e saiþ. A man þat is wel
 avised he dredeþ his leest enemye [2515] Ovide. saiþ.
 þat þe litel weseþ wil slee þe grete Owle and þe
 wilde hert [2516] And þe boke seiþ: A litel þorne
 may prik a kinge ful sore. And an hounde wil
 holde þe wilde bore. [2517] But naþelees I say. ¶ not
 þou shalt be so moche cowarde þat þou doute þer as it is no
 drede [2518] ¶ The boke saiþ / þat some folk han
 grete lest to desceyue. but 3it þei dreden hem to be de-
 sceyued. [2519] 3it shalt þou drede to be empoysened
 and kepe þe from þe company of scorners [2520]
 ¶ ffor þe booke seiþ: Wip scorners make no companye.
 but flee hem and her wordes as venyme.

[2521] Now as to þe secounde poynt when as 3oure
 wise counsailours counsailed 3ow to warnstore 3oure hous
 wip grete diligence. [2522] I wold fayn knowe how þat
 3e vnderstonden þilk wordys and what is 3oure Sentence.

[2523] Melebius Answerd and saide. Certes I vnder-
 stonde it in þis wise þat I shal warnstore myn hous
 wip towres such as haue castels and oþer manere
 edifi[c]es and armure and arcelries [2524] by such
 þingges as I may my persone and my hous kepe and
 defende. þat myn enemyes shul be in drede myn
 hous to approche.

[2525] To þis sentence anon answerd Dame Prudence
 ¶ Warnstoringe quod she of hegh toures and grete
 edifices [appertaineth sometimes to pride [2526] Men
 make towers and great edifices] with grete

costages and wiþ grete travaille. and whan þat þei be accomplished. 3it bene þei nat worþ a stree. but 3if þei ben deffended by trewe frendes þat bene olde and wise. / [2527]
 1 And vnderstonde wel þat þe strengest and þe grettest garisoñ þat þe riche man may haue as wel to kepe his persone as his goodes. is [2528] þat he be beloued wiþ his subiectys. and wiþ his neiȝbours [2529] ffor þus saip Tullius ¶ That þer is a maner garnesoñ þat no man may venquyssñ ne discomfett. And þat is [2530] a lord to be byloued wiþ his Citeseins and of his puple

[2531] Now sir as to þe iij. poynt where as 3oure olde and wise counsaillours. seiden þat 3owe ne auȝt not sodeynly ne hastely proceden in þis nede. [2532] but þat 3ou auȝt purveien and apparailen 3ou in þis caas wiþ grete diligence and grete deliberaciō. [2533] trewly I trowe þat þei seiden riȝt wisely and riȝt soþe. [2534] ffor Tullius seiþ ¶ In euery nede er þow bygynne it apparaille þe wiþ grete diligence [2535] Than say I þat in vengeance takinge in werre in bataile and in warne-storinge. [2536] er þan þou bygynne. I rede þat þou apparaile þe þerto. and do it wiȝh grete deliberaciō. [2537] ffor Tullius saip: ¶ That longe apparaylinge to-forn þe bataile: makeþ shorte victorie. [2538] And so Cassidorus saip. ¶ The garneson is strengre whan it is longe tyme avised.

[2539] But now lat vs speke more of þe counsaile. þat was accorded by 3oure neighbours which as doon 3ou reuerence wiþ-out loue [2540] 3oure olde enemyes reconsiled. 3oure flaterers [2541] þat counsailden 3ou certeyn þingges prively. and openly counsailden 3ou þe contrarie [2542] ¶ The 3onge folk also þat counsailed 3ou to venge 3ou / and make werre anoon [2543] ¶ And certes sire as I haue saide byforn 3e haue gretly erred to han cleped Such manere folk to 3oure counsaile. [2544] which counsaillours bene nowe repreued. by þe resons tofore saide. [2545] But napelees lat nowe descende to

þe speciaH. ¶ 3e shullen furst^t proceden aftere þe doctrine
of Tullius [2546] ¶ Certes þe troupe of þis or
þis counsaile nedep nat^t diligently enquire. [2547] for it
is wel wist^t which þei bene þat^t done to 3ou þis
trespace and vilanye [2548] and how mony trespasours.
and in what^t manere þei han to 3ou done. Aft^r þis
wronge and al þis vylanye [2549] And aftere þis
þan shal 3e examyne þe .ij. condicions whiche
þat^t þe same Tullius addeþ in þis matere. [2550] ffor
Tullius put^t to a þinge. þe which he clepeþ consentinge.
þis is to sayn [2551] ¶ Who ben þei and which bene þei.
and how mony. þat^t consenten to þi counsaile in þi wilful-
nesse to doo hastely ¶ vengeance. [2552] And lat^t vs con-
sidere also. Who bene þei and howe mony & which
bene þei þat^t consenten to 3oure aduersaries. [2553]
And certys as to þe ¹furst^t poynt^t it^t is wel knowen which
folk^t bene þei þat^t consenten to 3oure hastif wilful-
nes. [2554] ffor trewly al þoo þat^t counsailden 3ou
to make sodeyn werre ne bene nat^t 3oure frendes [2555]
[Or véons doncques qui tu es et qui sont ceulx que tu
tiens tant à ennemis.] as to 3oure persone. [2556] ffor
al be it^t soo þat^t 3e bene myghty and riche. certes 3e
bene but^t alloon. [2557] for certes 3e ne haue no childe
but^t a douztere. [2558] ne 3e ne haue no breþeren ne Cosyns
Germaynns ne noon oþer nygh^t kynrede./ [2559] wherfore
þat^t 3oure enemyes for drede shulden stent^t to plede with
3owe ne destroye 3oure persone [2560] ¶ 3e knowe
also þat^t 3oure richesesses mosten be dalt^t in
diuers parties. [2561] and whan þat^t euery wigt^t hap
his parte þei ne wol not^t take but^t litel reward^t to venge
þi deeth. [2562] but^t þine enemyes bene þre. And
þei han mony children. breþeren Cosynes and oþer nygh^t
kinrede. [2563] And þouze it^t so were þow haddest^t
sclayn of hem twoo or þree. 3it^t dwellen þer ynowe to wreke
her deeth. and to slee þi persone [2564] And þouze so
were þat^t 3oure kynrede were more siker and stedfast^t þan

þe kyn of þoure aduersaries. [2565] 3it^t naþelees þoure kynrede nys but^t litel kynrede. and litel sibbe to þowe. [2566] And þe kynne of þoure enemyes ben nygh^t sibbe to hem. And certⁱs as to þat^t. Her condicione is bett^r þat^t þowres. [2567] Than lat^t vs considere also. 3if þe counsaillinge of hem þat^t counsailed þowe to take sodeyn vengeance whedere it^t accorde to resoñ. [2568] Certys 3e knowe wel nay. [2569] ffor as by ri3t^t and resoñ þer may no man take vengeance on no wi3t^t but^t þe Iuge þat^t hap^t þe Iurisdiction of it^t [2570] whan it^t is ygraunted hym to take þilk^t vengeance hastely or attemperally as þe lawe requireþ. [2571] And 3it^t moreouere of þilk^t word^t þat^t Tullius clepeþ consentynge. [2572] Thow shalt^t considere 3it^t þow my3t^t and þi power my3t^t consent^t and suffice to þi wilfulnesse and to þi counsaillours. [2573] ¶ And certes þou maist^t wel say nay. [2574] for sikerly as forto speke proprely. we may do no þinge. but^t oonly þing^t as we may done ri3tfully. [2575] And certes ri3tfully ne mowe 3e take no vengeance as of þoure propre auctorite [2576] þan mowe 3e sene þat^t þoure power consented nat^t ne accordeþ not^t to þoure wilfulnesse [2577] ¶ lat^t vs nowe examyne þe iij poynt^t þat^t Tullius clepeþ consequent^t [2578] [*Tu dois doneques savoir que à vengeance que tu veulx faire, est conséquent*] [2579] And þerof folowep a-noþer vengeance perile and werre. and oþer damages wiþ-out^t nombre of which we bene litel warre as at þis tyme. / [2580] ¶ And as touþing^t þe fourte poynt^t þat^t Tullius clepeþ engendringe [2581] þou shalt^t considere þis wronge which þat is done to þe is engendred of þe hate of þine enemyes [2582] and of þe ¹vengeance takinge vpon þat^t wolde engendre a-noþere vengeance And mochel sorowe and waastinge of Richesse as I saide eerst^t.

[2583] ¶ Now sire as þan touchinge to þe poynt^t. That Tullius causes which þat^t is þe last^t poynte [2584] þou

GROUP B. § 10. MELIBEUS. Petworth MS.

shalt vnderstonde þat þe wronge þat þou hast receyued
 haþ certeyne causes. [2585] whiche þat clerkes clepen
 orience. And causia longinqua and causia
 propinqua. This is say þe fer cause and þe nyȝe
 cause. [2586] The fer cause is almyȝty god þat is
 cause of al þingges. [2587] The nere cause is by
 þre enemyes [2588] ¶ The cause accidentale was hate.
 [2589] þe cause materiall beþ .v. woundes of
 þi douȝtere [2590] The cause formal is þe maner of
 her worching þat brouȝten ladders and clomben Inne at
 þi wyndowes. [2591] The cause ffynal was. for to sele þi
 doughtere. It letted nouȝt in as moȝh as in hem was / [2592]
 Than to speke of þe ferþe cause as to what ende þei
 shal come or what shal ffynaly bytide of hem in þis
 caas. ne can I not deme but by countyng and by
 supposinge [2593] ¶ ffor we shul suppose. þat þei shul
 come to a wikked ende. [2594] by cause þat þe booke
 of Decrees seiþ ¶ Seeldome or wiþ grete peyne bene causes
 ybrouȝt to good ende whan þei bene bodely begonne.

[2595] ¶ Now sire ȝif men wold aske me whi þat
 ȝe suffred men to doo ȝou þis wronge and vilenye. Certes I
 can nat wel answeie as for no soþfastnesse. [2596] ffor
 þe apostel seiþ. þat þe sciences and þe Iugementes of
 our lord god almyȝty. bene ful depe. [2597] þer may
 no man conprehende ne Serchen hem suffisantly [2598]
 ¶ Napeles by certeyne presumpciois of coniectyngges
 I holde and bileue [2599] þat god which þat is ful of
 iustice. and of riȝtwisnesse haþ suffred þis bitidde by
 Iustise ¶ cause resonable

[2600] ¶ Thi name is Melebye ¶ This is to sayne a man
 þat drynkeþ hony. [2601] thow hast ydronke so moche
 hony of which swete temporell richesses / and delicious hon-
 oures of þis world [2602] þat þou art drunken. and
 hast forȝeten Ihesu crist þine creature [2603] Thow ne
 hast not doon to hym such honoure and reuerence as þe
 auȝt [2604] ne þou ne hast nat wel taken kepe to

þe wordes of O ¶ Ovide þat seip. [2605] Vndere þe hony
of þe goddes of þi body. is hidde þe venyme þat seleep
þi soule [2606] ¶ And Salomon saip. 3if þou hast
founde hony. eete of it þat suffiseþ the. [2607] ffor 3if þou
ete of it out of mesure. þou shalt spewe and be nedý
and poore. [2608] and perauenture criste haue þe in
despite. and hap turned away from þe his face and his
ceres of mysericord [2609] And also he hap suffred
þat þou hast be ¹punshed in þe manere þat þou
hast trespassed. [2610] Thou hast doon synne azeinst
our lord crist [2611] ffor certes iij. enemyes of man-
kynde þat is to seyne þe flessch. þe feende. and þe
worlde [2612] thowe hast suffred hem entred into þine
hous wilfully by þe wyndowe of þi body. [2613] And
hast nat defended þi self sufficiently azeinst her assawtes
and her temptacions so þat þei han wounded þe
saule in .v. places. [2614] þis is to sayn þe dedly
synnes þat bene entred into þine hert by þi .v.
wyndowes [2615] and in þe same manere our lord crist
hap suffred and willed þat þise iij. enemyes bene entred
into þi hous by þi wyndowes [2616] and haue
ywounded þi dou3tere in þe forsaide manre

[2617] ¶ Certes quod Melebius I se wel þat 3e en-
force 3ou moche by wordis to ouercome me in suche
a manere þat I shal not venge me on myn enemyes. [2618]
shewing me þe periles and þe eueles þat myghten
falle of þis vengeaunce [2619] But who so wold considere
in aȝ vengeances þe periles and euels þat myȝten swe
of vengeaunce takinge [2620] a mon wold neuere take
vengeance and þat were harme [2621] ffor by þe venge-
aunce takinge. bene þe wikked men disseuered from þe
good men. [2622] And þei þat han wille to do wikked-
nesse restreynen her wikked purpoos whan they sene þe
punshynge and chastising of trespasoures.

[2623] [And to this answered dame Prudence : ‘ Certes,’
said she, ‘ I grant you that from vengeance come many

advantages as well as many evils ; [2624] yet vengeance belongeth not to a "senglere persone," but only to the judges, and to those who have jurisdiction over evil-doers.'] [2625] And 3it' say I more þat' as ri3t' as so senglere persone synneþ in takinge vengeance of a noþer man [2626] Ri3t' so synneþ þe Iuge 3if he deo no vengeance on hem þat' it' haue deserued [2627] ¶ ffor Senec' seiþ þus ¶ þat' maister he seiþ is good þat' repreueþ shrewes [2628] ¶ And as Cassiodorie seiþ. A man dredeþ to do outrage whan he woote and knoweþ þat' it displeseþ to þe Iugges and þe souereyns. [2629] And anoþer seiþ ¶ The Iuge þat' dredeþ to do ri3t'. makeþ men schrewes [2630] ¶ And seint' Paule þe appostel seiþ in his epistel whan he writeþ to þe Romayns þat' þe Iuge berent' not' þe spere wiþ-outen cause. [2631] but' þei beren it' to punshe þe schrewes and mysdoers and forto defende þe good men. [2632] 3if 3e wil þan take vengeance of 3oure enemyes 3e shal retourne or haue 3oure recours to þe Iuge þat' haþ þe Iurisdiction vpon him [2633] and he shal punsshe hem as þe lawe askeþ and requereþ

[2634] ¶ A quod Melebie's þis vengeance likeþ me no þinge [2635] I by-þenk me nowe and take hede. howe fortune haþ norsshed me fro my childhode. and haþ hulpen me to passe mony a stronge paas [2636] ¶ Now wil I assaien her trowinge wiþ goddes helpe þat' he shal helpe me my shame forto 'venge

[2637] ¶ Certes quod Prudence 3if 3e wil wirk' by my counsaill 3e shul not' assaien fortune by no way [2638] ne 3e shul not' lene ne bowe vnto hire. after þe wordes of Senec'. [2639] ffor þingges þat' bene folily done. and þat' bene in hope of fortune shullen neuere come to good eende. [2640] ¶ And as þe same sene' seiþ. þe more clere and þe more shynyng þat' fortune is. þe more brotel and þe sonner brekeþ she. [2641] tresteþ not' on her for she nys nat' stedfast'. [2642] ffor whan þowe wenest' or trovest' to be more swre or siker of her

GROUP B. § 10. MELIBEUS. Petworth MS.

helpe. she wil faile þee. [2643] ¶ And þer as 3e sayn þat fortune haþ norsshed 3ou from 3oure childhode. [2644] I say þat in so mochel shal 3e þe lasse trest in her. and in her witt [2645] ¶ ffor Senec saip. what man þat is norsshed by fortune: she makeþ him to grete a foole [2646] ¶ Now þan siþ 3e desire and aske vengeance. and þe vengeance þat is done [*selon l'ordre de droit et devant le juge ne te pluist*, [2647] *et la vengeance qui se fait*] in hope of fortune is perilous and vncerteyn. [2648] þen haue noon oþer remedy. but forto haue 3oure cours vnto þe souereyn Iuge þan vengeþ all vilanyes and wrongges. [2649] and he shal venge 3ou. After hym self witnesseth: where as he saip [2650] ¶ leueþ þe vengeance to me. / & I shal doo it

[2651] ¶ Melebius answered. 3if I ne venge me noȝt of þe vilanye þat men han done to me. [2652] I shal somne or warne hem þat han do to me þoo vilanyes and al oþer to doo me anoþer vilanye. [2653] ¶ ffor it is writen. 3if þou take no vengeance of an olde vilanye / þow somnest þine aduersaries to doo an newe vilanye. [2654] And also for my suffraunce men wolden doo me so moche vilanye þat I myȝt neiþer bere it ne susteyne it. [2655] And so þan I shulde be kept ouer lawe [2656] ¶ ffor men sayn In mochel suffringe shul mony þingges vnto þe which þow shalt not mow suffre

[2657] ¶ Certes quod prudence I graunte 3ow þat ouer mochel suffraunce is not good [2658] But 3it ne foloweth it not þer-of. That euery persone to whome men doo vilany take of it vengeance. [2659] ffor þat apperteneþ & longeþ oonly to the Iuges. ffor þei shul venge vilanyes and Iniuries. [2660] And herfore þoo two autoritees þat 3e han saide aboue ben oonly vnderstonden in þe Iuges [2661] for whan þei suffre ouer ¶ mykel þe wrongges and vilenyes to be done

wip-out^t ponshinge. [2662] þei sommone nat^t a man al
only forto doo newe wrongges but^t þei commaunden it^t
[2663] ¶ Also a wise man seiþ þat^t þe Iuge þat^t cor-
recteþ not^t þe synner. Commaundeþ and biddeþ hym to
synne [2664] and þe Iuges *and* 'souereynes myzten in
her londe so moche suffre of þe Shrewes and mysdoers
[2665] þat^t þei shulden bye such^t suffraunce by processe of
tyme wexen of such^t power and myzt^t. þat^t þei shuld
putte out^t þe Iuges and souereynes from her places.
[2666] and at^t þe last^t do hem lose her lordshippes

[2667] ¶ I put^t caas rizt^t nowe 3e had leue to
venge 3ou. [2668] I say þat^t 3e ben nouzt^t of myght^t ne
power^t as nowe to venge 3ou. [2669] ffor 3if we wil make
comparisoñ vnto þe myzt^t of 3our aduersaries. 3e shul
fynde in many þingges þat^t I haue shewed 3o^u er þis
þat^t her condicioñ is better þan 3oure. [2670] And
þerfore say I þat^t it^t is good as nowe þat^t 3e suffre and
be pacient^t

[2671] ¶ fferþer more 3e knowen wel þat^t after þe
comon Sawe it^t is a woodenesse a man to stryue wip a
strenger. or wip a more myzty man þan hym self.
[2672] And forto stryue wip a man of euen strengtli
þat^t is to say wip as stronge a man as he is it^t is perile.
[2673] And forto stryue wip a waikere man it^t is foly
[2674] And þerfore shuld^t a man flee stryuyng^e as
mochel as he myzt^t [2675] ¶ ffor Salomon saiþ. It is a
grete worship a man to kepe hym from noyse and
stryf. [2676] And 3if it^t so byfalle or happe þat^t a man
of gretter myzt^t and strenger þan þou art^t do þe
greuaunce. [2677] stody and byse þe raper to stille
þe same greuaunce þan forto venge þe [2678] ¶ ffor
Senec^e saiþ That^t he putteþ hym in grete perile. þat^t
stryueþ wip a gretter man þan he is him self [2679]
And Caton saiþ. 3if a man of hier astate or of degre or
more myzty þan þou. do þe an oþer greuaunce
suffre hym [2680] for he þat^t onys haþ greued þe

may anoþer tyme releue þe. and helpe þe. [2681] 3it sette I caas 3e haue boþ myȝt and licence forto venge 3ou. [2682] I saie þat þer bene ful mony þingges þat shuld restreyn 3ou of vengeance takinge [2683] and make 3ou forto enclyne to suffre and forto haue pacience in þe wrongges þat bene done to 3ou. [2684] ffurst and forward 3if 3e wil considere þe defautes þat bene in 3oure persone. [2685] for which defautes god haþ suffred 3ou to haue tribulaciō as I haue saide byfore [2686] ¶ ffor þe Poete seiþ. þat we ouȝten patiently þe tribulacions to take þat comen to vs whan þat we þenken and consideren þat we han deserued to haue hem [2687] ¶ And seint Gregor seiþ. That whan a man considereþ wel þe nombre of his defautes and of his synnes [2688] þan peynes and þe tribulaciōs þat he suffreþ semen þe lasse vnto him [2689] And in as moche as him þenkeþ his synnes more hevie and greuours [2690] in so moche his peyne is þe lizter / and þe lesier vnto hym [2691] ¶ Also 3e owen to enclyne and bowe 3oure herte to take þe pacience of our lorde Ihesu crist. As seiþ seint Petre in his epistle [2692] Ihesu crist he seiþ haþ suffred for vs and 3euen ensample to euery man to folowe and to swee hym [2693] for he did neuere ¶ synne ne neuere cam a vileyns worde out of his mouþe [2694] whan men cursed hym he cursed hem nouȝt [. no gap] [2695] Also þe grete pacience ¶ which þat seintes þat bene in paradis han had in tribulacions þat þei han suffred wiþ-uten her desert or gilt. [2696] aught moch stire 3ou to pacience [2697] ¶ fferþer more 3e shal conforte 3ou to haue pacience [2698] consideringe þat þe tribulaciōs of þis worlde. but litel ¶ while enduren. and soon bene ypassed and goon [2699] And þe Ioye þat a man secheþ to haue by pacience in tribulacions is perdurable. after þat þe

GROUP B. § 10. MELIBEUS. Petworth MS.

appostel seiþ. in his Epistel [2700] ¶ The Ioie of god he seiþ is perdurable. þat is to saye euerlastinge. [2701] Also trouep and bileueþ stedfastly þat he nys nat wel norsshed ne wel ytauzt þat cannot haue pacience ne wil not receyue pacience [2702] ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ. That þe doctrine and þe witte of man is knowe by pacience. [2703] And in anopere place he seiþ. þat he þat kepeþ hym by pacience ¶ gouerneþ him by grete prudence [2704] ¶ And þe Same Salomon seiþ The angre and þe wrethful man makeþ noyses. and þe pacient man attempreþ and stilleþ him self [2705] ¶ he saiþ also it is more worth to be pacient þan for to be rízt stronge. [2706] And he þat may haue lordship of his owne hert is more to preise þan he þat by his fors takeþ grete Citees and townes [2707] Therfore seiþ seint Iame in his Epistle. þat pacience in a grete vertue of perfection.

[2708] [*Certes, dit Mellibée, je vous ottroye, dame Prudence, que patience est une grant vertu,*] [2709] But euery man may nat haue þe perfection þat we seken. [2710] ne I. am not of þe nombre of rízt perfit men. [2711] for myn hert may neuer be in pees: vnto þe tyme it be venged [2712] ¶ And al be it so þat it was grete perile to myne ¶ ennemyes to done me a vilanye in takinge vengeance vpon me. [2713] 3it token þei noon hede vpon þe perile. but fulfilleden her wikked wille and her corage [2714] And þer-for me þenkeþ men ouzt not repreue me þouze I putte me in a litel perile to venge me. [2715] and þouze I doo a grete excesse. þat is to say þouze I venge oon outrage by a nopere

[2716] ¶ O quod dame prudence 3e say 3oure wille. and as 3ou likeþ. [2717] But in no caas of þe world a man shuld not do outrage ne excesse forto venge hym [2718] ¶ ffor Cassidore seiþ þat as euel dop he þat auengeþ him by outrage. as he þat dop þe

outrage. [2719] And þer-for 3e shul venge 3ou after þe ordere of ryȝt þat is to saiñ¹ by þe lawe and by noon excesse ne noon outrage. [2720] And also if 3e wil venge 3ou of þe outrage of 3oure aduersaries in oþer manere þan riȝt comaundeþ 3e synnen [2721] ¶ And þerfore saiþ Senec. þat a man shal neuere venge schrewdenesse by schrewdenesse / [2722] And if 3e say þat riȝt axeþ a man to defende violence by violence. and fiȝtynge by fiȝtinge. [2723] certes 3e say sothli. whan þe defence is done anon wiȝh-uten interuaHe or wiþ-out tarynge or delay. [2724] for to defenden hym and not forto vengen hym. [2725] And it bihoueþ þat a man put suȝh attemperance in his defence [2726] þat men haue no cause no matere to repreuen hym þat defendeþ hym of excesse and of outrage. [*car autrement ce seroit contre droit et contre raison* (Le Mén.)] [2727] ¶ Parde 3e knowen weH þat 3e maken noon defence as nowe forto defende 3ou but forto venge 3ou [2728] And so sweþ it þat 3e han no wille to doo 3oure dede attemperally. [2729] and þerfore me þenkeþ þat pacience is goode ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ: þat he þat is nat pacient shal haue grete harme

[2730] ¶ Certes quod meleby I graunte 3ou þat whan a man is impatient and wroop of þat þat toucheþ hym nat and of þat þat perteneþ not to hym. pouȝe it harme him it is no wondere [2731] ¶ ffor þe lawe saiþ. þat he is coupable. þat entermeteþ hym or melleþ hym wiþ suche þinge as apperteyneþ nat to hym [2732] ¶ And Salomon saiþ. That he þat entermeteþ hym of þe noise or of þe strif of an oþer man is like to hym. þat takeþ þe hounde by þe eeres [2733] and [*aussi comme celui qui prent le chien par les oreilles*] is oþer while biten wiþ þe hounde. [2734] ¶ Riȝt in þe same wise is it reson þat he haue harme þat by his impacience medleþ him of þe noise of an oþer man. wher þat it apperteneþ not to him [2735] ¶ But 3e knowe wel þat þis dede and

GROUP B. § 10. MELIBEUS. **Petworth MS.**

þis greef *and* þis dissesse toucheþ me riȝt
nyȝh. [2736] And þerfore þouȝe I be wroþe and im-
patient it is no mervaille. [2737] and sauynge ȝoure
grace I can not see þat it myȝt gretlich harme me.
þouȝe I toke vengeance [2738] ffor I am Riccher and
more myȝty þan myn enemyes bene. [2739] And wel
known ȝee þat by money and by hauyngre grette posses-
sions bene aȝ þingges of þis world yȝouerned [2740]
¶ And Salomon seiþ. þat aȝ þingges obeyen to
monay.

[2741] [*Prudence, quant elle oy son mary vanter de sa
richesse et de sa puissance, et soy esjouir, et*] dispreis-
ing þe poor of his aduersaries. Tho she spak and seide in
þis wise. [2742] Certes dere sire I graunt ȝou þat
ȝe bene riche and myȝty. [2743] and þat riches ben
good to hem þat han wel gotten hem. and þat
wel can vsen hem [2744] ffor riȝt as þe body of a
man may not lyue wiþ-out þe saule. no more may it
live wiþ-out temporal goodes. [2745] And by rich-
esse may a man gete hym grette worship [2746] ¶ And
þerfore seiþ Pamphilles. ȝif an neterdes douȝtere he seiþ
be riche she may chese of a thowsand men [*lequel
qu'elle veult pour son mary* [2747] *car* (Le Ménagier, tome i)]
[. . . no gap in the MS.] oon wil not forsake her ne refuse
her. [2748] And þus Pamphilles seiȝh also ¶ ȝif þou be
riȝt happy þat is to say riȝt riche þow
shalt fynde a grette nombre of felawes and frendes. [2749]
And ȝif þi fortune that þou wexe poor. fare
wel frendship and felawship. [2750] for þou shalt bene
allone wiþ-oute eny companye. but ȝif it be þe
company of poor folk [2751] // And ȝit seiþ þis
Pamphilles more ouer þat þei þat bene thral and
bonde of lynage. shullen be made worþi and noble by
richesses [2752] And riȝt so as by riches þer
commen mony goodes. Riȝt so by pouert þer commen
mony harmes and euels. [2753] ffor grette pouerte con-

streyneth a man to doo many euels [2754] ¶ And þefore clepeþ Cassidore pouert'. þe modere ruyne. [2755] That' is to say þe modere of ouerþrowinge or falling' downe [2756] ¶ And þefore Pers Alfons saip. Oon of þe grettest' aduersitees of þis world' is [2757] whan a free [man] by kinde is constreyned by pouert' to eten þe almesse of his enemye [2758] ¶ And þe Same Seip Innocent' in oon of his bokes. He seip þat' soriful and vnhappy is þe condition' of a poor begger. [2759] ffor 3if he askep not' his mete he dyep for hungere. [2760] [*et se ils demandent, ils meurent de honte;*] Necessite constreynep hym to aske. [2761] And þefore seip Salomon. That' better is to dye þan forto haue suche pouerte [2762] ¶ And as þe Same Salomon seip Better is to dye a bitter deep þan forto lyuen in swich wise [2763] ¶ By þise resons þat' .I haue seide vnto 3owe and by many resons þat' I coude saie [2764] I graunte þat' richesches bene good to hem þat' geten hem wel And vsen hem wel. [2765] And þefore wil I shewe 3ow how 3e shul haue 3ou. and howe 3e shal bere 3ou in gaderinge of richesches. and in what' manere 3e shul vsen hem

[2766] ffirst' 3e shul geten hem with-out grete desire. by good leisere sokingly. and not' ouerhastely. [2767] ffor a man þat' is to desiringe to geten richesche. abandoneþ hym to þeft' and to all oþer evels [2768] ¶ And þefore seip Salomon ¶ he þat' hastep hym to bysily to wexe ricche' shal be noon Innocent' [2769] ¶ He saip also þat' þe Richesse þat' hastely comkep to a man. sone and litzly goop and passeþ from hym [2770] ¶ But' þat' richesche þat' comkep alway litel and litel. wexep alway and multipliþ [2771] ¶ And sire 3e shul gete richesche by 3oure witte. and by 3oure traaille. vnto 3oure profite [2772] and þat' wiþ-oute wronge or harme doynge to eny oþere persone. [2773] ffor þe lawe

seip ¶ That he ne makeþ nat hym self riche. 3if he do
 harme to a noþer wight [2774] ¶ This is to say þat
 nature defendeþ and forbedeþ by ryght. þat ¹no man
 make him self riche wiþ þe harme of a noþere person.
 [2775] ¶ And Tullius saip. þat no sorowe ne no drede
 of deth ne of þouȝt þat may falle to a man [2776]
 is so mochel azeinst nature as a man to encrees his
 owne profite to þe harme of anoþer man [2777] ¶ And þouȝe
 þe grete men and þe riche men geten rychesses more
 litzly þan þou. [2778] 3it shalt þou nat be ydel ne sclowe
 to þi prophete. ffor þou shalt in al þinge and in al wise fle
 ydelnesse [2779] ¶ ffor Salomon seip. That ydelnesse techeþ
 a man to do many eueles [2780] ¶ And þe Same Salomon
 seip. þat he þat travailleþ and bysieþ him to tille
 his londe shal ete þe brede. [2781] But he þat is ydel and
 casteþ him to doo no bysynesse ne occupacioñ shal falle into
 pouert and dye for hungere. [2782] And he þat is
 ydel and sclowe. can neuer fynde conable tyme forto
 do his profite [2783] ¶ ffor þer is a versifour þat saip. That
 þe ydel man excuseþ hym in wyntere. be cause of þe
 grete colde. And in somer by enchesoñ of þe grete hete
 [2784] ¶ ffor þise causes seip Catoñ ¶ Wakeþ and enclyneþ
 3ou not ouermoeche forto selepe. for ouer moche rest
 norssheþ and causeþ mony vyces [2785] ¶ And þefore
 seip seint Ierom ¶ Doþ somme good dedys þat þe deuel
 which is oure enemye ne fynde 3ou nat vnocupied.
 [2786] ffor þe deuel ne takeþ not litzly vnto his worch-
 inge such as he fyndeþ occupied in goode werkes

[2787] ¶ Than þus in geting of Richesse 3e
 moten flee ydelnesse / [2788] ¶ and afterward 3e shul vse
 þe richesse which 3e han geten by 3oure witte and by
 3oure trauaile [2789] in such a manere þat men
 holde 3ou nat to scarce. ne to sparinge. ne to fool large.
 þat is to sayn ouer large a spendere [2790] ¶ ffor rizt as
 men blamen an Auarous man by cause of his scarsete
 and chyncherie [2791] In þe same manere is he blamed

þat spendeþ ouer largely. [2792] ¶ And þerfore seiþ
 Catoñ. vse he seiþ þe Richesse þat þou hast ygeten.
 [2793] in such a manere. þat þer be no matere ne
 cause to calle þe neiþer wrecche ne chynche. [2794]
 ffor it is grete shame a man to haue a poor hert
 and a rich purs [2795] ¶ He seiþ also þe goodes þat
 thow hast geten vse hem by mesure þat is to say.
 spende mesurably [2796] ffor þei þat folylly waasten
 and dispenden þe goodes þat þei haue. [2797] whan
 þei han no more propre of her owne þei shape hem
 to take þe goodes of a noþer man. [2798] ¶ I say þan
 þat 3e shal flee Auarice / [2799] vsinge 3oure richesse
 as in such manere þat men say not þat 3oure goodes
 bene yburied. [2800] but þat 3e haue hem in 3oure
 myght and in 3oure weldinge [2801] ffor þe wise
 repreeneþ þe Auerous man and seiþ in twoo
 versus. [2802] Wherto and whi bereþ a man his
 goodes by his Auarice and knoweþ wel þat nedes
 he most deye. [2803] for deþ is þe ende of euery man
 as in þis present lif [2804] and for what cause or
 enchesoñ ioyneth he him or knytteþ he hym so fast
 vnto his goodes [2805] þat aȝ his wittes mowe not
 disseuere hym or departen hym fro his goodes.
 [2806] and knoweþ wel or aught knowe þat whan he
 is dede he shal no þinge bere wiþ him out of þis
 world [2807] ¶ And þerfore seiþ seynt Austyne. That
 þe Auerous man is likned into helle. [2808] þat þe
 more it woloweth. þe more desire it haþ to swalowe and
 deuowre [2809] And as wel as 3e wolde eschwe to be
 cleped an Auarous man or chynche [2810] as wel
 shul 3e kepe 3ou and gouerne 3ou so and in such a wise
 so þat men ne cleped 3ou not fool large [2811] ¶ Therefore
 seiþ Tullius The goodes he seiþ of þine hous shuld
 nat bene hidde ne kept so cloos but þat þei myȝt
 be opned by Pite and by bonairte [2812] þat is to
 sayn to 3eue hem parte þat han grete nede [2813]

Ne þi goodes shuld not^t bene so open to be euery
mannys goodes [2814] ¶ Afterward^d in getinge of 3oure
richesse & in vsyng^t of hem 3e shul alway haue þre
þingges in 3oure hert^t. [2815] þat^t is to sayn. our lorde
god. conscience and good name [2816] ¶ ffirst^t 3e shul
haue god in 3oure hert^t [2817] and for no ricchesse 3e
shul doo no þinge which may in eny manere displese
crist þat^t is youre creatour^t and 3our^t maker [2818] ¶ ffor after
þe worde of Salomon. it^t is better to haue a litel good
with þe loue of god [2819] þan to haue moche good
and tresour^t and lese þe loue of his lorde god [2820]
¶ And þe prophet^t seiþ. þat^t better it^t is to bene a
good man. and haue a litel good and tresour^t. [2821] þan to
be holden a shrewe and haue grete Ricchesse. [2822]
And 3it^t say I ferþermore þat^t 3e shulden alway
doon 3our^t bisynesse to gete 3ou richesses [2823] so þat^t
3e gete hem wiþ good conscience [2824] ¶ And þe Appostel
seiþ. Ther nys no þinge in this world^t of which we
shuld haue so grete Ioye as whan our conscience bereþ
vs witnesse of good [2825] ¶ And þe wise man seiþ. The
substañce of a man is ful good whan synne nys nat^t in
his coscience [2826] ¶ Afterward^d in getinge of 3oure
richesses / and in vsing^t of hem [2827] þe most^t haue
grete bysynesse and grete diligence þat^t 3oure ¹good
name be alway kept^t and conserued [2828] ¶ ffor Salo-
mon seiþ That^t better it^t is and more availleþ a man
to haue good name þan to haue grete richesse
[2829] ¶ And þerfore he seiþ in a noþer place Doo grete
diligence seiþ Salomon in kepinge of þi frend^t and of
þi good name. [2830] ffor it^t shal lenger abide wiþ
þe þan eny tresour^t be it^t neuere so precious. [2831]
And certes he shuld not^t be cleped a gentil man. þat^t
after god and good conscience aH þingges left^t ne dop
his dyligence and bysynesse to kepen his good name
[2832] ¶ And Cassidore seiþ^t þat^t it^t is signe of a gentiH
hert^t whan a man desireþ and loueþ to haue a goode name. /

[2833] ¶ And perfore seiþ seint Austyne. Ther bene two þingges þat are necessarye and nedefull. [2834] & þat is good conscience and good loos. [2835] that is to sayn good conscience to þine owne persone inward And good loos for þi neighbour outward. [2836] And he þat tresteþ him so moche in his good conscience [2837] þat he displese and setteþ at nouȝt his good name or loos. *and* rekkeþ not þouȝe he kepe not his good name. he nys but a crueh cherle

[2838] ¶ Sire now haue I schewed ȝou how ȝe shuld doo in kepinge rychesse and howe ȝe shuld vsen hem [2839] ¶ I see wel þat for þe trust þat ȝe haue in ȝoure richesse. ȝe wil meuen werre and bataille [2840] I counsaile þat ȝe bygynne no werre. in trest of ȝoure Richesse. ffor þei ne suffisen not werres to Mayntene [2841] ¶ And perfore seiþ a Philosophre. That man þat desireþ *and* wil algates haue werre. shal neuere haue suffisaunt. [2842] ffor þe Richer þat he is þe gretter dispence mote he make ȝif he wil haue worship or victorie [2843] ¶ And Salomon seiþ þat þe gretter richesse þat a man hath. þe gretter dispendours he haþ. [2844] And dere sir al be it soo. þat for ȝoure richesse ȝe mowe haue moche folk. [2845] ȝit byhouep it not. ne it is not good to bygynne werre. þer as ȝe may in oþer manere haue pees vnto ȝoure worship and profite [2846] ¶ ffor þe victorie of batailles þat bene in þis world lith not in grete nombre or multitude of puple. ne in vertue of man. [2847] but it lith in þe wille and in þe hand of our lord god almyȝty [2848] ¶ And perfore Iudas makabeus which was goddys knyȝt [2849] whan he shuld fiȝt aȝeinst his aduersarie þat had a gretter nombre and a gretter multitude of folk And strengre þan was þis puple of Makabe. [2850] ȝit he recomforte his lytel 'companye and saide riȝt in þis wise [2851] ¶ Also lȝtly quod he may our lord god almyȝty ȝeue victorie to fewe folk

GROUP B. § 10. MELIBEUS. **Petworth MS.**

as to monye [2852] ffor þe victory of bataille commeth
 not^t by þe grete nombre of puple [2853] but^t it^t commeth
 fro our lord of heuene. [2854] And dere sire for
 as mochi As þer nys no man certeyn 3if it^t be worþ þat^t
 god 3eue hym victorie [.
 *no gap in the MS.*] or nou3t^t. aftere
 þat^t Salomon seiþ. [2855] Therfore euery man shulde gretly
 drede werrus to bygynne [2856] And by cause þat^t [in]
 batailles [are] many periles [2857] & [it may] happen oþer
 while þat^t as sone is þe grete man selayn as þe litel
 man [2858] ¶ And as it is ywritte in þe secoñd book^t of
 kingges The dedes of batailles bene auenturous and no
 þinge certeyn. [2859] for as listly is oon hurt^t wiþ a
 spere as a noþer [2860] And þerfore it^t is grete perile in
 werre. Therfore shuld a man flee and eschewe werre in
 as mochel as a man may goodly ./ [2861] ffor Salomon
 seiþ: He þat^t loueþ perile shal falle in perile

[2862] After þat^t dame prudence had spoken in
 þis manere Melebius answerd^t and saide. [2863] I see
 wel dame þat^t by 3oure faire wordes and by
 3oure resons þat^t ye han schewed me. þat^t þe werre likeþ
 3ou no þinge. [2864] But^t I haue not^t 3it^t herde 3oure coun-
 saile howe I shal doo in þis nede.

[2865] Certes quod she I counsaile 3oⁿ þat^t 3e ac-
 corde wiþ 3oure aduersaries *and* þat^t 3e haue pees
 with hem [2866] ¶ ffor seint^t Iame seiþ in his Epistell
 ¶ That^t by concord^t and pees þe smale riches wexen
 grete [2867] And by debate and discord^t þe grete richesse
 fallen down. [2868] And 3e knowe wel þat^t oon of þe
 grettest^t and most^t souereyn þinge þat^t is in þis world^t
 is vnite and pees [2869] And þerfore seiþ our lord
 Ihesu crist^t to his apostel in þis wise [2870] ¶ Wel
 happy and blessed bene þei þat^t louen and pu[r]chasen
 pees for þei bene called children of god [2871] ¶ A quod
 Meleby nowe se I wel þat^t 3e loue not^t myn h[o]noure
 and my worship. [2872] 3e knowen wel þat^t myne

aduersaries haue bygonnen þis debate and brigge by her outrage [2873] And 3e See wel þat þei ne requiren ne preien me nat' of pees ne þei asken not' to be recounsailed. [2874] wil 3e þan þat I goo meke and obeie me to hem . and crye hem mercye . [2875] ffor soth þat were not' my worship . [2876] ffor riȝt' as men sayñ þat ouer grete humblesse engendreþ dispisinge . so fareþ it by to grete humilite & mekenesse

[2877] ¶ Than bygan dame prudence to make semblaunt' of wreth and saide . [2878] Certes sire sauf 3oure grace I loue 3our honoure and 3oure profite as I doo myn owne and euere ha'ue done [2879] ne 3e ne mowen not' sayn þe contrarie . [2880] And 3it' 3if I had saide þat 3e shulde haue purchased þe pees *and* þe reconsiliacion I ne had not' moche mystake me ne saide amys [2881] ffor þe Wise man seiþ . The dis-sencion bygyneþ by a noþer man . *and* þe reconsilyngē by þi silf . [2882] And þe prophete seiþ . fliee schrewdenesse and doo goodnesse [2883] ¶ Seke pees and folowe it in as moche as in þe is . [2884] ¶ 3it' seiþ he not' þat 3e shul Swe raper to 3oure aduersaries for pees þan þei shullen to 3ou . [2885] ffor I knowe wel þat 3e bene so hard' herted . þat 3e wil do no þing' for mee [2886] ¶ And Salomon seiþ' þat he þat hap' ouer harde an hert' . at' þe last' shal myshappe and mystide

[2887] ¶ Whan Melebius had seye dame prudence make semblaunt' of wreth he saide in þis wise [2888] ¶ Dame I prey 3ou þat 3e be not' displesed of þingges þat I saye . [2889] ffor 3e knowe wel þat I am angry and wroop' and þat is no wondere . [2890] and þei þat bene wroop' . weten not' wel what' þei doon ne what' þei seyn [2891] ¶ And þerfore the prophete seiþ . That' trowbled eyen haue no clere siȝt' . [2892] But' seiþ on and counsaile me as 3e likeþ . for I am redy to doo riȝt' as 3e wil desire . [2893] and if 3e repreue me of my foly .I am þe more holden to loue 3ou and to preise

3ou [2894] ¶ ffor Salomon saith That he þat reproveþ hym þat dooþ folý. [2895] he shal finde gretter grace þat he þat deceyueþ hym wiþ swete wordes

[2896] Than said Dame prudence. I make no semblant of wreþe ne of anger but for 3oure grete profite [2897] ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ: he is more wrooþ þat reпреueth or chideþ a foole for his folýe schewing him semblañt of wreþe [2898] þan he þat supporteþ hym or preiseþ him in his mysdoynge at laugheþ at his folý [2899] ¶ And þis same Salomon seiþ afterward þat by þe soriful vese of a man þat is to sayn by sory and heuy countenaunce of a man [2900] þe foole correcteþ and amendeþ him self

[2901] ¶ Than sayde Meleby I shal not conne answer to so many resons as 3e putten to me and shewen / [2902] seiþ shortely 3oure wille. and 3oure counsaile and I am al redy to fulfille and performe it

[2903] ¶ Than Dame prudence diskeuered al her wille vnto hym and saide [2904] I counsaile 3ou þat 3e abouen al þinge maken pees bytwene god and 3owe [2905] and beþ recoñsailled vnto him and to his grace. [2906] ffor I haue seid 3ow here byfore ¶ God haþ suffred 3ou to haue þis tribulaciõ and dissese for 3oure synnes. [2907] And if 3e doo as I say 3owe ¹god wil sende 3oure aduersaries vnto 3ou [2908] and make hem to falle at 3oure fete redy to 3oure wille and 3oure comaundement [2909] ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ: Whan þe condicion of man is plesaunte and likinge to god [2910] he chaungeth þe hertes of þe mannes aduersaries and constreyneth hem to bysechen him of pees and of grace [2911] ¶ And I prei 3ou lat me speke wiþ 3oure aduersaries in privy place. [2912] for þei shal not knowe it be 3oure wille ne 3oure assent. [2913] And þan whan I knowe her wiþ and assent: I may counsaile 3ou þe more suerly

[2914] ¶ Dame quod Meleby doþ 3our wiþ and

3oure lyking^t [2915] ffor I putte me fulli in 3oure
disposicioñ and 3oure ordynaunce

[2916] ¶ Than dame prudence whan [she] seg^h þe
wille of her husbonde and she delyuered her and toke avice
by hure self [2917] þenkinge by her self^t how she my³t bringe
þis nede vnto a goode conclusioñ and a good eende
[2918] ¶ And whan she see3e her tyme she sent^t for þise
aduersaries to come vnto her into a pryvy place
[2919] and schewed wisely vnto hem þe greet goodnesse
þat^t comme^þ of pees. [2920] and þe grete harmes *and*
periles þat^t ben in werre. [2921] and saide to hem in
a goo[d]ly manere howe þat^t hem ou3ten to haue grete re-
pentance [2922] of þe Iniurie and wronge þat^t þei
hadden ydone. to Meleby her lorde and vnto her and vnto
her dou3ter^t.

[2923] And whan þei herden þe goodly wordes of
dame Prudence [2924] þei weren so supprised and
rauissshed and hadden so gret Ioie of her^t þat^t wondere
was to telle [2925] ¶ O lady quod þei 3e ¶ han schewed
vnto vs þe blissinge of swetnesse aftere þe Sawe of
dauid þe prophete. [2926] ffor þe reconsilinge which
we ne bene not^t worþi to haue in no manere. [2927] but^t we
ou3t^t to requiren it^t wiþ grete contricioñ and humilite
[2928] 3e as 3oure grete goodnesse haþ presented vnto us
[2929] Now se we wel þe science and þe konyng^t
of Salomoñ is ful trewe [2930] for he seiþ þat^t
swete wordes multiplien and encresen freendes. and
maken schrewes to be debonayre and meke

[2931] Certes quod þei we putten oure dede and
al our matere. *and* cause alhoolly in 3oure good wille
[2932] and bene redy to obeye to þe speche and þe comaunde-
ment^t of my lord Melebye [2933] ¶ And þerfore our dere
and benigne lady we preien 3ou and bysechen 3ou as
mekely as we conne or mowen [2934] ¶ þat^t ¹it like vnto
3oure grete goodnesse to fulfille in dede 3oure good-
ly wordes [2935] ffor we consideren and knowen

GROUP B. § 10. MELIBEUS. Petworth MS.

þat we han offended and greued my lorde Melebie out of
 mesure [2936] so fer forþ þat we bene nat a power to
 maken his a[men]dys. [2937] and þefore we oblie and
 bynde vs and our frendes forto doo al his wille and his
 comaundement [2938] But þerauenture he haþ such
 hevynesse and such wreth to vs ward by cause of our
 defence [2939] þat he wil enioyne vs suche peyne
 as we may not bere ne susteyne [2940] ¶ And þefore
 noble lady we biseke to þoure wommanly pite.
 [2941] takeþ such avisement in þis nede þat we ne our
 frendes ben not disherited ne distroied þorgh oure
 folý

[2942] *Certis quod* Prudence it is an harde þinge and
 riȝt perilous [2943] þat man put him al vtterly
 in þe arbitraciõ and Iugement and in þe myght and
 power of his enemyes [2944] ¶ ffor Salomon seiþ Leueþ
 and ȝeueþ credence to þat I shal sayn ¶ I say
quod he ȝif puple and gouernours of holy church.
 [2945] to þi sone. to þi wif and þi frende. ne to
 þi broþer. [2946] ne ȝeue þou neuere myȝt ne
 maistrie of þi body while þou luest [2947] ¶ Nowe
 sith þat he forfendeþ. þat man shuld not ȝeue to his
 broþer ne to his frende þe myȝt of his body [2948]
 Than by a strengre reson he forfendeþ and forbedeþ. a
 man to ȝeue hym self vnto his enemye [2949] ¶ And nape-
 les I counsaile ȝowe þat ȝe ne mystrest not my lorde
 [2950] for I woote wel and knowe verrely þat he is
 debonaire and meke. large *and* curtays. [2951] *and* no
 þinge desirous ne coueitous of good ne richesse. [2952]
 ffor nys no þinge in þis world þat he desireþ.
 saue oonly worship and honour [2953] ¶ fferþermore
 I knowe wel and I am riȝt swre þat he wil no þinge
 doo in þis nede wiþ-out counsaile of me. [2954] And I
 shal so worche in þis cause þat by þe grace of *our* lorde
 god ȝe shul be recounsailed vnto vs.

[2955] † Than seide þei wiþ oon vois. Worshipful

lady we putten vs and oure ¶ goodes al fully in 3oure willo and in 3oure disposicioñ [2956] and bene redy forto come what day þat it likeþ vnto 3oure noblenesse to lymyte vs or asigne vs [2957] forto make oure obligacioñ and be bounde as stronge as it likeþ vnto 3oure goodnesse [2958] þat we may fulfille þe will of 3ow *and* of my lord Melebye.

[2959] And whan dame prudence had ¶ ¹herde þe answers of þise men she bad hem go ageyn prively [2960] And she retorned to her lord Meleby and told hym how she fand his aduersaries ful repentaunte [2961] knowlechyng ful lowly her synnes and trespasses / and howe þei weren redy to suffren al peyne. [2962] requiryng and preying hym of mercye *and* pite

[2963] ¶ þan saide Meleby he is wel worþ to haue pardone and for3euenesse of his synne. þat excuseþ nat his synne. [2964] but knowleccheþ and repenteth hym asking Indulgence [2965] ¶ ffor Senec say. There is þe remyssioñ and for3euenes: wher as þe confession is. [2966] ffor confession is neighbour to Innocence. [2967] ¶ And he saþ in an oþer place: þat he þat haþ shame of his synne and knowleccheþ it: is worþi remyssioñ. And þerefor I assent and conferme me to haue pees. [2968] But it is good þat we doo it not wip-out þassent of oure frendes

[2969] Than was prudence riȝt glad and Ioyful and saide þis [2970] ¶ Certes sire quod she ye han wel and goodly answerd. [2971] ffor riȝt as by the counsaile of assent and helpe of 3oure frendes 3e haue beñ stired to venge 3ou. and make werre. [2972] Riȝt so wip-outen her counsaile shal 3e not accorde 3ou ne haue pees wip 3oure aduersaries [2973] ¶ ffor þe lawe saþ. Ther nys no þing so good by way of kyng as þinge to bene vnbounde by hym þat it was ybounde

[2974] And þan Dame prudence wip-outen delay or tarynge sent anon Massagers for her kynne and for her olde frendes which þat were trewe *and* wise [2975]

GROUP B. § 10. MELIBEUS. **Petworth MS.**

and tolde hem by order in þe presence of Me[le]bye al þis matere as it is aboue expressed and declared. [2976] and preyed hem þat þai wolde ȝeuen her avise *and* counsaile what best were to doo in þis nede [2977] ¶ And whan Melibies frendes had taken her avise and deliberacioñ of þis forseide matere [2978] and hadden examyned it by grete bysynesse and grete diligence. [2979] þei ȝaf ful counsaile forto haue pees *and* rest. [2980] And þat Melebius shuld receyuen wiþ good hert his aduersaries to forȝeuenesse and Mercy.

[2981] ¶ And whan dame prudence had herd passent of her lord Melebius and þe counsaile of his frendes [2982] accorde wiþ her wille and her entencioñ [2983] she was wonderly glad in hert and saide [2984] Ther is and olde prouerbe quod She seip: þat þe goo[d]nesse þat thou maist doo þis day do it [2985] and abyde nat til [*le soir ne*] to morowe. [2986] And perfor¹ I counsaile ȝou þat ye sende ȝoure massagers which þat bene discrete and wise. [2987] vnto ȝoure aduersaries Telling hem in ȝour bihalf [2988] þat ȝif þei wil trete of pees and accorde. [2989] þat þei shapen hem wiþ-out delay or taryng to come vnto vs. [2990] Which þinge was perfourmed in dede. [2991] And whan þise trespasours and repentyng folk of her folies þat is to say þe aduersaries of melebye [2992] hadden herd what þe massagers saiden vnto hem. [2993] þei were riȝt glad and Ioiful and answerden ful mekely and benygne [2994] ȝeeldinge graces and thonkingges to her lorde Melebie and to al his companye [2995] and shopen hem wiþ-out lay to goo wiþ þe massagers and obey to þe Comaundement of her lorde Melebius

[2996] ¶ And riȝt anon þei token her way to þe courte of Meleby [2997] and token to hem some of her trewe frendys to make feiþ for hem and forto bene her borowes [2998] ¶ And whan þei were comen to

þe presence of melebius he seide hem þise wordes
 [2999] It stondeþ þus quod Melebie and soþ it is
 þat 3e [3000] causelees and wiþ-out skille and reson
 [3001] haue done grete iniuries and wronges to me and
 to my wiff Prudence And to my ¶ dougtere also. [3002] ffor
 3e han entred into myn hous by violence [3003] and haue
 done such outrage þat alle men knowe wel þat 3e han
 deserued þe deep [3004] And þerfore wil I knowe
 and witt of 3ou [3005] wheþere 3e putte þe
 punsshment and þe chastisement and þe vengeaunce of
 þis outrage in þe witt of me and of my wif Dame Prudence
 or 3e wil not

[3006] Than þe wisest of hem þre answerd for
 hem alle and seide [3007] ¶ Sire quod he we knowe
 wel þat we bene vnworþi to come vnto þe Suerte vnto
 so grete [a lord] and so worþi as 3e bene. [3008] ffor
 we han so gretely mystaken vs and haue offended and gilted
 in such a wise. ageyn 3oure hegh lordship. [3009] þat
 trewly we han deserued þe deep. [3010] But 3it for
 þe grete goodnesse and debonaite þat all men don
 witnesse of 3oure persone / [3011] We submytten vs to
 3our excellence and benygnyte of 3oure gracious lordship.
 [3012] for we bene redy to obey to all 3oure comaundementes
 [3013] bysekinge 3ou þat of 3oure merciable pite 3e
 wil considere our grete repentaunce and lowe submyssion
 [3014] and graunt us for3euenesse of oure outrageous
 trespas and offence. [3015] ffor wel we knowen þat 3oure
 liberaht grace and mercie streccheþ forþere into good-
 nesse þan doþ our outrageous trespas into wikked-
 nesse. [3016] 1al be it þat cursedly and damp-
 nably we han ygilt azeinst 3oure grete lordship

[3017] ¶ Than Melebye toke hem vp fro þe grounde
 ful benygnelly [3018] and receyued her oblacion and her
 londes by her opes vpon her plegges and borowes. [3019]
 And assigned hem a certeyn day to retourne vnto his
 courte [3020] forto accepte and to receyue þe sentence and

Iuggement^t of þat^t Melebye wil comaunde to be done to hem by þise causes to-fore seide . [3021] which þingges ordeyned / euery man · retourned home to his hous

[3022] ¶ And^t whan þat^t Dame Prudence segh^t her tyme . she f[r]ayned and asked her lorde [3023] what^t vengeance he þou3t^t to take on his aduersaries

[3024] To which Melebius answerd^t and saide . Certys quod I I thenk^t and purpoos me fully [3025] to disherite hem and al þat^t euere þei haue and forto putte hem in exile for euere moo

[3026] ¶ Certis quod dame Prudence þis were a cruel sentence and mochel azeinst resoñ . [3027] ffor 3e bene riche ynou3e and haue no nede of oþer mennys good / [3028] and 3e my3ten lightly gete 3ou a coueitous name [3029] Whiche is a vicious þinge and ou3te to bene eschewed^t of euery man [3030] ¶ ffor aftere þe sawe of þe word^t of þe apostel Coueityse is roote of alle harmes [3031] And þefore it^t were better^t to 3ou to lese so mochel good of 3oure owne . þan forto take of her good in þis manere . [3032] ffor bettere it is to lese good with Worship þan it^t is to wyne good wiþ vileny and shame . / [3033] And euery man ou3t^t to doo his diligence of his bysynesse to geten hym a good name . [3034] And 3it^t shal he not^t oonly bysyen him in kepinge his good name [3035] But^t he shal also enforsen him alway to doon somme þinge by which he may renouelle his good name [3036] ¶ ffor it^t is written ¶ The olde good lose or good name of a man · is sone done or goon or passed whan it^t is not^t newed ne renouelled [3037] And as touching^t þat^t 3e sayn 3e wil exile 3oure aduersaries [3038] þat^t þenkeþ me moch^t azeinst^t resoñ . and out^t of mesure [3039] considered . þe power þat^t þei han 3euen 3ou vpon hem self [3040] ¶ And it^t is writen ¶ that^t he is worþi to lesen his priuelegge þat^t mysvseþ þe my3t^t and þe power þat^t is 3euen hym [3041] And I sette caas 3e my3t^t enioyne hem þat^t peyne by ri3t^t and lawe [3042] which I

trowe 3e mowe not doo [3043] I say 3e myȝt not put it to execucioñ peraventure / [3044] and þan were it likly to retourne to þe werre as it was byforne [3045] And þerfore ȝif 3e þan wol þat men doñ ȝou obeis-
 aunce 3e most deme more curtaisly [3046] This is to sayn 3e most ȝeue more esy sentences and Iuggementys. [3047] ffor it is writen þat he þat most curteisly comaundeþ to hym men most obeyen [3048] ¶ And þerfore I prey ȝou þat in þis necessite and in þis nede 3e cast ȝou to oouercome ȝoure hert. [3049] ffor Senec saip. He þat ouercommeth his hert ouercommeth twies. / [3050] ¶ And Tullius saip. Ther nys no þing so comendable in a grete lord [3051] as whan he is debonaire and meke and apaiseth hym self lightly. [3052] And I prey ȝou þat ye wil forbere nowe to do vengeance [3053] in such a maner þat ȝour good name may be kept and conserued [3054] and þat men mow han a cause and matere to preise ȝou of pite and of mercy [3055] and þat 3e haue no cause to repent ȝou of þinge þat 3e doñ [3056] ¶ ffor Senec saip. He ouercommeth in an euel manere þat repenteth hym of his victorie. [3057] Wherefore I prey ȝou lat mercy be in ȝoure hert [3058] to þe effecte and entent þat god almyȝty haue mercy on ȝou in his last Iuggement [3059] ¶ ffor seint Iame seip in his Epistel ¶ Iuggement wipoute mercy shal be do to hym þat hap no mercy on another wiȝt

[3060] Whan Melebius had herd þe grete skilles and resons of dame Prudence and her wise enformaciō and techinge. [3061] His hert gan enclyne to þe wille of his wif. considerynge her trewe entent. [3062] Confirmed. hym anōn and contened fully to worchen aftere her counsaile [3063] and þonked god of whome procedeth al goodnesse þat hym sent a ¶ wif of so grete discreciō [3064] And whan þe day come þat his aduersaries shuld apperen in his presence [3065] he speke

to hem ful goodely And saide in þis wise. [3066] Al be
 it̃ soo þat̃ of ȝoure pride and hegh̃ presumpciōn and foly.
 and of ȝoure negligence and vnkonyng̃ [3067] ȝe han
 mysborn ȝou. and trespased vnto me [3068] ȝit̃ for as
 moche as I See and byholde ȝoure grete humilite
 [3069] and þat̃ ȝe bene sory and repentaunte of ȝoure gyltes.
 [3070] It̃ constreyneth me to do ȝou grace./ and mercy
 [3071] and wherfore I receyue ȝou to my *grace*. [3072] And
 forȝeue ȝou vtterly al þe offences Iniuries and wrongges
 þat̃ ȝe have done aȝeinst̃ me and myne [3073] to þis
 effecte and to þis eende þat̃ god of his endeles mercye
 [3074] wil at̃ þe tyme of our deyinge forȝeue vs our
 gyltes þat̃ we han trespased vnto hym in þis wrecched
 world. [3075] ffor doutelesȝ if we bene sory and repentaunte
 of þe synnes and gyltes in þe which we han trespased in þe
 sizt̃ of oure lorde god. [3076] he is so free and so merci-
 able. [3077] þat̃ he 'wil forȝeue vs oure gyltes [3078]
 and brynge vs to þe blisse þat̃ neuere haþ eende .AmeN.

¶ Here endep chaucers tale of melebye

And here bygynneþ þe prologe of þe Monke . / [on leaf
246, back]

Whan ended was my tale of Meleby
 And of Prudence and her benygnyte 3080
 Our hoost' saide as I am feiþful man
 And by þe corps precious Matrian
 I had leuer þan a barel of ale .
 That' good loue my wif had herd' þis tale 3084
 ffor she nys no þinge of such' pacience
 As was þilk Melebies Dame Prudence
 By goddes bones whan I bete my knaues
 She bringeþ me forþ þe grete clubbed staues 3088
 And crieth Slee þoo dogges euerychoñ
 And breke of hem boþ bak and boon
 And 3if þat' eny neighbour of myne
 Wil nat' to my wif in church' enclyne 3092
 Or be so hardy to hure do trespas
 Whan she commeþ hoom she ranpeþ in my face
 And crieth fals coward' kepe and wreke þi wiff
 By goddes bonys I wil haue þi knyff 3096
 And þow shalt' haue my distaff and go spynne
 ffrom day to nyght' þus she wil bygynne
 Allas she seiþ þat' euer I was yshape
 To wedde a Milksop or a coward' ape 3100
 That' wil be ouercome wiþ euery wizt'
 Thow darst' not' stonde by þi wyues rízt'
 þis is my lif but' 3if þat' I wil fízt'
 Out' at' þe door anoon I mot' me dízt' 3104
 Or ellys I am lest' but' 3if þat' I.
 Be like a wilde lyoñ fool hardy .
 I wote wele she wil do me sclee som day
 Somme neighoure of myne and þennes renne away 3108
 ffor I am perilous wiþ knyf in honde
 Al be it' I dar nat' her withstonde

ffor she is bigge in Armes be my faith
 þat shal he fynde þat hir mysdoþ or saip 3112
 But lat vs passe away fro þis matere
 My lorde þe Monke quod he be mery of chiere [leaf 247]
 ffor 3e shul telle a tale trewly
 Loo Rouchester stant here fast by 3116
 Ride forþ myn owne lord breke not 3oure game
 But by my troupe I knowe nouȝt 3oure name
 Whedere shal I calle 3ou my lord dan Iohn
 Or danne Thomas or danñ Albon 3120
 Of what hous be 3e by 3oure fader kyn
 It is a gentile pasture þat 3e goon In
 Thow art not like a penannt or a goost
 Thus to þe Monke seide oure oste 3124
 Vppon my faipe þou art some officere
 Som worpi Sexteyñ or som selerere
 ffor by my fadere saule as to my dome
 Thow art a maistere whan þou art at home 3128
 No poor cloistrere ne no novise
 But governour boþ wily and wise
 And þer-wiþ-al of braune and of bonys
 A wel farynge persone for þe nonys 3132
 I pray god 3eue hym confusioñ
 That þe furst brouȝt to Religioñ
 ffor þou woldest haue bene a tredeforþ ariȝt
 Haddest thou as grete leue as þou hast myȝt 3136
 To performe al þi lust in engendrure
 Thow haddest ygete mony a creature
 Allas whi werest þow so wide a cope
 God 3eue sorowe to me and I were pope 3140
 Not oonly þou but euery myȝty man .
 Thouȝe he were shore brode vpon þe pan .
 Shuld haue a wiff for al þe world is lorñ
 Religion haþ take vp al þe cōrn 3144
 Of tredyng and we burile men bēñ but shrympes .
 Of feble trees þer comen symple ympes .

This makeþ þat oure heires bene so sclendere
 And feble þat þei may not wel engendere 3148
 This makeþ þat our wyues wil assay
 Relygious folk for þei may bettere paye
 Of Venes payment þan may we
 God woot no lasshebourues pay 3e [leaf 247, back] 3152
 Be nat wroþe my lorde þouze I play
 ffor ofte in game a soþe I haue herd say
 This worþi monke toke aȝ in paciençe
 And saide I wil doon al my diligence 3156
 As fer as sowneth unto honeste
 To telle þou a tale or two or þre
 And ȝif þe list to herken hiderwarde
 I wil þou say þe lif of seint Edward 3160
 Or elles furst tregedies wil I þou telle
 Of which I haue an hundred in my Selle
 Tregedie is forto seyn a certeyn storie
 As olde bookes make vs memorie 3164
 Of hem þat stood in grete prosperite
 And is falle out of hie degree
 Into Miserye and endeþ wretchedly
 And þei bene versefied comonly 3168
 Of sex fete of which men callen exámetro
 In proose eke bene endited mony oñ
 In metere eke and in sondry wise
 loo þis claringt aȝt ynow suffise 3172
 Now herkenep ȝif þou like to here
 But furst I þou biseche in þis manere
 þouze I be ordred tel not þise þingges
 Be it of Popes Emperours or kyngges 3176
 After her Age as men may writen fynde
 But telle hem som byfore and some behynde
 As it commeþ nowe in my remembraunce
 Haue me excused of myn ignoraunce 3180

¶ Here bygynneþ þe prologe of þe monke

[No breaks between the stanzas in the MS, except for
the red headings.]

And here bygynneþ þe monkes tale

[on leaf 247, back]

Iwol by-waile in ma[n]re of tregedie ¶ **þe tale**
 þe harme of hem þat stonden in hie degrie
 And fallen so þat þer nys no remedye
 To bringe hem out of her aduersite 3184
 ffor certeynly whan fortune list to flee
 þer may no man of hir þe cours wipholde
 Lat no man trest on blynde prosperite
 Beþ ware of þise ensamples trewe and olde [leaf 248] 3188

¶ **Primo de Lucifero :**
At lucifere þouze he an aungel were
 And nat a man . but at hym I wil bygyune
 ffor þouze fortune may noon aungel dere
 ffor high degre þer felle he for hys synne 3192
 Downe into helle wwere he ȝit is Inne
 O lucifer briztest of aungels alle
 Now art þou Sathanas þat maist nat twynne
 Out of myserie in which þat þou art falle 3196

¶ **De Adam . /**
Loo Adam in þe feelde of Damyssene
 Wip goddes ounne fyngers wrouȝt was he
 And nouȝt bygeten of mannes sperme vuclene
 And wolt al Paradys sauynge oon tree 3200
 Had neuere worldly man so hie degre
 As Adam vnto he wyþ nyce gouernañce
 Was dryue out of his high prosperite
 To laboure and to helle and to meschañce 3204

¶ De Sampson

Lo sampson þat^t was annunciate
 By þe Aungel longe er his natiuite
 And was to god almyȝty consecrate
 And stooðe in noblesse while þat he myȝt see 3208
 Was neuer such a noþer as was he
 To speke of strengþ, and þerto hardynesse
 But to his wyues tolde he his secree
 Thourgh which he selouȝe hym self for wrecchednesse 3212

¶ Sampson þis noble and myȝty champion
 Wip-oute wepen saaf his hondes tway
 He selough and also to-rent^t þe lyon
 Toward^d his weddyng^g walking^g by þe way 3216
 His fals wif coude hym so wel plese *and* pray
 Til she his counsaile knewe *and* she vntrewe
 To his foos his counsaile gan to wrye
 And hym forsoke and toke anoþer newe 3220

Thre hundred foxes toke Sampson for Ire
 And alle her tailles he to-gyder bonde.
 And Sette þe foxes tailles a fire [leaf 248, back]
 ffor he in euery taile had knytte a bronde 3224
 And þei brent^t al þe cornes of þat^t londe
 And al her oliuerus an vynes eke
 A thowsand he selough eke wip his honde
 And had no wepon but an asses cheke 3228

Whan þei were slayn so þrested hym þat he
 was wel nye lorn wherfor he gan to preye
 þat^t god wolde of his peyne haue som pite
 And sende hym drynke or ellys most^t he deye 3232
 And out of his asses cheke þat^t was so dreye
 Out^t of a wonge toth spronge anoñ a welle
 Of whiche he dronk^t ynouȝe shortly to [. . .
 no gap in the MS.] telle 3236

By verray force at Algason vpon a nyȝt
 Maugre the philistiens of þat Cite
 þe gatys of þat toune he haþ vp plizt
 And on his bak caried hem haþ he 3240
 Hie vpon an hille þat men myȝt See
 O noble almyȝty sampson leef and dere
 Haddest þou nat to wommen told þi secre
 In al þis world ne had ben þi pere 3244

This Sampson neiþer Sither dronk ne wyne
 Ne on his hede come neiþere rasour ne Shere
 [. no gap in the MS.]
 ffor al þe strenght in his heres were 3248
 And fully xx^{ti} wynter ȝeer by ȝere
 He had of Israel þe gouernaunce .
 But he shal wepe mony a tere
 ffor wommen men bryngen to meschaunce 3252

To his lemmon his Dalyaunce he told
 That in his herus al his strengthe lay
 And falsly to his foomen she hym sold
 And seleepinge in her barme vpon a day 3256
 She made to clippe or shere his heer away
 And made his foomen aH his craft to aspyen
 And whan þat þei fooñde hym in þis aray
 þei bounde hym fast and put out his yen 3260

But er his heer was yclipped or shaue
 Ther was no boonde wiþ which men myȝt hym bynde
 But now he is in prison put in a kaue [leaf 249]
 Where as þei made hym at þe querne grynde 3264
 O noble Sampson strengest of mankynde
 O whilom Iuge in glorie & richesse
 Now maist þow wepe wiþ þine eyen blynde
 Siþens þow art from wele falle into wrecchednesse 3268

The eende of þise catyfs was as I shal say
 His ffoomen made a feest' vpon a day
 And made hym as her foole to-forn hem play
 And þis was [in] a temple of a grete aray 3272
 But' at' þe last' he made a foule afray
 ffor he two postes shoke and made hem falle
 And downe fitt temple and al þer it' lay
 And sclough hym self and eke his ffoomen alle 3276

This is to say þe princes euerechoñ
 And eke a thowsand bodyes were þere slayñ
 Wiþ falling' of þe grete temple of stoñ
 Of Sampson ne wil I no more sayñ 3280
 Be ware of þise ensamples olde *and* playn
 þat' no man telle her counsaile to her wyves
 Of suche þinge as þei wolde haue secre fayn
 3it' þat' it' touche her lymmes or hir lyues . 3284

O ¶ De Ercule ./
 f Ercule this souereyn conquerour
 Syngen his werkes lewde and high renoun .
 ffor in his tyme of strenght' he bere þe flour
 He slowe and raft' þe skyn fro þe lyoun 3288
 He of Sentawres laide þe boost' a down
 He Arpies slowe þe cruel briddes felle
 He golden apples byraft' þe dragoun
 He drowe out' Serbyrois þe hound of helle 3292

He slowe þe cruel tyraunt' Buserus
 And made his hors to fiete hym flessht' *and* boñ
 He sclough þe verrey serpent' venomous
 Of Achilles two hornes breke he oñ 3296
 An he sclowgh Cacus in a kaue of stoñ
 He sclowgh þe geaunte Anteus þe strong'
 He slowe þe grisly boore and þat' anoñ
 And bare þe hede vpon his nek' longe [leaf 249, back] 3300

Was neuer wízt siþen þe world̃ bygan
 þat̃ selowe so mony monstres as did he
 þorgh-out̃ þis wide world̃ his name ran
 What̃ for his strengþ̃ and for his bounte 3304
 And euery Rewme went̃ he forto See
 He was so stronge no man myzt̃ hym lette
 And boþ þe worldes ende saiþ trophe
 In stede of bondes he a piler̃ sette 3308

A lemman had þis noble Campioñ
 That̃ hight̃ Dianyre fressh̃ as may
 And as þe clerkes maken mencioñ
 She haþ hym sent̃ a shert̃ fressh̃ *and* gay 3312
 Allas þis shert̃ and welaway
 Evenymed was subtilly wiþ-añ
 That̃ ere þat̃ he had wered it̃ half a day
 It̃ inade his bones from his flesshe falle 3316

But̃ napeles some clerkes her excusen
 By ooñ þat̃ hight̃ Nessus þat̃ it̃ maked̃ .
 Be as be may I wil her not accuseñ
 But̃ on his bakke þe shert̃ he weres al naked̃ . 3320
 Til þat̃ his fless̃h̃ was for þe venyme blaked̃
 And whan he segh noon oþer remedye
 In hote cool̃es he haþ hym-self raked̃
 ffor wiþ no venyme deynd̃ he to dye 3324

Thus sterf þis worþi myghty Ercules
 Lo who may trust̃ on fortune eny throwe
 ffor hym þat̃ foloweþ al þis world̃ of prees
 Er he be ware is oft̃ yleide ful lowe 3328
 fful wise is he þat̃ hym self can knowe
 Beþ ware for whan þat̃ fortune lest̃ to glose
 þan waiteþ she her man down to throwe
 By suche a way as he wold̃ leest̃ suppose 3332

¶ De rege Nabugodonosor. /

The myȝty trone þe precious tresour
 The glorious sceptre and real mageste
 þat had þe kyng Nabugodonosor
 Wiþ tunge vnneþ may / discryved be 3336
 He twyes nam Ierusalem þe Cite [leaf 250]
 The VesseH of þe temple he wiþ hym lad
 At Babiloyne was his souereyn See
 In which his glorie and his delit he had. 3340

The fairest children of þe blood Royal
 Of Ierusalem he ded do gilde anonon
 And-maked eche of hem to bene his cherle
 Amon[ge] aH oþer Danyel was oon 3344
 þat was þe wysest childe of euerychoñ
 ffor he þe dremes of þe kyng expowned
 Wher as in Caldey clerk was þer noon
 þat wist to what fyne his dremes sowned 3348

This prowde kyng lete make a stature of gold
 Sixty cubites longe and Seuen in brede
 To whiche ymage boþ ȝonge and olde
 Comaunded he to loute and haue in drede 3352
 Or in a fornays ful of flawmes rede.
 He shal be brent þat wold nat obeye
 But neuere wold assent vnto þat dede
 Danyel ne his ȝonge felawes tweye 3356

This kyng of kyngges prowde was and elate
 He wende god þat sitte in maieste
 Ne myght hym nat byreue of his estate
 But sodeynly he lost his dignyte 3360
 And like a beest hym semed forto be
 And ete hay as an oxe and lay þerout
 In reyne wiþ wilde beestes walked he
 Til a certeyn tyme was come aboute 3364

And like an Egles fetheres was his heeres
 His nailes like briddes clawes were
 [Til] God releued hym a certeyn 3eres
 And 3af hym witte and þan wiþ mony a tere 3368
 He þonked god and euere his lyf in fere
 was he to doon amys in more trespas
 And or þat tyme ylaide was on his bere
 He knewe wel þat god was ful of my3t and *grace* 3372

De Baltazar dicti Regis Nabugodonosor filio.

His soñe which þat hi3t Baltazar
 That heelde þe regne aftere his faders day [leaf 250, back]
 He by his fadere coupe not be war
 ffor proude he was of hert and of aray 3376
 And eke an ydolater was he ay
 His high astate assured hym in pride
 But fortune cast hym doune and þer he lay
 And sodeynly his regne gan deuide 3380

A feest he made vnto his lordes alle
 Vppon a tyme and made hem bliþe be
 And þan his officers can he calle
 Goop bryngeþ forþ þe vessels quod he 3384
 Which þat my fader in his prosperite
 Out of þe temple of Ierusalem byraft
 And to oure heghe goddes þonke wee
 Of honur þat our elders wiþ vs laft 3388

His wif his lordes and his concubynes
 Ay dronken þe whiles her appetite last
 Out of þise noble vessels sondry wyne
 And on a wal þis kyng his eyen cast 3392
 And sawe an honde armelees þat wrote ful fast
 ffor fere of which he quoke and sighed sore
 This honde þat baltazar made so soor agast
 Wrote mane techel phares and no more 3396

In al þat londe Magytien was þer noon
 þat coupe expoune what þis *lette* ment
 But Danyel expounded it anoon
 And saide king^g god þi fader sent 3400
 Glorie and honour^g Regne tresour and rent^g
 And he was proude and god no þing^g dradde
 And þerfore god grete wreth^h vpon hym Sent
 And hym by-raft^h þe regne þat he hadde 3404

He was out^h cast^h of mannys companye
 Wip asses was his habitacioñ
 And ete hay as a beest^h in wete *and* drye
 Til þat he knewe by grace *and* by resoñ 3408
 That^h god of heuene haþ domynaciañ
 Ouer euery regne and euery creature
 And þan had god of hym compassion
 And hym restored his regne and his figure [leaf 251] 3412

Eke þou þat art^h his sone art^h proude also
 And knowest^h aH þise þingges prively
 And art^h rebel to god and art^h his foo
 Thow drank^h eke of his vessels boldly 3416
 Thi wif eke and þi wenches synfully
 Drank^h of þe same vessels sondry wyne
 And heried fals goddys cursedly
 Þerfore to þe shapen grete peyn es 3420

This hand was sent^h fro god þat on þe waft
 wrote mane techel phares trest^h me
 Thy regne is done þou waigest^h not^h at aH
 Devided is þi regne and it shal be 3424
 To Medes and to perses 3euen quod he
 And þilk^h same nyzt^h þe kyng^g was sclawe
 And Darius occupieþ his degre
 They he þerto nad neiþer riht^h ne lawe 3428

GROUP B. § 12. MONK'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

Lordyngges her-by ensamples mowe 3e take
 How þat in lordship is no sikernesse
 ffor whan fortune wil a man forsake
 He bereþ away his regne and his richesse 3432
 And eke his frendes boþ more and lesse
 And what man haþ frendes þorowe fortune
 Mishappe wil make hem enemyes I gesse
 This prouerbe is ful soþe and ful commune 3436

¶ **De Cenobia**:/

CEnobia of Palamere þe quene
 As writen Persiens of her noblesse
 So worþi was in Armes and so kene
 þat no wiȝt passed hure in hardynesse 3440
 Ne in lynage ne in oþer gentilnesse
 Of þe kyngges blood of percy is she descended.
 I say þat she nad not moost fairenesse
 But of hure Shap she myȝt not be amended 3444

Fro childhode I fynde þat she fledde
 Office of wommen and into woode she went
 And Mony a wilde hertes blode she shedde
 wiþ arowes brode þat she to hym sent 3448
 She was so swift þat she anoon hem hent
 [leaf 251, back]
 And whan þat she was elder she wold kille
 Lyoñs . lybardes and beres alto-rent
 And in hure armes weelde hem at her wille 3452

She durst wilde beestes dennes seke
 And renne in þe mountayn al þe nyght
 And selepe vndere a busshe she coude eke
 Wrastelen by verray force and myght 3456
 Wiþ eny yong man were he neuer so wiȝt
 Ther myght no þinge in her Armes stonde
 She kepte her maidenhode from euery wiȝt
 To no man deynd hure to be bonde 3460

But at þe last her frendes han hure maried
 To Odonak a prince of þat Cite
 Al were it so þat she hem longe taried
 And ȝe shal vnderstonde how þat he 3464
 Hap suche fantasies as had she
 But napelees whan þei were knyht in fere
 þei lyueden in Ioie and in felicite
 ffor eche of hem had oper leef *and* dere 3468

Sauf oon þinge that ȝe nolde neuere assent
 By no way þat he shulde by hire lye
 But onys for it was her pleyn entent
 To haue a childe þe world to multiplie 3472
 And also sone as she myȝt asprie.
 That she was nouȝt wiþ child *with* þat dede
 þan wil she suffre hym doon his fantasie
 Eftsonen and not but onys out of drede 3476

And ȝif she were wiþ childe at þilke cast
 No more shulde he playe þilke game
 Till xlth daies were past.
 Than wolde she onys suffre hym doo þe same 3480
 Al were this Odenake wilde or tame
 He gate no more of hure. for þus she saide
 It was to wyues lechery an shame
 In oper caas if þat men wiþ hem plaide 3484

Twoo sones by þis odynak had She
 The whiche she kepte in vertue and in letture
 But nowen vnto oure tale turne wee [leaf 252]
 I say þat worshipful creature 3488
 And wise þer-wiþ and large *with* mesure
 So penyble in þe werre and curteyse eke
 No more labour myȝt in werre endure
 was noon þouȝe in al þis world men shuld seke 3492

Hire Riche aray myȝt' not be tolde
 As wel in vessel as in clopinge
 She was al clad in perry and in gold
 And eke she laft' not for noon huntynge 3496
 To haue of sondry tungges folk' knowinge
 whan þat' she leisere had and forto entende
 To lerne bookes was al hure likyng
 How she in vertue myȝt' her lyf dispende 3500

And shortely of þis storie forto entrete
 So dughty was her husbonde as she
 That' þei conquered mony regnes grete
 In þe Orient wip mony a faire Cite 3504
 Appertenent vnto þe mageste
 Of Rome and wip stronge hond helde hem fast
 Ne neuer myȝt' her foomen doon hem flee
 Ay whiles þat' Odenake dayes last 3508

Her batailles who so lest' hem forto rede
 Ageyn sopere þe kyng' and oþer moo
 And howe þat' all þe processe felle in dede
 whi she conquered and what' titel had þerto. 3512
 And after of her mescheef and of her woo
 Howe þat' she was byseged and Itake
 Lat' hym vnto my maister Petrarke goo.
 þat' writte Inowe of þis I vndertake. 3516

Whan Odenak' was dede she myȝtily
 þe Regnes heelde and wip hur propre honde
 Aȝeinst' her foos she fauȝt' trewly
 þat' þer nas kyng no prince in al þat londe 3520
 þat' he nas glad ȝif he þat' grace fonde
 þat' she ne wolde vpon his lond werreye
 wip hire þei made alliance by bonde
 To bene in pees and lat' hure ride and pleye / 3524

[leaf 252, back]

The Emperour of Rome Claudius
 Ne hym byforn þe Romayne galiene
 Ne durst' neuer be so coragius
 Ne noon ermyne ne noon Egipcienne 3528
 Ne Surryene ne noon Arabiene
 Wip-in þe feelde þat' durst' wip hire fīȝt'
 Lest' þat' she wolde wip hure hondes hym scleen
 Or wip her mayne putten hem to flīȝt' 3532

In kyngges habite went' her sonys twoo
 As heires of her regnes atte
 And hermanno and Tymalao
 Her names were as perciens hem calle 3536
 But' ay fortune haȝ in her hony galle
 This myȝty qweue may not longe endure
 ffortune out' of her regne made her falle
 To wrecchednesse and to mysauenture 3540

Aurelion whan þat' þe gouernaunce
 Of Rome come into his hondes tweye
 He shope vpon þis quene to do vengeaunce
 And wip his legyons he toke his waye 3544
 Toward' Cenoby and shortly forto seye
 He made hur flee and at' þe last' her hent'
 And fettred hure and eke her children tweye
 And wan þe londe and home to Rome is went' 3548

Amonge þise oȝer þingges þat' he wan
 her chare þat' wrouȝt' was with gold' and perre
 This grete Romayn þis Aurelian.
 haȝ wip hym lad for þat' men shuld see 3552
 Byforn hys trihumphe walkeȝ she
 Wip Gilt' cheynes in her nek' hongyng
 Corowned she was as after her degre
 And ful of Perry charged her cloþinge 3556

GROUP B. § 12. MONK'S TALE. Petworth MS.

Allas fortune she þat' whilom was
 Dreedful to kyngges and to emperours
 Now gaureþ alle þe puple on hir allas
 And she þat' helmed was in stronge stoures 3560
 [. no gap in the MS.]
 Shal on her hede bere a Vitremyte
 And she þat' bare þe sceptre ful of floures
 Shal bye a dystaf her coste forto quite [leaf 253] 3564

[*Peter the Cruel, of Spain.*]

O noble o worþi peter glory of Spayn
 Whoom fortune helde so hiȝe in maieste
 Wel ouȝt' men þi pitous deef complayn
 Thi bastard' broþer made þe to flee 3568
 And aftere at a siege by subtilte
 Thowe were bytraied and lad to his tent'
 Wher as he wiþ his owne honde sclogh þe
 Succeedyng in þi regne and in þi rent' 3572

The felde of snowe wiþ þe Egle blak' þer-Inne [Bertrand du Guesclin.]
 Caught' wiþ þe lyme rodde colours as þe glede
 He brewe þis cursednesse and al þe synne
 þe wicked nest' was werker of þis nede. 3576
 Nouȝt' charles Olyfere þat' ay toke good hede
 Of troupe of honure but' Armorekke [Oliver de Mauny of Brittany.]
 Geniloñ Olyuer corrupte for nede
 Brouȝtest' þis worþi king' in such'e brekke 3580

[*Peter of Cyprus.*]

¶ worþi Petre kynge of Cipre alsoo.
 That' Alisaunder wan by high maistrie
 fful mony a hepen wrouȝtest' þou for woo.
 Of which' þine owne leeges had enuye 3584
 And for no þing' but' for þi chyualrie
 They in þi bed han slayn þe by þe morue
 Thus gan fortune gouerne and gie
 And out' of Ioie bringe into sorowe 3588

GROUP B. § 12. MONK'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**[*Bernabo Visconti, of Milan.*]

Of Melane grete Barnabo Viscounte
 God of delite and scourge of lumbardie
 Whi shuld^t not^t I þi fortune acounte
 Siþ in estaat^t þou clomben were so hie 3592
 Thy broþer sone þat^t was þi double alie
 ffor he þi Neuewe was *and* sone in lawe
 Wiþ-in his prison made þe to die
 But^t whi ne howe wote I þat^t þou wære sclawe 3596

[*Ugolino, Count of Pisa.*]

Of the Erle Hugelyne of pise þe languour
 Ther may no tunge telle for pite
 But^t litel out^t of Pise stant^t a tour'
 In whiche towre in prison put^t was he 3600
 And wiþ hym bene his litel children þre
 þe eldest^t scarcely .v. ȝere was of age [leaf 253, back]
 Allas fortune it^t was grete crueltee
 Such^t briddes forto putte into a cage 3604

¶ Dampned he was to dye in þat^t prison
 ffor Roger which^t þat^t bisshop was of pise
 Had on hym made a fals suggestioñ
 Thorgh which^t þe puple gan on hym arise 3608
 And putten him in prison in such^t a wise
 As ȝe han herd and mete and drinke he had.
 So smal þat^t vnneþes it may suffise
 And þerwiþal it^t was ful poor and bad 3612

In a day byfelle þat^t in þat^t houre
 Whan þat^t his [mete] was wonte to be wrouȝt^t
 þe Gailour^r shette þe doores of þe toure
 He herde it^t wel but^t he seegh^t it nouȝt^t 3616
 And in his hert^t anon þer felle a þouȝt^t
 þat^t þei for hunder^r wolde done hym dyen
 Allas quod he allas þat^t I was wrouȝt^t
 þer-wiþ þe teeres felle from his eyen . 3620

His 3onge sones þre þer were of age
 Vnto hym seide fadere whi do 3e wepe
 whan wil þe Gailoure brynge our potage
 Is þer no morsel brede þat [ye] doo kepe 3624
 I am so hungry þat I may nat selepe
 Nowe wolde god þat I myȝt selepen euere
 þan shuld noon hungre in myn herte crepe
 þer nys no þinge sauf brede þat me were leuere 3628

Thus day by day þis childe gan to erie
 Til in his faders barme adoune it lay
 And saide fare wel fadere I mote dye
 And kissed his fadere and dyed þe same day 3632
 And whan þe wooful fadere did hym say
 ffor woo his arnes two he gan to bite
 And saideallas fortune and welaway
 Thy fals whele my woo I may al wite 3636

His childer [wende] þat hit for hunger was
 þat he his arnes gnowe *and* nouȝt for woo.
 þei seiden fadere do not soallas
 But raper ete þe flessħ vpon vs twoo. [leaf 254] 3640
 Our flesshe þou 3af vs take our flessħ vs froo
 And ete ynouȝe riȝt þus to hym þei saide
 And after þat wip-Inne a day or twoo
 þei leide hem doune in his lappe *and* dayde 3644

Hym self dispeirede eke and for hu[n]ger starf
 Thus ended is þe myȝty erle of pise
 ffor highe astate fortune fro hym carf
 Of his tregetrie it ou te ynouȝe suffise 3648
 Who so wil here it in a lenger wise
 Redep þe grete poete of ytaile
 þat hiȝte Daunte, for he can it devise
 ffrom poynt to poynte for no þing wil he faile. 3652

¶ **De nerone Imperatore .**

Al þouze þat Nero were as vicious
 As eny feende þat lieth ful lowe adoune
 3it he as telleþ vs swetheneus
 This wide world had in subieccioñ 3656
 Both eest and west and Septemptrion
 Of Rubies Saphires and peerles white
 Were al his [cloþes] browd[ed] vp and doune
 ffor he [in] gemmes grete gan delite 3660

More delicate more pompous of araye
 More proude was neuere Emperour þan he
 þat ilke cloþe þat he had wered a day
 Aftere þat tyme he nolde it neuer see 3664
 Nettes of gold threde had he grete plente
 To fisshen in Tibre whan hym list to pleye
 His lustes [were] as lawe in his degre
 ffor fortune as his frende wold hym obeye 3668

He Rome brent for his delicacie
 The Senatoures he sclouze vpon a day
 To here howe þat men wolde wepe *and* crie
 And sclouze his broþer and by his sustere [lay] 3672
 His modere made he in pitous aray
 ffor he her wombe sclitte to byhold
 wher he conceyued was so welaway
 That he so litel of his moder tolde. 3676

No teer out of his eyen for þat sizt [leaf 254, back]
 Ne came but saide a faire womman was she
 Grete wondere is þat he cowde or myzt
 Be Domes man of her dede bewte. 3680
 The wyne to brynge comaunded he
 And dronke anoon noon oþer woo he made
 Whan myzt is Ioyned vnto cruelte
 Alas to depe wil þe venyme wade 3684

In 3outhē a maister had þis emperour
 To teche hym lettūre and curtesye
 ffor of moralite he was þe floure
 As in his tyme but 3if bokes lye 3688
 And whiles his maister had of hym maistrie
 He made hym so conyngē and so souple
 That longe tyme it was or tyrannye
 Or eny vice in hym durst vncouple 3692

This Seneca of which [that] I devise
 By cause Nero had of hym such drede
 ffor he for vices wold hym chastise
 Discretely as by worde and nat by dede 3696
 Sire wolde he sayne an Emperour mot nede
 Be vertuous and hate tyrannye
 ffor which he hym in bathe made to blede
 On boop his Armes til he most dye 3700

This Nero had eke of a custumance
 In 3oupe azeinst his maister forto rise
 Which afterward hym pouzt a grete greuance
 Therfore he made hym dye in þis wise 3704
 But nathelees þis Senec þe wise
 Chees in a bathe to dye in þis manere
 Raper þan han a noþer tormentri[s]e
 And þus hap Nero slayn his maister dere 3708

Now felle it so þat fortune lest no lenger
 þe highe Pride of Nero to cherice
 ffor pouze he were stronge 3it was she strenger
 She pouzte þus by god I am to nyce 3712
 To sette a man þat is fulfild in vice
 In heghe degre and Emperour hym calle.
 By god out of his sete I wil him trice. [leaf 255]
 whan he leest wenep sonnest shal he falle. 3716

The puple roos vp on hym on a nyȝt
 ffor his defaute and whan he it aspied.
 Out of his doores anon he haþ hym diȝt
 Allone and þer he wende haue bene alied. 3720
 He knocked fast and ay þe more he cried
 The faster schitten þei þe doores alle
 þo wist he wel he had hym self mysgied.
 And went his way no lenger dorst he calle 3724

The puple cried and rombled vp and down
 That wiþ his eeres herde he what þei seide
 Where is þis fals traitour þis Neroun
 ffor fere almost out of his witte he breide 3728
 And to his goddes pitously he seide
 ffor socoure but it myȝt nat be-tyde
 ffor drede of þis him þouȝt þat he dyde
 And ranne into a gardeyne hym to hyde 3732

And in þis gardyne fonde he cherles tweye
 That sitten by a fuyre ful gret and rede
 And to þe cherles twey he gan to preie
 To scleen hym and to girden of his hede 3736
 That to his body whan þat he were dede
 Were no despite ydon for his diffame
 Hym self he sclowȝe he coude no better rede
 Of which fortune lough and made a game 3740

[*Holofernes.*]

Was neuere Captayne vnder a kinge ¶ De Olyferno./
 þat regneþ more putte in subiectioun
 Ne strengre was in feelde of al þinge
 As in his tyme ne gretter of renown 3744
 Ne more pompous in high presumeioun
 Than olyferne which that fortune ay kest
 So lycorously and lad hym vp and down
 Til þat his hede was of er þat he wist 3748

Not oonly þat this world haþ of hym awe
 ffor lesinge of Richesse and of liberte
 But he made euery man renaye his lawe
 Nabugodonosor was lord saide he. 3752
 Noon oþer god shulde honoured be [leaf 255, back]
 Azeinst his heest no wízt dar trespace
 Saue in Betulia a stronge Cite
 Wher Eliachym a preest was of þat place 3756

But take kepe of þe deth of Olyferne
 Amydde þe hooste he dronke lay al nyzt
 Wip Inne his tente large as is a beerne
 And 3it for al his pompe and al his myzt 3760
 Iudith a womman as he lay vprízt.
 Sclepinge his hede of smote *and* fro his tent
 flul prively she stale from euery wízt
 [. no gap in the MS.] 3764

[*Antiochus.*]

What nedep it of kyng Antiochus ¶ De Antiocho Rege
 To telle his high and Ryal maieste
 His hie pride his werke venymus
 ffor suche anoþer was neuer noon as he 3768
 Redep which þat he was in machabe
 And redeþ þe proude wordes þat he seide
 And whi he felle fro his prosperite
 And in an halle how wretchedly he deide 3772

Fortune hym had enhaunsed so in pride
 That verrelly he wende he myzt atteyne
 Vnto þe sterres vppon euery side
 And in a balaunce to wey þe mounteyne 3776
 And alle þe floodes of the See Restreyne
 And goddes puple had he most in hate
 Hem wolde he sclee in torment *and* [in] peyn
 wenyng þat god ne myzt his pride abate 3780

And for þat Nichamour and thymothe
 wiþ Iwes were venquysshed myȝtely
 Vnto þe Iwes such an hate had he
 That he bad graped his chare ful hastily 3784
 And swore and saide ful dispitously
 Vnto Ierusalem he wolde eftsone
 To wreke his Ire on it ful cruelly
 But of his purpos he was lette ful sone 3788

God of his manace hym so sore smote
 Wiþ vnyvisible wounde ay vncurable
 That in his guttes carf soo and bote
 That his peynes were importable [leaf 256] 3792
 And certainly þe wrech was resonable
 ffor many mannys guttes did he peyne
 But fro his purpos cursed and dampneable
 ffor al his smerte he nolde hym restreyne 3796

But bad anon appaile his Ooste
 And sodeynly er he was of it ware
 God daunted al his pride and al his boost
 ffor he so sore felle out of his chare 3800
 That hurte his lymmes and his skyn to-tare
 Soo þat he ne myȝt goo ne ride
 But in a chaier men about hym bare
 Al for-brused boþ bak and side 3804

The wreth of god hym smote so cruelly
 That in his body wikked wormes crepte
 And þer wiþ al he stonke so horriblye
 That noon of alle his mayne þat hym kepte 3808
 whedere þat he woke or ellis sclepte
 Ne myȝt not þe stynk of hym endure
 In þis meschief he wailed and eke wepte.
 And knewe god lorde of euery creature 3812

To alle his hooste and to hym self also
 fful wlatson was þe stink^t of his careyne
 No man myȝt^t hym bere to ne froo.
 And in his stynk^t and in his horrible peyne 3816
 He starfe ful wrechedly in a mounteyne
 Thus haþ þis robbour and homycide
 That mony a man made to wepe and pleyne
 Such guerdon as by-longeþ vnto pride 3820

[*Alexander the Great.*]

The Storie of Alisaundre is so comune. ¶ De Alex-
 That euery wiȝt þat haþ discrecioun andro Rege
 Haþ herd^t somewhat or all of his fortune
 This wide world^t as in conclusioun 3824
 He wanne by strenght^h or for his hie renoun
 They weren glad for pees vnto hym sende
 þe pride of man and beest^t he laid adoun
 Wher so he come vnto þe worldes ende 3828

Comparison myȝt neuere be maked.
 Bytwix hym and anoþer conquerour [leaf 256, back]
 ffor al þis world for drede of hym Haþ quaked.
 He was of knyghthode and of fredom flour 3832
 ffortune him made þe heir['] of hur['] honour
 Saue wyne and wommen no þing^t myȝt^t a-swege
 His hegh entente in armes and laboure
 So was he ful of louying^t corage 3836

What pite were it to hym þouȝe I ȝou tolde
 Of Darius and an hundred thowsand moo.
 Of kyngges Princes. and Erles bold
 Which he conquered and brouȝt^t into woo 3840
 I say as fer as man may ride and goo.
 The worlde was his what shuld^t I more devise
 ffor þouȝe I write and told^t ȝou euer moo.
 Of his kinghode it myȝt^t not suffice 3844

Twelue ȝere he regned as saip Machabe
 Philippes sone of Macedoyne he was
 That furst was kinge of Grece þe cuntree
 O worþi gentile Alisaunder^o alas 3848
 That euer shuld [thee] falle Such a caas
 Enpoysened of þi folk þou were
 Thine . sise . fortune haþ turned into an aas
 And ȝit for þe ne weppe she neuere a tere 3852

Who shal ȝeue teeres men to compleyne
 The deep of gentilnesse and of ffraunchise
 That al þe worlde weelded in his demeyne
 And ȝit him þouȝt hit myȝt not suffice 3856
 So fiul was his corage of high emprise
 Allas who shal me helpe to endite
 ffals fortune and poyson to despise
 The which twoo of al this woo I wite 3860

[*Julius Cesar.*]

By wisdomē manhode and by labour ¶ Iulius Cesar/.
 ffro humblehede and fro Roial Maieste
 Vp roos he Iulius þe Conquerour
 That aȝ þe Occident by londe and See 3864
 By strengþ of honde or ellis by trete
 And vnto Roome made hem tributarie .
 And Sithens of Rome þe Emperour was he /
 Til þat fortune wexe his aduersarie [leaf 257] 3868

A Mighty Cesar þat in Tessalye .
 Aȝeinst Pompeius fader þine in lawe
 That of þe Orient had al þe chyualrie
 As fer as þat þe day bygynneþ dawē 3872
 Thogh þou þorgh þi knyghthode haþ hem take and sclawe
 Sauf fewe folk þat wiþ Pompeius fledde
 Thorghe which þou puttest al þe orient in awe
 Thonke fortune þat so wel þe spedde 3876

But now a litel while I wil bywaile
 This Pompeus þis noble gouernour
 Of Roome which þat fleigh at this bataille
 I saye oon of his men a fals traitour 3880
 His hede of smote to wynne hym fauour
 Of Iulius and hym þe hede brouzt
 Allas Pompey of the Orient conquerour
 That fortune vnto such a funte brouzt 3884

TO Rome azeine repeireþ Iulius.
 Wiþ triumphe laureat ful high
 But on a tyme Brutus Cassius
 þat euere had of his astate Envie 3888
 fful priuely had made Conspiracie
 Azeinst þis Iulius in subtile wise /
 And cast þe place in which he shuld dye
 With boydekyns as I shal 3ou · devise 3892

This Iulius to þe Capithole went
 Vppon a day as he was wonte to goon
 And in þe Capitole anoon hym hente
 This fals Brutus and his foule fooñ 3896
 And stiked hym wiþ boydekyns anoñ
 Wiþ mony a wounde and þus þei lete hym lye
 But neuere grunte he at no stroke but oon
 Or ellis at twoo but 3if his storie lye 3900

So manly was þis Iulius of herte
 And so wel loued estately honeste
 That pouze his dedly woundes so sore smerte
 His mantel ouer his hippes cast he 3904
 ffor no man shuld se his private
 And as he lay on dyng in a traunce [leaf 257, back]
 And wist verrely þat dede was he
 Of honeste 3it had he remembraunce 3908

¶ Lucane to þis storie I recomende
 And to Sweton and Valerius also.
 That of His storie writeþ word *and* ende
 How þat þise grete conquerours twoo 3912
 ffortune was furst frende and siþen a foo/
 No man ne trust vpon his fauour longe
 But haue hure in a-waite euer moo
 Witnes on alle þise conquerours stronge 3916

[*Cresus.*]

This riche Cresus whilom kyng of lyde
 O which Cresus Cyquus sore hym dradde
 3it was he kauzt amanges al his pride
 And to be brent men to þe fure hym ladde 3920
 But suche a Reyne doune fro þe walken shadde
 þat sclouze þe fuyre and made hym to eskape
 But to be war 3it no grace he hadde
 Til fortune on þe galous made hym gape 3924

Whan he askaped was he can not stent
 ffor to bygynne a newe reyne azeine
 He wende wele for þat fortune hym sente
 Suche happe þat he askaped þorze þe reyne 3928
 þat of his foos he myzt not be sclayn
 And Suche a sweuen vpon a nyzt he mette
 Of which he was so proude and so fayn
 That in vengeance he al his hert sette 3932

Vpon a tree he was as hym þouzt
 Ther Iubiter hym wassh boþ hals *and* Side
 And Phebus eke a faire towale hym brouzt
 To drye hym wiþ an þerfore wex his pride 3936
 And to his douztere þat stood hym beside
 Which þat he knewe in his sentence habounde
 He bad hure telle hym what it signyfið
 And she his dremes byganne rizt þus expounde 3940

GROUP B. § 12. MONK'S TALE. Petworth MS.

The tree quod she þe galous is to mene
 And Iubiter bitokeneþ snowe and reyne
 And Phebus wiþ his towale so clene.
 Thoo bene the sone stremes forto sayn [leaf 253] 3944
 Thow shalt an honged be fadere certayn
 Rayn shal þe wassh and sonne shal þe drye
 Thus warned she hym ful plat *and* ful playn
 His douȝter [which] þat called was Phanye 3948

 An honged was Cresus þe proude kinge
 His Roial trone myȝt hym not availe
 Tregedie is noon oþer maner þinge
 Ne can in synnyng cry ne bywaile 3952
 But þat fortune alway wil assaile
 wiþ vnware stroke þe regnes þat bene proude
 ffor whan men trusten hir þan wil she faile
 And keuere her briȝt face wiþ a clowde 3956

 ¶ Thus endeþ þe monke his tale

And here bygynneþ þe nonpreest^t his prologe

¶ The prologe:
[on leaf 258]

Ho quod þe knyȝt^t no more good of þis
That ȝe han said is riȝt^t ynowe ywis
And mochel more for litel heuynesse
Is riȝt^t ynough to mochel folk^t I gesse [no gap in Petworth] 3960
[I sey for me / hit is a gret disese [Addit. MS 5140,
on leaf 272 and
back]
Wher as men haue ben / in gret welth and ese
To here of her sodeyn falle allas
And the contrarye / is Ioye and gret solas 3964
And whan a man hath be / in poor estat
And clymbeth vp / and waxeth fortunat
And ther abidith / in prosperite
Suchⁿ thyng is gladsom / as thynketh me 3968
And of suchⁿ thyng / were goodly for to telle
ya quod our hoost / bi seynt poules belle
ye sey soth / this monk hath clappid lowd
He spak how fortune / couered was with a clowd 3972
I nat nere what / and also tragedie
Riht now ye herde / and parde no remedie
I[t i]s forto be wailynge and compleyne
ffor that that is don / and also it is a peyne 3976
As ye han seid to heer^t of heuynesse
Sir monk nomore of this / so god you blesse
[You]^r tale anoyeth / alle this companye
Such thyng / is nat worth / a bottirflye [Addit. MS 5140,
extract stops]
ȝoure tales done vs no sporte ne game
Wherefore sir^t monke or daun pers by ȝour name
I prey ȝou hertely telle vs somewhat ellys
ffor sikerly ne were þe Clynkyng^t of ȝour^t bellis 3984

That on ȝoure bridel honge on euery side
 By heuene kyng þat for vs alle deyde
 I shuld er þis haue falle down for slepe
 Al þough [þe] sclouþe had neuer be so depe 3988
 Than had ȝoure tale ben told in veyn
 ffor certeynly as al þise clerkes seyn
 wher as a [man] may haue non audience
 Nouȝt helpeþ it to telle his sentence 3992
 And wel I woote þe substaunce is in me
 Ȝif eny þinge shal wel reported be
 Sir say somewhat of huntynge I ȝou preie
 Nay quod þis monke I haue no lust to pleie 3996
 Now lat anoper telle as I haue told
 þan spak our hoost with rude spech *and* bold
 And saide vnto þe nonnes preest anoñ
 Come nere sir preest Come hider Sire Iohñ [leaf 258, back]
 Telle vs such þingges as may our hertis glade 4001
 Be bliþ þouȝe þou ride vpon a lade
 What þouȝe þine hors be boþ foule *and* lene
 Ȝif he wil serue þe rek nat a bene 4004
 Loke þat þi hert be mery euermoo.
 Ȝis sir quod he ȝis hoost so mote I goo
 But I be mery Iwis I wil be blamed.
 And Riȝt anoon his tale he hap atamed. 4008
 And þus seide to vs euerychoñ
 My tale I wil bygynne anoñ [spurious]

¶ Thus endep þe prologe of þe nonnes preste

And here bygynneþ þe nonne preest^t his tale

[on leaf 258, back]

A poor wydowe somdel stope in age
 was whilom dwelling^t in a narowe cotage 4012
 Besides a groue stonding^t in a dale
 This widowe of which I telle 3ou my tale
 Siþens þilk day þat^t she was last^t a wiff
 In paciens lad a ful sympul lifft 4016
 ffor litel was hur^t Catel and hur^t rent^t
 By Husbondry of such as god her sent^t
 She fonde hure self and eke her doughtred twoo
 Thre large sowes had she *and* no moo . 4020
 Thre kyen and eke a shepe þat^t hight^t malle
 fful soty was hur^t boure *and* eke her halle
 In whiche she ete mony a sclender mele
 Of poynant^t sause hir^t neded neuer a dele 4024
 No deynte morsel passed hur^t þrote
 Hir^t diete was acordant^t to her cote
 Replecio ne made her neuer seke
 Attemper diete was all her^t phisike 4028
 And exercise and hert^t sufficiãnce
 The goute letted hur no þing^t to daunce
 Ne poplexie shent^t not^t her hede
 Noo wyne dronke she neiþer white ne rede 4032
 Her boord was serued most^t wiþ white *and* blake
 Milk^t and broune brede in which she fond no lake
 Seyned Bacon and somtyme an eye or tweye
 ffor she was as It were a manere of a deye [leaf 259]
 A gardyne she had enclosed al aboute 4037
 Wiþ stikkes and a drie diche wiþ-out
 In which she had a cok^t þat^t hizt^t chautilere
 In aþt þe londe of crowing^t was his pere 4040

GROUP B. § 14. NUN'S PRIEST'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

His mouþ was myrier þan þe mery orgon
 On masse daies þat in þe churchē goon
 Wel sikerer was þe crowyng in his logge
 þan is a klokke or an abbay orlogge 4044
 By nature he crewe eche ascencionn
 Of Equinoxial of þilk town
 ffor whan degrees .xv. were descended .
 þat knewe he þat it myȝt not bene amended 4048
 His Combe was redder þan þe fyne CuraH
 And bateled as it were a castel waH
 Ilike azure were his legges and his toone
 His bille was blake and as þe gete it shone 4052
 His nailles witter þan þe lily floure
 And ylike burnysshed gold was his coloure
 This gentile Cok had in his gouernaunce
 Vij. hennys forto doon his plesaunce 4056
 Which weren his sustres and his paramours
 And wonder like to hym as of colours
 Of þe which þe fairest hwed vnder prote
 Was clepe fair Damysel Pertilote 4060
 Curtais she was discrete and debonaire
 And Companable and bere her self so faire
 Sipens þilk day þat she was vij. nyȝt olde
 That trewly she haþ þe hert in hold 4064
 Of Chauntelere loukyn in euery lith
 He loued hure so þat wel was hym þer with
 But such a Ioie as it was to here hem singe
 Whan þat þe brizt sonne gan to sprynge 4068
 In swete accorde my lief is fare a londe
 ffor þilk tyme as I haue vnderstonde
 Beestes and briddes coude speke and synge
 And so byfelle þat in þe dawynge 4072
 As Chauntecleer amonges his wyues alle
 Sat on his perch þat was in þe halle [leaf 259, back]
 And next hym sat þis faire Pertilote
 This Chaunteclere gan gronen in his prote 4076

GROUP B. § 14. NUN'S PRIEST'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

As a man þat is in his dreame drecched sore
 And whan þat Pertilote þus herd hym rore
 She was a-gast and seide hert dere
 What eileþ þou to grone in þis manere 4080
 3e bene a verray seleper fy for shame
 And he answerd and saide þus madame
 I prey þou þat 3e take it not a greef
 By god me mette þat I was in such mescheef 4084
 Riȝt now þat 3it myn hert is sorē afriȝt
 Nowe god [quod] he my sweuen rede ariȝt
 And kepe my body out of foule prisoun
 Me mette þat I romed vp and down 4088
 With-in our yerde wher as I segħ a beest
 Was lik an hounde and wold haue made arest
 Vpon my body and wold haue had me dede
 His colour was bytwix white and red 4092
 And tipped was his taille and boþ his Eeres
 Wiþ blak vnlike þe remenaunt of his heeres
 His snowte smal with glowinge eyen tweye
 3it for his lōke almost for fere I dye . 4096
 This caused me my gronyng dōutelees
 A voy quod she fie on þou hertelees
 Allas quod she for by þat god aboue
 Now han 3e lost myn hert and my loue 4100
 I can not loue a coward by my faipe
 ffor certes what so eny womman seiþe
 We alle desiren 3if it myȝt be
 To han husbondes hardy wise *and* free 4104
 And secre ne noo nygard ne ne fooȝt
 To hym þat is a-gast of euery tooȝt
 Ne noon avoutour by þat god aboue
 How durst 3e seyn for shame vnto 3our loue 4108
 That eny þing myȝt make þou a-ferde
 Haue 3e no mannys hert *and* han a berde
 Allas and conne ye be a-gast of swuenes .
 No þing god woote but vanite in sweuen is [leaf 260] 4112

GROUP B. § 14. NUN'S PRIEST'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

Sweuens engendren of replexions
 And oft of fume and of complexions
 Whan humours bene to habundañte in a wizt
 Certes þis dreame which 3e han had to nyzt 4116
 Commeþ of þe grete superfluite
 Of 3oure rede Colere parde
 Which causeþ folk to dreame her dremes
 Of Arowes and fires wiþ rede lemes 4120
 Of Rede beestes þat willen hem bite
 Of kontek and of whelpes grete and lite
 Riȝt as þe humour of Malecolie
 Causeþ [ful] mony a man in slepe to crye 4124
 ffor fere of beeres and boles blake
 Or ellis blake deuels wil hem take
 Of oþer humoures couþe I telle also
 That worken mony a man in slepe ful woo. 4128
 But I wil passe as listly as I can
 Loo Caton which þat was so wise a man
 Seid he not þus ne do no force of dremes
 Now sire quod she whan we flee fro the bemes. 4132
 ffor goddis loue as takeþ som laxatif
 Vp perile of my saule and of my liff
 I counsaile 3ou þe best I wil not lye
 That boþ of colour and of Malencolie 4136
 3e purge 3ou and for 3e shul not tarie
 þouȝe þat in þis toun is non Apotecarie
 I shal my self to herbes techen 3ou
 which shal be 3oure here and 3our prove 4140
 And In þe Gardeyne two herbes shal I fynde
 þe which han of her proprete by kynde
 To purgen 3ou by-neþe and eke aboue
 fforȝetep not þis for goddes awne loue 4144
 3e bene ful Colerike of complexiõ
 Where þe sonne in his assenciõ
 Ne fynde 3ou replete of 3our humours hote
 And if it doo I dar wel lay a grote 4148

þat 3e shul haue a feuer terciane .
 Or an ague þat may be 3our bane [leaf 260, back]
 A day or twoo 3e shul haue dygestyues
 Of wormes er 3e take 3oure laxatyues 4152
 Of laureal Centaure and of fumytere
 Or ellis of Ellibore þat groweþ þere
 Of Catapuce and of gatys-buries
 Or Erbe Ive grouyng^t in oure 3eerd þer mery es 4156
 Pek hem vp riȝt^t as þei growe and ete hem Inne
 Be mery husbonde for 3our^t fader kynne
 Dredeþ no dreme I can say 3ou no more
 Madame quod he gramercy of 3oure lore 4160
 But napelees as touching Danne Catoun
 That hap of wisdomes such grete renoun
 By god men may in olde bokes rede
 Oon of þe grettest^t auctour out of drede 4164
 Of mony a man more of auctorite
 Than euer caton was so mot^t I the
 That al the reuers seyn of þis sentence
 Han han wel founden by experience 4168
 That dremes bene significaciōns
 As wel of Ioie as tribulaciōns
 That folk enduren in þis lif present^t
 It nedep^t nat^t to make of þis noon argument^t 4172
 The verrey preef sheweþ it in dede
 Oon of þe grettest^t auctour out of drede
 Saip þus þat whilom two felawes went^t
 On Pilgrimage in ful good entent 4176
 And happed so þei comen into a toun
 Wher as þere was such congregacioun
 Of puple and eke of streite herbygage
 þat þei fand^t not^t as moche as a cotage 4180
 In whiche þei boþ myght^t ylogged be
 Wherfore þei mosten of necessite
 As for þat nyȝt^t departen of companye
 And eche of hem goþ to his hostelrye 4184

GROUP B. § 14. NUN'S PRIEST'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

And toke his logginge as it wolde falle
 That oon of hem was logged in a stalle
 ffer in a 3eerde wiþ oxen of þe plouze
 That oþer man was logged wel ynouze [leaf 261] 4188
 As was his auenture or his fortune
 þat vs gouerneþ al as in commune
 And so by-felle longe er it were day
 This man mette in his bed þer as he lay 4192
 How þat his felawe gan on hym calle
 And saide Allas for in an oxes stalle
 This nyzt shal I be murpered þer I lie
 Now helpe me dere broþere er I dye / 4196
 In al hast come to me he seide
 This man out of his slepe for fere abreide
 But whan þat he was wakened out of his slepe
 He turneþ hym and toke of þis no kepe 4200
 Hym þouzt his dreame was nozt but a vanyte
 Thus twies in his slepinge dremed he
 And at þe .iiij. tyme 3it his felawe
 Come as he þouzt I am nowe Isclawe 4204
 Biholde my bloody woundes depe and wide
 Arise vp erly in þe morowe tide
 And at the west gate of þe toun quod he
 A cart ful of donge þer shalt þou see 4208
 In which his body is hidde ful priuely
 To pilk carte aresten boldely
 My golde caused my murder soþ to sayn
 And tolde hym euery poynt how he was sclayn 4212
 Wiþ a ful pitous face pale of hwe
 And trest wel his dreame he fonde ful trwe
 ffor on þe morowe as sone as it was day
 To his felawes Inne he toke þe way 4216
 And whan he come to þis oxes stalle
 Aftere his felawe he bygan to calle
 The ostelere answerd hym anoñ
 And saide Sir 3oure felawe is goon 4220

GROUP B. § 14. NUN'S PRIEST'S TALE. Petworth MS.

As sone as day he went^t out^t of þe toune
 This man gan falle in grete suspeciouⁿ
 Remembryng^t hym on his dremes þat^t he mette
 And forþ he goþ no lenger wold^t he lette 4224
 Vnto þe west^t gate of þe toune and foñde
 A donge cart^t as he went^t to donge þe londe [leaf 261, back]
 That^t was araied in þe same wise
 As 3e han herde þe dede man deuyse 4228
 And wiþ an hardy hert^t he gan to criē
 Vengeaunce and iustice on þis vilanye
 My felawe murdred is þis same ny3t^t
 And in þis carte he lith gapinge vp ri3t^t 4232
 [I crye out / on the mynystres *quod* he
 That sholde the lawe keep in this Cite
 Harrow allas / here lith my felawe sleyn
 What sholde I more / vnto this tale seyn 4236
 The people out sterte / and caste the carte to grounde
 And in the myddis of the donge thei founde] [Addit. MS
 extract ends]
 The dede man þat^t murdred was aH newe
 O blisful god þat^t art^t so Iust^t and trewe 4240
 Loo how þat^t þou bywreiest^t mordere alway
 Murder wil out^t þat^t see wee day by day
 Morder is so wlatson and so abhomynable
 To god þat^t is so Iust^t and resonable 4244
 þat^t he ne wil not^t suffre it hilled be
 Theigh it^t abide a 3eer or twoo or þre
 Murder wil out^t þis is my conclusioun
 And ri3t^t anoon ministres of þe toun 4248
 Haþ hent^t þe Carter and [ful] sore hym pyned
 And eke þe Ostilere so fer engyned
 That^t þei biknewe her wikkednesse anoon
 And weren honged by þe nek^t bone 4252
 Here may men see þat dremes bene to drede
 And certes in the same boke I rede
 Ri3t^t in þe next^t chapitre I rede of þis
 I gabbe not^t so haue I Ioie or blis 4256

GROUP B. § 14. NUN'S PRIEST'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

Two men þat wolden haue passed þe See
 ffor certeyn cause in to a fer contre
 If þat þe wynde ne had be contrarie
 That made hem in a Cite forto tarie 4260
 That stood ful merye vpon an hauen side
 But on a daye azeinst þe euentide
 The wynde gan chaunge and blowe as hym lust
 Iolif and glad þei wenten vnto rust 4264
 And Casten hem ful erly forto saile
 But herken how oo man felle in grete perile
 That oon of hem in scleping as he lay
 Hym mette a wonder dreme azeinst þe day 4268
 Hym þouȝt a man stood be his beddys side
 And hym commaunded þat he shuld abide. [leaf 262]
 And saide hym þus if þou to morn wende
 Thowe shalt be dreynþ my tale is at an ende 4272
 He woke and tolde his felawe what he meitt
 And preide him his viage forto lette
 As for þat day he preide hym to abide
 His felawe þat lay by his beddys side 4276
 Gan forto laugh and scorned ful fast
 No drem quod he may myne hert agast
 That I wil lette forto do my pingges
 I sette not a strawe by dremyngges 4280
 ffor sweuenes bene but vanytees *and* Iapes
 Men dreme alway of owles *and* of apes
 And of mony a mase þer-wiþaH
 Men dremen of þinge þat neuere [shal] 4284
 But siþen I see þou wit here abide
 And þus forsclewþen wilfully þi tyde
 God woote it rewep me and haue good day
 And þus he toke his leue and went his way 4288
 And er that he had half his cours assailed
 I not whi ne what meschaunce it ailed
 But casuely þe shippes botme rent
 And ship and man vnder þe water went 4292

GROUP B. § 14. NUN'S PRIEST'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

In sizt of oþer shippes hym beside
 That wip hym sailled att þe same tyde
 And þefore he seide Pertelote so dere
 By suche ensamples olde maist þou lere 4296
 That no man shulde be to rechelees
 Of Dremes for I say þe doutelees
 That in mony a dreme ful sore is forto drede
 Lo in þe lif of seint kenelyne I rede 4300
 That was kenulphus sone þe noble kyng
 Of Mertenrike how kenelyne mette a þinge
 A litel er [he] was murde[re]d on a day
 His murdre in his Auysioñ he say 4304
 His norice him expowned euery deff
 His sweuen and bad hym for to kepe hym weff
 ffor treson but he was seuen zere olde
 And þefore litel tale hap he tolde [leaf 262, back] 4308
 Of eny dreme so holly was his herte
 Be god I had leuer þan my sherte
 That ze had herd his legende as haue I
 Dame Pertelote I say zou trewly 4312
 Macrobyus þat writ þe auisioñ
 In affrike of þe worþi Cipriõ
 Affermeþ dremes and seþ þat þer bene
 Warnyng of þingges þat men after sene 4316
 And ferþermore I pray zou lokeþ weff
 The olde testament of Danyell
 3if he heelde dremes of eny vanyte
 Rede eke of Ioseph and ye shal See 4320
 Wheder dremes be somtyme I say not alle
 Warnyng of þingges þat shul after falle
 Loke eke of Egipte þe kinge danne Pharao
 His bakere and his botelere also 4324
 Wher þei ne felt noon effecte in dremes
 Who so wil seche of sundry rewmes
 May reden of dremes mony a wonder þinge
 Loo Cresus which þat was of lyde þe kyng 4328

Mette he not þat he satte vpon a tre
 Which signified he shuld anhonged be
 Lo here Adromacha Ectors wiff
 That day þat Ector shuld lete his lif 4332
 She dremed on þe same nyȝt byforn
 How þat þe lif of Ector shuld be lorn
 ȝiff þilk day he went into bataile
 She warned hym but it myȝt not availe 4336
 He went forto fȝten napelees
 But he was slayn of Achilles
 But thilk tale is alto longe to telle
 And eke it is nyȝh day I may not dwelle 4340
 Shortly I say as for conclusiō
 That I shal haue of þis avisiō
 Of aduersitees *and* I say ferþermore
 That I ne wil telle of laxatifs no store 4344
 ffor þei bene venemous I wote riȝt wel
 I hem diffie I loue hem neuere a dele [leaf 263]
NO lat vs speke of merþe and stent al þis
 Madame pertilote so haue I blisse 4348
 Of oo þing god haþ sent me large grace
 ffor whan I se þe bewte of ȝoure face
 ȝe bene so scarlet rede aboute þe eyen
 It makeþ al my drede for to dyen 4352
 ffor also siker as in principio .
 Mulier est hominis confusio
 Madame þe sentence of þis latyn is
 Womman is mannys ioy and his blisse 4356
 ffor whan I fele on nyȝt ȝour soft side
 Al be it þat I may not on ȝou ride
 ffor þat oure perche is made so narowe alas
 I am so ful of Ioye and solas 4360
 þat I defie boþ sweuen and dreme
 And wiþ þat word I fleegh doune fro þe beme
 ffor it was day and eke his hennes alle
 And wiþ a chukke he gan hem forto calle 4364

GROUP B. § 14. NUN'S PRIEST'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

ffor he had founden a corn lay in þe 3erde
 Real he was no more afferd
 He flepered Pertelot xx^{ti} tyme
 And drad as oft er it were prime 4368
 He lokeþ as it were a grym lyoun
 And on his toes he roomed vp and down
 Hym deyned not to sette his fete on grounde
 Ay chokked he whan he had a corne found 4372
 And to hym þan ronne his wyues aȝ
 Thus Royal as a prince in his haȝ
 Leue I þis chauntelere in his pasture
 And aftere wil I telle of his auenture 4376
 Whan þe month þe which þe workȝ byganne
 That hizt marche whan god first made man
 Was Complete and passed were also
 Sipens Marche bygan .xxx^{ti} daies and twoo. 4380
 Byfelle þat chauntelere in his pride
 His seuen wyues welken hym byside
 Cast vp his eyen to þe brizt sonne
 That in þe signe of Taurus was ronne [leaf 263, back] 4384
 Twenty degrees and oon and somewhat more
 He knew by kynde and by noon oþer lore
 That it was prime he crewe wiþ blisful steuen
 The sonne he saide is clumben vp to heuen 4388
 xl. degres and oon and more ywis
 Madame Pertelote my worldes blisse
 Herken how þise blisful briddes singe
 And se þe fresshe floures how þei springe 4392
 fful is myn hert of Reuel and of solas
 But sodeynly hym felle a soriful caas
 ffor euer þe latter and of Ioie is sone ygoo
 And comonly ofte tyme it falleþ soo 4396
 And if arthour coude faire endite
 He in cronicle myght Sauely write
 As for a souereyn notabilite
 Nowe euery wise man herken me 4400

GROUP B. § 14. NUN'S PRIEST'S TALE. Petworth MS.

This story is as trewe I vndertake
 As is þe booke of launcelote de lake
 That women holde in ful gret reuerence
 Now wil I turne aȝein to my sentence 4404
 A Col foxe [ful] of sleiȝt and iniquite
 That in þe groue had wonned ȝeeres þre
 By high ymagynaciō to-fore cast
 þe same nyght þorgh-out þe hegges brast 4408
 Into þe ȝeerd þer chauntelere þe faire
 was wonte and eke his wyues to repaire
 And in a bedde of wortes stille he lay
 Till it was passed vndren of þe day 4412
 Waitynge his tyme on chaunteler to falle
 As gladly done þise homycydes alle
 That in a-waite ligge to murdre men
 O fals murdere rowkyng in þi den 4416
 O newe Scariot o . newe Genyloñ
 ffals dissimylour o greke Symon
 þat brouȝtest troye al vtterly to sorowe
 O chauntelere acursed be þat morowe 4420
 þat þou into [þi] ȝeerd flegħ from þe bemes
 Thow were ful wel ywarned by þi dremes [leaf 264]
 That ilke day was perilous to þe
 But þat . þat god a-fore wote most nedes be 4424
 Aftere þe opynyon of certeyn clerkes
 Wittnesse of hym þat eny clerk es
 That in scole [is] grete altercaciō
 In þis mater and grete disputaciō 4428
 And haþ bene of an C. thousand men /
 But I ne can[not] bult it to þe brenne
 As can þe holy doctour augustyne
 Or boys or þe Bisshop Bradwardyne 4432
 Whedere þat goddys wille a-fore wetyng
 Streyneth me nedely forto doon a þing
 Nedely clepe I symple necessite
 Or ellis ȝif þe free chois be graunted me 4436

GROUP B. § 14. NUN'S PRIEST'S TALE. Petworth MS.

To do þat same þing^t or do it nouȝt^t ·
 Thouȝe god forwote it^t er it^t was wrouȝt^t
 Er of his wetyng^t streyneþ neuer a dele
 But by necessite condicionele 4440
 I wil not^t haue to done of such matere
 My tale is of a cokke as ȝe shullen here
 That^t toke his counsaile of his wif with sorowe
 To walken in þe ȝeerde vpon þe morowe 4444
 That^t he had mette þe dreme þat^t I ȝou tolde
 Womm[an]es counsaile is ful ofte colde
 Womm[an]es counsaile brouȝt^t vs first^t to woo
 And made Adam from paradys to goo . 4448
 Ther he was ful mery an wel at ese
 But for I note whom I myȝt displese
 If I counsaile of wommen wold blame
 Passe ouere for I seide it^t in my game 4452
 Rede awters wher þei trete of such matere
 And what^t þei seyne of wommen here
 Thise bene þe cokkes wordes and not myne
 I can no harme of no womman devyne 4456
 ffaire in þe sonde to bathi hur merely
 lith pertelote and al hure susters bye
 Aȝeinst^t þe sonne and chauntelere so fre
 Songe meryer þan þe meermiden in þe See [leaf 264, back]
 ffor phisialogus saiþ witterly 4461
 How þat^t þei syngen wel and merely
 And so byfelle as he cast^t his ye
 Amonges þe wortes vppon a botterflie 4464
 He was war of this fox þat^t lay ful lowe
 No þinge ne lust^t hym þan for to crowe
 But^t cries anon cok^t cok^t and vp he sterte
 As a man þat^t was affraied in his herte 4468
 ffor naturelly a beest^t desireþ to flee
 ffro his contrarie if he may it See
 þouȝe he neuer had seye it^t erst with his ye
 This chauntelere whan he hym gan asprie 4472

GROUP B. § 14. NUN'S PRIEST'S TALE. Petworth MS.

He wold haue fledde but þat þe fox anoñ
 Saide gentile sir' allas what hast þou doñ
 Bene 3e affraied of me þat' am 3oure frende
 Certes sir' þan ben 3e vnhende 4476
 If I to 3ou wil harme or vilanye
 I am not' come 3our' counsaile to aspie
 But' trewly þe cause of my comynge
 was oonly to harken how þat' 3e singe 4480
 ffor trewly 3e han as mery a steuen
 As aungel hap þat' is in heuen
 Ther-with 3e han in musike more felinge
 þan had boys or eny þat' can synge 4484
 My lorde 3our' fadere god his saule blisse
 And eke 3oure modere and hur' gentilnesse
 Han in myn hous bene to 3ou grete ese
 And Certes sir' ri3t' fain wold' I 3ou plesse 4488
 But' for men speken of syngynge I wil seye
 So mot' I brouke myn eien tweye
 Sauf 3e I ne herd' neuer man so synge
 As did 3oure fader in þe mornynge 4492
 Certes it' was of hert' al þat' he songe
 And forto make his vois þe more stronge
 He wold so peyn hym þat wiþ both his yen
 He most' wynke so loude he did crien 4496
 And stonden on his typtoon þerwiþal
 And strecche forþ his nekt' longe *and* smaht [leaf 265]
 And eke he was of such discrecioñ
 That' þer nas no man in no regioñ 4500
 That' him in songe or wisdom my3t' passe
 I haue wel red daun Burnel þer as
 Amonge his vers þer was a cok'
 [That] ffor a preestes sone 3aue hym a knok' 4504
 Vpon his legge whiles he was 3onge *and* nyce
 He made hym forto lese his benefice
 But' certeyn þer nys noon comparisoñ
 Bytwix þe wisdom and discrecioñ 4508

GROUP B. § 14. NUN'S PRIEST'S TALE. Petworth MS.

Of ȝoure fadere and of his subtilite
 Now syngþ sir' for seint' charite
 Lat' see conne ȝe ȝoure fadere countrefete
 This Chauntelere his wenges gan to bete 4512
 As man þat' coude nat' his tresoñ aspie
 So was he rauessed wip his flaterye
 Allas ȝe lordes mony a fals flatour
 Is in ȝour court' and mony a losengour' 4516
 That' plesen ȝou more by my feiþ
 That' he þat' soþfastnesse vnto ȝo^u seiþ.
 Redeþ Ecclesiastre of flaterye
 Beþ ware ȝe lordes of her trecherye 4520
 This Chaunteclere stood high vpon his toos
 Strecchinge his nek and held his eien cloos
 And gan to crowe loude for þe nones
 And daun Russel stert' vp al at' ones 4524
 And by þe Gargaige hent' Chaunteclere
 And on his bak toward' the wood hym bere
 ffor ȝit' was ther no man hym swed
 O Destany þat' maist' not' bene eschewed' 4528
 Allas þat' chaunteclere fel fro þe bemes
 Allas his wif ne rouȝt' not' of dremes
 And on a friday felle all þis meschāunce
 O Venus þat' art' goddes of plesaunce 4532
 Sipens þat' þi seruauante was þis chaunteclere
 And in þi seruise did al his powere
 More for delit' þan þe world' to multiplie
 Whi woldest' þou suffre on þi day to dye [leaf 265, back]
 O Gaufrede dere maistere souereyn 4537
 þat' whan þe worþi kinge Richard' was sclayn
 Wip shot' compleyndest' his deþ so sore
 Whi ne had I nowe þi sentence and þi lore 4540
 þe ffriday forto chide as did ȝe
 ffor on a friday shortely sclayne was he
 þan wolde I shewe howe þat' I coude playne
 ffor chaunteclere and for his peyne 4544

GROUP B. § 14. NUN'S PRIEST'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

Certus such crye ne lamentaciō
 was of ladies made whan þat Ilyon
 Was wonne. and pirrus with his streiȝt swerd
 Whan he hent king Priā by þe beerd 4548
 And selayn hym as seide Enneidos
 As maden all þe hennes in þe cloos
 Whan þei had seie of chaunteclere þe siȝt
 But souereyn dame pertelote shriȝt 4552
 wel lodder þan did Hasdrubaldes wif
 whan þat her husbonde had lost his lif
 And þat þe romaynes had brent Cartage
 She was so ful of torment and of Rage 4556
 That wilfully into þe fire she stert
 And brent her self wiȝ a stedfast hert
 O wooful hennys riȝt so criden ȝe
 As whan þat Nero brent þe Cite 4560
 Of Rome criden þe Cenatours wyues
 ffor þat her husbondes shulden lese her lyues
 wiȝ-uten Gilt [þis] Nero haȝ hem selayn
 Now wil I turne to my tale aȝein 4564
 This sely widowe and hure douȝters two
 Herden þe hennys crien and make woo
 And out atte door sterten þei anoon
 And seȝh þe fox toward þe groue goon 4568
 And bare on his bak þe Cok away
 They criden out and harawe and welaway
 A ha þe fox and after hym þei ran
 And eke wiȝ stauēs mony an oȝer man 4572
 Ran Coȝ our dogge. talbot and Garlonde
 And Malkyn wiȝ her dystaf in hure honde [leaf 266]
 Ran cove and calf and eke the verrey hogges
 Sore afferȝ for berking of dogges 4576
 And shetinge of men and wommen eke
 þei ronne so þeire hertes þei pouȝt to breke
 þei ȝelden as feendes doȝn in helle
 The dogges criden as men wold hem quelle 4580

Out' of the hyues come þe swarme of bees
 The gees for fere flowen in þe trees
 So hidous was the noise .O benedicite
 Certes he Iak' strawe and his mayne 4584
 Ne made neuer showtes half so shrille
 whan þat' þei wolde eny flemmyng kille
 As þat' ilk' day was made vpon þe fox
 Of bras þei brouzt' bemes and of box 4588
 Of horn and boon in which þei pouped
 And þerwipal þei schrited and showted .
 It semed as þat' heuene shulde falle
 Now good I prey 3ou harkenþ alle 4592
 Lo how fortune turneþ sodeynly
 The hope and eke pride of her envie
 This cok/ þat' lay vppon the fox bak'
 In al his drede vnto þe fox spak' 4596
 And saide Sire if I were as 3e
 3it' shuld I say as wis god helpe me
 Turne a3eine 3e proude cherles alle
 A verrey pestilence vppon 3ou falle 4600
 Nowe am I come vnto þis wodys side
 Maugre 3oure hede þe cok shal here abide
 I wol hym ete in feiþ and þat' anoñ
 The fox answerde in faip it' shal be doñ 4604
 And [as] he spak' þat worde al sodeynly
 This Cok' brak from his mouþ delyuerly
 And high vppon a tree he flegñ anoñ
 And whan þe fox segñ þat' he was goñ 4608
 Allas quod he O chauntelere allas
 I haue quod he done to 3ou trespas
 In as moch as I made 3ou aferd'
 Whan I 3ou hent' and brouzt' out' of þe 3erde [leaf 266, back]
 But' sire I did it' not' in no wicked entent' 4613
 Commeþ doune and I shal telle 3ou what' I ment'
 I shal saie soþ god helpe me soo
 Nay þan quod he I schrewe vs boþ twoo 4616

GROUP B. § 14. NUN'S PRIEST'S TALE. **Petworth MS.**

And first I schrewe my self boþ blood and bones
 3if þou bigile me ofter þan ones
 Thow shalt no more wiþ þi flaterie
 Do me swynk' and wink' wiþ myn ye 4620
 ffor he þat' wynket' whan he shuld see
 As wisly god lat' hym neuer þee
 Nay quod þe fox god 3eue hym meschaunce
 That' is so vndiscrete of gouernaunce 4624
 That' Iangelep' whan he shuld haue pees
 Loo such is forto be rechelees
 And necligent' and trustep' on flaterie
 But' 3e þat' holden þis folý 4628
 As of a Cok' of a fox and of an henne
 Takeþ þe Moralite good men
 ffor seint' poule seiþ al þat' writen is
 To our doctrine it' is writen ywis / 4632
 Takeþ þe fruyte and lat' þe chaf be stille
 Nowe good god if it' be þi wille
 As seiþ my lorde so make vs all good men
 And bringe vs al to his blisse Amen. 4636

Thus endep þe preestes tale

GROUP H. FRAGMENT IX.

§ 1. THE MANCIPLE'S HEAD-LINK.

PETWORTH MS.

And þus [on leaf 236, back]

bygynnes þe manciples tale .

WEte ȝe not^t where stont^t a litel toun **¶ The prologe/**
Which þat^t is cleped bob vp and doune
Vnder þe blee in Caunterbery waye
Ther gan our hooste to Iape and playe 4
And saide Sirres donne is in þe myre
Is þer no man for preiere ne for hyre
That^t wil awake our felawe behinde
A theef myȝt^t hym robbe and bynde 8
Se howe he napped^þ for goddys bones .
Awaite he wil falle from his hors at^t ones
This is a coke of london wiþ meschaunce
Do hym come forþ he knoweþ his penaunce [leaf 267] 12
ffor he shal telle a tale be my fay
Al þouȝe it^t be nat^t worth a botel of hay
Awake þou coke god ȝeue þe Sorowe
What^t aileþ þe to slepe so by þe morowe 16
Hast^t þou had fleen to nyȝt^t or þou art^t dronke
Or hast^t þou al nyȝt^t wiþ som quene yswonke
So þat^t þou maist^t not^t holde vp þine hede
This Coke þat^t was [ful] pale and no þing^t rede 20
Saide to oure hooste so god me blesse
As þer is holden on me such^h heuynesse
That I not^t wheder me were leuer sclepe
Than þe best^t Galon wyne in chepe 24

wel quod þe manciple it wil done ese 25
 To þe Sir' Coke and to no wizt mysplese
 whiche þat riden in þis company
 þat soo our hoost wil of his curtesy 28
 I wil as nowe excuse þe of þi tale
 ffor in good fay þi visage is rizt pale
 þine eyen dasen as me þenkeþ
 And wel I woot þi breth̃ sore stynkeþ 32
 That sheweþ þou nart not wel disposed.
 Of me certaine þou shalt not bene glosed.
 See howe he goleth þis dronken wizt
 As þowe he wolde swoune anoñ rizt 36
 Hold cloos þi mouþe man by þi fader kyn
 The deuel of helle sette his foote þerIn.
 Thy cursed breeth̃ wil affecte vs alle
 ffly stynkinge hogge foule mot þe byfalle 40
 Now takeþ hede sirs of þis lusty man
 Now swete sir wil ye Iust at þe fan
 Therto me þenkeþ 3e be wel yshape
 ¶ I trowe 3e han dronken wyne grape 44
 And þat is whan men pley with a strawe
 And wiþ þis speche þe coke wex al wrawe
 [And on the Maunciple . gan to nodde fast' [MS Reg. 17 D 15,
leaf 28b] 48
 ffor lak' of speche . and downe the hors hym cast'
 Where as he lay til that men hym vptoke
 This was a faire cheuache . of a cooke
 Allas that he nad . hold hym bi his ladiH
 And or that he ageyn . were in his sadiH] 52
 Ther was grete schovuyng' to and froo
 To lift hym up and mykel care and woo
 So vnweldy was þis appalled goost'
 And to þe manciple þan speke our hoost' [leaf 267, back] 56
 By cause drink' hap Dominacioñ
 Vppon þis man by my sauacioñ
 I trowe he wolde lewdely telle his tale
 ffor, were it wyne or ellis moyst ale 60

That he haþ dronken he spekeþ in his nose 61
 And galpeþ fast and eke he haþ þe pose
 He haþ also to doo more þan ynogh
 To kepe hym and his capel out of þ^e sclouȝgh 64
 And if he falle fro his capel eft sone
 Than shal we alle haue ynogh to done
 In liftinge vp of his heuy corps
 Telle on þi tale of hym make I no force 68
 But nowe Maunciple in feiþ þou art to nyce
 Thus openly to repreue hym of his vice
 Anoþer day he wil peraventure
 Recleyme þe and bringe þe to lure 72
 I mene he speke wold of smale þingges
 As forto pynchen at þi rekenyngges
 That were not honest ȝif it come to preef
 Nowe quod the maunciple þat were a gret mescheef 76
 So myȝt he bringe me in þe snare
 ȝit had I leuer paien for þe mare
 Which he rit vpon þan he shuld with me strive
 I wil not wrep hym as mot I þriue 80
 what þat I spak I saide it in my bourde
 And wote ȝe what I haue here in a gourde
 A drauȝt of wyne ȝe of a ripe grape
 And riȝt anoon ȝe shul se a good Iape 84
 This Coke shal drynk þerof ȝif þat I may
 Vp peyne of deþ he wil nat say me nay
 And certeynly to tellen as it was
 Of þis vessel þe Coke dronk fast alas 88
 What nedep hit he dronk ynouȝe to-forn
 And whan he had poped in his horn
 To þe Manciple he toke þe gourde ageyn
 And of þat drinke þe Coke was wonder feyn 92
 And þonked hym in such wise as he coude
 Than gan oure hoost to laughen wondere loude [leaf 268]
 And saide I see wel it is necessarie
 Where þat we goon good drink wip vs to carie 96

GROUP H. § 1. MANCIPLE'S HEAD-LINK. **Petworth MS.**

ffor þat' wil turne rancour and dissesse 97

To pees and loue and mony a wronge to sese

O Bachus blessed be þi name

That' so can turne earnest' into game 100

Worship and þonk' be vnto þe

ffor of þis matere 3e gete no more of me

Telle on þou manciple I þe pray

Wel sir' quod he now herkenep what' I say 104

¶ Thus endep þe prologe of þe Manciple

¶ The Tale .:|.

And here bygynneþ þe manciple his tale [on leaf 268]

WHan Phebus dwelt' here in þis erþe adoun 105
 As olde bokes maken mencionn
 He was þe most' lusty bachilere
 Of al þis world and eke þe best' archere 108
 He sclough Phiton þe serpent' as he lay
 Scleping' azeinst' þe sonne vpon a day
 And mony a noþer worþi noble dede
 He wiþ his bowe wrouzt' as men may rede 112
 Pleien he coude on euery mynstralcie
 And syngen þat' it' was a melodye
 To harken of his cleere voys þe soun
 Certes þe kyng of Thebes Amphioun 116
 That' wiþ hys syngging' walled þat' cite
 Coude neuere synge half so wel as he
 Therto he was þe semeliest' man
 That' is or was siþ þe world' bygan. 120
 What' nedep' it' is fetures to discriue
 ffor in þis world' was noon so faire alyue
 He was þer-with fulfilled of gentilnesse
 Of honure and of parfit' worþinesse 124
 This Phebus þat' was flour' of bachelerie
 As wel in fredom as in Chiualrie
 ffor disport' and in signe eke of victorie
 Of Pheton so as telleþ vs þe storie 128
 was wont' to beren in his honde a bowe
 Now haþ þis Phebus in his hows a crowe [leaf 268]
 Which in a Cage he fostred mony a day
 And tauzt' it' to speke as men doon a Iaye 132

White was þis crowe as is a white swan	133
And countrefeted þe speche of euery man	
He cowde whan he shuld telle a tale	
Ther-wiþ in al þis londe þer nys no nyȝtyngale	136
That cowde by an hundred thousan dele	
Synge so mery and eke so wel	
Now had þis phebus in his hous a wif	
Which þat he loued more þan his owne lif	140
And nyght and day did euer diligence	
Her for to plese and done reuerence	
Sauf oonly ȝif I þe soþ shal sayn	
Ialous he was and wold haue kept hure fayn	144
ffor hym were loþe Iaped forto be	
And so euery man wold in such degre	
But al for nauȝt for it availeþ noȝt	
A good wif þat is clene of werk and þoȝt	148
Shuld not be kepte in noon awaite certeyn	
And trewly þe labour is in veyn	
To kepe a schrewe for it wil not be	
This hold I for a verrey nycete	152
To spille labour forto kepe wyues	
Thus writen olde clerkes in her lyues	
But nowe to purpos as I first bygan	
This worþi phebus dooþ al þat he can/	156
To plesen hure wenyng by such plesaunce	
And for his manhode and his gouernaunce	
That no man shuld haue put hym from hir grace	
But god it wote þer may no man embrace	160
As to destroie a þinge which þat nature	
Hap naturelly sette in a creature	
Take eny bridde and put it in a cage	
And doo al þine entent and þi corage	164
To fostere it tenderly wiþ mete and drink	
Of alle deyntise þat þou canst by-þenk	
And kepe it also clenly as he may	
Al þouȝe his Cage of gold be neuer so gay	[leaf 269] 168

3it' hap þis brid by twenty þousand fold' 169
 Leuer in a forest' þat' is wilde and cold'
 Goon ete wormes and suche wrecchednesse
 ffor euer þis bridde wol doon his bysynes 172
 To escape out' of his cage if he may
 His liberte þe bridde desireþ ay
 Lat' take a cat' and fostre hym wel with mylk'
 And tendere flesshe and make his couche of silk' 176
 And lat' hym seen a mous goo by þe waþ
 And anoon he wayueth mylk' flessch and aþ
 And euery deynte þat' is in þe hous
 Suche appetit' hap he to ete a mous 180
 Lo here hap lust' his domynaciōn
 And appetit' flemeth discreciōn
 As þe wolf hap also a vileyns kynde
 The lewdest' wolf þat' she may fynde 184
 Or leest' of reputaciōn þat' wil she take
 In tyme whan hur lust' to haue a make
 Alle þise ensamples speke I. by þise men
 That' bene vntrewe and no þing' by wommen 188
 ffor men han euer a likerous appetit'
 On lower þing' to performe her delite
 Than on her wyues bene þei neuere so faire
 Ne neuere so trewe ne so debonaire 192
 fflesshe is so newefongel wiþ meschaunce
 That' we ne konne no þinge han plesaunce
 That' sowneth in vertue eny while
 This Phebus which þat' þouzt' vpon no gile 196
 Deceyued was for al his Iolite
 ffor vnder hym anoper had she
 A man of litel reputaciōn
 Not' worþ to phebus in comparisiōn 200
 The more harme is it' happeth oft' soo
 Of whoch þer commeth mochel harme and woo
 And so byfelle whan phebus was absent'
 His wif anoon hap for her lemman sent' 204

Here lemman certes þis is a knauysstȝ speche	205
fforȝeueþ it me and þat I ȝou biseche	[leaf 269, back]
The wise Plato seiþ as ȝe may ¹ rede	[¹ first here rede]
þe Word ^t mot ^t nedes accorde wiþ þe dede	208
ȝif men shal telle proprely a þinge	
The worde mot ^t Cosyn be to þe workinge	
I am a boistous man riȝt þus say I	
Ther nys no difference trewly	212
Bitwix a wif þat is of hie degre	
ȝif of her body dishonest ^t she be	
And a poor wenche oþer þan þis	
ȝif it ^t so be þei wirk boþ amys	216
But þat þe gentile is in state aboue	
She shal be cleped his lady as in loue	
And for þat oþer is a poor womman	
She shal be cleped his wench and his lemman .	220
And god it woote myn owne der broþer	
Men sayn þat oon liȝh as lowe as doþ þat oþer	
Riȝt so bitwix a titles tyraunt ^t	
And an houlaw ² and a þeef erraunt ^t	[² or honlaw] 224
The same I say þer nys no difference	
To Alisaunder was tolde þat sentence	
That for þe tyraunt ^t is of gretere myȝt ^t	
By force of mayne for sclen down riȝt ^t	228
And brennen hous and home and make al playn	
Lo þerfore is cleped a Capitayn	
And for þe outlaw haþ but smal mayne	
And may not doon so grete an harme as he	232
Ne bringe a contre to so grete meschief ^t	
Men clepen hym an outlay or a þeef ^t	
But for I am a man not text wel	
I wil not telle of Titus neuer a dele	236
I wil go to my tale as I byganne	
Whan phebus [wif] had sent for her lemman	
Anoon þei wrouȝten al her lust volage	
This white crowe þat henge ay in þe cage	240

Bihelde her werk^t and saide neuer a word^t 241
 And whan þat^t home was come Phebus þe lord^t
 þis crowe songe Cokkow . cokkow . Cukkowe
 What^t brid quod phebus what^t songe singest^t thowe [leaf 270]
 Ne were þou wonte so merely to synge
 That^t to myn hert^t it^t was a reioysinge
 To here þi vois allas what^t songe is þis
 By god quod he I synge nat^t a mys, 248
 Phebus quod he for al þi worþinesse
 ffor al þi bewte and þi gentilnesse
 ffor al þi songe and al þi mynstralceye
 ffor al þi waytinge blered is þine ye 252
 Wiþ oon of litel reputaciōn
 Nouȝt^t worþ to þe as in comparisoñ
 The mountaunce of a gnatte so mote I thryue
 ffor on þi bed þi wiff^t I segħ hym swyve 256
 What^t wil ȝe more þe cawe anoon hym tolde
 By sad tokens and by wordes bolde
 How þat^t his wif^t had doon her leccherie
 Hym to grete shame and to gret^t vilenye 260
 And tolde hym oft^t he segħ it^t wiþ his eyen
 This Phebus gan awaiward^t forto wryen ./
 Hym þouȝt^t his sorowful hert^t brast^t atwoo
 His bowe he bent^t and sette þer-Inne a floe 264
 And in his Ire hap^t he his wif^t slayñ
 This is þeffecte þer nys no more to sayñ
 ffor sorowe of which^t he brak^t his mynstralcie
 Boþ harpe and lute . giterñ . and sawtrie 268
 And eke he brak^t his harowes *and* his bowe
 And after þat^t þus speke he to þe crowe
 Traitour quod he wiþ tunge of scorpion
 Thou hast/ me brouȝt^t to my *confusioñ* 272
 Allas þat^t I was wrouȝt^t why ner I dede
 O dere wiff o. gemme of lustihede
 þat^t were to me so sad and eke so trewe
 Now liest^t þou dede wiþ face pale of hwe 276

fful giltles þat durst I swere ywis	277
O Rakel hounde to doon so foule amys	
O trouble witte .o. yre rechelees	
That vnavised smytest giltlees	280
O wan-trest ful of fals suspeciōn	
Wher was þi witt and þi discreciōn	[leaf 270, back]
O euery man be war of rechelesnesse	
Ne trow no þinge wiþ-out strong witnesse	284
Smyte not to sone er þow wit why	
And be avised wel and soberly	
Er 3e doon eny executiōn	
Vppon 3oure Ire for suspeciōn	288
Allas an Mt. folk han rakel yre	
ffully fordoon or brouzt hem in þe myre	
Allas for sorowe I wil my self sele	
And to þe Crowe o fals þeef saide he	292
I wil þe qwrite anoon þi fals tale	
Thow songe whilom like a nyztynge	
Now shalt þou fals þeef þi songe forgone	
Eke þi white fetheres euerechone	296
Ne neuer in al þi lif shalt þou speke	
Thus shal men on a traitour ben ywreke	
Thowe and þine ospringe euer shul be blake	
Ne neuer swete noys shul 3e make	300
But euer crie azeinst tempest and reyne	
In tokenynge þat þorgh þe my wif is seleyn	
And to þe crowe he stert and þat anone	
And pulled his white feþeres euerechone	304
And made hym blak and raft hym al his songe	
And eke his speche and out atte dore hym sclonge	
Vnto þe deuel to whoom I hym bitake	
And for þis caus bene al[le] crows blake	308
Lordyngges by þis ensample I 3ou preie	
¶ Beþ war and takeþ kepe what þat 3e seie	
Ne telleþ neuer no man 3oure lifft	
How þat anoper man hap dizt þi wiff	312

He wil þou hate mortelly certayn	313
Dann salomon as wise clerkes sayn	
Techep a man to kepe his tunge wel	
But as I seide I am not text wel	316
But napelees þus tauzt me my dame	
My sone þenk on þe crowe a goddys name	
My sone kepe wel þi tunge and kepe þi frende	
A wicked tunge is wors þan a feende	[leaf 271] 320
My sone from a feende men may hem blisse	
My sone god of hise endelees goodnesse	
Walled a tunge wiþ teeþ and lippes eke	
ffor man shuld hym avise what he speke	324
My sone ful oft for to mochel speche	
Hap mony a man be spilt as clerkes teche	
But for litel speche avisely	
Is no man shent to speke generally	328
My sone þi tunge shuldest þou restreyñ	
Att al tyme but whan þou dost þi peyn	
To speke of god in honure and preiere	
The furst vertue sone 3if þou wilt lere	332
Is to restreyne and kepe wel þi tonge	
Thus lernen children whan þei bene 3onge	
My sone of moche speking euel avised	
Ther lasse speking had ynow suffised	336
Comeþ moche harme þus was me told and tauzt	
In mochel speche synne wantep nauzt	
Woost þou wherof a Rakel tunge serueþ	
Rizt as a swerd forkutteþ and for-kerneth	340
An arme a twoo my dere sone rizt soo	
A tonge kitteþ frendship al a twoo	
A Iangelere is to god abhomynable	
Rede Salomon so wise and honorable	344
Rede Daudid and his Psalmes. rede Senek'	
My sone speke not but with þi hede þou bekt	
Dissimule as þou were deaf if þat þou here	
A Iangelere speke of parilous matere	348

þe ffilemyng ^t seiþ and lerne it ^t 3if þe list	349
That ^t litel Iangelinge causeþ mochl ryst	
My sone 3if þou no wikked word hast ^t seide	
The ther not ^t drede forto be bywreiede	352
But ^t he þat ^t haþ myssaide I dar wel sayn	
He may by no way clepe his word ^t agayn	
þing ^t þat ^t is saide. is saide <i>and</i> forþ it ^t goþ	
þou3e hym repent ^t or be he neuer so looþ	356
He is his þral to whom þat ^t he haþ saide	
A taile of which he is now euel a-payde	[leaf 271, back]
My sone be war and be not ^t autour newe	
Of tydingges whedere þei be fals or trewe	360
Where so þou come amonges hie or lowe	
Kepe wel þi tunge and þenk ^t vpon þe crowe	362
¶ þus endeþ þe prologe of þe manciple.	

GROUP I. FRAGMENT X.

§ 1. THE BLANK-PARSON LINK.

[*This is really a link between some unwritten Tale and the Parson's. It has been made into the Manciple-Parson Link (or Yeoman-Parson by the Christ-Church MS) by Chaucer's copiers, though not meant for it.*]

PETWORTH MS.

And here bygynneþ þe prologe of þe persone [on lf 271, bk]

BY þat' þe manciple had his tale ended 1
þe sonne fro þe south is descended.
So lowe þat' he was nauȝt' to my sizt'
Degrees *nyne and twenti*¹ as of hight' [1 MS xxix] 4
Ten of þe klok it' was so as I gesse
ffor xj foote or litel more or lesse
My shadowe was at' þilke tyme as þer
Of suche fete as my lengthe parted were 8
In sex foote equal of proporcioñ
þer-wiþ þe moones exaltacioñ
I mene libra alway gan ascende
As we were entringe at' a throppes ende 12
ffor wiþ our hoost' as he was wont' to gye
As in þis caas our Ioly companye
Saide in þis wise lordyngs euerechoñ
Now lakkeþ vs no tale more þat' oon 16
ffulfilled is my sentence *and* my degre
Who wil nowe telle a tale lat' see
Almost' fulfilled is myn ordynance
I prei to god so ȝeue hym riȝt' good chaunce 20
That' telleþ þis tale to vs lustely
Sir' preest' quod he art' þou a vikarie
Or art' thou a persone sei þe soþ by þi feye
Be what' þou be ne breke nat' our pleye 24

ffor euery man sauþ þou haþ told his tale	25
Vnboele and schewe what is in þi male	
ffor trewly me þenkeþ by þi chere	
Thow shuldest knet vp wel a grete matere	28
Telle vs a fable anoon for Cokkes bonys	
This person answerd al at onys	
þow getest fable noon ytold for me	
ffor Poule þat writeþ vnto Timothe	[leaf 272] 32
Repreuen hem þat waiven soþfastnesse	
And tellen fables and such wrechednesse	
Whi shuld I shewen draf out of my fest	
Whan I may shewe whete if þat me lest	36
ffor which I say if þat þe lust to here	
Moralite and vertuous matere	
And þan þat 3e wil 3eue me audience	
I wil ful fayne at cristes reuerence	40
Doon 3ou plesaunce leeful as I can	
But trusteþ wel I am a soþeren man	
I can not gest. rum ram. ruf by letter	
Ne god woote Ryme hold I but lite better	44
And þerfore if 3ou lust I nyl nat glose	
I wil 3ou telle a mery tale in prose	
To knytte vp al þis feest and make an ende	
And Ihesu for his grace wit me sende	48
To schew 3ou þe way in þis viage	
Of pilk parfite glorious pilgrimage	
That hight Ierusalem celestiaH	
And if 3e vouchesauf anoñ 3e shaH	52
Bygynne vpon my tale for which I prey	
Telle 3our avis I can no better seye	
But napelees þis meditaciō	
I putt aye vnder correccion	56
Of clerkes for I am not textweH	
I take but þe sentence trusteþ weH	
Therefore I make protestaciō	
That I wil stonde to correcciō	60

GROUP I. § 1. BLANK-PARSON LINK. **Petworth MS.**

Vpon þis woord we han assented sone 61
 ffor as it semed it was forto done
 To enden in som vertuouous sentence
 And forto 3eue hym space *and* audience 64
 And bad our hoost he shulde to hym seie
 þat alle we to telle his taile hym preye
 Our hoost had þe wordes for vs alle
 Sir preest quod he now faire mot 3ou byfalle 68
 Say what 3ou lust and we shullen gladly here
 And wiþ þat word he saide in þis manere [leaf 272, back]
 Telleþ quod he 3oure meditacioun
 But hastep 3ou þe sonne wil a-down 72
 Beep fructuous and þat in litel space
 And to do wel god sende 3ou his grace. 74
¶ Thus endeþ þe prologe of þe persons tale

THE PARSON'S TALE.

A TREATISE ON PENITENCE, IN 3 PARTS :

- Part I. On **Penitence**, and its 1st requisite **Contrition** (A) (p. 593—612).
 Part II. On its 2nd requisite, **Confession** (B) (p. 612—679).
 Part III. On its 3rd requisite, **Satisfaction** (C) (p. 679—684), with the Writer's Leave-taking and Retractations (p. 684-85).

PART I. (p. 593—612).

ON PENITENCE, AND ITS 1ST REQUISITE, CONTRITION.

Proem on Jeremiah vi. 16. The Tale is to be on *Penitence* as a full noble way to lead folk to Christ, and is to treat of

- i. 'what is Penitence' (p. 594).
- ii. 'whennes it is cleped Penitence'. [*not in the Tale.*]
- iii. 'in how many maneres been the acciouns or werkynge of Penitence' (p. 594-5).
- iv. 'how many speces ther been of Penitence' (p. 595).
- v. 'whiche thynges apertenen and bihouen to Penitence' (p. 595—682; nearly all Parts I and III, and all Part II).
- vi. 'whiche thynges destourben Penitence' (at end of Part III, p. 682) (p. 593).
- i. **Penitence** defined, by *a.* St Ambrose; *b.* 'som doctour'; *c.* the writer. Its requisites: 1. bewailing of sins; 2. purpose to have shrift, to do satisfaction, never to sin again, to continue in good works (p. 594).

[*ii. not given.*]

- iii. The 3 actions of Penitence: 1. Baptism after sin; 2. not to do deadly sin after baptism; 3. not thus to do venial sin (p. 594-95).
- iv. The 3 speces or kinds of Penitence: 1. Solemn (to be put out of church, or do open penance); 2. Common (to go naked on pilgrimage); 3. Private (p. 595).

v. The 3 necessities or requisites for Penitence (p. 596—682):

- A. **Contrition** of heart (p. 596—612).
- B. **Confession** of mouth (Part II, p. 612—679).
- C. **Satisfaction** (Part III, p. 679—682).

Penitence avails against 3 things, by which we wrath Christ (p. 595).

- A. **Contrition** is the root of Penitence, whose stem bears branches and leaves of Confession, and fruit of Satisfaction.

Contrition also bears a seed of grace, whose heat draws men to God. (Simile of the child and his nurse's milk.)

Penance is the tree of life (p. 596).

Four Points to be known about Contrition:

1. What it is; 2. the causes that move a man to it; 3. how to be contrite; 4. what it avails the soul (p. 597).

2. The 6 Causes that should move a man to Contrition:

- a.* Remembrance of Sins (p. 597-8).
- b.* Whoso does sin is the Thrall of Sin (p. 598-99).
- c.* Dread of the Day of Doom and the Pains of Hell (p. 599—604). These described: the Doom (p. 599-600); Job's 'lond of myse and of derknesse' (p. 600-1); the 3 shames in hell against (1) 'Honours, (2) delices, and (3) riches' (p. 611); poverty in 4 things: no treasure, food, clothing, or friends (p. 602); and no delights of the 5 senses. The pain shall be eternal (p. 603). Hell is orderless (p. 603-4). The 7 causes why the damnd have lost all hope (p. 604).

d. Remembrance of the good works we've left undone, and the loss of the good works done while we were in sin (p. 604-6).

Deadly sin wipes out all good works formerly done (p. 605); and no good works can be done in deadly sin (p. 605-6). The new French song, *J'ai tout perdu mon temps* (also quoted in Chaucer's late poem of *Fortune*).

- e. Remembrance of Christ's suffering for our sins (p. 606). In man's sin, every ordinance is turnd up-so-down (p. 607). For this disorder Christ sufferd (p. 608).
- f. The hope of 3 things: 1. Forgiveness of Sins, 2. the Gift of Grace to do well, 3. the Glory of Heaven (p. 609).
- 3. How to be contrite. Contrition must be universal and total: for sins of thought, for desires against God's law, for wicked words as well as wicked deeds (p. 610). Contrition must be angwishous and continual (p. 609-11).
- 4. How Contrition helps the soul. It sometimes delivers a man from sin; destroys the prison of hell; cleanses the soul; changes the son of Wrath to the son of Grace (p. 611-12).

PART II (*no. v. continued*).B. CONFESSION (THE 2ND REQUISITE FOR PENITENCE)
(p. 612—679).

- B. Confession. § 1. (l. 317) 'what is confession' (p. 612).
- § 2. 'wheither it oghte nedes be doon or noon' (p. 672-9).
- § 3. 'whiche thynges been couenable to verry Confession' (p. 674-79).

CONFESSION, § 1.

- 1. 'Confession is verry shewyng of synnes to the preest' (l. 318) (p. 612). We must understand too
 - a. (l. 321) 'whennes that synnes spryngen' (p. 612—15).
 - b. 'how they encreessen' (p. 615-16; 672-74).
 - c. 'whiche they been' (p. 616—672).
- 1.a. Sin sprang from the fall of Adam (p. 612). The legend of Adam and Eve told (p. 613). From Adam we took Original Sin, and were born sons of eternal damnation; but Baptism rescues us; though we keep liability to temptation, or Concupiscence (p. 613-14).
- Concupiscence, or the nourishing and occasion of sin. St Paul and St Jerome's temptations (p. 614-15).
- 1.b. How Sin grows in a man. 1. by Concupiscence; 2. Subjection to the Devil; 3. Hesitation; 4. Doing, the Sin becoming Actual (p. 615-16).
- 1.c. Sin is *a.* venial, *β.* deadly (or mortal).
 - a. 1. Venial Sin defined. It skips into Deadly Sin. (Simile of the drops of water into a vessel's hold drowning the ship;) (p. 616).
 - β. 1. Deadly Sin defined (p. 617).
 - a. 2. Of divers small venial sins, hardly thought sins (p. 617-18); eating, drinking, talking, too much; using your wife too much; not visiting the sick (p. 617); talking vanities at church, &c. (p. 618). Cure of venial sins by love to Christ, prayer, confession, good works, receiving the Sacrament, holy-water, &c. (p. 618).
- 1.c. β. 2. *The Seven Deadly Sins.* The Chieftains, head and spring, of all other Sins (p. 619).
 - i. Pride (p. 619-26), and its Remedy (p. 626-8).
 - ii. Envy (p. 628-30), and its Remedy (p. 630-1).
 - iii. Ire or Anger (p. 631-42), and its Remedy (p. 642-5).
 - iv. Accidie or Sloth (Discontent, Emui) (p. 645-49), and its Remedy (p. 650-1).
 - v. Avarice or Covetousness (p. 651-7), and its Remedy (p. 657-8).
 - vi. Gluttony (p. 658-9), and its Remedy (p. 660).
 - vii. Lechery (p. 660-8), and its Remedy (p. 668-72).
- i. PRIDE (p. 619—626). Its 16 (and more) Twigs. 1. Disobedience, 2. Boasting, 3. Hypocrisy, 4. Despite, 5. Arrogance (p. 619), 6. Impudence, 7. Swelling of Heart (rejoicing in harm done), 8. Insolence, 9. Elation, 10. Impatience, 11. Contumacy, 12.
(FOR PETWORTH 607 a)

Presumption, 13. Irreverence, 14. Pertinacity, 15. Vain-glory, 16. Jangling (chattering).

A private kind of pride (the Host's Wife's and Wife of Bath's¹), wanting to go to offering first, &c. (p. 620).

Two kinds of Pride, *a.* 'within man's heart', *b.* without; *b.* being the sign of *a.*, 'as the gaye leefsel atte Taverne is sign of the wyn that is in the Celer'² (p. 620-21), *b.* outside pride.

a. in dear clothing, 1. superfluity of it: its cost, furring, chisel-holes, dragging in the dung, waste of material (p. 621), unfitness for giving to the poor: 2. scantness of it: showing men's privy members, and buttocks (like a she-ape's rump), and the former as half-flayed, in parti-coloured hose³. The 'outrageous array of Women' (p. 623).

β. in horses (p. 623), and vicious grooms to tend 'em; plate-harness, &c.

γ. in household: keeping too many retainers or servants, who oppress the poor (p. 624).

δ. in table: not asking the poor to feasts; having burning and ornamented dishes⁴; too costly cups, &c., and too choice minstrels (p. 624).

What Pride sins are deadly, and what venial (p. 624).

The Sources of Pride (p. 624): goods of Nature, Fortune, Grace (p. 624). The Folly of Pride in any of these goods of Nature: 'we ben alle of o fader and of o mooder, and . . . of o nature'⁵.

The general signs of *Gentleness*. (The flies call'd 'bees', and their stingless king) (p. 625); 3 gifts of Grace; 3 of Fortune. The brittleness of popular praise⁶ (p. 626).

The Remedy against Pride.

Humility or Meekness, and its 3 kinds: in 1. heart, 2. mouth, 3. works. 4 kinds of each of these (p. 626-27).

ii. ENVY (p. 627-30): defined by the Philosopher and St Augustine.

It springs from Malice (p. 627).

Malice; 2 kinds of: 1. hardness of heart, or recklessness; 2. opposing truth (p. 627).

The 2 kinds of Envy (p. 628): 1. sorrow at other men's prosperity; 2. joy at other men's harm: whence comes

Backbiting; 5 kinds (p. 628): 1. praise with a *but* at the end; 2. turning well-meant things upside down to ill ones; 3. lessening a neighbour's goodness; 4. putting one man above another; 5. glad listening to scandal (p. 628).

Grudging or murmuring (p. 628): 1. against God (p. 629); 2. Murmuring from avarice, 3. from pride, 4. from envy; 5. among Servants, who say 'the Devil's *Paternoster*'. 6. Murmuring from ire or hate: thence, *a.* Bitterness of Heart, *b.* Discord, *c.* Scorning; *d.* Accusing (p. 629); *e.* Malignity (p. 630).

The Remedy against Envy (p. 630-31).

Love of God and one's neighbour. How a man shall love his neighbour. How an enemy is included in the name 'neighbour' (p. 630). 3 Remedies of Love, against 3 deeds of Hate (p. 631). Love is the medicine that casts out the venom of Envy from man's heart (p. 631).

iii. IRE OR ANGER (p. 631-42), and its 2 kinds: *a.* good Ire or Wrath (p. 632); *b.* wicked Ire, and its 2 kinds: sudden ire, and ire of malice aforethought (p. 632-33).

Three Shrews that forge in the Devil's furnace: Pride, Envy, and Contumely (p. 633).

¹ Melibe-Monk Link, B. § 11; and General Prologue, A.

² Chaucer's father no doubt had a sign outside his wine-shop or tavern in Thames Street, London.

³ The outspoken and somewhat coarse abuse of the new fashions in dress is a great change from Chaucer's admirable Third-Period chaff of the moral short-comings of the monks and friars, &c., in the Prologue and middle Tales. If this is not change of man, it's change of mood.

⁴ Chaucer must have seen plenty of these when he was page, valet, and squire.

⁵ Compare Chaucer's *Gentleness*, &c. ⁶ Compare Clerk's Tale, Part VI, st. 135.

Wrath takes away a man's wit and spiritual life (p. 634).

Fruits of Wrath: 1. Hate. 2. War and wrong. 3. Manslaughter, *a.* spiritual; *b.* bodily (p. 634).

a. The 3 kinds of spiritual Manslaughter (3, calld 6 in MSS. p. 634): 1. by Hate. 2. by Backbiting. 3. Giving wicked Counsel, by Fraud (p. 634).

b. bodily Manslaughter: slaying with your tongue, giving orders or counsel to slay a man (p. 634).

Manslaughter in deed: its 4 (that is, 7) kinds (p. 635): 1. by law: a Justice condemning a man to death; 2. justifiable homicide, in defence of one's own life; 3. by misadventure: shooting an arrow, &c.; 4. a woman overlying her child; 5. a man making a woman barren by drinks, &c., killing the foetus within her, shedding his seed in the wrong place; a woman killing the child in her womb; 6. a woman killing her child (after birth) for shame; 7. a man by lechery or blows killing a foetus.

(Sixteen) other sins coming from Ire or Anger.

1. blaming or despising God, as hazarders do (Cp. *Pardoner's Tale*) (p. 635); and those who treat of the Sacrament of the altar irreverently (p. 636).

2. Attry anger: making angry false excuses for sin.

3. Swearing, which dismembers Christ (p. 636).

a. Of lawful Swearing, before a Judge: its 3 conditions, and its motives; *b.* God's name and Christ's, not to be taken in vain (p. 637); *c.* swearing for gentility or manliness (p. 638); *d.* swearing suddenly; *e.* of Adjuration and Conjurat[i]on by enchanter[s] and necromancer[s]; *f.* of Divination by Dreams, &c.; *g.* of Charms for Wounds and Maladies (p. 638).

4. Lying (p. 638), and its 6 kinds.

5. Flattering. How Flatterers are the Devil's Nurses, his Enchanter[s] and Chaplain[s] (p. 639).

6. Cursing that comes of irous heart: Malison.

7. Chiding and Reproach (p. 640); (specially a chiding wife¹) (p. 640-41).

8. Scorning (p. 641).

9. Giving wicked Counsel (p. 641).

10. Sowing and making Discord (p. 642).

11. Double tongue (p. 642).

12. Betraying of Counsel (p. 642).

13. Menace.

14. Idle words.

15. Jangling (chattering) (p. 642).

16. Japing (joking) (p. 642-43).

The Remedy against Anger (p. 643-5). Debonairtee and Patience (p. 643). Four kinds of grievances, and their remedies: 1. wicked words, 2. loss of goods, 3. harm of body, 4. outrageous labour (p. 644).

Incentives to Patience. Story of the Philosopher and Child (p. 644-45). Obedience comes from Patience (p. 645).

iv. ACCIDIE, or SLOTH (Discontent, Ennui) (p. 645-49), is an enemy to the 3 states of man,—1. innocence (p. 645), 2. prayer (p. 646), 3. grace;—and to one's livelihood. Its 12 bad consequences (p. 646): 1. Sloth (and its remedy); 2. Dread to begin good works (p. 646); 3. Wanhope, or Despair (and its Remedy) (p. 647); 4. Somnolence (p. 648), and 5. Negligence, or 6. Recklessness, and the Remedy for each; 7. Idleness; 8. *Tarditas*, or tarrying before turning to God (p. 649); 9. Lachesse, or giving up a good work begun; 10. Coldness; 11. Undevotion; 12. Worldly sorrow (p. 649).

The Remedy against Accidie (p. 650-51): Fortitude or Strength, and its 5 kinds. 1. Magnanimity² or great Courage; 2. Faith or Hope; 3. Assurance; 4. Magnificence; 5. Constancy (p. 651).

¹ Does Chancer here refer to his former wife?

² Miswritten 'Magnificence' in Ellesmere and Lansdowne MSS.

- v. **AVARICE** (p. 651-57). The difference between Avarice and Covetousness (p. 651); and between an Idolater and an avaricious man (p. 652). Of Covetousness, and lords' extortion from their bondmen: "humble folk been Cristes freendes" (p. 652-53). The Duty of lords to their thralls or churls. Of those that pillage Holy Church (p. 653-54); lords who plunder the poor are like wolves (p. 654). Of Deceit between Merchant and Merchant (p. 654). Of honest bodily Merchandise (the surplus of one country may be sent to help another) (p. 654). Of spiritual Merchandise, or Simony, and its 2 kinds (p. 655),—thieves that steal Christ's souls get livings (p. 655-56);—Hasardry or Games of Chance (p. 656). Other outcomes of Avarice (p. 656): 1. Lying, 2. Theft (bodily and spiritual) (p. 656-57), 3. False Witness, 4. False Oaths (p. 657).

The Remedy against Avarice (p. 657): Mercy and Pity, and reasonable Liberality (p. 658). Of foolish largess (p. 658).

- vi. **GLUTTONY** (p. 658-59), and its 5 kinds (p. 659): 1. Drunkenness, or the burial of man's reason; 2. a troubled spirit; 3. bad way of eating; 4. distemperd bodily humours; 5. forgetfulness. Or, as St Gregory says, 1. eating too soon; 2. eating too delicate food; 3. taking too much; 4. troubling too much about cooking food; 5. eating greedily: these are the 5 fingers of the devil's hand (p. 659).

The Remedy against Gluttony (p. 660): Abstinence, and its fellows. Temperance, Shame, Content with plain food, Moderation, Sobriety, Sparing (p. 660).

- vii. **LECHERY** (p. 660). Its punishment in the Old Testament (p. 660). Adultery, and the desire of it (p. 661-62).

The 5 fingers of the Devil's other hand (p. 662); 1. foolish looking; 2. villainous touching; 3. foul words; 4. kissing (old dotards, and dry dogs at a rose-tree (p. 662); and how a man should love his wife); 5. the stinking deed of lechery (p. 663). Its kinds: 1. Fornication. Taking a maid's maidenhead, or 100th fruit (p. 663). 2. Adultery, defined. 3. Harms following from it: *a.* breaking of faith; *b.* theft (of the wife's body from her husband (Joseph and Potiphar's wife), and of her soul from Christ); *c.* breaking God's commandment, and defouling Christ (p. 664). Of Harlots and Bawds (p. 665). Adultery is set between Theft and Manslaughter. More kinds of Adultery: 1. by Men bound by Religious Vows, &c.; 2. those in Holy Orders (p. 665). Lecherous Priests are like a free Bull in a town, and they eat raw flesh of folk's wives and daughters (p. 666); 3. by man and wife copulating for pleasure only (p. 667); 4. copulation with kinsfolk, spiritual (or godchildren) or fleshly (blood relations). 5. the abominable unmentionable sin; 6. Pollution, of 3 kinds: 1. too rank humours; 2. weakness (p. 667); 3. evil thoughts (p. 668).

The Remedy for Lechery (p. 668): I. Chastity and Continence.

1. in Marriage. (The true effect of Marriage. One husband to have one wife (p. 668). How a man should behave to his wife (p. 669). How the wife should be subject to her husband (p. 669), and be moderate in behaviour, discreet in words, &c. (p. 669-70). The 3 causes for which man and wife may copulate (p. 670): *a.* begetting of children; *b.* to pay the mutual debt of their bodies; *c.* to avoid lechery (p. 670). The 4th cause, pleasure, is deadly sin (p. 670-71).)
2. In Widowhood; 3. Virginity (p. 671).

II. Special avoidance of causes of lechery: *a.* eating and drinking; long sleeping; *b.* the person who'd tempt you (p. 671-72). (I wish I could tell you the Ten Commandments; but it's too high doctrine (p. 672).) [End of *Confession*, § 1, *c.*]

Sin is in heart, mouth, deed, by the 5 Wits (p. 672).

- § 1. *b.* (see p. 615-16.) The 7 Circumstances that encrease or aggravate sins (p. 672). 1. the person who sins (male or female, &c.); 2. the kind of sin (fornication or homicide); 3. the place it was committed in (as in a church, by a priest) (p. 673); 4. for what motive; 5. the number of times it was committed; 6. by what temptation; 7. how it was committed; and all other circumstances (p. 674).

CONFESSION, § 2, § 3 (p. 674-79).

Profitable Confession, and its 4 (= 3) Conditions (p. 674):

1. sorrowful bitterness of heart (p. 674); its 5 signs: *a.* shamefastness (like the Publican's) (p. 675); *b.* humility; *c.* fulness of tears (p. 675); *d.* no hesitation (like the Magdalen) for shame; *e.* obedience to receive penance laid on you (p. 675).
 2. speedy Confession (p. 676); its 4 Conditions: *f.* that it be well thought over; *g.* the greatness and number of sins must be understood; *h.* the sinner must be contrite, and *i.* avoid occasions of sins.
 3. Shrift must be made to one man, not more (p. 676).
- True Shrift, and its 10 Conditions* (p. 677): 1. that it be of free will; 2. that it be lawful (both sinner and priest, Popish); 3. that it be not despairing of Christ's mercy; 4. that a man accuse himself only, and not another; 5. that it be not lying (accusing oneself of sins never committed) (p. 678); that it be by one's own mouth; and not by letter; 7. that the sin be not painted with fair words; 8. that the shrift be to a discreet priest; 9. that the shrift be not made for vain-glory, but for fear of Christ; 10. that the shrift be not made suddenly, for a joke (p. 678). You may be shaven more than once for the same sin; and should be houseld once a year (p. 679).

PART III (*no. v. continued, and no. vi.*).

SATISFACTION (THE 3RD REQUISITE FOR PENITENCE) (p. 679—684).

In *a.* Alms. *β.* bodily punishment.

- a.* *Alms and its three kinds* (p. 679): 1. Contrition of heart. 2. Pity for one's neighbour's faults. 3. Giving good counsel to other's souls and bodies (food, visits in prison, burial). These Alms should be done privily, if possible (p. 680).
- β.* *Bodily Punishment (Penance), of 4 kinds*: 1. Prayers (chiefly of the Paternoster, whose expounding I leave to Masters of Theology) (p. 680). 2. Watching, and its 3 kinds: forbearing, *a.* meat and drink, *b.* worldly jollity, and *c.* deadly sin (p. 681). 3. Fasting, and its 4 kinds: Liberality to poor folk; spiritual gladness of heart; not grudging at fasting; reasonable eating. 4. Virtuous teachings, or Discipline: *a.* by word, writing, or example; *b.* by wearing hairshirts, &c., next your skin, scourging yourself, taking evils and injuries patiently (p. 682). [End of no. v. in Part i; p. 593.]

- vi. The 4 Things that disturb Penance [no. vi. or last §, of p. 593 at foot] (p. 682). 1. Dread, and its remedy. 2. Shame, and its remedy. 3. Hope: *a.* of long life, and *b.* consequent overconfidence in Christ's mercy (p. 683). 4. Wanhope, or Despair of Mercy; its 3 kinds: *x.* from great and long continued sin; *y.* from falls-back into sin; *z.* from not being able to persevere in goodness (p. 683).

The fruit of Penance (p. 683-4).

EPILOGUE.

The Author's Leave-taking, and Lament over, and Withdrawal of, his Sinful Books, &c. (p. 684-85).

(FOR PETWORTH 608 *b*)

[*Petworth MS, on leaf 272, back.*]

[*There are no breaks in the MS. Tyrwhitt's are kept here to prevent slight differences in the texts throwing the Six-Text out of gear.*]

And here bygynneþ þe person his tale.

¶ *Capitulum*
xxliij^m.

Ieremie vj^{to}. ¶ State super vias & videte & interrogate de Semitis / antiquis que sit / via bona & ambulate in ea & inuenietis refrigerium animabus vestris :

[75] **O** Wre swete lord god of heuene þat no man wil perisshe but wil þat we comen all to the knowlecch of hym and to þe blisful lif þat is perdurable [76] ammossheþ vs by þe prophet Ieremye þat seiþ in þis wise [77] ¶ Stondeþ vp-on þe wayes and seeþ and askep of olde Patthes þat is to sayne of olde sentences which is þe good way [78] and walkeþ in þat way and 3e shul here refresshyng for 3oure saules. &c [79] ¶ Mony bene þe waies espiritual þat leden folk to oure lord Ihesu crist and to þe regne of glorie. [80] Of which way þer is a ful / noble waye and a ful couenable which may not faile to man / ne to womman þat þourgh synne haþ mysgoon from þe rizt way of Ierusalem Celestiall [81] ¶ And þis way is cleped Penytence of which men shuld gladly harken and enquere wip al his herte [82] to wete what is Pen-
aunce. and whi it is cleped penitence / and in how mony maners bene þe accions of worchyng of penytence. [83] and howe mony spices þer bene of penytences. and whiche þingges appertenen and byhouen to penytence. [and] which þingges distrouben penytence

¶ *Nota de peni-*
tencia.

¶ *Ambrosius*[—¹ *A sidenote
copied into the
text.*]

[84] ¶ Seynt Ambrose seip. That penitence is þe laynyng^t of man for þe gilt þat he haþ done. ¹What is penytence¹ and no more to doon eny þinge for which hym ouzt to playne. [85] And somme doctour seip. Penytence is þe waymentyng^t of man þat soroweþ for his synne. *and* pyneþ hym self for he haþ mysdone. [86] Penytence wiþ certeyn circumstaunces is verray repentaunce of man þat halt hym self in sorowe and oþer payn for his giltyes. [87] And for he shal be verrey penytent^t. he shal first bywaillen þe synnes þat he haþ done and stedfastly proposed in his hert to haue shrift of mouþ and to doon satisfaccion [88] and neuere to doon þinge for whiche ²hym ouzte more to be-wayle or to compleyn and to conytinue in good werkes or ellis his repentaunce may not auaille. [89] ffor as seip *ysidere* ¶ he is a Iaper and a gabber and no verrey repentaunt þat eftsona doon þinge for whiche hym ouzt to repent [90] wepinge and nouzt fortostint to do synne may nouzt auaille [91] ¶ But napeles men shullen hope þat at euery time þat man / falleþ be it neuer so oft þat he may arise þorgh penytence. if he haue grace // But certeynly it is grete dout. [92] ffor as seip seint *gregorie*. Vnneþes ariseþ he out of his synne þat is chargeþ wiþ þe charge of euel vsage. [93] annt þerfore repentaunt folk þat stint forto synne and forlete synne. er þat synne forlete hem holy churche holt hem siker of her sauacion [94] ¶ And he þat synneþ and verrelly repentþ hym in his last [day]. holy church 3it hopeþ his saluacion by þe grete mercy of our lord *Ihesu crist* for his repentaunce. but take þe siker way certeyn :

¶ *Isidore.*¶ *gregorius.*¶ *tres accione[s]
penitencie
1^a. accio.*

[95] And now siþens I haue declared 3ou what þinge is penitence ¶ Now shul 3e vnderstonde þat þer bene iij. actions of penytence [96] ¶ The first is þat a man be baptist aftere þat he haþ synned [97] ¶ Seynt Austyn seip But he be penitent for his olde synful lif he may no bygygne þe newe

clene lif. [98] ffor certes if he be paptised wip-out
 penitence of his olde gilt. he resceyueþ þe mark of
 bapteme. but not þe grace ne þe remyssion of his
 synnes til he haue repentaunce verray [99] ¶ Anoþer ^{2a. accio.}
 defaute is þis. þat men doon dedly synne after þat
 þei han resceyued bapteme [100] ¶ The iij. defaute ^{3a. accio./}
 is þat men falle in venyal synnes after her bapteme
 fro day to day. [101] þerof seiþ seynt Austyne. ¶ *Augustinus*
 þat penitence of good and humble folk. is þe
 penitence of euery day

[102] ¶ The spices of penaunce bene þre. þat oon ¶ þe spices of
 of hem is solempne Another is comune. and the ^{penaunce}
 iij. is prive. [103] Eche penaunce þat is so-
 lempne is in two maners. as is to be put out of holy
 church in lent for slaughtere of children and such
 maner þingges [104] ¶ Another is whan man ¶ *penitencia*
 hap synned openly of whiche synne þe fame is openly ^{communis}
 spoken in þe contre. and þan holy churche by Iugge-
 ment distreyneþ hym forto doo penaunce open. [105]
 Somme penaunce is þer is þat preestes enioynen men. comonly
 in certeyn caas as forto goon perauenture naked in
 pilgrimage. or bare þe feet [106] ¶ Privey penaunce is ¶ *Do secreta*
 þilk þat men doon al day for privey synnes of which ^{*penitencia*}
 we shryuen vs prively and receyuen prive penaunce

[107] ¶ Now shalt þou vnderstonð what by[ho]ueþ
 and is necessarie to verrey parfite penytençe and þise
 stonden on þre þingges. [108] Contricion of hert. con-
 fession of mouþ. And satisfactiō [109] ¶ ffor which
 seiþ Iohn Grisostom ¶ Penytence distreyneþ man ¶ *Grisostomus*
 to accept benignely euery peyne þat is enioyned
 hym wip contricion of hert and shrift of mouþ. wip satis-
 faccion and worching of al manere humilite. [110]
 And þis is fruytful penytençe azeinst iij. þingges in whiche
 we wreþen our lord Ihesu crist. [111] þis is to / sayn
 be delite in þenkinge. by rechelesnesse in spekinge.
 by wikked synful worchinge. [112] and azeinst þise

¶ *Hou penaunce* wikked gyltes is penyntence. þat may be likned vnto a tre
may be likned to
a tree

[113] The roote of þis tree is contricion þat hideþ hym in þe herte of him þat is verrey repentaunt. riȝt as þe roote of a tree hideþ hym in þe erþe. [114] ¶ Of þe roote of contricion spryngeþ a stalk þat bereþ braunches and leeuës of confession. and fruyt of satisfacioun [115] ¶ ffor which Crist seiþ in þe gospeþ ¶ Doþ digne fruyte of penyntence. for by þis fruyte may men knowe þis tre. and not by þe roote þat is in þe hert of man. ne by þe braunches ne by þe leeuës of confession

¶ *Textus.*

¶ *Of þe seed of*
contricion.

[116] ¶ And þerfore our lord Ihesu crist seiþ þus By þe fruyte of hem shul ȝe knowe hem [117] ¶ Of þis roote springeth a sede of grace. þe which sede is modere of sikernesse. þus þis sede is eger and hote.

[118] The grace of þis / sede springeþ of god þorowe þe remembraunce of þe day of dome. and on þe peynes of helle [119] ¶ Of þis matere seiþ salomon. þat in þe

¶ *Salomon.*

degre of god man forleteþ his synne [120] The hete of this seede is þe loue of god / and þe desiring of þe Ioie perdurable. [121] þis hete draweþ þe hert of man to god and doþ him hate his synne. [122] ffor soþly þer nys no þinge þat sauoureþ so wel to a childe as þe mylk of his norice. ne no þing is to hym more abhominable þat þilk mylk what it is medled wip oþer mete. [123] Riȝt so þe synful man þat loueþ his synne. hym semeþ þat it is to hym most swete of eny þinge. [124] But fro þat tyme þat he loueth sadly our lord Ihesu crist and desireth þe lif perdurable. ther nys to hym [no þing] more abhominable. [125] ffor soþ. þe lawe of god is þe loue of god. ffor which

¶ *De propheta.* / Dauid þe prophet seiþ. I haue loued þi lawe and hated wikkednesse ¶ he [þat] loueth god kepeþ his lawe and his

¶ *Daniel.* / worde. [126] This reson seiþ þe prophete Danyel in spirit vppon a vision of Nabugodonosor whan he counsailled hym to doo penaunce. [127] Penaunce is þe tree of lif to hem / þat it receyuen. And he þat holdeþ hym

in verrey penytence is blessed aftere þe sentence of ¶ *Salomon*.
Salomon

[128] In þis penitence or contriciōn man shal vn-
 derstonde .iiij. þingges. þat is to seyn what is contriciōn
 and whiche bene þe causes þat meuen a man to con-
 triciōn and howe he shuld be contrite. and what con-
 triciōn availed to þe soule. [129] Than is it þus.
 þat contriciōn is þe verrey sorowe þat a man receyueþ
 in his hert for his synnes with sad purpoos to schryuen
 hym and to do penaunce and neuere more to do synne.

[130] And þis sorowe shal be in þis manere as seith
 seint Bernard ¶ It shal be greuous and hevie and ful ¶ *Bernardus*
 sharp and poynant in hert. [131] ffirst for a man haþ
 a-gilt his lorde and his creature. and more sharpe and
 poynant for he hath agilt his fadere celestia. [132] And
 3it more sharpe and poynant ffor he haþ wreþed and
 agult hym þat bouzt hym. þat with his precious blood
 haþe delyuered vs fro the boondes of synne and fro þe
 cruelte of þe deue. and fro þe paynes of helle.

[133] ¶ The causes þat ouzten to meuen a man to con- ¶ *Sermonimenta*
 triciōn beñ .vj. ¶ ffurst a man shal remembre him of *ad contricionem.*

his synnes. [134] but loke þat þilk remem-
 braunce be to him no delite by no way. but gret shame
 and sorowe for his gilt. ffor Iob seip. Synful men don ¶ *Iob.*

werkes worþi of confessiō. [135] And þerfore seip
 Ezechie. I wil remembre me al þe 3eeres of my lif. ¶ *Ezechiel.*
 my bitternesse of myn hert [136] ¶ And god seip in þe

apocalips ¶ Remembre 3ou from whennes þat 3e be ¶ *Apocalypsis.*
 falle. ffor byforn þat tyme þat 3e synned 3e were þe
 children of god. and lymmes of þe reigne of god. [137] But
 for 3oure synne 3e bene woxe þra. and foule. and
 membres of þe feende. hate of aungels sclaunder of holy
 church. and foode of þe fals serpent perpetuele matere
 of the fuyre of he. [138] and þat more foule and abhom-
 ynable for 3e trespasen so often tyme as doþ þe hounde
 þat turneþ to eten his vomyte. [139] And 3it

bene 3e foulere for 3oure longe contynuyngⁱ in synne and
 3oure synful usage. for which 3e bene roten in 3our
 synne as a beestⁱ in his dunge. [140] ¶ Suche maner of
 pouȝtes maken a man haue shame for his synne
 and no delite. As / god seiþ by þe prophete Ezechiele
 [141] ¶ 3e shul remembre 3ou of 3oure waiesⁱ and þei
 shul displese 3ou soþely ¶ Synnes beñ þe waies þatⁱ
 lede folk to hell

¶ Ezechiel

[142] ¶ The ij. cause þatⁱ ouȝt to / ¹make a man
 to haue disdeyne of synne is þis. Thatⁱ as seiþ seintⁱ
 Peter ¶ Who so doth synneⁱ is þral to synne and
 synne putteþ a man in gretⁱ þraldome. [143] And þer-
 fore seith þe prophete Ezechiel ¶ I wentⁱ sorryful in
 disdeyn of my silf. Certes ¶ wel auȝtⁱ a man
 haue disdeyn of synne and wiþ-drawe / hym from þatⁱ
 þraldom and vilanye. [144] And lo whatⁱ seiþ Senecⁱ
 ¶ In þis matere he seiþ þus ¶ Thouȝe I wistⁱ þatⁱ
 neiþer god ne man ne shuldⁱ neuere knowen it. 3itⁱ
 wolde I haue desdeyne forto / do synne. [145] And the
 same Senecⁱ seiþ ¶ I am born to gretter þingges
 þan to be þraht to my body. [.]

¶ Petrus

¶ Ezechiele

¶ Seneca

¶ Seneca /

no gap in the MS. [146] A [fouler] þral may no man ne
 womman make of his body þan 3eue is body
 to synne [147] A[1] were itⁱ the foulest cheerle or
 womman þatⁱ lyueþ and leestⁱ of valewe. 3it is he
 chaunged and most foule and more in seruitute. [148] euerⁱ
 fro þe hyer degre þatⁱ man falleþⁱ þe more is he
 þraht and more vnto god and to þe world vile and abhomy-
 nable. [149] O / 3ood god wel auȝtⁱ men haue desdeyn
 of synne. siþen þatⁱ þorghⁱ synne. þer he was free
 nowe is he makend boonde. [150] & / þerfore seiþ seintⁱ
 Austyn. ¶ If þou haue desdeyn of þi seruauⁱnt if he
 a-giltⁱ or synne. haue þou þan disdeyn þatⁱ þou
 þi silf shuldestⁱ do synne. [151] Take rewardⁱ of þine
 valewe þatⁱ þou / ne be to foule to þi self. [152]
 Allas wel ouȝten þei þan to haue desdeyne to be

¶ Augustinus./

seruauntes and pralles to synne and sore bene ashamed
 of hem self. [153] þat god of his endeles goodnesse
 hap sett hem in hie astaaf and 3euen hem witt. strength
 of body. helpe. bewte. and prosperite. [154] and
 bouzt hem fro þe deep with his hert blood. þat
 þei so vnkyndely azeinst gentelnesse aquiten hym so
 vilenistly to sclowghter of her owne soules. [155] ¶ O
 good god. 3e wommen þat bene of so grete bewte.
 remembreþ 3ou of þe prouerbe of Salamon ¶ He ¶ Salomon.
 [156] likneþ a fair womman þat is a foole of her body.
 ylik to a ryng of gold þat is wreþed in þe Groyne of a sowe.
 [157] ffor rizt as a sowe ¶ wroteþ in euery ordure. So
 wroteþ she her bewte in stynkinge ordure of synne

[158] ¶ The iij cause þat ouzt to meuen a / man
 to contricion and drede of þe day of dome. and of þe /
 horrible peynes of helle. [159] ffor as seint Ierom seiþ ¶ Ieromias : /
 ¶ Att euery tyme þat me remembreþ of þe day of dome I
 quake [160] ffor whan I ete or drinke or doo what so I
 doo / euer me semeþ þat þe trompe sowneþ in myn ere.
 [161] Riseth vp ¹þat bene dede and commeþ to þe
 Iuggement. [162] O Good god mochel. oweþ a man to
 drede such Iuggement þer as we shulne bene alle
 as seiþ seint Poule by-forne the strete of our lord Ihesu ¶ Paulus
 crist [163] wher as he shal make a general con-
 gregacion. Wher as no man had be absent. [164] for
 certes þer ne veileþ noñ assoyn ne excusacion
 [165] and not only þat our defautes shullen / be
 Iugged but eke þat all our werkes shul openly
 be knowe [166] And as seint Bernard seiþ. There ne ¶ Bernardus
 shal no pledyng availe ne no sleiȝt we shul 3euen
 reknyng of euery ydel word [167] Ther shul we haue
 a Iugge þat may not be deceyued. ne corrupte and whi
 for certes al oure þouȝtes ben diskeuered as to hym.
 ne for preiere ne for mede he wil not bene corrupte.
 [168] And þerfore seiþ Salomon. þe wreþe of god ¶ Salomon
 wil not be corrupte / And þerfor seiþ Salomon ¶ þe / wreche ¶ Idem.

of god ne wil not spare no wiȝt for preier ne for ȝift. And
 þerȝfore at þe day of dome þer nys no hope to escape.
 [169] Wherfore Anselme seiþ ¶ fful grete
 Angwissȝh shullen þe synful folk haue at þat tyme
 [170] Ther shal be þe sterne and þe wrope Iuge sitte aboue
 and vnder hym þe horrible pitte of helle open to di-
 stroye hym þat most byknowe his synne. which
 synnes openly bene shewed byforn god and biforne
 euery creature. [171] And on þe left side moo deuels /
 than hert may þenk forto harie and to drowe
 þe synful soules / to þe pyne of helle. [172] And wiþ-
 in þe hertes of folk shal be þe bitynge conscience
 and wiþ-out forþ shal be þe world al brennynge.
 [173] whidere shal þan þe wrecched synful soule flee /
 to hide hym. Certes he may not hide hym. he most
 come forþ and schewe hym. [174] ffor certes as seiþ
 seint Ierom ¶ The erpe shal cast hym out of hym.
 and þe see also and the Eiere. þat shal be ful / of
 pondere clappes / and liȝtynge [175] Now sople
 who so wil remembre hym of þise þingges I gesse
 þat his þingges shal not turne hym into delite. but to grete
 sorowe for drede of the payne of helle. [176] And þer-
 fore seiþ Iob. ¶ Suffre lord þat I may a while
 biwaile and wepe or I goo and wepe wiþ-out retournynge to þe
 derk londe keuered wiþ þe derknesse of depe [177]
 to þe londe of myssese and of derknesse. where as is
 shadowe of deep. wher as þer nys noon oper or-
 dynaunce. but grisly drete þat euere shul last [178]
 ¶ Loo here may ȝe seen þat Iob preied of respite a while
 to bywepe and waile his trespas. ffor sople oo / day of
 respite is bettere þan al þe tresoure of þis world [179] And
 1 for as moche as a man may acquite hym self to forn god
 by penitence in þis world and nouȝt by tresour þerfor
 shuld he prei to god to ȝeue hym respite a while to
 bywepen and bywaillen his trespas [180] ffor certes al
 þe sorowe þat a man myȝt make fro þe bygynnyng

¶ Ieronimus

¶ Iob./

of þe world nys but a litel þing at þe regard of þe sorowe
of helle [181] ¶ The cause why þat Iob clepeþ helle
þe londe of derknesse. [182] Vnderstondeþ þat he
clepeþ it londe or erþe. for it is stable and neuere shal
faile. derknesse. for he þat is in helle haþ defaute of
lizt materiaH [183] ffor certes þe derk lizt þat shal
come out of þe fire þat euere shal brenne shal turne
hym al to peyne þat is in helle. ffor it sheweþ hym to þe
horrible deuels þat hym tormenten [184] keuered wip
þe derknesse of deþe [.
. [185]
no gap in the MS.] bene þe synnes þat þe wrecched / man
haþ doñ which þat distourben hym to se þe face
of god. riȝt as a derk cloude bytwix vs and þe
sonne. [186] londe of myssese by cause þat þer bene
.iiij. manere of defautes aȝeinst þre þingges þat folk
of þis world han in þis present lif. þat is to say
honours. delices. and Richesse. [187] Aȝeinst honour
han þei in helle shame and confusioñ. [188] ffor wel ȝe
woote þat men clepen honour þe reuerence þat men
doon to man. But in helle nys noon honur ne reuerence.
ffor certes no more reuerence shal be do to a
kinge þan to a knaue [189] ¶ ffor which god seith by
þe prophetys wordes Ieremye. ¶ Thilk folk þat me despisen ¶ *Textus Ieremie*
shullen bene despised. [190] ¶ Honor is eke cleped gret lord
Ther shal no wiȝt / seruen oper. but of harme and
torment ¶ Honore is eke cleped grete dignite and high-
nesse. But in helle shul þei bene al for-troden of deuels.
[191] as god seiþ The horrible deuels shal goon and
come vpon þe hedes of dampned folk And þis
is for as moche as þe hier þat þei were in þis present
lif. þe more shullen þei bene abated and defouled in
helle. [192] ¶ Aȝeinst þe richesse of þis world. shullen
þei haue myssese and pouerte. and þis pouert shal be
.iiij. þingges [193] in defaute of tresour. of which

¶ *David propheta*

David þe prophete seiþ ¶ The riche folk þat enbraceden and oneden in al her hert to tresoure of þis world shullen slepe in þe slepinge of deþ. As no þinge shul þei fynden in her hondes of al her tresour [194] ¶ And more ouer þe dissese of helle shal bene in þe defaute of mete and drynk. [195] ¶ ffor god seiþ þus by moyses ¶ Thei shullen be wasted with ¹hunger and þe briddes of helle shal deuoure hem with bitter deþ and þe galle of þe dragon [.]

¶ *Deus per moysen*

no gap in the MS.] her morseþ. [196] And ferþer ouer her myssese shal bene in defaute of cloþinge ffor þei shullen be naked in body as of cloþing sauf þe fuyr in which þei brenne and oþer filþes. [197] and naked shul þei bene of saule. of al manere vertues which þat is þe cloþinge of saule. Wher bene þan þe gay Roobes and þe soft shetes and þe smal / shertes [198]

¶ *Isayas.*

¶ loo what seiþ god to hem by þe prophete Ysay ¶ That vndere hem shullen be strawed motthes. and her couertours / shul be of wormes of helle [199] ¶ And ferþer ouere her dissese shal / bene in defaute of frendes. ffor he nys not poor þat hap good / frendes. but þer nys no frende. [200] ffor neiþer god ne creature / shal be frende to hem. and euery of hem shal haten oþere wiþ dedly hate. [201] The sones of þe doughtren shullen rebellen azeinst þe fadere and modere and kynrede azeinst kynrede and chiden and despisen euerech of hem oþer boþ day and nyȝt As god seiþ

¶ *Machias.*

by þe prophet Michias [202] ¶ And þe louyng children. þat whilom loued so fleshly euerech oþer. wolden euerech of hem eten oþer if þei myȝt. [203] ffor howe shuld þei loue hem to-gydere in þe peynes of helle. whan þei hated eche of hem oþer in þe prosperite of þis lif. [204] ffor trust wel her fleshly loue was dedly hate

¶ *David.*

as seiþ þe prophete dauid ¶ who so þat loueþ wickednesse he hateþ his saule. [205] and who þat hateþ his owne soule. certes he may loue noon oþer wiȝt

in no manere. [206] and þerfor in helle is no frendship. But euer þe moo fleshly kynredes þat bene in helle. þe more cursyng^t þe more chyd-inge. and þe more dedly hate þer is amonges hem [207] ¶ And forþermor þer shal be defaute of al maner delyces. ffor why þe delices ben þe appetites of þe .v. wittes. as. sizt^t. heryng^t. smellynge. sauer- yng^t and towchyng^t. [208] But in helle her sizt^t shal be ful of derkenesse and of smoke and ful of teeres. and her heryng^t ful of waymentyng^t and of gnaistyng^t of teep as seith Ihesus / crist [209] ¶ her nose- ¶ *Ihesu* þrelles shullen be ful styunkyng^t styunks ¶ And as seiþ Isay þe prophete. Her saueryng^t shal be ful of bitter ¶ *Isayas.* galle. [210] and touchyng^t of her body ykeuered wiþ fuyr^t þat neuere shal be quenched. and wiþ wormes þat never shul dye ¶ As god seiþ / by þe mouþ of ¶ *Ihesus.* / ysay. [211] ¶ And for as moçh as þei shullen not wene þat þei may dyen for peyne. and by her deþ flee fro peyne. ¹þat may þei vnderstonde by þe worde of Iob. ¶ *Iob.* þat seiþ. There as is þe shadowe of deþe [212] ¶ Certes a shadowe haþ þe liknesse of a þinge of which it is shadowe. But shadowe nys not þe same þinge of which it is shadowe. [213] Rizt so fareþ þe peyne of helle. it is like deþ for þe angwisshe horrible. and why for it peyneþ hem euere as þoo men shulden dye anoñ But certes þei shullen not dye. [214] ffor as seiþ seynt Gregore. ¶ To wrecched Catyfe shal be deþe wiþ-out^t ¶ *Gregorius.* / deþe. ande ende wiþ-uten ende. and defaute wiþ-out failyng^t. [215] for her deþe shal alway lyve. and her eende shal euermor bygynne and her defaute shal not faile. [216] And þerfore seiþ seint Iohn þe ¶ *Iohannes* euangeliste They shullen folowe deþ and þei shul *Euaangelista* not fynden hym. And þei / desiren to deye. and deþe shul flee fro hem / [217] And eke Iob seith That in helle ¶ *Iob.* / is noon order ne rewele [218] And al be it soo þat god haþ created al þing^t in rizt^t ordre and no þing^t wiþ-

¶ *dauid propheta.*/¶ *Basilus.*/¶ *Iob.*/¶ *Salomon.*/¶ *Salomon*¶ *Augustinus.*

out^r ordere. but^r alle þingges ben ordred and nombred. 3it^r napelees þei þat bene dampned bene no þinge in order ne holden / noon order'. [219] for þe erþe ne shal bere hem no fruyte. [220] ffor as þe / prophete dauid seiþ ¶ God shal destroy þe froyte of þe erþe as fro / hem. ne watere shal 3eue hem no moystere. ne þe eyre no refresshyng. ne þe fuyre no liȝt^r. [221] ffor as seiþ seynt^r Basile. þe brennyngges of þe fuyre of þis worlde shal god 3euen to hem in helle þat^r bene dampned. [222] But^r þe liȝt^r and þe clernesse shal be 3euen in to heuene to his children. / Riȝt as þe good man 3eueþ flesshe to his children. and bonys to his houndes [223] for þei shullen have noon hope to escape seiþ Iob. At^r þe last^r þat^r ther shal horroure and grisly drede dwelle. wiþ-uten ende [224] ¶ Horroure is alway drede of harme þat^r is to come and þis drede shal euer dwelle in þe hertes of hem þat^r bene dampned. and þerfore han þei lorn aȝ her hope. for vij. causes. [225] ffirst^r for god þat^r is her Iuge shal be wiþ-oute mercy to hem. ne þei may not^r plese hym. ne noon of his halowes. ne þei may 3eue no þinge for her raunsom. [226] ne þei han no voys to speke to hym. ne þei may nat^r flee fro peyne ne þei han no goodnesse in hem þat^r þei may schewe to delyuere hem fro peyne [227] ¶ And þerfore seiþ Salomon ¶ The wikked man dyep^r and whan he is dede he shal haue no hope to / eskaþe fro peyne. [228] who so shame wolde wel vnderstonde and bythenk^r hym wel on þise peynes and þat^r he haþ deserued þe same peynes / for his synne. Certes he shulȝ haue more talent^r to sike and to wepe ¹þan for syngen and to pley. [229] ffor as seiþ Salomon. Who so þat^r had þe science forto knowe þe peynes þat^r bene establissched and ordeyned / for synne he wold make sorowe. [230] Thilk^r science as seiþ seint^r Austyn Maketh a man to weymenten in his hert^r

[231] ¶ The iiij. poynte þat^r aught^r make a man

haue contritiōn is þe soryful remembraunce of þe
 good þat he haþ lost to doon here in erþe. and
 eke þe good / þat he haþ lorne [232] ¶ Soþly þe good
 werkes þat he haþ lost eȝer þei bene þe good
 werkes þat he haþ wrouȝt er he felle into dedly synne
 Or ellys þe good werkes þat he wrouȝt þe while he lay
 in synne [233] ¶ Soþly þe good werkes þat he did
 byforne þat he fille in synne ben aȝ mortefied and astonyed
 and dulleȝ by þe oft synnyng [234] That oþer
 good werkes þat he wrouȝt þe whiles he lay in
 synne þei bene vtterly dede as to þe lif perdurable in
 heuene. [235] Than / þilk good werkes þat bene
 mortefied by oft synnyng which good werkes he did þe
 whiles he was in charite ne mowen neuere / quicken aȝein
 with-outen verrey penytence. [236] And þerfore seiþ god
 by þe mouþe of Ezechiele þat is þe riȝtful man. Re- ¶ **Ezechiele**
 tourne aȝein from his riȝtwisnesse and to worcȝ wikked-
 nes shal he lyue. [237] nay. ffor aȝ þe good werkes
 þat he haþ wrouȝt ne shul neuere be in remembraunce
 for he shal deye in his synne. [238] ¶ And vpon þilk
 chapitre seiþ seint Gregorie thus. than we shuld vnder- ¶ **Gregorius**
 stonde þis principaly. [239] þat whan we doon dedly ^{super Eze-}
 synne. it is for noȝt þan to reherce or drawe into ^{chielem}
 memorie þe good werkes þat we han wrouȝt biforȝ.
 [240] ffor certys in þe wirking of dedly synne
 þer nys no trest to no good werk þat we han doon to-forne /
 þat is to sayn as forto haue þer-by þe lif per-
 durable in heuene [241] [.]

 *no gap in the MS.* Whan we
 han contricioȝ. [242] But soþly þe good werkes þat
 men / doon whiles þat þei bene in dedly synne. for as moȝȝ
 as þei weren doon in dedly synne þei mowe neuer quycken
 aȝein [243] ffor certes þing þat neuere haþ lif : neuere
 may quyked. And napeles al be it þat þei ne
 auaile nouȝte to han þe lif perdurable ȝit auailen

pei to abreggen of þe peyne of helle or ellis to geten
 temporeH richesse. [244] Or ellis þat' god wil
 rather enlumyne and / lighten þe hert' of þe synful
 man to han repentaunce. [245] and eke þei availen
 forto vsen a man to do goode werk' þat' þe fende /
 haue þe lasse power of his soule [246] ¶ And þus þe
 curtaise Lord Ihesu crist' ne wil þat' no good werk'
 be lost'. ffor in somewhat' it' shal availe. [247] But' for as
 moche as þe good werkes ¹þat' men doon whan þei
 bene in þis liff' bene al mortefied by synne folowinge.
 And eke sipens al þe good werkes þat' men done
 þe whiles þei bene in dedly synne bene vtterly dede
 as forto haue þe lif perdurable [248] ¶ wel may þat' man
 þat' no good werk ne / dooþ · syngyn þilk newe songe.
 Iay tout perdue moñ temps et moñ labour [249] ffor
 certes synne byreueþ a man goodnes and nature
 and eke þe goodnes of grace [250] ¶ ffor soþ
 þe grace of þe holy goost' fareþ as fuyre þat' may not'
 be ydeH. ffor fire failleþ / anoon as it' forleseþ his worch-
 inge [. *no gap
 in the MS.*] [251] þan leseþ þe synful man þe goodnes
 of glorie þat' oonly is bihiȝt' to good men þat' labouren
 and worken [252] wel may he be sory þen that'
 oweþ al his lif to god as longe as he lyueþ haþ lyued and
 eke as longe as he shal bene þat' no goodnes ne haþ
 to pay wiþ his dette to god. to whom he oweþ al his
 lif. [253] ffor trust' wel he shal ȝeue acountes as seip
 seint' Bernard' of alle þe goodes þat' han bene ȝeuen hym.
 in þis present' lif and how he haþ hem dispended.
 [254] not' so mochi þat' þer shal not' perisshe an heer
 of his hede. ne a moment' of an / houre ne shal not perisshe
 of þis tyme þat' he ne shal ȝeue of it' a rekenynge

¶ Bernardus

[255] ¶ The .v. þinge þat' ouȝt' to meue a man to
 contricion is remembraunce of þe passion of our Lord
 Ihesu crist' suffred' for oure synnes [256] ffor as seip
 seynt' Bernard' whiles þat' I lyue ¶ I shal haue remem-

¶ Bernardus

braunce of þe trauailes þat our lord Ihesu crist suffred in preching [257] in werynesse in travailynge. his temptacions whan he fasted. his longe waking whan he preied. his teeres whan þat he wepte for pite of good puple. [258] þe woo and þe shame and þe filþe þat men seiden to hym oft foule spitting þat men / spitten on his face / and þe buffettes þat men ȝauen hym of þe // foule mouþes and of þe repreeus þat men to hym seiden. [259] Of þe nailles wiþ þe which he was nailed to þe cros. and of all þe remenaunte of his passiõ þat he suffred for my synnes. / and no þinge for his gilt. [260] And ȝe shul vnderstonð þat in mannys synne is euery maner order of ordynaunce turned vp so down. [261] ffor it is soþ þat god and resoñ and sensualite and þe / body of man bene so ordeyned þat euerech of þise iiij. þingges shuld haue lordship of þat oper. [262] As þus. god shuld haue lordship ouer resoñ. and reson ouer sensualite. and sensualite ouer þe / body of man. [263] And soþly whan man synneþ al þis ordere of ordynaunce is turned vp so doune [264] ¶ And þerfore þan for as moch¹ as þe reson of man wil not be subiette ne obeysaunt to god þat is his lord by riȝt þerfore leseþ it þe lordship þat it shuld haue in sensualite and eke ouer þe body of man. [265] And whi for sensualite rebelleþ þan aȝeinst resoñ. And by þat way leseth resoun his lordship ouer sensualite and ouere þe bodye. [266] ffor riȝt as reson is rebelle to god. riȝt so is boþ Sensualite rebelle to reson and þe body also. [267] ¶ And certes this ordynaunce and þis rebellioñ. oure lord Ihesu crist abouȝt vpon his precious body ful dere and herkeneþ in which wyse. [268] ffor as moche þan is resoñ rebelle to god. þerfore is man worpi to haue sorowe and to be dede [269] ¶ This suffred our lord Ihesu for man aftere þat he had be bytraied of his disciple and destreyned and

bounde so þat þe blood brast out at euery naile of his
 ¶ **Augustinus.** hondes as seiþ seint Austyn [270] ¶ And ferþermore
 for as moche as reson of man wil not daunte Sensu-
 alite whan it may. therfore is man worþi to haue shame.
 and þis / suffred our lorde Ihesu crist for man whan þei
 spitten in his visage [271] ¶ And ferþer ouer for as
 moch þan as the catif body of man is rebelle
 boþ to reson and to sensualite. þerfore is it worþi þe
 deef [272] ¶ And þis suffred our lord Ihesu crist for man
 vpon þe crosse wher as þer was no parte of his body
 free with-oute grete peyne and bitter passiō [273]
 and al þis suffred Ihesu crist þat neuer forfeited
 [.
 . . . *no gap in the MS.*] To mochel am I peyned for þe
 same þingges þat I neuer deserued and to mochel defoiled
 for frendship þat man bene worþi for to haue [274] And þer-
 fore may þe synful man wel saye as seiþ seint Bernard
 ¶ Acursed be þe bitterness. [.
 *no gap in the MS.*] [275] ffor certes
 aftere þe dyuers discordaunces of oure wikkednes
 was þe passion of Ihesu crist yordeyned in dyuers þingges
 [276] as þus. Certys synful man saule [is] bytraied
 of the deuel by coueityse of temperele prosperite and
 scorned by disceite whan he cheseþ fleshly delites and
 3it is he tormented by impacience of aduersite. and by-spette
 by seruage of subieccioñ in synne / and at þe last it is
 slayn fynally. [277] ffor ¶ þis disordinaunce of synful man
 was Ihesus crist first bytraied and aftere þat was he bounde
 that come forto vnbynde vs of synne and of peyne [278]
 ¶ Than was he byscorned þat only shuld be
 honoured. in alle þingges of al þingges. [279]
 Than was his visage þat auzt be desired to be seyn
 of al mankynd¹ In which visage aungels desiren to
 loken vileynsly byspitte. [280] Than was he scourged
 þat no þing gilt And fynaly þan was he /
 crucified and slayn [281] Than was he accomplished þe

wordes of Ysay / He was wounded for ¶ ysaias!/.
 our mysdedys and defouled by oure vilanyes. [282]
 ¶ Now sipens þat Ihesu crist toke vppon hym self þe
 peyne of al oure wikkednesse ¶ Michel ouȝt synful
 men by-wepe and by-waile þat for his synnes goddis sone
 of heuene shuld al þis peyne endure [283] ¶ The sixt
 þinge þat auȝt meue man to contricioñ is þe hope
 of iij. þingges. þat is to say forȝeuenes of synne
 and þe ȝift of grace wel forto doo. And þe / glorie of
 heuene wiþ þe which god shal guerdon man for his
 good dedys. [284] and for as moche as Ihesu crist
 ȝeueþ vs þise ȝiftes of his larges and of his souereyn
 bounte. þerfor is he cleped / Ihesus Nazarenus rex
 iudeorum. [285] Ihesus is forto seyn Saueour or sa-
 uacioñ on whoom men shullen hope to haue forȝeuenesse of
 synnes which þat is proprely sauacioñ of synnes
 [286] ¶ And þerfore seide þe aungel to Ioseph. þow ¶ *qualiter an-*
 clepest his name Ihesus þat shal saue his puple from her *gelus locutus est*
 synnes [287] And here-of seiþ Seint Petrer ¶ Ther nys *Iosepho./*
 noon oþer name vnder heuene þat is ȝeue to eny man
 by which a man may be saued. but oonly Ihesus [288]
 Nazarenus is as moche for to seyn as florsshinge in
 which a man shal hope þat he þat ȝeueþ hym remissioñ
 of synnes shal ȝeue also hym grace wel to doo for
 in þe floure is hope of fruyte in tyme comynge and in
 forȝeuenesse of synnes hope of grace wel to doo. [289] I
 was at þe door of þine hert seith Ihesus and cleped forto
 entre. He þat opneþ to me shal haue forȝeuenesse of
 synne [290] I wil entre into hym by my grace and
 soupe wiþ hym by þe good werkes þat he shal doñ
 which werkes bene þe foode of god. and he shal soupe
 wiþ me by þe grete Ioie þat shal be ȝeue to hym [291]
 Thus shal man hope. þat for his werkes of penaunce
 god shuld ȝeue hym his regne as he bihotēþ hym in the
 gospel

[292] ¶ Now shal man vnderstonde in which

manere shal be þis contricioñ I say þat it shal
bene vniversale and total This is to saie. a man shal be
verrey repentaunt for al his synnes þat he haþ doon in
delite of his þouȝt. ffor delite is ful perilous [293] ffor þer
bene twoo / manere of consentyngges that oon of hem is
cleping consentynge of affection whan a man is meued
to do synne and deliteþ hym longe forto þenk on
þat synne [294] he haþ reson aperceyued / ¹wel þat
it is synne aȝeinst þe lawe of god [.]
.
. *no gap in the MS.*] al þouȝe
his reson ne consent not to doon þe synne in dede.
[295] ¶ Ȝit seyn somme doctours þat suche delite þat
dwelleth longe it is ful perilous al be it neuere so lite
[296] And also a man shuld sorowe namely for al
þat euere he haþ desired aȝeinst þe lawe of god wiþ
parfite consentynge of his resoñ. ffor þerof is no ¶ doute
þat it is dedly synne in þe consentinge [297] [.]
.
. *no gap*
in the MS.] and into dede. [298] Wherefore I say þat
mony men. ne repenten hem neuer of such þouȝtes and
delices ne neuere shryuen hem of it. but only of þe
dede. of grete synnes outward. [299] wherefore I say
þat such wicked delites and wicked þouȝtes bene
subtile bygylers of hem þat shullen be dampned [300]
¶ More ouere man ouȝt to sorowen for his wicked
wordes and for his wicked dedys ffor certes
þe repentaunce of a syngulere synne and noȝt repent of al
her oþer synnes. or ellis repente hym of al his
oþer synnes and not of syngulere synne may not
availe. [301] ffor certes god almyȝty is al good. and
þerfore he forȝeueþ aȝ or ellis riȝt nouȝt [302]
¶ *Augustinus.* and hereof seiþ seynt Austyne ¶ I wote certeynly [303] þat
god is enemye to euery synner ¶ and how þan he
þat obserueþ oon synne. shal he haue forȝeuenesse of þe

remenaunt^t of his oþer synnes. Nay [304] ¶ And forþer ouere / contricion shulde be woundes soryful and anguissious and þerfore ȝeueþ hym god pleyndly his merceye. And / þerfore whan my soule was angwissious wiþ-in me I had remembraunce of god þat my preiere myght^t come to hym. [305] ¶ fferþer ouer contricion most^t be continueþ. and þat men han stedfast^t purpoos to shryue hym and forto amende hym of his lif. [306] ffor soþly þe whiles contricion lasteþ man may haue hope of forȝeuenes. And of þis comeneþ hate of synne. þat destroieþ synne boþ in hym self^t and eke in oþer folk at his power^t. [307] ffor whiche seiþ *dauid* / ¶ ȝe þat louen / god haten wikkednes. ffor ¶ *Dauid*. / tresteþ wel to loue god is forto to loue þat he loueþ. and hate þat he hateþ

nota

[308] ¶ The last þing^t þat men shal vnderstonð in contricion is þis. wherof auaileþ contricion ¶ I say þat somtyme contricion delyuereþ man fro synne. [309] of which þat *dauid* seiþ. I say (*quod dauid*) ¶ *Dauid*. / þat is do say ¶ I purpose me fermely to shryve me. And þou lord relesedest my synne. [310] And riȝt so as contricion ¹availeth not wiþ-outen sad purpoos of shrift [. *no gap in the MS.*] or Satisfaction wiþ-out contricion. [311] And more: ¶ Contricion destroieþ þe prison of helle and maketh it waike and febleþ þe strengthes of þe deuels and restoreþ þe ȝift of þe holy goost and of aȝt vertues [312] and enterly clenseþ þe saule of synne and delyuereþ þe soule from þe peyne of helle and fro þe company of deuels and fro þe seruage of synne. and restoreþ [it] to aȝt goodys espiritueþ into þe company [and] comunyōn of holy churche. [313] And ferþer ouer it makeþ hym þat whilom was þe sone of yre þe sone of grace. And aȝt thise þingges he proueþ by holy writt. [314] and þerfore he þat wil sette his entent to / þise þingges he is

wis. ffor soþ he shuld not þan in al his liff
 haue corage to synne But þan his body and al his hert
 to þe seruise of Ihesu crist and þerof done him
 homage. [315] ffor certes our swete lord Ihesu crist
 hap spared vs so / deuourly in our folies þat 3it he ne
 had pite of mannys / soule a sory songe myȝt we alle
 synge. ¶ **Explicit prima pars penitencie. Incipit**
secunda / pars eiusdem.

¶ 2^a pars peni-
 tencie

[316]

¶ **T**He seconde parte of penitence is confessiō
 þat is signe of contriciō [317] ¶ Now shul 3e
 vnderstonde what is confessiō. and whedere
 it ouȝt nedes to be or noon. and which
 þingges bene conable to verrey confessiō

[318] ¶ ffirst shalt pou vnderstonde þat confessiō is
 verrey shewing of synnes to þe preest [319] þis is to
 sey verrey. ffor he mot confessen hym of al þe
 condicions þat bylongen to his synne as ferforþ as he
 can. [320] al mote be seide and no þing excused ne
 hid ne forwrapped. and nouȝt auante him of his good
 werkes. [321] ¶ And forþer ouer. It is necessary to vnder-
 stonde whennes þat synne springeþ and how þei
 encresen. And which þer bene

[322] in spryngynge of synnes. as seiþ seint poule
 in þis wise. / ¶ That riȝt as by a man. synne entred first
 into þe ¶ worlde. and þorghe þat synne deide. Riȝt so
 þilk deep entreþ into al men þat synden. [323]
 And þis man was // Adam by whom þat synne entred into
 þis world whan he brak þe comaundement of god.
 [324] and þerfore he þat first was so myghty þat he
 shuld not haue deyde. bycame suche oon þat he most
 nedys dye whedere he ¶ wolde or noon. and al his progeny
 þat is in þis world þat in þilk manere synne dyen. [325] Loke
 þat in þe astate of Innocentys ¶ whan A[dam] and Eue

naked weren in paradise. and no þing^t shame ne hadden of her nakednesse. [326] How þat^t serpent^t þat^t was most^t wily of aȝ oþer beestes þat^t god haþ maked seide to þe womman ¶ Comaunded god to zou ȝe shuld^t not^t eten of euery tree in paradys [327] ¶ The womman answerd of þe fruyte quod she of þe trees in paradise we feden vs. But^t sopley of þe froyte of þe tree þat^t is in þe myddel of paradys god for-bede vs forto ete ne not^t touche it^t. lest^t parauenture we shuld dyen [328] ¶ The serpent^t saide to þe womman. nay. nay. ȝe shullen deye of dethe. ffor soþ god woote þat^t what^t day þat^t ȝe eten þerof. ȝour^t eien shullen open. and ȝe shullen ben as goddys knowynge good [and] harme [329] ¶ The womman seie þat^t þe tree was good to fedynge and faire to þe eyen and delitable to þe siȝt she toke of þe fruyte of þe tree and ete of hit^t. / and ȝaf it^t to her husbonde and he eete. and anoon þe eyen of hem boþ opned / [330] and whan þat^t þei knewe þat^t þei were naked þe[i] sewed of fige leeuës in manere of breche to hiden her membres [331] ¶ Here may ȝe see þat^t dedly synne haþ furst^t suggestion of þe feende as schewep^t here by the naddere. And afterward^t þe delit^t of þe flessĥ as schewep^t here by Eua. And after þat^t þe consenting^t of þe resoñ as schewep^t by. adam [332] ¶ ffor trust^t wel þoȝe so were þat^t þe fende tempted oon þat^t is to saie þe flessĥ. And / þe flessĥ had delite in þe bewte and þe froyte deffended ȝit^t certes til þat^t reson þat^t is to sayn Adam consented. to þe etinge of þe fruyte þat^t stood hiȝe in astate of Innocence. [333] þilk Adam toke. þilk synne of Originall. ffor of hem fleshly descended. bene we aȝ and engendred. of vile and corrupte matere. [334] And whan þe soule is putt^t in our body. riȝt^t anoon is contracte origynall synne. and þat^t was eerst^t but^t only peyne of concupiscens^t is afterwarð^t boþ peyne and synne. [335] And þerfore be we aȝ yborn sones of

wreth and of dampnaciōn perdurable if it nere baptisme
 þat we receyuen which bynymeþ vs þe Culpe. But for-
 soþ þe peyne dwelleþ wiþ vs as þe ¹temptacion which
 peyne hiȝt concupissens. [336] And þis concupissence
 whan it is wrongfully disposed or ordeyned in man it
 makeþ hym to coueite coueitise of flessch flesshly synne
 by siȝt of his eyen as to erply þingges and
 eke coueitise of hynes of pride of hert

[337] ¶ Now as to speke of þe furst Coueitise
 þat is concupissence After þe lawe of *our* membres
 þat weren lawfully maked and by rightful Iugge-
 ment of god. [338] I say for as moche as man is not
 obeysaunt to god þat is his lord þerfo is his fleissch to
 hym disobeysaunt þorghe concupiscens [.

[339]

. . . *no gap in the MS.*] it is impossible but if he be
 tempred. somtyme in his flessch and anoyed to synne

[340] And þis þing may not faille as longe as þat he lyueþ.
 it may wel wexe feble and faile. by vertue of bapteme
 and by þe grace of god. þourghe penitence. [341] but
 fully shal it neuere quenche þat he ne shal som-
 tyme be neued in hym self. but he were all refreyned by
 siknes or by malefice of sorcerie or cold drinkes

¶ Paulus !/

[342] ffor what seiþ seint Poule. þe flessch coueiten
 azeint þe ¶ spirit. and þe sprit azeinst þe flessch þei
 bene so contrarie and so striuen þat a man may not
 allway as he wolde [343] ¶ The same seint paul
 aftere his grete penaunce in water and in lond in water
 by nyght. and in day by grete perile and in grete peyne
 in londe and enfamyne and thrust in colde and cloyes.
 & onys scorned almost to þe depe. [344] ȝit seid he
 allas I catiff man. who shal deliuere me from þe prison
 of my catif body [345] And seint Ierom whan he
 longe tym had wōnned in deserte where as he had no
 company. but beestes. wher as he had

¶ Ierominus

no mete but herbes. and watere to his drink. ne no bed /
 but þe naked erpe. for whiche his flessch was blak as an /
 Ethiopen for hete and neighe destroyed for colde [346]
 3it seide he. þe brennyng of lecherie boiled in al
 his body. [347] Wherfore I woote wel sikerly þat þei
 bene desceyued þat saien þat þei ne bene not tempted in
 her body. [348] Witnesse of seynt Iame þe apostel. ¶ *Iacobus* :/
 þat seiþ þat euery wight is tempted in his owne con-
 cupiscence. þat is to say þat euerich of vs haþ matere
 and occasion to be tempted of þe norsshinge of synne
 þat is in his body. [349] And perfor seiþ seint Iohn ¶ *Iohannes*
 þe Euaungelist ¶ 3if þat we seyne þat we be wip-outen *Euaungelista.*/
 synne we disceyuen our self. and troupe is not in vs.

[350] Now shullen 3ee vnderstonde in what manere
 þat synne wexeþ and encreseþ in man. The furst
 þing is þilk norshyng of synne of which I spak
 byforn þilk concupiscens [351] and after
 þat cometh þe subieccion of the deuel. þis is to saye
 the deueles bely þi which he bloweþ in man þe fire
 of concupiscence. [352] ¶ And after þat a man by-
 þenkeþ hym whedere he wil doo or noon þilk þinge
 to which he is tempted [353] and þan if þat a
 man wipstonde and waye Off þe furst entisinge of his
 flessch and of þe feende þan is it no synne And if it
 so be þat he do not soo þan feleþ he anon a flaumbe
 of delite [354] and þan it is good to be ware and to kepe
 hym wel. Or ellis he wil falle anon into consentyng of
 synne and þan wil he do it if he mowe haue tyme
 and space. [355] And / of þis matere seiþ Moyses by ¶ *Moyses* :/
 þe deuel in þis manere. The fende seiþ I wil
 chace and pursue þe man by wicked suggestions
 and I wil hent hym by mouyng or stiringe of
 synne And I wil departe my prise or my prey by de-
 liberacioun. and my lust shal be accomplished by delite
 ¶ I wil drawe my swerde in consentyng. [356] ffor certes
 right as a sweerde departeþ a þinge in twoo peces Right

so consenting^t departeþ god fro man and than
 wil I sclee hym wiþ myn honde in dethe / of synne. þus
 seiþ þe feende [357] ffor certes þan is a man al
 dede in saule and þus is synne conplised by tempt-
 acion by delite and by consentinge and þan is
 synne cleped ¹aūuiel //

[¹ ū for ct or ce]

[358] ffor soþe synne is in two maners / eiper
 it is venial synne or dedly synne. ¶ Soþly whan man loueþ
 eny creature more þan Ihesu crist^t our creature þan
 is it dedly synne And venial synne it is if man loue
 Ihesu crist^t lasse þan hym ouzte. [359] for soþ þe
 dede of þis venial synne is ful perilous. ffor it amenuseþ
 þe loue þat^t man shuld haue to god more and more
 [360] And þerfor if a man charge more hym self wiþ mony
 such venyal synnes. certes but^t if it so be þat^t he som-
 tyme discharge hym of hem by shrift^t þei may ful
 lizthly amenuse in hym al þe loue þat^t he haþ to Ihesu
 crist^t [361] and þis scipped venial into dedly
 synne. ffor certes þe more þat^t a man chargeþ his saule
 wiþ venial synnes. þe more is he enclyned to falle in
 dedly synne [362] And þerfor lat^t vs nat^t be negligent^t to
 discharge vs of venyal synnes. ffor þe prouerbe seiþ
 þat^t mony smale makeþ a grete. [363] And harken
 þis ensample A grete wawe of the See commeþ somtyme
 wiþ so grete a violence þat^t it drenchep þe shippe
 and þe same harme doon somtyme þe smale dropes
 of water þat^t entreþ þorgh a litel creues into þe
 thorrok and into þe botme of þe shipp. if men be so
 necligent^t þat men ne ²discharge hem not^t by tyme
 [364] And þerfore al þouze þere be difference bytwixe
 þise twoo causes of drenching^t. algates þe ship is
 dreint^t [365] ¶ Riȝt so fareþ it somtyme of dedly
 synne and of annoyous / venyal synnes whan þei
 multiplie in a man so gretly þat^t þilk worldly þingges
 þat^t he loueþ þorgh which he synnep venyally is
 as grete in his hert^t as þe loue of god or more [366]

And þerfor þe loue of euery þinge þat is not bysette in god ne doon principaly for goddes sake al þof a man loue it lasse þan god. 3it is it venyal synne. [367] And dedly synne whan þe loue of eny þinge. weieþ in þe hert of a man as moche as þe loue of god. or more [368] more dedly synne as seiþ seint Austyn. ¶ *Augustinus* is whan man turneþ his hert fro god which þat is verrey souereyne bounte þat may nat chaunge. and 3eueþ his hert to a þinge þat may change and flitte. [369] and certes þat is every þinge sauf god only of heuene. ffor soþ is 3if þat a man 3if his loue þe which þat he oweþ al to god wiþ al his hert vnto a creature. certes as moche of loue as he 3eueþ to whiche creature so moche [he] byreueþ fro god [370] and þefore dooþ he synne. ffor he þat is dettour to god ne 3eldeþ not al his dette to god þat is to sayn al þe loue of his hert

[371] ¶ Now siþens a man vnderstondeþ generally which is venyal synne. þan is it conable to tellen of special synnes which þat mony a man parauenture ne demeth hem not synnes ne schryuen hem nat of þe same þingges and 3it napeles þei bene synnes [372] and soþly as clerkes writen þis is to say þat euery tyme þat a man eteþ or drinkeþ more þan suffiseth to þe sustinaunce of his body in certeyn he doþ synne [373] ¶ And eke whan he spekeþ more þan it nedeth. it is synne. eke whan he harkeneth not mekely þe complaynt of þe poore. [374] eke whan he is in hele of body and wil not fast whan opere men fast withouthen cause resonable. Eke whan he selepeþ more þan nedeth or whan he cometh by þilk encheson late to church or to opere workys of charite. [375] Eke whan he vseþ his wiff wiþ-uten souereyne desire of engendrure to honure of god. Or for þe entent to 3elde to his wiff þe dette of his body. [376] Eke whan he wil not visite þe seke or þe prisoners when he maye.

Eke if he loue wiff or child^r or eny worldely
 ping^r more þan reson requireþ. Eke if he flatere or
 blaundiss^h more þan hym ouzt^r for eny necessite./
 [377] ¶ Eke if he amenuse or wiþdrawe þe almesse of
 þe poor./ ¹¶ Eke if he apparailleþ his mete more
 deliciously þan nede is. or ete it^r to hastely by licourous-
 nesse [378] ¶ Eke if he tale vanytees at^r þe churche or
 at^r goddes *seruise*. or þat^r he be a talker of ydel wordys
 of foly or of vilanye. for he shal ȝeelde accountes of
 it^r at þe day of dome [379] ¶ Eke whan he bihotēþ
 or assureþ to done þingges þat^r he may not perfourme
 ¶ Eke whan þat^r by liȝtnesse of foly [he] mysseieþ
 or scorneþ his neighbour [380] ¶ Eke whan he haþ eny
 wikked suspeciō of þinge þer he ne wote of it^r no soþ-
 fastnesse [381] ¶ Thise / þinges and moo wiþ-out^r nombre
 ¶ *Augustinus*. bene synnes as seiþ seynt Austyne

[382] ¶ Now shul men vnderstonde þat^r al be it^r soo
 þat^r noon / erþely man may eschwe aȝ venial synnes. ȝit^r
 may he refreyn hym by þe brennyng^r loue þat^r he
 haþ to our lord Ihesu crist^r and by preiers and confessioun
 and oþer good werkes so þat^r it^r shal but^r litel greue.
 ¶ *Idem.* [383] ffor as seiþ seynt Austyne. If a man loue god
 in such manere þat^r al þat^r euere he dooþ is in þe
 loue of god / or for þe loue of god verreyly. for he
 brenneþ in þe loue of god. [384] ¶ loke howe moche þat^r
 a drope of watere þat^r falleþ in aournays ful of fuyre
 annoyēþ or greueþ so moche annoyēþ a venyal
 synne vnto a man þat^r is parfit^r in þe loue of Ihesu
 crist^r [385] ¶ Men may also refreyne venyal synne
 by þe receyuyng^e of þe precious body of
 Ihesu crist^r [386] By receyuyng^r eke of holy watere.
 by almes dede. by general confessiō of confiteor
 at^r þe mas. at^r complyne. and by blessing^r of
 bisshoppys and of preestes and by other good werkes.

¶ Sequitur de septem peccatis mortalibus . scilicet
de Superbia . et eorum dependencijs .
circumstancijs & spectantibus . /.

[387] ¶ Now is it bihouely pinge to tellen which bene
dedly synnes þat is to say Caytifnesse
of synnes al þei renne in cooles . but in
dyuers manere ¶ Now bene þei cleped Caytif
for as moche as þei bene cheef . and spryngen of aȝ
oper synnes [388] Of þe roote of þise vij. synnes .
pride is þe general rote of al harmes . ffor of
þis roote springen certeyn braunches . as Ire . Envie .
Accidie . or scloweth . Auarice . or couetise to comon
vnderstondinge . Gloteny . and lechery . [389] And
euerich of þise chief synnes haȝ his braunches and his
twigges . as shal be declared in her chapters folowyng .

[De superbia.]

[390] And þouȝe so be þat no man can / telle vtterly
þe nombre of þe twigges and of þe harmes þat cometh of
pride . ȝit wil I shewe a party of hem as ȝe shul
vnderstonȝ . [391] Ther is Inobelience Auauȝtinge .
Ypocresie . Despite . arroȝgance . Imprudence . Swellinge
of hert . Insolence . Elacioun . Pertinacie . veynglorie :
Inpacience ¶ strif . Contumacie . presumcioun . irreuer-
ence ¶ and mony anoȝer twigge þat I can not declare [392]
¶ Inobedient is he þat disobeieȝ for despite to þe comaun-
ment of god and to his souereyns and to his goostly
fadere [393] ¶ Auauȝtour is he þat boosteȝ of þe harme
or of þe bounte þat he haȝ doon [394] ¶ Ipocresie is
hee þat hideȝ hym to shewe hym such as he is . and
scheweȝ hym suche as he is not [395] ¶ Dispitous
is he þat haȝ disdayne of his neighbours þat is to
sayn of his euen / cristen or haȝ despite to doo þat
hym ouȝt to doo [396] ¶ Arroȝgance is he þat þenkeȝ
þat he haȝ pilk bountes in hym that he haȝ not . or

weneþ þat he shuld haue hem of his desertes. or ellis þat he demeþ þat he be. þat he nys nouȝt [397] ¶ Impudent is he þat for his pride haþ no shame for his synne [398] ¶ Swelling of herte is he. whan a man reioyseþ hym of harme þat he haþ doñ [399] ¶ Insolent is he. þat despiseþ in his Iuggement al oþer folk as to regarde of his valewe and of his connyng. and of his spekinge. and / of his berynge [400] ¶ Elacion is whan þat he ne may neiþer suffre to haue maistrie ne felawe [401] ¶ Impacient is he þat wil not bene ytauȝt ne vndernome of his vices and by strif werreieþ / troupe wittingly and defendeþ his folye [402] ¶ Contymax is he þat þorghē his indignaciō is azeinst euerich auttorite or power of hem þat bene his souereyns [403] ¶ Presumpciō is he. whan a man takeþ an emprise þat hym ouȝt not to doo. or ellis he may it nouȝt doo and þat is called Surquidrie ¶ Irreuerence is whan men done nat honore þer as hem ouȝt to doon. and waiten to be reuerensed [404] ¶ Pertynacy is. whan a man defendeþ his foly. and trusteþ to moche to his owne witte. [405] ¶ Veynglorie is forto haue pompe and delite in temporel heuynesse and glorie hem in worldly estates [406] ¶ Iangelynge is whan a man spekeþ to moche toform folke and clappeþ as a mylle. and takeþ no kepe what he saiþ.

[407] and ȝit is þer a privey spice of pride þat waiteþ first to be halowed or he wil be salwed al be he lasse worþi þan þat oþere is *parauenture* and eke he waiteþ or desireþ to sitte or to goo aboute hym in þe way or kys paxe or bene ensensed or goon / to offringe byform his neighbour [408] and such [.] no gap in the MS.] a proude desire to be magnified / and honoured to form þe puple.

[409] ¶ Nowe beñ þere twoo maners of pride. þat oon of hem is wiþ-in þe herte ¹of man and þat

oper is wiþ-out [410] ¶ Of which soþly þe for
 seide þingges and moo þan I haue seide appertenaunte to
 pride þat is in þe herte of man. And þerto oper spices
 of pride bene wiþ-outen [411] But napelees oon
 of þise spices of pride is signe of þat oper/ Riȝt
 as / þe gay leeueseȝ att tauerns is signe of þe wyne
 þat is in þe salere. [412] As þis is in mony þingges
 as in speche and in countenaunces. And in outrageous araye of
 cloþinge / [413] for certes of þis nad he no synne ¶ *Nota de super-*
 in cloþinge. Crist wold not so sone haue noted and spoke of þe *bia vestimento-*
 cloþinge of þilk riche men in þe gospeȝ [414] ¶ And
 as seiþ seynt Gregore. þat precious cloþing is cou-
 pable for þe derþe of hit. and for his soþnesse and
 for his straungenesse. and for his disgisenesse and for þe super-
 fluite. or for þe inordinate scantnesse [.] [415]

 *no gap in the MS.*

[416] as to þe furst synne þat is in superfluyte of
 cloþinge which þat makeþ it so dere to harme of þe
 puple [417] þat only þe cost of enbrawdyng.
 þe degyse endentyng or barringe. owdyng palyng.
 or bendinge. and semblable waast of cloþinge
 in vanyte [418] But þer is also costlewe furringe in
 her gownes / so moche pownsenyng of Chisels to maken
 holes. so moche daggyng of sheres [419] forþwith
 the Superfluyte in length of þe forseide gownes tral-
 yng in þe dunge and in þe myre on hors and eke on
 foote as wel of man as of womman þat al þilk
 trailyng is verrely as in effecte waasted. consumed. thred-
 bare and roten wiþ dunge raþer þan it is ȝeuen to
 þe poor to grete damage of þe forseid poor folk
 [420] and þat in sondrie wise This is to seyn. þe
 more þat clooþ is waasted þe more mote it cost to
 þe puple for þe scarcenesse [421] ¶ And ferþerouere
 if it so be þat þei wolde ȝeue suche pounsoned and

dagged cloþingⁱ to þe poor folkⁱ. it is not conuenient
 to were for her estate ne suffisaunt to bete her necessite
 to kepe hem from þe desperaunce of þe firmament
 [422] ¶ On þat oper side to speke of þat
 disordynat scanternesse of cloþinge as bene thise Cutted
 scloppes or hanselynes þat þorgh her schortnesse ne
 keuere not þe shameful membres of man to wikked
 entent[423] Alassomme of hem shewen þe Shappe and þe bote
 of þe horrible swollen membres þat semeþ
 like to þe malady of hirnia in the wrappingⁱ of her hosen.
 [424] and eke þe buttokkes of hem þat faren as it were
 þe hynder part of asshe ape in þe ful of þe mone.
 [425] And more ouer the wrecched swollen membres
 þat þei / shewe þorgh disgisinge in departinge of
 her hosen white and ¹rede semeþ þat half hyre shame-
 ful prive membres weren flayne [426] and so be þat
 þei departen her hosen in opere colours as is white
 and blak or white and blewe or blak and rede and so /
 forþ. [427] þan ne semeþ it as by variaunce of coloure
 þat half þe party of his privey membres bene corrupte
 by þe fuyr of seynt Antonye or by cancre or by oper
 such meschaunces [428] ¶ 3it of þe hyndere parte of her
 buttokkes it is ful horrible forto see. for certes in þat
 party of her body þer as þei purgen her stynkinge
 ordure [429] þat foule party shewe þei proudly to þe puple
 in despite of honeste. which honeste þat
 Ihesu crist and his frendes obserued to shewe in his
 lif [430] ¶ Now as to outragious aray of wommen
 god woote þouze þe visage of hem semen
 ful chaaste and debonaire. 3it notefyen þei in her aray of
 a-tyre likerousnesse and pride [431] ¶ I say not þat
 honeste in cloþinge of man and womman is vncon-
 able. but certes þe superfluite or þe disordynate scantite
 of cloþinge is reproueable [432] ¶ Also þe synne of
 anornament or apparaile in þingges þat appertenen
 to ridynge. as into mony delicate horses þat bene holden

for delite. þat þei bene so faire. fatte and costlewe. [433]
 and also mony a vicious knaue Meyntened by
 cause [of hem] and in to curious harnays and in sadels. In
 cropours in peytrellis and brideH keuered wiþ precious
 cloþe and riche barres and plates of golde and of
 siluere. [434] ffor which god seiþ by Sakarye þe ¶ *Zacharia pro-*
 prophete ¶ I wil confounde þe riders of suche horses *pheta*
 [435] ¶ This folk taken litel rewardinge of þe rydinge of
 goddes sone of heuene and of his harnays whan he rode
 vpon an asse and had noon oþer harnayes but
 cloþes of his poor disciples. ne w[e] ne rede not
 þat euere he rode on oþer beest // [436] I speke þus
 of þe synne of superfluyte and not for þe resonable
 honeste whan reson it requireþ. [437] And ferþer /
 ouer certes pride is gretly notefied in holdinge of grete
 mayne whan þei bene of litel profit or of rizt of no profite
 [438] And namely whan þat Mayne is felenous and damag-
 ous to þe puple by hardynesse of hie lordship or by
 wey of office. [439] ffor certus such lordes foylen
 þan her lordshipes to þe deuel of helle whan þei
 sustene þe wikkednesse of her mayne [440] ¶ Or ellis
 whan þise folk of lowe degree. as þilk þat halden
 ostelers. sustene þe þeft for her ostilers
 and þat is in mony ¹maners of disceytes.
 [441] Thilk manere of folk bene þe flies þat folowen
 þe honye Or ellis þe houndes þat folowen þe Careyñ
 which forseide folk stranglen spirituelli her lordshipes.
 [442] ffor which þus seiþ *Dauid* þe prophet ¶ Wikked ¶ *David pro-*
 deþ mote come on þilk lordshipes and [god] ȝeue þat *pheta.*
 þei mote descende a doune into helle. ffor in her
 houses bene iniquitees and shrewdenesses and not god
 of heuene. [443] And certes but if þei done amende-
 ment Rizt so as god ȝaf his blessinge to Pharao by þe
 seruise of Iacob. & to Laban by the seruise of Ioseph.
 Rizt so god wil ȝeue his malison to suche lordshippes
 as to sustene þe wikkednesse of her seruauantes [. . .]

. . . *no gap in the MS.*] [444] ¶ Pride of þe table appereþ
eke ful oft. for certes / riche men bene cleped to feestes
and poor folk ben putte away and rebuked [445]
in excesse of dyuers metes and drynkes and namely
suche manere of bake metes [.
. *no gap in the MS.*] and
of semblabled waast so þat it is / abusion forto þenk [446]
and eke in grete preciousnesse of vesseH and curiosite
of Mynstralcie by þe which a man is stired þe more to
delices of luxurie [447] If so be þat he sette his hert
lesse vpon our lord Ihesu crist certeyn it is a
synne And certeynly þe delites / myȝt bene so grete
in þe caas þat men myȝt liztly falle by hem into
dedly synne [448] ¶ The Espices þat sourden of pride.
soply whan þei sourden of malice ymagyned and avised
and forn cast.. or ellis of vsage bene dedly synnes. it is
no doute. [449] And whan þei sourden by freelte vn-
avised sodeynly and sodeynly wiþdrawe aȝein. aH bene
þei greuous synnes I. gesse þat þei be not
dedly [450] ¶ Nowe myght men aske wherof þat pride
sourdeþ and springeþ. And I say somtyme it
springeþ of þe goodes of nature and somtyme of
þe goodes of fortune. and somtyme of þe goodes of
grace. [451] Certes þe goodes of nature stonden
in þe goodes of body or goodes of soule [452]
Certes þe goodes of body bene hele of body
strengþ delyuernesse. beute. gentrie. ffraunchises
[453] ¶ Goodes of nature of þe saule bene good wiþ
sharpe vnderstondinge sotile engin ¶ vertu material. good
memorie [454] ¶ Goodes of fortune ben riches
hye degrees of lordshipes. preisynges of þe puple [455]
¶ Goodes of grace bene sciences. power to suffre
spiritueH trauaile benygnteas vertuous contemplaciō.
wiþstondyng of temptaciō and semblable þingges
[456] of which forseide goodes certes it is a ful grete
foly a man to priden hym in eny of hem alle. [457]

Now as forto speke of goodes of nature. god wote þat somtyme ¹we han hem in nature as moche to our damage as to our profit [458] As forto speke of helpe of body: certys it passeþ ful liztly. and eke it is ful oft encheson of þe siknesse of þe saule for god wote þe flessch is a ful grete enymye to þe soule And þerfore þe more þat a body is hool þe more be we in perile to falle [459] ¶ Eke forto pride hym in his strenght of body it is an hie foly for certes þe flessch coueiteþ azeinst þe spirit And ay þe more stronge þat þe flessch is: þe sorier may þe saule be [460] ¶ And oueral þis strenght of body and worldly hardnesse causeþ ful often many men to perile and meschaunce [461] ¶ Eke forto pride hym of his gentrie is ful grete foly. ffor often tyme þe gentry of þe body. bygynneþ þe gentry of the saule And eke we bene al of oon fadere and al of oo modere. and al we be of oo nature roten and corrupte boþ riche and poor [462] ¶ fforsoþ a manere gentrie is to preise þat apparailleþ mannys corage wip vertues of moralitees and makeþ hym cristes child [463] ¶ ffor tresteþ wel þat ouer what man þat synne haþ maistrie he is verrey cherle to synne.

[464] ¶ Nowe bene þere general þingges of gentilnesses. as schewyng of vices or ribawdry and seruage of synne. in worde. in werk. in contenaunce [465] & vsyng vertu. Curtesie. and clenness and to be liberal þat is to sayn / large by mesure. ffor þilk þat passen mesure is foly and synne [466] ¶ A noþer is to remembre hym of bounte þat he of opere folk haþ receyued. [467] Anopere is to be benigne of his sogette. wherfore as seiþ Senek. Ther is no þinge more ¶ Seneca conable to a man of hie estate þan debonaite [468] ¶ And þerfore þise flies þat men / clepen bees whan þei maken her kyng þei chesen oon þat haþ no prikke wherwip he may styng [469]

¶ Anoper is a man to haue a noble hert^t and a diligent to atteyn to hie vertuous þingges [470* *see after 474 and Hengwrt and Petworth MSS.*]

. *no gap in the MS.*]

[471] ¶ Certes also who þat^t prideþ hym in þe goodes of fortune he is a ful grete fool. ffor somtyme is a man a ful grete lord^d by þe morowe! þat^t is a wrecche and a caytif er it^t be nyght^t [472] And somtyme þe [.] *no gap in the MS.*] delites of a man ben cause of þe greuous malady þorgh^h which he dyeth [473] Certes þe commendaciōn of þe puple is somtyme ful fals and ful/ brutile forto trest^t. This day þei preise to morowe þei blame. [474] God woote desire to haue commendaciōn eke of puple haþ caused deþe to mony a bisy man [*470] Now certys a man ¹to pride hym in goodes of grace is eke an outrageous foly for þilk^k ȝiftes of grace þat^t shuld haue turned hym to goodnesse and to medecyne. turneþ hym to venym and to confusiōn as seith seynt Gregor. [475] ¶ Now syþens þat^t so is þat^t ȝe han vnderstonden what is pride. and which bene þe spices of it^t and whennys pride sourdeþ and springeþ

¶ *gregorius*

[*The Remedy against Pride.*]

¶ *Remedium
contra
Superbiam*

[476] Now shal ȝe vnderstonde which is þe remedy aȝeinst^t pride. and þat^t is humilite or mekenesse [477] þat^t is a vertue þorgh^h which a man haþ verrey ¶ knowlecch^h of hym self and holdeþ of hym self no pris ne deynte as in regarde of his desertes consideryng^t euer his freelte [478] ¶ Now bene þer thre maners of humilite. as humilite in hert^t annoþer in mouþ / and þe iij. is in werkes [479] ¶ The humilite of herte is in iiij. maners. þat^t oon is whan a man boldeþ hymself as nouȝt^t worþ by-fore god in heuene. Anoper is whan he despiseþ

noon oþer man [480] ¶ The iij. is whan he rekketh nouȝt þoȝe / men holde hym nouȝt worþ ¶ The iiij. is whan he nys not sory of his humiliaciōn [481] ¶ Also þe humilite of mouþ is in 4 þingges In attemprure speche and in humblesse of speche. And whan he byknoweþ wiþ his owne mouþ þat he is such as hym þenkeþ þat he is in his hert. Anoþer is whan he preiseþ þe bounte of anoþer man and noþengʳ þerof amenuseþ [482] humilite ¶ Eke in werkʳ is in 4. maners. The furstʳ is whan he putteþ oþer men to-forn hym. The secounde is to chese þe lowestʳ place oueraȝ The iij. is gladly to assentʳ to good counsaile [483] ¶ The 4. is gladly to stonde to þe awardʳ of his souereyn or of hym þat is hier in degre Certeyn þis is a grete werkʳ of humilite.

¶ **De Peccato. Inuidie.**¶ *De inuidia* ! /

[484]
Aftere pride wil I speke of þe foule synne of envie which þat is as by þe wordʳ of þe philisophre sorow of oþere mannys prosperite And aftere þe word of seynt Austyne. itʳ is sorowe of oþer mennes wele and Ioie of oþer mennys harme [485] ¶ This foule synne is platly aȝeinst þe holy goostʳ. al be it so þat euery synne be aȝeinst þe holy goostʳ. ȝitʳ for as moche as bounte apperteneþ proprely to þe holy goostʳ. and envie commeþ proprely of malice þerfore is proprely aȝenistʳ þe bounte of þe holy goostʳ [486] ¶ Now haþ malice ij. spices. þat is to sayn hardnes of herte. And wikkednesse or ellis þe flessħ of a man is so blynde þat he ʳconsidereþ notʳ þat he is in synne [. *no gap in the MS.*] which is þe hardnesse of þe deueħ [487] ¶ Thatʳ oþere spice of envie is whan þat a man / werreþ troupe whan þat he wote þat itʳ is troupe. And eke whan þat he werreieþ þe grace of þat god haþ ȝeue to his

neizboure. and al þis is by envie [488] Certes þan is envie þe worst synne þat is. ffor sobly al oþer synnes bene somtyme azein oo special vertue [489] But certes envie is azeinst alle vertues and of alle goodnesses for it is sory of alle bountes of neighbour. and in þis manere it is dyuers from alle maner synnes. [490] ffor wel vnneþes is þer eny synne þat it ne haþ somme delite in hym self sauf only envie þat euer haþ in [hym]self anguyssh and sorowe [491] ¶ The spices of envie bene þise. þer is furst sorowe of oþer mennys goodnesse and of her prosperite [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] is kyndely matere of Ioye. þan is enuye a synne azeinst kinde. [492] ¶ The seconnde spice of envie is Ioie of oþer mennys harme. [.] . . . *no gap in the MS.*] [493] Of þis seconnde spice comþeþ bakbitynge [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] or detraccion and þat haþ ij. spices as thus: ¶ Somme man preiseþ his neizbour by a wikked entent. [494] for he makeþ alway a wikked knotte at the last ende. alwey he makeþ a but at þe last ende. þat is digne and more blame than worþe is al the plesinge [495] ¶ The seconnde spice is þat if a man be good and doþ and saip a þinge to good entent þe bakbiter wil turne al þe goodnesse vp so down to his schrewde entent [496] ¶ The iij. is to amenuse þe bounte of his neizboure [497] ¶ þe .iij. spice of bakbityng is þis. þat if men speke goodnesse of a man wil þe bakbiter sayn parfay such a man 3it is bette þan he in dispreysinge of hym that men preise [498] ¶ The .v. spice is forto consent gladly harken þe harme þat men speken of oþer folk. þis synne is ful grete and ay encreseþ after þe wikked entent of þe bakbiter [499] ¶ aftere bakbitynge comþeþ grucchyng or murmuraunce and somtyme it springeþ of inpacience azeinst god and somtyme azeinst man

[500] Azeinst^t god it^t is whan a man gruccheth azeinst
 þe peyn of helle or azeinst^t pouert^t or losse of cateñ
 or azeinst reyne or tempest^t or ellis gruccheþ þat^t shrewes
 han prosperite. or ellis good men han ad-
 uersite. [501] and alle thise þingges shuld men suffre
 paciently. for þei comen by the riztful Iuggement^t and
 ordinaunce of god [502] ¶ Somtyme ¹commeþ grucchinge of
 auarice as Iudas grucched azeinst þe Mawdelene whan
 she ennoynted þe hede of oure lorde Ihesu crist^t wiþ her
 precious oynement^t [503] This maner of murmur^t is such
 as whan men grucchen of goodnesse and þat^t men selue
 done er þat^t oþer folk doon of her owne Cateñ [504]
 ¶ Somtyme commeþ murmur of pride / as whan symon
 þe phirysse grucched azeinst Maudeleyn. whan
 she approched to Ihesu crist^t and wepte at^t his fete for her
 synnes. [505] And somtyme it^t sourdeþ to
 envie whan man diskeuereþ a mannys harme þat^t was
 pryvey or bereþ hym / on honde þinge þat^t is fals [506]
 ¶ Murmur^t eke is oft^t amonges seruauentes þat^t grucchen
 whan her souereynes bidden / hem to doon leeful þingges.
 [507] and for as moche as þei dure not^t openly say nay. ne wiþ-
 saye the comaundementz of her souereyn. 3it^t wil þei saye
 harme and grucche and murmure priuely for verrey
 despise. [508] which wordes men clepe þe deuels
 Pater noster. Thou3e so be þat^t þe deuæl had
 neuere Pater noster. but^t þat^t folk^t 3euen it^t such
 a name. [509] Somtyme it^t commeþ of Ire or
 of prive hate þat^t norssheth rancour^t in hert^t as afterward^t
 I shal declare. [510] þan commeþ eke bitternesse of
 hert^t þorgh^t which bitternesse euery good dede of his
 nei3bour^t semeþ to hym bitter^t and vnsauery [511]
 Than comeþ discord þat^t vnbyndeþ al maner
 of frendship Than comeþ scornynge of [.
 no gap in the MS.] his nei3-
 bour^t al doo he neuer so wel [512] ¶ Than comeþ
 accusinge as whan a man sekeþ occasion to annoyen his

neighbour' which þat is like þe craft of þe deuel
 þat waiteþ boþ nyȝt and day to accusen vs alle
 [513] ¶ Than commeth malignite þorgh which a man
 annoyeth his neighbour' prively if he may [514] And if he
 noȝt ne may algate his wikked wille ne shal not wante.
 as forto brenne his hous prively. or enpoysen or scleen /
 his beestes and semblable pingges

¶ *Remedium contra Inuidiam* [from the margin]

[515] ¶ Now wil I speke of þe remedie azeinst þis foule
 synne of Envie ¶ first is þe loue of god
 principal and louyng of hym self and of his neighbour. ffor
 soþly þat oon ne may not be wipouten þat
 oþer [516] And trust wel þat in þe name of þi
 neighbour' þou shalt vnderstonde þe name of þi
 broþer ffor certes al we han oo fader fleshly. and oo
 Modere ¹that is to say Adam and Eve and eke oo fadere
 spirituel þat is to say god of heuene [517] Thine
 neȝboure art þou holden forto louen And willen hym al
 goodnesse and þerfore seiþ god loue þine neȝbour' as
 þine self þat is to say to saluacioñ boþ of lif and of
 saule [518] And more ouer þou shalt loue hym in
 word and benigne amonesynge and chastisynge
 and conforte hym in his anoyes and prey for hym wip
 al þine hert [519] ¶ And in dede þou shalt loue hym
 in such wise þat þou shalt done to hym in charite
 as þow woldest men did to þine owne persone.
 [520] & þerfore þow shalt not done hym no damage
 ne wikked worde ne harme in his body ne in his catel
 ne in his saule by entising of wikked ensample. [521]
 þow shalt not desiren his wif ne noon / of his pingges
 ¶ Vnderstonde eke þat in þe name of þi neȝboure his com-
 prehended his enemye. [522] Certes a man shal loue his
 enemye for þe comaundmentz of god And soþely þi
 frende shalt þou loue in god. [523] I say þine
 Enemye shalt þou loue for goddis sake by his comaunde-

ment^t. ffor if it were reson þat^t man shuld hate his enemye. forsoþ god wold^t not^t receyue vs to his loue þat^t bene his enemyes [524] azeinst^t iij manere of wrongges þat^t his enemye doþ to hym he shal do þre þingges as þus. [525] Azeinst hate and rancour of hert^t he shal loue hym in hert^t. Azeinst^t chidyng and wikked wordes. he shal prey for his enemye. Azeinst^t þe wikked dede of his enemye he shal doon hym bounte [526] ffor crist^t seip. Loueþ ȝoure enemyes and preieþ for hem þat^t spekeþ ȝou harme And eke for hem þat^t ȝou chasen and purswen and doth^t bounte to hem þat^t yow haten ¶ Loo þus comaundeþ vs our lord Ihesu crist^t to doo to oure enemyes. [527] ffor soþly nature dryueþ vs to loue our frendes. And parfay oure enemyes han more nede to loue þan our frendes. and þei þat^t more nede haue certes to hem shal men doo goodnes. [528] and certes in þilk^t dede haue [we] remembraunce of þe loue of Ihesu crist^t þat^t deyed for his enemyes. [529] And in as moche as þilk^t loue is þe more greuous to perfourme so moche is more grete þe merite And þerfore the louyng^t of our enemye haþ confounded þe venyme of þe deueñ. [530] ffor riȝt^t as þe deuel is discomfited by humilite riȝt^t so is he wounded to the deep by þe loue of oure enemye [531] Certes þan is loue þe medecyne þat^t chaseth out þe ve¹nym of Envie fro mannys herte [532] The spices of þis pas shullen be more largely declared in her chapters folowinge

¶ **De Ira:** / [*from the margin*]

[533]

Aftere Envie wil I declare þe synne of Ire ffor soþly who þat^t haþ Enuye vpon his neizbour^t anon comonly he wil fynde hym matere of wreth^t in worde or in dede azeinst^t hym to whom he haþ envie [534] And as wel commeþ Ire of pride

as of enuye. ffor soply he þat is proude or envious
is liztly wroop

[535] This synne of Ire aftere þe descriuynge of
¶ *Augustinus* seint Austyne is wikked wiþ to bene auenged. by
worde or by dede || [536] Ire aftere þis Philisophre is
þe veruent blood of man yquykke in his hert þorgh
which he wil / harme to hym þat he hateþ. [537] ffor
certes þe hert of man. by eschawfynge and moovinge of
his blood waxeþ so trouble þat he is out of all
Iugement of resoun [538] ¶ But 3e shullen / vnderstonde
þat Ire is in two maners þat oon of hem is good and
þat oþer is wikked [539] The good is by
Ialousie of goodnesse þorgh þe which a man is wroþe
wiþ wikkednesse [. . . . *no gap in the MS.*] And þer-
¶ *sapiens.* for seith þe wise man þat Ire is bette þan play [540]
This Ire is wiþ debonairete and it is wroop wiþ-
outen bitternesse not wroþ azeinst þe man but
wroop wiþ þe mysdede of þe man. As seiþ þe
prophete david **Irascimini & nolite peccare** [541] ¶ Now
vnderstonde þat wikked Ire is in two maners
þat is to seyn sodeyn Ire or hastif Ire wiþ-outen
avisement and consentynge of his resoñ [542] þe menyng
and þe sens of þis is þat þe resoñ of a man ne con-
sent not to þilk sodeyn Ire and þan is it venial
[543] An oþer Ire is ful wikked þat commeþ of
vilany of herte avised and cast bfore wiþ wikked wiþ
to do vengeaunce and þerto his reson consenteþ. and
so soply þis is dedly synne [544] ¶ This Ire is so dis-
plesaunt to god þat it troubleþ his hous and chaseþ þe
holy goost out of manne saule [.
.
.
no gap in the MS.] [545] and putte in hym þe lik-
nes of þe deuē and bynymmeþ þe man fro god þat
is his riȝtful lorde [546] This Ire is a ful grete
plesaunce to þe deuē. for it is þe deuels forneys
þat is eschauffed wiþ þe fuyre of helle. [547] ffor certes

as fuyre is more myȝty to distroye erply
 þingges þan another element Riȝt so Ire is myȝty to
 distroye aȝ spirituel þingges. [548] Loke howe þat
 fire of smale gledys that bene almost dede vnder asshen
 wollen quyke aȝein whan þei bene touched wip
 bremstone Riȝt soo Ire wil euermore quicke aȝein
 whan it is touched by pride þat is kered in
 mannys hert. [549] ffor certes fire may not come
 out of no þinge but if it were first in þe same þing
 naturelly as fire is drawen out of þe flyntes wip steele
 [550] And riȝt so as pride is often matere of Ire
 Riȝt so is rancoure norssher and keper of þe [551] Ther is
 a maner of tree as seiþ seint Isodere þat whan men ¶ Isodere
 maken fire of þilk tree and keuereþ þe cooles of it with
 asshen soþly þe fuyre of it wil last last al a ȝere or more
 [552] ¶ And riȝt so fareþ it of rancour whan he is
 onys conceyued in þe hertis of somme men. Certeyne it wil
 last perauenture from oon / Ester day til anoþer
 day or more [553] But Certes þilk man
 is ful ferre from þe mercy of god al þilk while

[554] ¶ In þis forsaide deuels fornays þer foorgen. thre
 shrewes Pride þat aȝ bloweþ and encreseþ
 þe fire by pride and wikkeð wordes. [555] Than
 stant Envie and holdeþ þe hote yren vpon þe hertes
 of man wip a peire of longe tongges of longe Rancour
 [556] and þan stant þe synne of contynnyng or
 strif and þeest and batereþ and forgeþ by vileyns
 reprouyngges [557] ¶ Certes þis cursed synne annoyeth
 boþe þe man hym self and eke to his neighbour.
 ffor soþly al ¶ most al þe harme þat eny man
 doþe to his neighboure cometh of wrath. [558] ffor
 certes outrageous wraþe doþ aȝ þat euer the
 deuyl hym comaundeþ for he ne spareþ neiþer
 crist ne his swete modere [559] And in his out-
 rageous angre & Ire allas allas ful mony one
 at þat tyme feleþ in his / herte ful wikkedly

bop of crist and of aH his halowes. [560] Is
 not þis a cursed vice [.
 *no gap in the MS.*] his debonaire
 wif espritueH þat shulde kepen his saule [561]
 Certes it bygynneþ eke goddys dieu lordship and
 þat is mannys saule and þe loue of his neighbours
 It striveþ eke alday azeinst þe troupe. It reueþ hym þe
 quiete of his hert and subuertep his saule

[562] ¶ Of Ire comen þise stynkinge engendrures.
 ffirst hate þat is olde wrepe discord þorgh which
 a man forsakeþ his olde frende þat he haþ loued ful
 longe. [563] and þan comen werre and eury
 manere of wronge þat man doth to his neighbour in
 body or in cateH [564] ¶ Of þis cursed. ¹synne of Ire
 comen eke mannys slaughtere And vnderstondeþ wel þat
 homycide þat is mannys sclauztere is in dyuers wise Some
 manere of Omycide is esprituel and somme is bodely. [565]
 Spirituel mannesslaughter is in vj. þingges ffirst by
 hate as seiþ seint Iohn. That he þat hateþ his broþer
 is an homicide. [566] [Homicide] Is eke by bakbytinge. of
 whiche bakbiters seiþ salomon. þat þei han. twoo
 swerdes with which þei scleen her neighbours. ffor
 soply as wikked is to bynyme his good name as
 his liff [567] ¶ Omycide is eke in zeuyng of wikked
 counsaile by fraude as forto zeue / counsaile to array
 wikkedly custumes and taliages [568] Of which seiþ
 Salomon ¶ lyoun rorynge. bere hungry bene like to
 cruel lordshippes in wipholding or a-breggyng of þe
 Shepe or þe hire of þe wages of [.
 *no gap in the MS.*] þe almesse of poor folk
 [569] ffor which þe wise man seiþ ffeðeþ hym þat
 almost dieþ for hunger. for soply but þou fede hym
 þou sleest hym. and alle þise bene dedly synnes [570]
 Bodyly mansclaunter is whan þou sleest hym wiþ þi
 tunge in opere manere as whan þou comaundest to
 sclene a man or ellis zeuest hym counsaile to scleen a

¶ Iohannes.

¶ Salomon

¶ Idem

man. [571] Mansslaughtere in dede is in foure maners
 That oon is by lawe Riȝt as a Iustice dampneþ
 hym þat is copable to þe deep But lat þe Iustise
 be ware þat he do it riȝtfully. and þat he do it not
 for delit to spille bloode. but for riȝtwis-
 nesse. [572] Anopere homycide is doon for
 necessite as whan a man scleeþ anoper in his defendaunt
 and þat he may noon oper wise eskape for his
 owne depe. [573] But certeynly if he may eskape wiþ-
 out slaughte of his aduersary and sclepe hym
 he doþ synne and he shal bere penaunce as for dedly
 synne [574] ¶ Eke if a man by caas or auenture shete
 an arowe or cast a stone wiþ whiche he scleeþ a man
 it is homycide [575] ¶ Eke if a womman by negligence
 ouerleip her childe in sclepinge it is homycide. and
 dedly synne. [576] Eke whan a man distourbeþ con-
 cepcion of a childe or makeþ a womman barayn
 by drynkinge of venemous herbes þorgh which she may
 not conceyue or scleeþ a childe by drynkes or
 ellis putteþ in certeyn material pingges in her secrete
 places to sle þe child [577] or ellis doþ vnkinde
 synne by which man or womman shedeth his nature
 in manere or in place þer as a childe may not be con-
 ceuyed or ellis if a womman haþ conceuyed and hurte
 he[r] self and scleeþ her childe ȝit is it homycide
 [578] ¶ What say we eke of wommen þat Mordren
 her children for drede or worldly shame certes an
 horrible homicide [579] Homicyde is eke if a mon ap-
 procheþ to a womman by desire of leccherie þorgh which þe
 childe is pershed or ellis smyteþ a womman witingly
 þorgh which she leseþ her childe aȝ þise bene homy-
 cides and horrible dedly synnes / [580] ȝit commeþ þerof
 Ire and mony moo synnes as wel in worde as in þouȝt and
 in dede as he þat aretteþ vpon god or blameþ god
 of þinge of which he is hym self gilty or dispiseþ
 god and aȝ his halowes as done þise cursed hasardours

in dyuers cuntrees. [581] þis cursed synne doon þei
 whan þei felen in her hert^t ful wikkedly of god and
 his halowes [582] ¶ Also whan þei treten vnreuerently
 þe sacrament^t of þe autere Thilk^t synnes is so grete
 þat^t vnnepes may it^t be relested but^t þat^t mercy of
 god passeþ his werkes it^t is so grete and he so
 benigne. [583] Than commep of Ire attrý Angre
 whan a man [is] sharpely amonased. in his shrift to for-
 lete synne [584] þan wil he be angry and
 answeere hokerly and angerly or defende and excuse
 his synne by vnstedfastnesshe of his flessch or ellis he
 did it^t forto holde company with wise felawes. or
 ellis he seiþ þe fende entised / hym [585] or ellis he
 did it^t for his zouþe. or ellis complexioñ is so
 corragious that^t he may not^t forbere. or ellis it^t is his
 destanye as he seiþ vnto a certeyn age. or ellis he
 seiþ hit^t commep hym of gentillesse of his owncestres
 and semblable þingges [586] ¶ Alle þise manere folkes
 so wrappen hem in her synnes þat^t þei ne wol not^t
 delyuere hem self. Soply no wiȝt þat^t excusel
 hym wilfully of his / synne may not^t be delyuered of her
 synne til þat^t he mekely byknowep his synne [587]
 ¶ Aftere þat^t commep sweringe þat^t is expresse
 aȝeinst^t þe comaundement^t of god. and þis bifalleþ oft^t
 of anger and of Ire [588] God seiþ þou shalt not^t
 take þe name of þi lorde god in veyn nor in ydeñ ¶ Also
 our lorde Ihesu crist^t seiþ by þe word^t of seynt^t Mathewe
 [. *no gap in the MS.*] [589] Ne wil ȝe
 not^t swere in al manere. Neiper by
 heuene for it^t is goddes trone. ne by þe erþe for it^t is þe
 benche of his fete ¹ne by Ierusalem for it^t is þe cite of
 a grete kyng Ne by þine hede. for þou maist^t not^t
 make an heer white ne blak^t. [590] But^t seiþ by ȝour^t
 ȝee ȝee. and nay nay and what^t þat^t is more
 it^t is eueñ þus seith crist^t [591] ¶ ffor cristes sake ne swereþ
 not^t so synfully in dismembringe of crist^t by soule

¶ Textus

¶ Mathews

herte bonys and body for certes it semep þat 3e
þenk þat þe cursed Iwes ne dismenbred / hym nouȝt
ynouȝe þe precious persone of crist But 3e dismembren
hym more [592] And if so be þat þe lawe com-
pelle 3ou to / swere þan rewleþ 3ou after þe lawe of
god in 3oure sweryng^t as seiþ Ieremye 4^{to}. capitulo.

[. no gap in the MS.] Thou ¶ Ieremie quarto
capitulo
shalt^t kepe thre condicions. Thou shalt^t swere in troupe

in doom and in riȝtwisnesse [593] This is to sayn ¶ Turabis in
veritate in iudicio
et iustitia [same
side-note and
quotation in the
Sompnour's
Tale. MS. leaf
219, back]
þou shalt^t swere soop^t. for euery lesinge is aȝeinst^t crist^t
ffor crist^t is verrey troupe And þenk wel þis þat^t
euery grete swerer not^t compelled lawfully to swere
þe wounde shal not^t departe fro his hous þe whiles he

vseth such^t vnlieful sweringe [594] ¶ Thow shalt^t swere
eke in doom whan þow arte constrayned by þi domes
man to witnesse þe troupe [595] ¶ Eke þou shalt^t
not^t swere for envie ne for fauour^t ne for mede
but for riȝtwisnesse for declarynge to
worship of god and in helping of þine euen-
cristen [596] And þerfore euery man þat^t
takeþ goddis name in ydel or falsely swereþ wiþ
his mouþ or ellis takeþ on hym þe name of crist^t
to be called a cristen man and lyueþ aȝeinst^t cristes
lyuyyng^t and his techinge alle þei taken goddes name
in ydeþ [597] ¶ Loke eke what^t seiþ seiñt^t Petere ¶ Petrus: /

Actus 4^o. Non est aliud nomen sub celo. Ther
nys noñ oþer name seiþ seiñt^t Peter vnder heuene yȝeuen
to men in which^t þei mote be saued þat^t is to
seyñ but in þe name of Ihesu crist [598] ¶ Take kepe eke
how þat^t þe precious name of Ihesu crist^t as seiþ seiñt^t paule
Ad philipenses 2^o In nomine Ihesu &cetera. That^t in þe ¶ Ad philipenses
name of Ihesu euery knee of heuently creatures or
erply or of helle shuld bowen for it^t is so hize
and so worshipfuþ that^t þe cursed fende in helle shuld
tremblee to heren it^t nempned [599] than
semeþ it^t þat^t men þat^t sweren / so horribly by his

blessed name þat þei dispisen it more boldely
þan did þe cursed Iwes. or ellis þe deuel þat
trembleþ whan he hereþ his name

[600] ¶ Now certes siþens þat swerynge but it be
doo al lawfully is holy defended me The wors is
forswering falsly. and ȝit nedelee.

[601] What say we eke of hem þat deliten hem
in swerynge and holden it a gentrye or a manly dede to
swere grete oþes And what of hem þat of verrey
vsage ne cessen not to swere grete oþes al þe cause
not worþ oon strawe Certes þis is horrible synne [602]
swering sodeynly wiþ-out avisement is eke a
synne [603] ¶ But lat vs nowe goo to þilk horrible and cursed/
swerynge of adiuracioñ and coniuracioñ as doñ þise fals en-
chauntours or nigromanciens in basyns ful of water or
in a briȝt swerde. in a serele or in a fuyre or in a shulder
bone of a shepe [604] I can not seyn but þat þei
doon cursedly and ¶ dampnably aȝeinst crist and al þe
feip of holy church.

[605] What say we of hem þat byleuen on
dyuynales as by fliȝt or by noys of briddes or of beestes or of
sorte by Egrymaunce. by dremes. by chirking
of doores by gnewyng of rattyte or crakinge of howses
and such maner wrecchednesse [606] Certes al þis
thyng is defended by god and by holy church for //
whiȝ þei bene acursed to þei come to amendement
þat on such filþe setten her byleue [607] ¶ Charmes
for woundes and maladies of men or of beestes if þei
taken eny effecte it bene perauenture þat god suffreþ
it for folk shuld ȝeue þe more faip and reuerence to
his name

[608] ¶ Now wil I speke of lesyngges whiȝ gener-
ally is fals signyfiaunt or woord in entent to deceyuen
his euen cristen [609] ¶ Some lesing is of whiȝ
þer commeth noon auauntage to no wiȝt and somme lesyng
turneth to þe ease eipre profit of a man and to

damage of a noþer man [610] A noþere lesing is for to saue his liff or his cateH. Anoper lesyng commep of delit^t forto lye In which delite þei willen / forge a longe tale and peynte it wip aH circumstannces. wher alle þe grounde of þe tale is fals [611] ¶ Some lesyng commep for he wil sustene his word^t and some lesing^t commeth of recchelessnesse with-ouen avisement^t and Semblable þingges

[612] ¶ Lat^t vs nowe touche þe vice of flaterie which ne commep not gladly but for drede or for coueityse. [613] flattery is generally wrongfuH presinge. flaterers bene þe deuel norrees þat norsheþ his chyldren wip mylk of losengry. [614] ffor soþ seiþ Salomon: ¶ Salomon. þat flaterie is wors þan detracciōn. ffor. somtyme detracciōn makeþ an haunteyn man be þe more humble. ffor he dredeþ detracciōn But certes flaterye makeþ a man to vn^hhaunten his hert^t and his countenance [615] ¶ flaterers bene þe deuels Enchaunters for þei make a man to wene of hym self be like þat he nys not like [616] Thei bene like Iudas þat bytraied [. *no gap in the MS.*] a man to selle hym to his enemye þat is to þe deueH [617] ¶ flaterers bene þe deuels Chapileyns þat synggen euer Placebo [618] I rekken flaterye in þe vices of Ire. ffor oft tyme if a man be wrooþ wip a-noþere þan wil he flater some wiȝt to susteyne hym in his quereH

[619] Speke we now of such cursyng^t as commep out of yrous herte ¶ Malisouñ may be seide generally Euery maner power of harme such cursyng^t byreueþ man fro þe regne of god. as seiþ seynt^t paule [620] And oft ¶ Paulus. / tyme such cursing^t wrongfully retourneth aȝein to hym þat curseþ as a brid retourneþ aȝein to his owne nest^t [621] And ouer al þing^t men ouȝt^t eschewe to curse her children and ȝeue to þe deueH her engendrure as ferforþ as in hem is ¶ Certes it is a grete perile and grete synne.

[622] Lat^t vs þan speke of chidyng^e and reproche
which bene grete woundes in mannys hert ffor
þei vnsewen þe semes of ffrendship in mannys hert^t.

[623] ffor certes vnneþes may a man pleyndly ben
accorded wiþ hym þat^t haþ hym openly revelyed and
reproued and disclaundred þis is a ful grisly synne

¶ *Textus.*/

¶ And crist^t seiþ in þe gospeþ [624] ¶ And take kepe now
þat^t he þat^t reproueþ his neighbour eiþere he reproueþ
hym by som harme of peyne þat^t he haþ on his body.
as meseþ croked harlot^t or by some synne þat^t he doþ

[625] ¶ Now if he reproue hym by harme of peyn
þan turneþ þe prophete to Ihesu Crist^t. ffor peyne is
sent^t by þe riȝtwis sonde of god and by his suffraunce
be it^t meselrye or maym or maladie [626] and if he

reproue hym vncharitably of synne as þou hullour þou
dronklewe harlot^t and so forþ þat^t apperteneþ þat^t
to þe roiouysyng^t of þe deuēþ þat^t euer haþ ioye
þat^t men doñ synne [627] ¶ And certes chyding^t may

not^t come but^t of vileyns hertes. ffor after þe
habundaunce of þe hert^t spekeþ þe mouþ ful oft^t
[628] And ȝe shullen vnderstonde þat^t loke by eny way
whan eny man shal chastise a noþer þat^t he be ware

fro chydyng^t or reprouyng^e ffor trewly but^t he be
ware he may ful listly quykken þe fyre of angre and of
wretth which þat^t he shuld^t quenche. and perauenture
sleepe^t 1him þat^t he myȝt^t chastise wiþ benyg-

¶ *Salomon.*/

nyte [629] ¶ ffor as seiþ Salomon ¶ The amyable tunge is
þe tree of lif þat^t is to saye of lif spirituel. and
a disselaue tunge sleepeþ þe spirit^t of hym þat^t
reproueþ and eke of hym þat^t is reproued [630] ¶ Loo

¶ *Augustinus.*/

what^t seiþ seint^t Austyn ¶ Ther nys no þinge ylike þe
deuels child^t as he þat^t oft^t chideþ ¶ Seynt Poule seiþ

¶ *Paulus.*/

eke ¶ I þe Seruaunte of god by-houēþ not^t to chide. [631] and
howe þat^t chydyng^t is a vileyns þinge bytwix al
manere folk. ȝit^t is it^t certes most^t vnconnable
by-twix a man and his wiff. for þer nys neuer rest^t

¶ And þerfor seiþ Salomon ¶ An hous þat is vnkeuered ¶ Salomon.
 in reyn and dropping^t and a chidyng^t wiff bene ylike
 [632] a man þat is in a dropping hous in mony
 places. they hee eschewe þe dropping^t in oon place
 it droppeþ on hym in a noþer place ¶ So fareþ it be
 a chiding wiff. but she chide hym in oo place she
 wol chide hym in anoþer [633] And þerfore better is ¶ *Idem.*
 a morsel of brede with Ioye þan an hous ful of
 delices wiþ chidyng^e seiþ Salomon [634] ¶ And
 poule seiþ O ȝe wommen be ȝe subiectys to ȝoure ¶ *Paulus.*
 husbondes as byhoueþ in god. And ȝe men loueþ ȝoure
 wyues. Ad colonisenses .3^o.

[635] ¶ Afterward speke we of scornynge which is a
 wikked synne And namely whan he scorneþ a man for
 his good werkes. [636] for certes suche scorners
 faren like þe foule tode þat may not endure to
 smeft þe swete sauour of þe vyne what it
 florsshēþ [637] ¶ Thise scorners bene partyng^t felawes
 wiþ þe deueþ. for þei han Ioie whan þe deuel
 wynneþ and sorowe whan he leseþ [638] ¶ They bene
 aduersaries to Ihesu crist for þei haten þat he loueþ
 þat is to say sauacioñ of saule

[639] ¶ Speke we nowe of wikked counsaile. ffor he þat
 wikked counsaile ȝeueþ is a traitour. ffor he disceyueþ
 hym þat trusteþ in hym Vt Achitofel de Absolonem
 ¶ But napeles ȝit is it wikked counsaile ffirst aȝeinst hym
 self [640] for as seiþ þe wise man Euery fals
 lyuyng^t hap his propre in hym self þat he þat
 wiþt anoy anoþer man he annoyeþ furst hym self.
 [641] And men shullen vnderstonde þat man shal not
 take his counsaile of fals folk ne of to angry folk or
 greuous folk ne of folk þat louen specialy to moche her owne
 profite ne to moch worldly folk namely in counsailling^t
 of saules

[642] ¶ Now commeþ þe synne of hem þat
 maken discorde amanges / folk which is a synne þat

crist^t hateþ vtterly and no wonder is. ffor he deyed
 forto make concorde. [643] And more shame done þei to
 crist^t ¹þan did þei þat^t hym crucified^d ffor god
 loueþ better þat^t frendship be amonges folk^t ¹þan
 he did his owne body þe which he ʒaf for vnitees.
 therfore bene þei likned to þe deuel þat^t euer is
 about^t to make discord^d

[644] ¶ Now commeþ þe synne of double tunge. such
 as speken faire to-fore folk and wikkedly behynde or
 ellis þei / maken semblaunt^t as þouze þei speken of
 good entencioñ or ellis in game and pley and ʒit^t þei
 speke of wikked entent

[645] ¶ Now commeþ bywreying^t of counsaile þorgh^t
 which a man is defamed vnneþes may he restore þe
 damage

[646] ¶ Now commeþ manace þat^t is an open foly ffor
 he þat^t open manaseþ he treteth more þan he may
 performe ful often tyme

[647] ¶ Now commeþ ydel wordes þat^t is wiþ-uten
 profite of hym þat^t spekeþ þe wordes. *and* eke of hym
 þat^t harkeneth þoo wordes // or ellis ydel wordes. ben /
 þoo þat^t bene nedeles or wiþ-uten entent^t of naturel
 profite. [648] and al be it^t þat^t ydel wordes be som-
 tyme venial synne ʒit^t shuld^d men doute hem. for we
 shullen ʒeue rekenyng^t of hem to-fore god

¶ Salomon

[649] ¶ Now commeþ Iangelynge þat^t may not^t come wiþ-
 oute synne. And as seiþ Salomon ¶ It is signe of a-pert^t
 foly [650] and þerfor a philisophre seide whan
 a man asked hym how men shulde plese þe puple.
 And he answerd^d to mony good werkes and speke fewe
 Iangelynggs

[651] ¶ After þis commeþ þe synne of Iapes. þat^t
 bene deuels apes. for þei maken folk to lauze at^t
 her Iaprie as folkes doon at^t þe gaudes of an ape.
 Suche Iapes defendeþ seint^t Poule [652] ¶ Loke how
 þat^t vertuous wordes and hooly conforten hem

þat' travaillen in þe seruise of criste Riȝt' so conforten
þe vileyns words and knakkes of Iapers hem þat'
trauailen in þe servise of þe deueH [653] ¶ Thise bene
þe synnes / þat' comen of þe tunge þat' comen of Ire
and of other synnes

[*Remedies against Ire.*]

[654] ¶ The remedye aȝeinst' Ire is a vertue þat' men
clepen mansuetude þat' is debonairete and
eke a nother vertue þat' men clepe pacience [.
no gap in the MS.]

[655] ¶ Debonairte wiȝdraweþ and refreyneþ
þe styryngges and þe meuyngs of mannys corage in his
hert' and such manere þat' þei ne skippe not' out' by
anger ne by Ire [656] suffraunce suffreþ swetly al
þe annoyaunces and þe wrongges þat' men doon to a man
outward [657] ¶ Seint' Ierom seiþ þus of debonaire ¶ *Ieronimus*
þat' hit' dooþ noon harme to no wiȝt' ne seiþ for noon
harme þat' men hym done ne sayn He ne eschaungeþ nouȝt'
aȝeinst' his resoñ. [658] This vertue som / ¹somtyme commeþ
of nature ¶ ffor as seiþ þe philisophre. A man is a quyk
þinge by nature. debonaire and treteable by goodnes
But' whan debonairete is enfourmed by grace. it
is þe more worþ

[659] ¶ Pacience þat' is anoper remedye aȝeinst' Ire
is a vertue þat' suffreþ swetely euery mannys goodnesse
and is not' worþ for non harme þat' is doon to hym
[660] ¶ The philisofre seiþ þat' pacience is pilk
vertue þat' suffreþ debonairely aH þe outrages of
aduersite and euery wikked worde. [661] This vertue
makeþ a man like to god. and makeþ hym his
owne dere childe as seiþ crist'. This vertu discomfiteþ
þine enemye And þefore seiþ þe wise man If þou
wilt venquyssh þine / ennemye. lerne to suffre [662] And
þou shalt' vnderstonde þat' a / man suffreth four maner

of greuaunce in outward þingges. aʒeinst which foure he mote haue iiij. maners of paciencies./

[663] ¶ The furst greuaunce is of wikked wordes. þilk greuaunce suffreþ Ihesu crist wiþ-outen grucchinge ful patiently whan þe Iwes despised hym and reproueden hym ful oft [664] Suffre þou þefore patiently. ffor þe wise man eke seiþ ¶ If þou stryue wiþ a fool þoughe þe fool be wroþ. or þouze he lauze algate þou shalt haue no rest. [665] That oþer greuaunce outward is forto haue damage of þi cateh ¶ Ther aʒeinst suffred crist ful patiently whan he was dispoilled of al þat he had in this liff and þat nas but his cloþes [666] ¶ The iiij. greuaunce is a man to haue harme in his bodye. and þat suffred crist ful patiently in aȝ his passiō [667] ¶ The iiij. greuaunce is in an outrageous labour in werkes. wherfore I say þat folk þat maken her seruantes to travaille to greuously or out of tyme as in holy days. soþly þei doon grete synne. [668] Here aʒeinst suffred crist ful patiently and taught vs patience whan he bare vpon / his blessed shulder þe crois vpon which he shuld suffre dispitous deep. [669] Here may men lerne to be patient. ffor soþly not oonly cristen men bene patient for þe loue of Ihesu crist and for guerdōn of þe blisse of heuene and of þe blisful liff þat is perdurable But certes þe olde paynyms þat neuere were cristen comenden & vseden þe vertue of pacience

¶ *Philosophus*

[670] A philisophre vpon a tyme þat wold haue beten his disciple for his grete trespase. for which he was gretly ameuēd and brouzt a ʒeerde to scoure þe ¹childe [671] and whan þe childe segȝ þe ʒeerde he seide to his maister what wil ʒe doo. I wil bete þe quod his maistere. for þine correctioun. [672] ffor soþ quod þe childe ʒe ouzt first correcte ʒoure self þat hap lost ʒoure pacience for þe gilt of a childe. [673] ffor soþ quod þe maister al wepinge þu

saigest þe soop. Haue þou þe 3erde my dere sone and correcte me for myn Inpacienc [674] ¶ Of pacienc commeth obedience þorgh which a man is obedien to crist and into alle hem to which he ou3t be obedient in crist [675] and vnderstonde wel þat obedience is parfite whan men doon gladly and hastely wip good hert entierly al þat he shuld do. [676] Obedience / generally is to perfourme þe doctrine of god and of his souereins to whiche hym ou3te to bene obeysaunt in al ri3twisnesse

¶ **De peccato accidie** [*from margin*]

[677]

Aftere þe synnes of Envie I wil speke of þe synne of Accidie. ffor Envie blyndeþ þe hert of a man. And Ire troubleth a man. and accidy makeþ hym hevy þou3tful and wrowe [678] ¶ Envie and Ire maken bitternesse in hert which bitternesse is / modere of accide and bynymeþ hym þe loue of al goodnes þat is accyde þe angwissþ of a trouble hert and seynt Austyne seiþ it is anoye of goodnesse and anoy of harme. [679] / Certes þis is a dampnable synne for it dooþ wronge to Ihesu crist in as moch as he nymeþ þe seruice þat men ou3t to doo Ihesu crist wip al diligence as seiþ salomon / ¶ **Salomon.** / [680] But accide dooþ noon suche diligence He doþ al þing wip anoy and wrawnesse slaknesse and escusaciō and wip dulnesse and vnlust ¶ ffor which þe booke seiþ. Accursed be he þat doþ þe seruise of god negligently [681] Than is accidy ennye to euery estate of man for certes þe estate of man is in þre maners. [682] eiper It is þe estate of Innocence as was þe estate of Adam byforn þat he felle in to synne in which estate he was halden to wirche as in heryng and in adourynge of god [683] ¶ Anoþer estate is þe estate of synful men in which estate men ben halden

to labour in preyng^t to god for amendement^t of her
 [.] *no gap in the MS.*
 synnes [684] ¶ Anoper estate is þe estate of grace in
 which estate he is halden to do werkes of penitence and
 certes to aȝ þise þingges is accidye / enemye and con-
 trary for he loueþ no bysynes at^t aȝ [685] ¶ Now
 certes þis foule synne accidye is eke a ful gret^t enemye
 to þe liflode of þe body for it^t haþ no purvyaunce
¹ageinst^t temporel necessite ffor it^t is for-
 slewþe and for-sluggeþ and distroieþ al good temporels by
 rechelesnesse

[686] The iiij. þinge is þat^t accidie is like hem
 þat^t bene in þe peyne of helle by cause of her sclouþe
 and of her heynesse. for þei þat^t bene dampned bene
 so bounde þat^t þei ne may wel do ne wel
 þenk^t. [687] Of accidy commeþ first^t þat^t a man is
 anoied and encombred to doon eny goodnesse and
 makeþ þat^t god haþ abhomynacioñ of such
 accidye as seith seynt Iohn

¶ *sanctus*
Iohannes.

[688] ¶ Now commeþ sleuth^t þat^t wil not suffre noon
 hardnesse ne no penaunce ffor soþ sclouþe is so
 tendere and so delicate as seiþ Salomon þat^t he wil not
 suffre noon hardnesse ne penaunce and þefore he
 sheendeþ aȝ þat^t he dooþ [689] ageinst^t his roten
 herted synne of accidie and sclouþe shulde men
 exercise by hem self to done good werkes and manly
 and vertuously cacchen corage wel to done þenk-
 yng^t þat^t our lorde Ihesu crist^t quiteþ euery good
 dede be it^t neuere so lite./ [690] Vsage of labour is a
 grete þing^t for it^t makeþ as seiþ Seynt Bernard^t þe
 laborers to haue stronge armes and harde Synewes and
 sclouthe makeþ hem feble and tendere [691] Than commeth
 drede forto bygynne to wirkes ffor
 certes he þat^t is enclyned / to synne hym þenkeþ it^t
 is so grete an emprise forto vndertake to do werkes
 of goodnesse [692] [.]

¶ *Salomon*

¶ *Bernardus*

.

 . . . *no gap in the MS.*] as seiþ Seint^t gregorie.

[693] ¶ Now commep wanhope þat^t is despeire of þe mercy of god þat^t commep somtyme of to mochi outrageous sorowe and somtyme of moche drede ymagynynge þat^t he haþ do so mochi synne þat^t it^t wil not^t auaille hym þouȝe he wolde repent^t hym and forsakesynneanddoongood[694] þorȝe which^t dispeire ordrede he boundenep his hert^t to euery maner synne as seiþ seint^t Austyne [695] ¶ Which dampnable synne if þat^t ¶ *Augustinus* it^t contynue vnto his ende. it^t is cleped synnyng^t in þe holy goost^t [696] This orible synne is so perilous þat^t he þat^t is despeired þer nys no felonye ne no synne þat^t he douteþ for to doo as shewed wel by Iudas [697] Certes þen abouen aȝ synnes is þis synne most^t displeaunt^t to crist^t and most^t aduersarie to crist^t. [698] Soþly he þat^t dispeireþ he is like þe coward^t champion recreaunt^t and seiþ creaunt^t wiþouten nede Allas / alas / nedeles is he recreaunt^t ¹and seiþ creaunt^t ^[1—¹ repeated in MS.] and nedeles / despeired [699] ffor certes þe mercy of god is euer redy to þe penytent. it^t is abouen aȝ his werkis [700] ¶ Allas can a man not^t ²vmbyþenke hym of þe gospel of Luke xv°. Where as crist seiþ þat^t as wel shal ¶ *Luce xxv°.* þer be ioye in heuene vpon a synful / man þat^t dop penytence þan vppon 90. 19. Riȝtful men þat^t [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] neden to penytence [701] ¶ Loke forþer in þe gospell þe Ioye and / þe feestes of þe good man þat^t had lost^t his / sone. Whan his sone wiþ repentaunce was retourned to his fadere. [702] Can / þei not^t remembre hem eke þat^t as seiþ seint^t luca xxiii°. Hou þat^t þe þeef þat^t was honged ¶ *Luce xxii°* besides Ihesu cristes side ¶ Lord remembre on me whan þou comest into þi regne. [703] fforsoȝ seide crist^t to day shalt^t þou be wiþ me in paradys [704] Certes þer nys noon so horrible synne of

man þat it ne may in his lif be destroyed by penytence
 þorgh vertue of þe passioun and of þe deep of crist
 [705] ¶ Allas what nedep man þan to be despeired
 sipens his mercy so redy is to aske and haue
 [706] ¶ þan / commep sompnolence þat is sluggy
 selumbringe which makeþ a man be hevie and dulle in
 body and in saule and þis synne commep of scloupe
 [707] And certys þe tyme þat by way of resoñ men
 shuld not slepe þat is by þe morowe but if þer were
 cause resonable [708] ¶ ffor soply in þe morowe tyde is
 most conable a man to say his preiers and for-
 to þenken on god. and to honouren god and to
 3euen almesse to þe poor þat first comen in þe name
 of criste [709] ¶ Lo what seiþ Salomon. who so wil
 by þe morowe awake to seke me. he shal fynde
 [710] ¶ Than commeth negligence or rechelesnesse
 þat rekketh of no þinge and how þat ignoraunce is
 modere of al harme ¶ Certes negligence is þe norice.
 [711] negligence ne dop no force whan he shal done
 eny þinge whedere he do it wel or badly

¶ Salomon .

[712] ¶ Of þe remedie of þise two synnes as seiþ
 þe wise / man þat he þat dredep god spareþ not
 to done þat hym ouȝt to done [713] and he þat louep
 god. he wil do diligence to plesse. god by his werkes
 and abounden hym self wiþ al his myȝt wel forto doon.
 [714] þan commep ydelnes þat is þe ȝate of al
 harmes. An ydel man is like to a place þat hap no
 walles þe deueH may entre on euery side or shete
 at hym at discouerte by temptaciōn on euery side
 [715] This ydelnesse is þe thurrok of al wikked and
 vyleyns þouȝtes. and of alle Iangelingges trowfuls and
 al ordure [716] ¶ Certes þe heuene is yȝeue to hem þat
 wil laboure. and nouȝt to ydel folk ¶ Eke dauid ¹seiþ
 þat þei ne be not in þe labour of men. ne þei shul
 not be whipped wiþ men þat is to say in purgatorie

¶ sapiens

¶ dauid

[717] ¶ Certes þan semep it. þei shul be tormented
wip þe deuel in helle but if þei done penitence

[718] ¶ Than commep þe synne þat men clepen
tarditas as was a man is so lattred and so taryng^r er
he wil turne to god. and certes þat is a grete foly.
he / is like hym þat falleþ in þe dicke and wil not
arise. [719] And / þis vice commep of fals hope. þat
he þenkeþ he shal lyue longe. but þat hope
failleth ful oft

[720] Than commeth lacchesse þat is he þat whan he
bygynnep eny good werk. anoon / he wil forlete it and
stynt. as done þei þat han eny wiȝt to gouerne
and ne taken of hym no more kepe anoon as þei / fynden
eny contrary or eny anoye [721] ¶ Thise ben þe newe
shipardes þat laten her shepe wetyngly go rennen to
þe / wolf þat is in þe breres or doon no force of her owne
gouernaunce [722] ¶ Of þis commep pouerte and distruction
bop of spirituel and of temporel þingges. Than commeth
a manere of coldnesse þat freseþ aȝ þe hert^r of a man
[723] ¶ Than commeth vndeucioñ þorghē which a man is
so blent. And as seiþ seint Bernard^r hap such langour in ¶ *Bernardus*
soule þat he may neipere rede ne syngē in holy church
ne þenk on deuocioñ ne travaille wip
his hondes in no good werk þat it ne is / to hym vnsauery
and al appalled [724] þan wexeþ he sore and / sclowe and
slumbry and sone wil be wroop and sone is / enclyned
to hate and to Envie [725] ¶ Than commep þe synne of
worldly sorowe. which þat is cleped tristicia þat scleeþ a ¶ *Tristicia* /
man. as seiþ seint Paule [726] ffor certes such sorowe
wirkeþ to þe deep of þe saule and of þe body ¶ Also
for þerof commeth þat a man is annoyed of his owne liff
[727] Wherefore such sorowe shortep ful often þe lyf // of
a man er þat his tyme comen is by way of kinde

[*The Remedy against Accidie.*]

¶ [728] ¶ Azeinst þis horrible Synne of Accide and þe
braunches of þe same Ther is a vertue þat^t is called
¶ fortitudo. / ffortitudo or strenght þat^t is an affeccion þorgh
which a man despiseþ al noyous þinge [729] ¶ This
vertue is so myȝty and so vigorous^t þat^t it^t dar wiþstonde
myȝtely and wrastel azeinst^t þe Sawtes of þe deuēh
and wisly kepen hym self fro periles þat^t bene wikked
[730] for it^t enchaunseþ and enforseþ þe soule ¹riȝt^t as
accidy abateþ it^t and makeþ it^t feble. ffor þis fortitudo
may endure by longe suffraunce þe trauailes þat^t bene
conable

[731] ¶ This vertue haþ mony spyces ¶ The
furst^t is cleped magnanimitas. þat^t is to / saye grete corage.
ffor soply þer byhoueþ grete corage azeinst^t Accidye lest^t
þat^t it^t swelowe þe soul by þe synne of sorowe. or
destroy it^t by wanhope. [732] This vertu makeþ
folk vndertake harde þingges. and greuous þingges
by her owne wille wisely and resonably [733] And for
as moĉ as the deuel fighteþ azeinst^t man. more bȝ
queynteyse & by sleight^t þan by strenght^t þerfore a man
shal withstonde hym by witte and by resoñ and by dis-
crecion [734] ¶ Then ben / þer þe vertues of feiþ and
hope in god and in his seyntes to atcheuen and accomplise
þe good werkes in which he purposeþ feermely
to contynue [735] ¶ Than commeþ suerte or sikernesse
and þat^t is whan a man ne douteþ no trauaile in tyme
commynge of þe good werk^t þat^t a man / haþ bygonne
[736] ¶ Than commeþ Magnificence. and þat^t is to sayn whan
a man doþ and perfourmeþ grete werkes of goodnesse
þat^t he haþ bygonne. and þat^t is þe ende whi þat^t men shuld
doo good werkes. ffor in þe accompleying^t of good
werkes lith þe grete guerdoun [737] ¶ Than is þer
constaunce þat^t is stablenesse of corage and þis shulde
be in hert^t by stedfast^t feiþ and in mouþe and in

berynge and in chere and in dede [738] ¶ Eke þer bene moo / special þingges and remedies azeinst Accidie in dyuers werkes and in consideracions of þe pyne of helle and of þe Ioye of heuene and in þe trust of þe grace of þe holy goost þat wil ȝeuen hym myȝt to perfourmen his entent

¶ De auaricia.

[739]

Aftere Accidie wil I speke of avarice and of ¶ De Auaricia coueytise of which synne seiþ seint Poule ¶ Paulus þat þe Roote of all synne is coueitise ¶ And Thimothei 2^o *Capitulo*. [740] ffor trewly. whan þat þe hert of ¶ Thimothei *secundo*. a man is confounded in it self and trouble and þat þe saule hap lost þe comferte of god þan sekeþ he an ydel solace of worldly þingges

[741] ¶ Auarice aftere þe scripcion of seynt Austyne ¶ Augustinus is a likerousnesse in herte to haue erþely þingges.

[742] Som 1^o oper folk seyn þat auarice is forto purchase mony erþely þingges and no þinge ȝeue to hem þat han nede. [743] And vnderstonde þow wel þat auarice nys not oonly in land ne cateH but somtyme in science and in glorie and in euery manere of outrageous þingges is auarice and coueitise [744] And þe difference ytwix Auarice and coueitise is þis Coueitise is forto coueite suche þingges as þow hast not And auarice is forto wiþholde and kepe suche þingges as þow hast wiþ-out riȝtful nede [745] Soþly þis Auarice is a synne þat is ful dampnable for al holy writte curseþ it and spekeþ azeinst it ffor it doþ wronge to Ihesu crist [746] for it byreueþ hym þe loue þat men to hym owen and turneþ it bakward azeinst all resoñ [747] and makeþ þat þe auaricious man hap more hope in his catel þan in Ihesu crist And [.]

. no gap in the MS.] [748] þerfore seiþ

¶ *Ephesianos*
5^o *capitulo*

seyñ Paule *Ephesios* .5^o. That^t auerous man / haþ more hope in his þrldome of ydolatrie

¶ *Exodi* xx^o.
capitulo .i

[749] ¶ What^t difference is ytwix an ydolastre and an auarous man but^t þat^t an ydolastre and an auarous man ne haþ but^t a mawmet^t or twoo^t; and þe auaricious man haþ monye ffor certes euey floreyñ in his Coffre is his mawmet^t [750] And certes þe synne of Maumetrie is þat^t god in þe ten / comaundmentes as bereþ wnesse in *Exodi capitulo* .xx^o. [751] Thou / shalt^t haue no fals goddes byform me. Ne þou shalt make to þe no grauen þinge. Thus as is an Auaricious man [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] ¶ And ydolastre [752] þorgh his synne of Auarice and of coueitise commen þise hard lordshippes þorgh which men ben strayned by taliages. custumes and cariages more þan / her duete or reson is ¶ And ellis take þei of her bonde men amercementz which myghten more resonably be cleped extorcions þan amercymentz. [753] Of which amercymentes and raunsonynge of boond men some lordes Stuardes seyñ þat^t it^t is rihtfuþ for as moche as a cherle haþ no temporeþ þinge. þat^t it^t ne is his lordes as þei sayne. [754] But^t certes þise lordshippes doon wronge þat^t byreuen her bonde folk^t þingges þat^t þei neuere ne 3af hem. / *Augustinus de Civitate libro* ix^o. [755] ¶ Soþ is þat^t þe condicioñ of þrldome and þe furst^t cause of þrldome is for synne. *G[e]nesis* v^{to}.

¶ *Augustinus de*
civitate . libro .
ix^o

¶ *Genesis* .5^{to} /

[756] Thus may 3e seen þat^t þe gilt^t deserveth thraldom ¹But^t not^t nature [757] Wherfor þise lordes ne shuld not^t moche glorifie hem in her lordship sipens þat^t by natureþ condicions þei bene [not] lordes ouer her þralles. but for þat^t þrldom come furst^t by desert^t of synne. [758] And ferþer ouer þer as þe lawe seiþ þat^t temporeþ goodes of bonde folk bene þe goodes of her lordshippes 3e þat^t is forto vnderstonde þe goodes of þe Emperour to defende hem in her riht^t but^t not^t to robbe hem ne to reue hem. [759] ¶ And þerfore

¶ *Seneca*

seip Senec'. Thy prudence shuld lyue benignely wip
 pine praht. [760] Thilk' pat' þou clepest' pine praht
 bene goddys puple. ffor humble folk bene cristes frendes
 þei bene contubernial wip þe lord'

[761] ¶ Thenk' eke pat' suche sede as churles ¶
 springen: of suche seed springgen lordes. as wel may
 þe cherle be saued as þe lorde. [762] þe same deþ pat'
 takeþ þe cherle. þe same deþ takeþ þe lorde. wherfore I
 rede do right' so wip þi cherle as þou woldest'
 þi lorde did wip þe if þou were in his plite
 [763] Euery synful man is a cherle to synne ¶ I rede
 þe Certes pat' þou lorde worche in suche wise pat'
 þi cherles raþer loue þe than drede þe [764]
 ¶ I woote wel þer is degree aboue degre as resoñ
 is and skiht is pat' men / done her devoyre þer as it' is dwe
 But' certes extorcions and despites of þoure vnderlyngges is
 dampnable.

[765] And forther ouer vnderstonde weht pat'
 conquerours or tyrauntz maken ful often þralles of
 hem pat' bene born of as Royal blood as bene þei pat'
 hem conqueren. [766] This name of thraldome was
 neuere knowe erst' til pat' Noe seid pat' his sone ¶ **De Noe**
 Canaan shuld be praht to his breþeren for his synne.
 [767] ¶ What say we þan of hem pat' pillen and done
 extorcions to holy church ¶ Certes þe swerd' pat'
 me ȝeuen furst' to a knyght' whan he is newe dubbed
 signifief' pat' he shuld defende holy church and
 nouȝt' robbe it' and who so doop is a traitour'
 to crist'. [768] as seip seynt Austyne ¶ They bene ¶ **Augustinus**
 deuels wolves pat' stranglen þe shepe of Ihesu
 criste and bene wors þan wolves. [769] ffor soþly
 whan þe wolf haþ ful his wombe. He stynteth to
 strangle shepe. But' soþly þe pylours and distroy-
 ours of good of holy church ne doon not' so for þei ne
 stynte neuere to pillen. [770] Nowas I haue seide so siþens so
 is ¹pat' synne was furst' cause of thraldome Than it' is

þus þat þilk tyme þat al þis world was in synne
þan was al þis worlde in þraldome and in subiection./
[771] But certes siþen þe tyme of grace cam god
ordeyned þat some folk shuld be more highe in estate
and hie degree. and some folk more lowe and þat
eueryche shulde be serued in his estaat/ and in degre.
[772] And þerfore in some contrey þer þei bene
þralles whan þei / han turned hem to þe feiþ þei maken
her þralles free out of þraldome And þerfor certes
þe lorde oweþ to his man þat þe man oweþ to
his lorde [773] ¶ þe pope clepeþ hym self seruauante
of Seruauantes of god. But for as moche as þe state of
holy church ne myȝt not han bee ne þe comon
profite ne myȝt han be kept ne pees and rest in
erþe but if god had ordeyned þat som men han
hier degre and somme men lowere [774] ¶ þerfor was
souereynte ordeyned to kepe and mayntene and de-
fende her vnderlyngges or her subiectes in resoñ as fer-
forþe as it liþe in her power and not to distroye hem
ne as ferforþ confounde. [775] wherfore I say þat þilk lordes
þat bene þilk wolfes þat deuouren þe possessions or
þe catel of poor folk wrongfully wip-outen mercy or
mesure [776] þer shullen resceyue by þe same mesure
þat þei han mesured to poor folk þe mercy of Ihesu
crist but it be amended [777] ¶ Now commeþ despite
bytewix Marchaunt and marchaunt. And þou shalt vnder-
stonde þat Marchaundise is in mony maners. þat oon
is bodyly & þat oþer is goostly. þat oon is
leeful and þat oþer is dishonest and vnlieful
[778] ¶ of þilk bodily marchaundyse þat is leeful and
honest is þis þat þer as god hath ordeyned þat a
regne or a contre is sufficient him self þan is it
honest and lieful þat of þe habundaunce of þis cuntre
þat men helpe anoþer cuntre þat is more nedye
[779] and þerfore þei mote be Marchauntz to
bringe from þat oon cuntre to þat oþer her march-

aundise../ [780] ¶ That opere marchaundise þat men
 haunte wiþ fraude trecherye and disceyte wiþ
 lesyngges and fals opes is cursed and dampnable.
 [781] ¶ Espirituel Marchaundise ¹is proprely Symonye
 þat is ententif desire to by þenk^t espirituel that is
 þing^t þat apperteyneþ to þe sentuary of god and to
 cure of þe soule. [782] This desire if so be þat a
 man do hys diligence to perfourme it al be it þat his
 desire ne take noon effecte 3it^t is it to hym a dedly
 synne and if he be ordred he is aregulere [783] ¶ Certes
 Symony is cleped of Symon magus þat wolde haue
 bouzt^t þe temporel CateH./ þe 3ift^t þat god had 3euen /
 by þe holy goost^t to seint^t Peter and to þe apostels./
 [784] And þefore vnderstondeþ þat boþ he þat
 selleþ and he þat byeth^t þingges espi^tu^el bene
 cleped Symonys be it catel be it procuryng
 or by fleshly preier of his frendes or of spirituel
 frendes [785] [.

. *no gap in the MS.*]
 Soþly if þei prey for hym þat is not^t able ne worpi. it
 is Symonye. If he take þe benefice and if he be worpi and
 able he nys noon. [786] ¶ That op^er maner is if a man
 or a womman prey^eþ for folk to auaunsen hem / only for
 wikked fleshly affection þat þei han vnto þe persones
 and þat is in foule Symonye. [787] But certes in seruice
 for which men 3euen þingges espi^tu^els vnto her
 seruauntes It most^t be vnderstonde þat þe seruise
 most^t be honest^t and ellis not^t. and eke þat hit be
 wiþ out^t barganyng and þat þe persone be able.

[788] ffor as seiþ seint^t Damasie ¶ Alle þe synnes of þe ¶ **Damasius**
 world^t at þe regarde of this synne bene as a þinge of nouzt^t.

ffor it is þe grettest^t synne þat may be aftere ²þe synne ^[²—² repeated in MS.]
 of lucifer² and of antecrist^t [789] for by pis synne god
 forleseþ þe churche and þe soule þat he bouzt^t wiþ
 his precious blood by hem þat 3euen chirches to hem
 þat bene not^t digne. [790] ffor þei putten in þeues þat

stelen þe soules of Ihesu crist and distroyeþ his patry-
 moyne [791] by suche vndigne preestes and curates
 han men þe lasse reuerence of þe sacramentes of
 holy church. And suche 3euers of churches putten out
 þe children of crist. and putten in þe church þe
 deuels owne sone. [792] þei sellen þe soules
 þe lombes shulden kepen to þe wolf þat strangleþ
 hem and þefore shul þei neuere haue parte
 of þe pasture of lambes þat is þe blisse of
 heuene. [793] ¶ Now commeþ hasardy with his aþur-
 tynaunces as tables and Rafuls of which commeþ disceite
 fals oþes chidyngges and aH ravanys blasphemynge
 and reneyng of god and hate of his neghbours waast
 of good in spendyng of tyme and somtyme mannys
 slaughte [794] Certes hasardours ne may not be
 wiþ-out grete synne þe whiles þei haunte þat craft [795]
 Of Auaricecommeþeke lesingges. þeeft and fals witness. and
 fals oþes and 3e shal vnderstonde þat þise bene grete synnes
 and expresse azeinst þe comaundementz of god as I haue
 said [796] ¶ fals witness is in worde and eke in dede
 In worde as forto byreue þine neizbours good name
 by þi fals witnessinge or byreue hym his CateH or his
 heritage by þi fals witnessinge. whan þou for Ire or
 for mede or for envie berest fals witness or accusest
 hym. or excusest hym by þi fals witness. or ellis ex-
 cusest þine self falsly. [797] ware 3ou questmongers and
 notaries. Certes for fals witnessyng was Susanna in
 grete sorowe & peyn and mony anoþer moo [798] ¶ The
 synne of þeft is eke expres azeinst goddes heest and þat in
 two maners corporeH and spiritueH [799] [CorporeH]
 as for to take þine neighbours cateH azeinst his wille.
 be it by force or by sleight by it by mette or by mesure.
 [800] By stelynge eke of fals enditementz vpon hym and
 in borowing of þine neighbours CateH in entent neuer
 to pay. And semplable þingges [801] es-
 spiritueH þeft is sacrilege þat is to seyn hurt-

Of Hasardry

¶ De falso testi-
monio

¶ De furto

yunge of holy þingges or of þingges sacred to crist in two maners by resoñ of þe holy place as churches or chirch hawes. [802] for euery vyleyns synne þat men doon in suche places may be cleped Sacrilegge or euery violence in þe semblable places./ ¶ Also þei þat wiþdrawen falsly þe riztes þat longen to holy church. [803] And pleyndly and generally sacrilege is to 3eue holy þinge fro holy place. or vnholý þinge out of holy place. or holy þing out of vnholý place

[*The Remedy against Avarice.*]

[804] ¶ Now shul 3e vnderstonde þat þe releuyng of ¶ *Reuelacio*
Auarice is misericord and pite largely taken./ *Auaricie*
¶ And men my3ten axen why þat misericorde and pite is releuyng of auarice [805] ¶ Certes þe Auarous
man scheweth no pite ne misericord to þe nedeful man ffor he deliteþ hym in þre kepingges of his tresoure and not in þe reskowinge ne releuyng of his euen-cristen and þerfore speke I first of misericorde [806] þan is misericorde as seiþ þe philosopre ¶ *Philosophus*
¶ A vertue by whiche þe corage of a man is stired by þe myssese of hym þat is myssesed [807] vpon which misericord foloweþ pite in perfourmyng of charitable werkes of misericord. [808] And certes þise meuen man to þe misericord of Ihesu crist þat hym self for our gilt suffred deeth for misericord and for3aue vs our original synnes [809] and þer-by releued vs fro þe peyne of helle and amenuseþ þe peynes of purgatorie by penytence. and 3eueþ grace wel to doo. and at þe last þe Ioie of heuene [810] The spices of misericorde bene as forto lene. and forto 3eue / and forto [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] relees. and for to haue pite in hert and compassion of þe meschief of his

euencristen. and eke. chastise þer as nede is
 [811] ¶ Anoper maner' remedy azeinst' Auarice is
 resonable largesse. But' soþly here byhoueth þe con-
 sideracioñ of þe grace of Ihesu crist and of his
 temporeH goodes and eke of þe goodes perdurables
 þat' crist' 3aue vs. [812] and eke to haue remembrançe of
 þe deep þat' he shal haue he noot' not' whan.
 and eke þat' he shal forgoon aH þat' he haþe
 [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] dispended in good

[813] ¶ But' for as moche as some folk bene vnmesur-
 able men ouȝten eschewe fool largesse þat' men
 clepen waast' [814] Certes he þat' is fool large ne
 3eueþ not' his cateH. but he leseþ his cateH. Soþly
 what' þinge þat' he 3eueþ for veyn glorie as to
 Mynstralles and to folk forto byreuen his renoun in þe
 world' he haþ do / [synne and non] almesse.
 [815] ce[r]tes he leseþ foule his good þat' he ne sekeþ
 no þinge of his good but' synne.
 [816] he is like to an hors þat' sekeþ rapen to drink'
 drovy or troubyly watere þan of þe
 elere welle [817] And for as moche as þei 3eue þere
 as þei shuld' not 3eue to hem apperteyneþ pilk
 malysoñ þat' criste shal 3euen at' þe day of dome to
 hem þat' shul be dampned. /

De Gula /

[818]

A ftere Auarice commeþ glotenye which is expresse eke
 azeinst' þe comaundement' of god ¶ Gloteny is
 vnmesurable appetit' to ete or to drink' or ellis
 to doon ynogh to þe vnmesurable and discorde
 coueityse to ete and to drynk' [819] ¶ This synne cor-
 rumpeþ al þis world' as is wel shewde in ¹in þe synne of
 Adam and of Eua ¶ Loo eke what' seiþ seynt' Paule of
 gloteny [820] ¶ Mony seiþ seint' Paule gooñ of which

¶ Gula ./.

¶ Paulus

I haue oft seide to 3ou. and nowe I seie it wepyng
 þat þei bene Enemyes of þe crois of crist of
 which þe ende is deef and of which her woombe is
 her god and her glorye in confusion of hem þat so
 saueren erþely þingges [821] he þat is vsant to
 þis synne of gloteny he ne may no synne wipstonde.
 he / mote bene in seruage of all vices. for it is þe deuels
 hoorde þer [he] hideþ him and resteth [822] ¶ This
 synne haþ many spices ¶ The furst is drcnknes
 þat is þe horrible sepulcre of mannys resoñ And þer-
 fore whan þat a man is dronken. he haþ lost his resoñ and
 þis is dedly synne [823] ¶ But certes whan a
 man is nat wonte to straunge drynk and perauenture ne
 knoweþ not þe strength of þe drynk or haþ feblesse
 in his hede or haþ travailled þorgh which he drinkeþ
 þe moore al be he sodeynly cau3te wip drink it is no
 dedly synne. but venial [824] ¶ The secounde spice of
 Gloteny is þat þe spirit of a man wexeþ al trouble.
 for dronknesse byreueþ hym þe discreciõ of his witte
 [825] ¶ The þred spice of gloteny is whan a man
 deuoureþ his mete and haþ no ri3t-ful maner of etyng
 [826] ¶ The fourte is whan þorgh þe grete habund-
 aunce of his mete þe humours of his body bene dis-
 tempred [827] ¶ The v. is forzetnesse by to mochel
 drynkyng. for which somtyme a man forzeteth by þe
 morowe what he did at Eue or on þe ny3t byfor

[828] ¶ In oþer manere bene distincte of vices & spices of
 gloteny aftere seint Gregorie ¶ The furst is forto ete by- ¶ *Gregorius.*
 fore tyme. The secounde whan a man geteth hym
 to delicate mete [829] ¶ The iij. is whan
 men taken to moche ouere mesure ¶ The 4 is
 curiosite wip grete entent to maken and apparailen
 his mete ¶ The .v. is forto eten to gredely [830] Thise
 bene the .v. fyngers of þe / deuels honde. by which
 he draweth folk to synne

[*The Remedy against Gluttony.*]

¶ *Remedium.* / [831] ¶ Azeinst^t glotenye is the remedy abstinence of his body as seiþ Galien. but^t þat^t hold^t I not^t meritorie if he do it^t only for þe help of his body ¶ Seynt^t Augustinus. austyne wil þat^t abstinence be doon for vertue & wiþ pacience [832] ¶ Abstinence he seiþ is litel worþ. but^t if a / man haue good wille þerto / and but^t if it be enforced by pacience and by charite and þat^t men doon it^t for goddys / sake and in hope to haue þe blisse of heuene

[833] ¶ The felowes of abstynence. bene attemper-
aunce þat^t haldeþ þe mene in alle þingges ¶ Eke
shame þat^t escheweþ aȝ dishoneste. Suffisaunce þat^t
sekeþ no riche metes ne drinks ne dooþ noo force of noon /
outrageous apparaillynge of mete [834] Measure also
þat^t restreyneþ by resoñ þe delaue appetite of etynge.
Sobrenesse also þat^t restreyneþ þe outrage of drynk.
[835] Sparyng^t also þat^t restreyneþ þe delicate eese to
sitte longe atte mete and softly // wherfore some folk^t
stonden of her owne wille and to eten at^t þe lasse leisere

¶ *De luxuria Sequitur.* /

[836]

¶ *Luxuria*

A ftere Gloteny commeth lecherye. ffor þise
two synnes ben so nygh Cosyns þat^t often tyme
þei wil not^t departe. / [837] God woote þis
synne is ful displesaunt^t þing^t to god. ffor he / seiþ hym
self. do no lecherye. And þerfore he putteþ grete peynes
azeinst^t þis synne. As in þe olde lawe. [838] ¶ If wom-
man þral were taken in þis synne. she shuld be
beten wiþ staues to þe dethe And if she were a gentile
womman she shulde be slayn with stones And if she
were a bishoppes douȝter^t she shuld be brent^t by
goddis comannement^t [839] ¶ fferþermore by þe
synne of lecherye^t god draynt^t al þe world^t at^t þe

diluve. And after þat he brent .v. Citees wip
lizt and sonke hem into helle

[840] ¶ Nowe lat vs speke þan of pilk stynkinge
synne of lechery. þat men clepen aduoutrie of wedded
folk þat is to say if þat oon of hem be wedded
or ellis boop [841] ¶ Seint Ioħn seiþ þat þe aduoutrers ¶ *Sanctus*
schullen be in helle in a stynk brennyng of fuyre and *Iohannes.*
of bremstoon. In fuyre for lechery. In bremstone for þe
stynke of her ordure [842] ¶ Certes þe brekinge of
þis sacrament is an horrible þinge. it was made of
god hym self in Paradise and confermed by Ihesu crist as
wittnesseþ seint Mathewe iñ þe gospeħ ¶ A man shal lete
fadere and modere and take hym to his wiff and þei
shul be twoo in oo flessħ [843] ¶ This sacrament bytoken-
eþ þe knyttyng to-gidere of crist and of holy churche.
[844] and nat oonly þat god forbad aduoutrie in bedde.
but eke he comaunded þat þou shuldest not coveyte þine
neighbours wiff [845] ¶ In þis heest seiþ seint
Austyne is for-boden al manere coueitise to doon
lecherie ¶ Loo what seiþ seint Mathewe þe .v. chapitle/in þe ¶ *Augustinus*
gospeħ. þat who so seeþ a womman to coueitise of his lust. he ¶ *Matheus*
hap doon lechery wip her in his hert [846] ¶ Here may 3e
see þat not oonly þe dede of this synne is forbode
but eke þe desire to doon þat synne [847] ¶ This cursed
synne annoyep greuously hem þat it haunten and first
to her saule for he obligeþ it to synne and to peyne of
þe deep / þat is perdurable. [848] vnto þe body annoyep
it greuously also for it drieþ hym and waasteþ hym / and
[. . . no gap in MS.] of his blood he makeþ sacrifice to þe
feende of helle. hit waasteþ eke his cateħ and his substanncce.
[849] & certes if it be a foule þing a man to waast
his cateħ on wommen. 3it is it a foulere þinge whan þat
for such ordure wommen dispenden vpon men her cateħ
and her substanncce [850] ¶ This synne as seiþ the prophete ¶ *Propheta.*
byreueþ man and womman her good fame and al her
honure and it is ful plesaunt to þe deuel. for þerby

wynneth he þe most^t partie of þis world^t
 [851] And riȝt^t as a marchannte deliteþ hym most^t
 in chaffare þat^t he haþ most^t auantage of Riȝt^t.
 so deliteþ þe feende in þis ordure

[852] this is þat^t oþer hand of þe deuel wiþ .v.
 fyngres to cacche þe puple to his vilanye [853] ¶ The
 first^t fynger is þe foolissh lokinge of the foolyssh man
 or the folissh womman þat^t sleepe riȝt^t as þe basilicok
 sleepe folk^t by þe venyme of his / sight^t. ffor þe Coueityse
 of þe eyen foloweþ þe couetise of þe herte [854] ¶ That^t
 oþer fynger is þe vileyns touchynge in wicked
 maner^t And þerfore seiþ Salomoñ. þat^t who so
 toucheþ and handleþ a womman. he fareþ like hym
 þat^t handleþ þe scorpion þat^t stynges and sodeynly
 sleepe þourgh his enuenemynges. As who so toucheþ
 warme picch. he shent^t his fyngres [855] ¶ The iij is
 foolissh wordes þat^t fareþ lich fire þat^t brenneþ. þat^t riȝt^t anon
 brenneþ þe herte. [856] ¶ The iiij. is þe
 kysynge. And soþly he were a grete fool þat^t wolde
 kysse þe mouþ of a brennyng^t ouen or of a forneys.
 [857] And / more fooles bene þei þat^t kissen in vileynye
 for þat^t mouþ is þe mouþe of helle. And namely þise
 olde dotardes holours ȝit^t wil þei kisse þouȝe
 þei may not^t do. and smatere hem [858] ¶ Certes þei
 bene like to houndes. ffor an hounde whan he commeþ by
 þe Rosere or by oþer bewtees þouȝe he may not^t
 pisse. ȝit wil he heuene vp his legges and make coun-
 tenaunce to pisse. [859] And for þat^t mony man weneth
 þat^t he may noȝt synne for no likerousnesse þat^t he doþ
 wiþ his wiff Certes þat^t opynyōn is fals ¶ God woote a
 man / may sele hym self wiþ his owne knyff. And maken
 hym drunke wiþ his owne tunge [860] Certes
 be it^t wif or childe or eny worldly þing^t þat^t he
 loueth tofore god it^t is his mameut^t and he is his ydolastre
 [861] ¶ A man shuld loue his wiff by discreciōn
 patiently and temperally And þan is she as it^t

were his suster' [862] ¶ The .v. ¹fynger' of þe deuels honde is þe styntyng dede of lecherie [863] Certes þe .v. fyngers of glotenye þe fende putte in þe wombe of a man. and wiþ þise .v. fyngers of lecherie he gripeþ hym by þe Raynes forto þrowe hym into þe fornais of helle. [864] þer as þei / shul han þe fuyr' and þe wormes þat' euere shul lasten. and wepyng' and waillyng'. sharp hunger' and þrest'. Grislynese of deuels þat' shullen alto treden hem wiþ-uten respite and with-uten eende [865] ¶ Of lechery as I seide sourden dyuers spices As fornicacion þat' is bytwix man and womman þat' bene not' maried. and þis is dedly synne and azeinst' nature. [866] for al þat' is enemye and destruction to nature is azeinst' nature. [867] Parfay þe reson of a man telleth hym eke wel þat' it' is dedly synne for as moch as god forbode lechery. And saint Paule ȝeueþ hym þe regne þat' is due to no wiȝt ¶ But' to hem þat' doon dedly synne [868] ¶ A noþer synne of lechery is forto byreuen a maide of her maidenhode. ffor certes he þat' so dooþ he caccheth a mayde out' of þe hiest' degree þat' is in þis present' liff [869] and byreueþ hure pilk' pr[e]cious fruyte þat' þe boke clepeþ þe hundred' fruyte I ne can not' say it' in noon oþer way in englissh. but' in latyne it' hight' Centesimus fructus [870] Certes he þat' so doþ is cause of mony damages and vilenyes moo þan eny man can rekne Riȝt' as he somtyme is cause of alþ Damages þat' beestes doon in þe feelde þat' brekeþ þe hegge or þe closure þorowe which he distroieþ þat' may not' be restored. [871] ffor certes no more may maidenhede be restored. þan an harme smyte fro þe body may retourne azein to wexe. [872] She may haue mercy þis wote I weþ if she doo penitence. but' neuer shal it' be þat' she nas corrupte. [873] And al be it' so þat' I haue spoken somewhat' of aduoutrie. it' is good to shewen moo periles þat' longen to aduoutrie forto eschewe þe foule

synne of [874] aduoutrie ¶ Auoutry in latyne is forto seyne
 approching of an oþer mannys bed. þoorgh which þoo þat
 whilom were oo flessħ. abounden her body to oþer persones
 [875] ¶ Of þis synne as seiþ þe wise man commep
 mony harmes ¶ first brekinge of þei feiþ. And certes
 feiþ is keye of cristendome [876] And whan þat
 feiþ is broke and lorne. sople cristendome stant.
 [veyne] And wiþ-out fruyte [877] þis synne is eke a
 þeef. / ¶ ffor þeeft generalli to speke is forto Reue a wizt his
 þingt azeinst his wille. [878] Certes þis is þe foulest þeft
 that may be. whan 'a womman stelep her body from
 her husbond and zeueþ it to her holour to defoule
 her and stelep her soule from crist & zeueþ it to
 þe deuel. [879] This is a foule[r] þeft þan forto stele or breke
 þe chalice from þe autere. ffor þise aduoutrers
 breken þe temple of god spirituelly and stelen þe vessell
 of grace þat is þe body and þe saule. ffor which crist
 shal destroien hem as seiþ seynt Paule. [880] ¶ Sople
 of þis þeft douted gretly Ioseph whan þat his lordys
 wif preide hym of vilanye whan he saide ¶ lo my lorde
 howe my lady haþ take to me vnder my ward al þat he
 haþ in þis world. ne no þing of his ouzt of
 my pouer but oonly ze þat bene his wiff [881] and
 howe shuld I þan doon þis wikkednesse & synne so
 horribli azeinst god. god it forbede.
 Allas al to litel is suche troupe now yfounde [882] ¶ The
 iij. harme is the filþe þorowe þe which þei breken
 þe comaundemen of god and defoulen þe autere of
 her matrimoyne þat is crist [883] ffor certes in so moche
 as þe sacrament of mariage is so noble and so digne. So
 moche it is þe gretter synne forto breke it. ffor god
 made mariage in paradys in þe estate of Innocence to
 multiplie mankynde to þe seruice of god. [884] and
 þefore is þe brekinge þerof greuours. Of which
 brekingt commen fals heires often tyme þat wrongfulli
 occupien folkes heritage and þefore wil crist putte

¶ Paulus.

hem out^t of þe regne of heuene þat^t is heritage to good folk [885] ¶ Of þis breking^t commep eke oft^t tymes þat^t folk vnware wedden or synnen with her owne kynrede. and namely þilk^t harlottes þat^t haunten bordels ¶ Of thise fool wommen þat^t mowen be likned to a comune gonge wher as men purge her ordure [886] ¶ What^t say we eke of putours þat^t lyuen by þe horrible synne of Putrie and constreynen wommen 3e somtyme his owne wiff or his childe as doon þise bawdes to 3eelden hem a certeyn rent^t of her bodily putrie Certes þise bene cursed synnes [887] ¶ Vnderstondep eke þat^t aduoutrie is sette gladly in the x. comaundementz bytwix þeft^t and manys slaughter. for it^t is þe grettest þeft^t þat^t may be. ffor it^t is þeft^t of body and soule [888] and it^t is like homycide ffor it^t kerueþ a twoo and brekep a twoo hem þat^t furst^t were ymaked oo flessch. and þerfor by þe olde lawe þei ¹shuld be slayn [889] But^t napeles by þe lawe of Ihesu crist þat^t is þe lawe of pite whan he saide to þe womman þat^t was / founde in aduoutrie and shuld^t haue bene slayn wip stones aftere þe wille of þe Iwes as was her lawe ¶ Go quod ihesu crist and haue no more wille to do synne or wil no more to do synne [890] Soply vengeance of aduoutrie is a-warded to þe peyne of helle but^t it^t be destroubled by penaunce [891] ¶ 3it^t bene þere moo spices of þis cursed synne. as whan þat^t oon of hem is religious or ellis boop. or of folk þat^t bene entred into ordere as subdeken or deken or preest^t or hospitalers. and euer þe hier þat^t he is in ordere þe gretter is þe synne [892] The þingges þat^t gretly aggreggen. his synne is þe breking^t of his avowe of chaastite whan he receyueþ order^t. [893] And ferþer ouer. soop is þat^t holy order^t is cheef of all þe tresour of god. And his especial syngne and marke of chaastite to shewe þat^t þei bene Ioyned to chastite which þat^t is þe moost^t precious lif þat^t is. [894] And eke þise ordred folk^t bene specially tytled to god. and of þe

¶ Paulus.

special mayne of god. ffor which whan þei doon dedly synne þei bene þe special traitours of god and of his puple. ffor þei lyuen of þe puple to prey for þe puple. And while þer bene such traitours her preiers availlen not to þe puple. [895] ¶ Preestes bene as aungels as by þe dignite of hir mysterye ¶ But forsop seynt poule seiþ. þat sathanas transformeþ hym into an aungeH of lizt. [896] Soply þe preest þat haunteþ synne he may be likned vnto þe aungel of derknesse. transformed in þe aungel of lizt ¶ He semeþ aungel of lizt. but forsop he is aungel of derknesse [897] ¶ Suche preestes bene þe sones of Belye. as scheweþ in þe boke of kyngges þat þei weren þe sones of Belial þat is þe deueH [898] Belial is to say wiþ-out Iuge. and so faren þei. hem þenke þei bene free and han no Iuge no more þan haþ a free boole þat takeþ which kowe þat him litek in þe toune. [899] So faren þei by wemmen. ffor rizt [as] a fre bulle is ynouze for al a toune Rizt so is a / wikked preest corrupte ynough for al a parissH or aH a cuntree [900] Thise preestes as seiþ þe boke ne kon nott þe mysterye of preesthode to þe puple. ne god ne knoweþ¹ hem nouzt They ne holden hem nouzt a-paide as seiþ þe boke of soden flessH þat was to hem offred but þei toke by force þe flesshe þat is rawe [901] Certes rizt so þise schrewes ne holdene hem not a-paide of rosted flessH and soden flessH wiþ þe which þe pupleH fedden hem in grete reuerence. But þei wil haue rawe flessH as folkes wyues and her doughtren [902] ¶ And certes wommen þat consenten to her harlotrie done grete wronge to crist and to holy church and to alhalowes and to aH saules ffor þei byreuen al þese hym þat shulde worshipen crist and holy church and prey for cristen saules [903] And þerfore han suche preestes and her lemmans eke þat consenten to her leccherie þe malisoñ of þe/ courte cristen to þei come to amendement

[904] ¶ The iij spice of aduoutrie is somtyme by-twene
a man and his wiff. & þat^t is whan þei taken no reward^t
in her assemblynge but^t only to her fleshly delite as
seip^t seint^t Ierom. [905] and ne rekken of noþinge but^t ¶ *Ieronimus*
þat^t þei bene assembled by cause þat^t þei bene ymaried.
al is good ynouze as þenkeþ to hem [906] But^t in suche
folk hap^t þe deuel pouer as seide þe aungel Raphael ¶ *Angelus*
to/ Thobie. ffor in her assemblynge þei putten Ihesu *Raphael*
crist^t out^t of her hertes and zeue hem self to aȝ ordure
[907] ¶ þe iiij spice is þe assemblynge of hem þat^t bene
of her kynrede. or of hem þat^t bene of oon affinite or
ellis wiþ hem wiþ þe which her faders or her kynrede
han deled wiþ in þe synne of lecherie This synne makeþ
hem liche houndes þat^t taken no kepe of kynrede
[908] and certes Parentela is in two maners oþer /
goostly or fleshly. Goostely as forto delen wiþ her
gossipes [909] ffor riȝt^t so as [.]
. *no gap in the MS.*] is his godfader his fadere
espirituel ffor which a womman may in no lasse synne
assemble wiþ her Gossipe þan wiþ her owne fleshly
broþere [910] ¶ The v. spice is pilk^t abhominable
synne of which þat^t no man vnneþes ouȝt^t to/ speke ne
write // Napelees it^t is openly rehersed in holy writt^t
[911] [.]
. *no gap in the MS.*] speke of horrible synne Certes holy writt^t may not^t be
defouled no more þan þe sonne þat^t shyneþ on a
myxen./ [912] ¶ Anoþer synne apperteneþ to lecherie þat^t
commenþ in sclepinge and þis synne comenþ oft^t to hem
þat^t bene maydens and eke to hem þat^t bene corrupte
And þis synne men clepen pollucioȝ þat^t comenþ in iiij.
maners [913] Somtyme of a langwisshing^t ¹of body for
þe humours bene to rank^t and habundaȝt^t in þe body
of man. somtyme for þe infirmite for þe feblesse of þe
vertue retentif^t as phisik makeþ mencioȝ. somtyme for
sorfete of mete and drinke [914] and somtyme for

vileyns þouȝtes þat bene enclosed in mannes mynde
whan he goop to selepe which may not bene wip-uten
synne fro whiche þei may not kepe hem wisely or ellis
may men synne ful greuously

¶ *Remedium contra luxuriam*

[915] ¶ Now commeþ þe remedy aȝeinſt lecherie and þat
is generalli chaastite and contynence at re-
freynēþ al þe disorderne meuyngges þat comen
of fleshly talentes [916] And euere þe gretter merite
shal he haue þat most restreynēþ þe wikked enchaw-
finge of ordure of þis synne and this is in two
maners / þat is to sayn. chaastite of mariage and chastite
of widowhede [917] ¶ Now shalt þou here þat
matrimoyne is leeful assemblyng of man and
woman þat reſceyuen by þe vertue of þe ſacrament þe
boond þorgh which þei may not bene departed in all hir
liff þat is to say. þe whiles þei lyuen boþ.
[918] this is as / seiþ þe book a ful grete sacrament.
god made it as I haue ſaide in paradys and wold hym-
self be born in maryage. [919] and for [to] halowe mariage
he was at a weddinge. Where as he turned water into
wyne which was þe furſt myracle þat he wrouȝt in
erþe byforſ his diſciples. [920] Trewe effecte of
mariage clenſeþ fornicaciō & replenyſſheþ holy
church in good lynage. ffor as þe ende of mariage
as it chaungeþ dedly synne into venial ytwix
hem þat bene wedded / and makeþ þe hertys allon
of hem þat bene ywedded as wel as the bodies
[921] þis is verrey mariage þat is eſtabliſhed by
god er þat synne bygan. whan naturel lawe was in his
riȝt poynt in paradys. And it was ordeyned þat oo man
shuld haue but oo womman and oo womman but oo man
as seiþ ſeynt Austyne by mony reſons

¶ *Augustinus*

[922] ffurſt for þat mariage is figured bitwix man. and

holy churche. And ano^{per} is. for þe man is hede of þe womman. Algate by ordynaunce it shulde be doo soo. [923] ffor if a womman haue moo men þan oon. þan shuld^t she haue moo hedes þan oon. and þat^t were and horrible þinge byfore god./ ¹And eke oon womman ne myzt^t not^t plesse to mony men at^t ones And also þer ne shuld be neuer pees no rest^t amonges hem for euereche wold aske his owne þinge [924] And ferþermore no man shulde knowe his owne engendrure ne who shuld^t haue his heritage and þe woman shuld þe lasse be byloued fro þe tyme þat^t she were commytte to mony men

[925] ¶ Nowe commeth how þat^t a man shuld^t bere hym wif^t his wiff. and/ namely in two þingges þat^t is to say in suffraunce and in reuerence and þat^t shewed first crist whan he made furst^t womman [926] ffor he ne made her nouzt^t of þe hede of Adam. for / she shulde not^t haue to grete lordship. [927] ffor þer as þe womman haþ þe maistrie she makeþ to mochel disaraye þer neden noon ensamples of þis. The experience of þis auzt^t suffise [928] ¶ Also certes god ne made not^t womman of þe foote of Adam for she shuld not^t be holden to lowe for she can not^t pacyently suffre But^t god made womman of the ribbe of Adam for womman shulde be felawe vnto man [929] ¶ Man shulde bere hym to his wiff^t in feiþ. in troupe an in loue. as seiþ seint^t paule that^t a man shal loue his wiff as crist^t loued ¶ **Paulus.**/ holy chirch þat^t loued it^t so wel þat^t he dyed for it^t. So shal a man for his wiff^t if it^t were nede

[930] ¶ Now how þat^t a womman shuld^t be subiecte to her husbond^t þat^t telleþ seint^t Peter^t / [. . . no gap ¶ **Petrus** in the MS.] [931] and eke as seiþe þe decree. A womman as longe as she is a wiff she ne haþ noon auctorite to swere ne bere witnesse wif-out leue of her husbonde þat^t is her lord^t it^t shuld^t be so by resoñ. [932] she shulde eke serue hym in aþ

honeste and bene attempre. of her aray I woot weH
 þat þei shulden setten her entent to pleser her hus-
 bondes but not by her queyntise of aray. / [933] Seynt
 Ierom seiþ. þat wyves þat bene apparaild in silk and
 in purple ne mowe not cloþen hem in Ihesu
 crist [. no gap in the MS.]

¶ *Ieronimus*¶ *gregorius.*

[934] ¶ Seynt Gregor seiþ eke þat no wizt sekeþ
 precious aray but oonly for veynglorie to bene
 honoured þe more toforen þe puple [935] ¶ It is a
 foly a womman to haue a grete aray outward and
 her self be foule inward [936] ¶ A wiff shuld eke be
 mesurable in lokynge and in berynge and / in laughinge
 and discrete in al her wordes and dedys [937] and /
 abouen alle worldly þingges. She shulde loue her husbonde
 wiþ al her herte and to hym by trewe of her body
 [938] ¹So shuld an husbonde eke by trewe to his wif.
 ffor siþens þat al þe body is þe husbondes. soo shuld
 her hertes bene oon Or ellis þer is bytwix hem twoo as in
 þat no parfite mariage [939] ¶ Than shal a man vnder-
 stond þat for iij. þingges a man and his wiff
 mowen assemblen ¶ The furst is for engen-
 drure of children to serue god. ffor certes þat is
 þe cause fynaH of matrimoynye [940] ¶ Anoper is to
 zeelde eueriche of hem to oper þe dette of her body.
 ffor neiþer of hem haþ power of her owne bodye
 ¶ The iij. is forto eschewe lecherye and vilenye
 ¶ The iiij. forsop is dedly synne. / [941] As to þe
 furst it is meritorie þe seconnde also for as saiþe þe
 decree. þat chaseþ merite of chaastite þat zeldep to
 her husbonde þe dette of her body. 3e þou3e it be
 azeinst her lykinge and þe lust of her herte [942] ¶ The
 iij. manere of venial synne. And trewly scarcely may
 eny of þise be wiþ-uten venial synne for þe
 corrupcion and for þe delite [943] ¶ The iiij.
 manere is forto vnderstonde if þei assemble oonly for
 amorous loue. and for noon of þe forsaide causes but

forto accomplise pilk brennyng^t delite þei reċh
 neuere hou often · soþly it^t is a dedly synne . And ȝit^t wiþ
 sorowe some folk wil peynen hem more to doo þan
 her appetit^t suffiseþ

[944] ¶ The secounde maner of chastite is to be
 a clene wydowe and to eschewe þe enbrasing^t of man
 and to desire þe enbrasing^t of Ihesu crist^t. [945] Thise
 bene þoo þat^t han beñ wyues and han forgoon her hus-
 bondes And eke wommen þat^t han / doon lecherye and bene
 releued by penaunce [946] And certes if þat^t a wiff
 couþe kepe her al chaast^t by licence of her husbonde so
 þat^t she ner noon occasion þat^t he a-gilt^t it^t
 were to hir^t a grete merite [947] Thise maner
 of wommen þat^t obseruen chaastitee most^t be clene in herte
 as wel as in body and in þouȝt^t and mesurable in cloþinge
 and in contynauce ¶ Abstynent^t in etyng and
 drynkyng in speking and in dede and þan is she þe
 vesseH of þe boyst^t of þe blessed Mawdeleyne þat^t
 fulfilleþ holy church^t ful of good odure [948] ¶ The iij.
 maner of chaastite is virgynyte . And it byhoueþ þat^t she
 be holy in hert^t and clene of body þan is she
 spouse to Ihesu crist^t and she is þe lif of aungels .
 [949] She is þe preysyng^t of þis world^t And she is as
 þise marters in regalite ¹she hap in hure þat^t tunge may
 not^t telle [950] Virgynite bare our lorde
 Ihesu crist^t and virgyne was hymself

[951] ¶ Another remedy aȝeinst^t lecherye is specialy
 to wiþdrawe such þingges as ȝeuen occasion to pilk
 vilanye as ease and etyng and drinkinge . ffor certes whan
 þe potte boyleþ strongly þe best^t remedy is to wiþ-
 drawe þe fuyre [952] ¶ Scleping^t longe in grete quiete
 is eke a grete norice to lecherie

[953] ¶ Another remedye aȝeinst^t lecherie is þat^t a
 womman or a man eschewe companye of hem by
 which he douteþ to be tempted . for al be it^t soo þat^t þe
 dede be wiþ-stonde ȝit^t is þere grete temptacioñ

[954] ¶ Soply a white waſt al-pouze it ne brenne not fully by stikkyng of a Candeſt zit is þe walle blak of þe leyte [955] ful oft tyme I rede þat no man trest in his owne perfeccioñ But he be strengre þan Sampsoñ. Holyer þan david. wiser þan ¶ Salomon

[956] ¶ Now after þat I haue declared 3ou as I can of þe vij. dedly synnes and some of her braunches and her remedies. soply if I couþe I wold telle 3owe þe ten Comaundementz. [957] but so hi3e a doctrine I lete to devynes. Napeles I hope to god þei bene touched in þis tretys euerech of hem alle

¶ De confessione :

¶ Confessioun

¶ Augustinus

[958] **N**OW for as moche as þe secounde part of penitence stant in confession of mouþ as I byganne in þe [first] chapitere I seye Seint Austyn seiþ. [959] Synne is euery word and euery dede and al þat men coueiten azeinst þe lawe of Thesu crist. And þis is forto synne. in herte in mouþ and in dede be þi .v. wittes þat bene sizt hering smellynge taasting or sauouringe and felynge [960] ¶ Now is it good to vnderstonde þe circumstances þat aggreggen mochel euery synne. / [961] ¶ Thow shalt considere what þou art þat dost þe synne. whedere þou be male or female. 3ong or olde. gentile or þrañ ffre or seruante. hool or seke. wedded or syngeñ. Ordred or vnordred. wise or fool. clerk or Seculere. [962] If she be of þi kynrede bodily or goostly or noon. If eny of þi kynrede haue synned wiþ hure or noon. and mony moo/ þingges

[963] ¶ That other circumstaunce is this. Whedere it be doon in fornicacioñ or noon. or in aduoutrie. or in incest. or noon maiden / or noon in maner of homicede or noon horrible grete synne or smale. and how longe þou hast contynued in synne [964] ¶ The iij. circumstaunce is þe place where þou hast doon synne whedere in oper

mennys house or in þine owne. in feeld or in church.
 or in chireh hawe In church dedicate or noon
 [965] For if þe church were halowed and man or womman
 spillen her kynde in wiþ þat place by-twene way of synne or by
 wikked temptaciō þe church were enterdited til it
 were reconciled by þe bisshope [966] and þe preest shuld
 be enterdited þat did such a vilany þe teerme of al his liff. he
 shuld no more synge masse. and if he did he shuld
 do dedly synne at euery tyme þat he songe masse
 [967] ¶ The 4. circumstannce is by which mediators
 as by massagers or for enticement or for
 consentement to bere company wiþ felawship for
 mony a wrecch forto bere companye willen goo to þe
 deuel of helle. [968] ffor þei þat eggen or con-
 senten to þe synne bene partniers of þe synne and
 of þe dampnaciō of þe synnere

[969] ¶ The .v. is of how mony tymes
 þat he haþ synned and / it be in his mynde. and howe oft
 þat he haþ falle. [970] ffor he þat oft falleþ in synne
 he despiseþ þe mercy of god and encreseþ his synne
 and is vnkynde to god and he wexeþ þe more feble
 to wiþstonde synne. and synneþ þe more listlier
 [971] and þe latter ariseþ. and is þe more eschewe for
 to schryuen hym and namely to hym þat haþ bene his con-
 fessoure. [972] ffor which þat folk whan þei falle aȝein
 in her old folies. ouȝt þei forleten her confessours
 al vtterly or ellis þei departen her shrift in dyuers
 place But sonly such departed shrift deserueþ no
 mercy of god of his synnes. [973] ¶ The sext circum-
 stannce is þis why þat a man synneþ as by whiche temptaciō
 And if hym self procure þilk temptaciō or by ex-
 citing of oþer folk. or if þou synne with a womman by
 force or by hure owne assent [974] / Or if þe womman
 Maugre her hede haþ bene enforced or noon. þis
 shal she telle for coueityse or for pouert. And
 if it were her procuryng or noon and such manere

harnays. [975] ¶ The .7. circumstaunce is in what manere he haþ doon his synne. or noon or / how þat he haþ suffred. howe folk han done to her. [976] Of þe same shal men telle pleyndly aH circumstannces and whedere he haþ synned wiþ comune bordeH wommen or noon [977] 'or do his synne in holy tymes or non. In fastyng tymes or non. or be longe from his shrift. or after his latter schrift [978] haþ perauenture broken his penaunce enioyned. by whos helpe and whoos counsaile by sorcery or craft aH þise þingges mosten be tolde. [979] After þat þei bene grete or smale engreggen þe conscience of man ¶ And eke þe preest þat is þi Iuge may þe better be auysed of his luggement in ȝeuyng of þi penaunce and þat is after þi contricioñ. [980] ffor vnderstondeþ wel þat aftere tyme þat a man hath defouled his baptême by synne if he wil come to sauacioñ. ther nys noon oþer way but by penitence and schrift and by satisfaccioñ / [981] and namely by þe two if þer be a confessour to which he may schryve hym. And þe iij. if he haue lif to perfourme it

[982] Than shal man loke and considere if he wil make a trewe and a profitable confessioñ. Ther most be 4. condicions [983] ¶ ffirst it most be in sorowful bitternes of herte as seide þe kyng EzechieH to god ¶ I wil remembre aH þe ȝeeres of my lif in bitternesse of myn herte [984] ¶ This condycioñ of bitternesse haþ .v. signes. The furst is þat confession most be shamefast not forto keueren ne to hiden his synne but for he haþ agilt his god and defoiled / his soule ¶ [985] And here of seiþ seynt Austyne ¶ The herte travaillep for shame of his synne. And for he hath grete shamfastnesse he is digne to haue grete mercie [986] which was þe confession of þe publycane þat wold not heue vp his yen to heuene for he had offended god in heuene. ffor which shamefastnesse he had anoon þe mercy of god [987] ¶ And therefore seiþ

¶ *Augustinus*¶ *Idem.*

seint^t Austyne. þat^t such^h shamefast^t folk bene next^t
forȝeuenes and remissioñ [988] ¶ That^t oþer signe is
humylite of confessiōn / of which seiþ^h seint^t Petre ¶ **Petrus**
¶ Vmbleþ^h ȝou vnder þe myȝt^t of god þe hand of god
is myȝty in confessiōn for þer-by god forȝeueþ þe
synnes. ffor he allon haþ þe power / [989] and þis
humilite shal be in hert^t and in sygne outward ¶ ffor
riȝt^t as he haþ humilite to god in his herte Riȝt^t so
shulde he humble his body outward to þe preest^t þat^t sitte
in goddes place [990] for which in no manere siþes þat^t
crist^t is souereyne and / ¹þe preest^t mene and mediatour^t by
twix crist^t and þe synner^t. and þe synner is þe last^t
by way of resoñ [991] þan shuld^t not^t þe synner sitte
as high as his confessoure but^t knele toforn hym or at^t
his fete but^t if malady distroubed it^t. ffor he shal not^t take
kepe who sitte þer but^t in whos place þat^t he sitteþ.
[992] A man þat^t haþ trespassed to a lorde and commeþ for to
askemercy and maken his accorde and sette hym downea-noon
by þe lorde men wolden holde hym outrageous and not
worþi so sone forto haue remissioñ ne mercy. [993] ¶ The
iiij. signe is þat^t þi shrift^t shul be ful of teeres if
man may wepe or if man may not^t wepe wiþ his bodely eyen./
lat^t hym wepe in his herte. [994] ffor suche was þe confessiōn
of seynt^t petre ffor aftere þat^t he had forsake Ihesu crist^t
he went^t out^t and wepte ful bitterly [995] ¶ The iiij.
signe is þat^t he ne lette not^t for his / shame to shewen
his confessiōn. [996] Such^h was þe confessiōn of þe
maudeleyn þat^t sche ne spared for no shame of hem þat^t weren
at^t þe ffeest^t forto go to our lorde Ihesu crist^t and byknowe
to hym her synne [997] ¶ The .v. signe is þat^t a man
& a womman be obeysaunte to receyue þe penaunce þat^t
is hym enioyned. ffor certes Ihesu crist^t for
þe giltyes of oon man was obedient^t to his deþe

[998] ¶ The secounde condicioñ of verrey confessiōn ¶ **2^a condicio.**
is þat^t it^t be hastely doñ. ffor certes if a man had a
dedly wounde: euer þe lenger þat^t he tarieþ to warisshe

him self þe more wold it corrupte and hast hym to his deþe and eke þe wounde wold be þe wors forto hele [999] ¶ And riȝt so fareþ synne þat longe tyme is in a man vnschewed [1000] ¶ Certes a man ouȝt hastily to shewe his synne. for mony causes as for drede of deþe þat commeþ often sodeynly and is in no certeyn what tyme it shal be ne in what place. And eke þe strecchyng of oo synne draweþ in anoþer [1001] ¶ And eke þe lenger þat he tarieth: þe ferþer is he from crist. And if he abide vnto his last day scarcely may he shryve hym or amende hym of his synnes ne repenten hym for þe greuous maladye of his deth. [1002] & for as moche as he haþ not in his lif herkened Ihesu Crist whan he haþ spoken vnto hym. he shal crie to our lord Ihesu crist at his last day. and scarcely wil he harken hym [1003] ¶ Vnder-stonde þat þis condicioñ moste haue four þingges 1 thi schrift most be purueide byforn and avised for wikked hast dooþ no profite and þat a man konne shryue hym of his synnes be it of pride eþer of Envie and so forþ wiþ þe spices and circumstaunces / [1004] and þat he haue comprehended / in his mynde þe nombre and þe gretnesse of his synnes and / how longe þat he haþ layne in synne [1005] and eke þat he be contrite of his synnes and in stedfast purpoos by þe [grace of god] neuere eft to falle aȝein in synne and eke þat he drede and countrewaite hym self þat he flee þe occasions of synne to which he is enclyned [1006] ¶ Also þat þow shalt schryve þe of alle þi synnes to oo man and nouȝt parcell mele to oon man and parsel mele to a noþer man þat is to vnderstonde in entent to parten þi confession as for shame or for drede. ffor it nys but stronglyng of þe soule [1007] ffor certes Ihesu crist is al good in hym is noon inperfeccioñ and perfore euere he forȝeueþ alle parfitly or ellis neuere a dele [1008] ¶ I say not if þowe be sygned to þe penytauncere for certeyn synne þat þou art bounden to shewe hem all þe remenaunt of þi synnes of which

þowe hast be shryuen of þi curate but it like þe of þine humilite This is no departing of shrift [1009] ne I ne say not þer as I speke of dyuision of confession þat if þou haue licence. forto shryue þe to a discrete and honest preest and where þe likeþ / and by þe licence eke of þe curate þat þowe ne maiste wel shryue þe of alle þi synnes [1010] but lat no blot be behynde. lat no synne be vntoldt as fer as þou hast remembraunce [1011] And whan þou shalt bene shryuen of þi Curate telle hym eke of alle þe synnes þat þou hast done sþens þou were lastt yshriuen as þis is þe wikked entent of dyuision of shrift

[1012] ¶ Also þe verrey shrift askep certeyn condicions. ffurst þat þou shryue þe by þi free wille not constreyned ne for shame of folk ne for maladie or such þingges ffor it is reson þat he þat trespaseþ by his ffree wille / [. . . *no gap in the MS.*] confesse his trespas. [1013] noon oþer man shal telle his synne but he hym self ne he shal not nay or denye his synne ne wraþe him azeinst þe preest for his amonysynge to lete synne [1014] ¶ The seconnde condicioñ is þat þine shrift be lawfuþ. þat is to say þou þat shryuest þe and eke þe preest þat hereþ þi confession bene verrelly ¹in þe feiþ of holy church [1015] and þat a man be not despeired. of þe mercy of Ihesu Crist And Caym or Iudas [1016] And eke a [man] mote accuse hym of his owne trespas and nouzt an oþer but he shal blame & witen hym self of his owne malice of his synne and noon oþer. [1017] But napeles if an oþer man be encheson or entiser of his synnes Or þat if þe state of a persone be such thorgh which his synne is a-gregged or ellis þat he may not pleylnly shryuen hym. but he telle þe persone þe which he haþ synned wiþe. þan may he telle it [1018] so þat his entent ne be not to bakbite þe persone but oonly to declaren his confession.

[1019] ¶ Thowe þe shalt' not' eke make no lesing' in
 þine confessiō for humilite parauenture to say
 þat' þou hast' doon synnes of which þou were
 ¶ *Augustinus* neuere gylty [1020] ¶ ffor seint' Austyn seiþ if
 þow be cause of humilite makest' lesing'
 of þi self þough þowe ne were nouȝt in synne aforn'
 ȝit' art' þowe þan in synne þorgh þi lesynges. [1021]
 Thow most' eke shewe þi synne by þi propre
 mouþe but' þou be wexe dombe and not' by no
 letter ffor þou þat' hast' done synne þou shalt' haue
 þe same confessiō [1022] ¶ Thow shalt' not' eke
 peynt' þi confessiō be faire and subtile wordes to keuere
 more þi synne ffor þan bygilest' þou þi self' &
 nought' þe preest'. Thow most' tel it' platly be it'
 neuere so foule ne so horrible [1023] ¶ Thow shalt' eke
 shryue þe to a preest' þat' is discrete to counsaile þee. and
 eke þou shalt' not' shryue þe for veynglorie ne for
 ypocrecy ne for no cause but' oonly for þe doute of
 Ihesu crist' and þe helpe of þi soule. [1024] Thow
 shalt' not' eke renne to þe preest' al sodeynly to telle hym
 liztly þi synne as who so telleþ a lape or a tale but'
 avisely and wiþ grete deuociō [1025] & generally
 shryve þe oft' if þou often falle oft' arise by
 confessiō [1026] And if þow shryue þe after
 þan onys of synne which þou hast' be shryuen it' is
 ¶ *Augustinus* þe more merite as seiþ seint' Austyne. Thow
 shalt' haue þe more lightly relesinge and grace of god
 boþe of synne and of peyne. [1027] And certes onys a
 ȝere at þe leest' way it' is lawful forto bene howseled. ffor
 soply onys [a ȝere] al þingges renouellen

De satisfaccione.

[1028]
Now haue I tolde of verrey confessiō þat' is þe
 Secounde part' of penytence

[1029] ¶ The iij. parte of penytence is Satisfaccioñ and ¶ Satisfaccio
 þat^t stant^t generalli in almesse and in
 bodily peyne. [1030] Nowe bene þere þre
 manere of Almesse. Contricioñ of hert^t wher a man
 offreþ hym self to god. Anoþer is to haue pite of
 þe defaute of his neighbours. þe ¹³ is in
 3euynge of good counsaile and confort^t goostly and bodily where
 men han nede and namely in sustynauce of mannys foode.
 [1031] And take kepe þat^t a man hap nede of þise
 þingges generalli he hap nede of foode of
 cloþinge and harborowe. he hap / nede of charitable
 counsaillinge and visitynge of prisoñ and / maladie and
 sepulture of his dede body. [1032] And if þow maist^t not^t
 visite þe nedeful wiþ þi persone. visite hym with þi
 massage & / þi 3iftes [1033] ¶ Thise bene þe generall
 almesses or werkes of charite of hem þat^t han temporell
 richesces or discrecion of consailling^t Of þise werkes
 shalt^t þou here at^t þe day of dome

[1034] ¶ Thise almesses shuldest^t þou doon of þine owne
 propre þingges and hastely and / prively if þou maist^t
 [1035] But^t napelees if þow maist^t not^t doon it^t prively
 þou shalt^t not^t forbere almesse þou3e men it^t See.
 So þat^t it^t be not^t ydo for þonke of þe worlde. but^t oonly
 forto haue þe þonke of oure / lorde Ihesu crist^t [1036] ¶ ffor
 as witesseþ seint^t Mathewe .v°. A. Cite may not^t be hid ¶ Matthei. v°.
 þat^t is sette on a mounteyn. ne men lighten not a lanterne and
 putte it^t vnder a busshe. but^t men sette it^t on a candel-
 stik to lighten þe men in þe hous. [1037] Riht^t
 so shal 3oure liht^t lihten toforn men þat^t þei mowe
 seen 3oure good werkes and glorifien 3our fadere þat^t is in
 heuene

[1038] ¶ Now as to speken of bodily peyne. It^t stont^t in
 preiers. in wakingges and in fastingges and in vertuous

techingges of orisons [1039] ¶ 3e shul vnderstonde þat orisons or preiers is / forto seyn a pitous wille of hert þat redresseþ in god and expresseþ it by worde outward to remouue harmlees. and to han þinges espirituel and durable. and somtyme temporel þingges of which orisons certes þe orison of þe pater noster hap Ihesu crist enclosed most þingges [1040] ¶ Certes it is priuilegged of .3. þingges. in his dignite ffor which it is more digne þan eny oþer preiere for þat ihesu crist hym self made it. [1041] and it is short for it shuld be conned more litzly and forto wiþholde it þe more esely in herte and helpen hym self þe ofter wiþ þe orison [1042] and for a man shuld be þe lasse wery to sey it / and for a man ne may not excusen hym to lerne it it is so short and so esy. and for it comprehendeth in it self alle good preiers [1043] ¶ The exposicioñ of þis holy preier þat is so excellent and digne I bytake to þise maisters of theologie sauf þus moche wil I seyne. þat whan þou preiest þat god / forzeue þe þi giltes as þou forzeuest hem þat a-gilten þe be ful wel ware þat þow ne be not out of charite [1044] This holy orison amenuseþ eke venyal synne and þerfore it aperteneth specialy to penitence.

[1045] This preiere most be trewly saide in verrey feiþ and þat men prey to god ordynatly & discretely and deuoutly. Alway a man shal putt his wilt to be subiecte to þe wille of god [1046] This orison most eke be saide wiþ gret humblesse and ful pure honesty and not to annoyance of eny man or womman. It most nedes be contynued with þe werkes of charite [1047] it availleþ eke azeinst þe vices of þe saule. ffor as seiþ seynt Ierom ¶ By fastyng ben saued þe vices of flessch and by preiers þe vices of þe saule

¶ Ieronimus

[1048] ¶ After þis þou shalt vnderstonde þat bodily payne stant in wakinge. ffor Ihesu crist seiþ. wakeþ and preieþ þat 3e ne entre in wikked

¶ Ibc /

temptaciōns [1049] ¶ 3e shul vnderstonde þat fastyng stont in .3. thyngges. In forberyng of bodily mete and drink and in forberyng of worldly Iolitees. and in forberyng of dedly synne. This is to say þat a man shal kepe hym / from dedly synne *with* al his myzt.

[1050] And þow shalt vnderstonde eke þat god ordayned fastyngges And to fastyng apperteneth four þingges. [1051] largenesse to poor folk. Gladnes of hert espiritueh nouzt to be angred nor anoyed ne to gruch for he fasteth and also resonable houre forto ete by mesure. þat is to say þat a man shuld not eten in vntyme. ne sitte þe lenger at his table for he fasteþ.

[1052] Than shalt þou vnderstonde þat bodily peyne stant. in disciplyne or techyng. by word or by // writyng or by ensample Also in weryng of heires. eiper of stamyne eiper of haberion on her naked flessch for cristes sake and such manere penaunces [1053] ¶ But ware þe wel þat such manere penaunces ne make not þine hert bitter or angry. anoyed of hym self. ffor better is to cast away þine heire. þan forto cast away þe swetnesse of our lord Ihesu Crist [1054] And þerfore seiþ seint Poule ¶ *Paulus.* ¶ Cloþe 3ou as þei þat beñ chosen of god in hert of mysericord. debonairte. suffrañce and such maner of cloþinge of whiche Ihesu crist is more apaide þan of heire or of hawberkes.

[1055] Then is disciplyne eke in knokkyng of þi brest. in scourgyng wiþ 3eerdes. in knelyng in tribulacions [1056] in suffryng paciently wrongges þat bene doon to hym. and eke in pacient suffraunce of maladies or lesyngges. of worldly Cateh of wiff or childe or oþer frendes

[1057] Than shalt þow vnderstonde which þingges distrowben penaunce as þis is in þre maners. þat is drede. Shame. and hope. And whan hope þat is desperacioñ. [1058] And forto speken / furst of drede for whiche he

weneþ þat he may suffre no penaunce [1059] þer
aʒeinst is remedye fforto þenk þat bodily penaunce. is
but short and liteH at þe regarde of þe peyne of helle. þat
is cruel and so longe þat it lasteþ wiþ-outen ende.

[1060] ¶ Now aʒeinst þe shame þat a man haþ to
shryuen hym [.] *no gap in
the MS.* [1061] aʒeinst þe shame shuld a man þenk þat
by þe way of resoñ þat he þat haþ not bene ashamed. to
doo foule þingges Certes hym ouʒt not be ashamed to
doo fair þingges and good þingges and þat is confessions. [1062]
A man shuld þenk þat god seep and woote al his
þouʒtes and his werkes to hym may no þinge be
hidde ne keuered [1063] ¶ Men shuld eke remembre
hem of þe shame þat is to come at þe day of dome to
hem þat bene nouʒt penytent and lif in present
liff. [1064] ffor alle þe creatures in heuene in erþe and in helle
shuln seen / apertly al þat þei hyden in þis world.

[1065] ¶ Now forto speke of þe hope of hem þat
bene so negligent and selowe to shryuen hem it stant in
two maners. [1066] That oon is þat he hopeþ to lyve
longe and forto purchase mochel Richesse for his delite
and þan he wil shryuen hym as he seiþ
he may as hym semeþ tymely ynowe come to shrift
[1067] ¶ Anoper is of þe Surquidrye þat he haþ in cristes
mercy. [1068] And aʒeinst þe first he shal þenk
that our liff is in no sikernesse And eke þat alle þe
richesse of þe world bene in aduenture and passinge as a
shadowe on a walle [1069] ¶ And as seiþ seynt *gregorie*
That it apperteneþ to þe grete riʒtwisnesse of god þat
neuer shal þe peyn stynt of hem þat neuer
nolde wiþdrawe hem from synne her þonkes. but
euer contynued þer Inne. ¶ ffor þilk perpetual wille to done
synne shullen þei haue perpetual peyne.

[1070] ¶ Whan-hope is in two maners ¶ þe furst whan-
hope is in þe mercy of Crist ¶ That oper is þat þei

¶ *Gregorius* ./.

Or Wanhope, or
Despair

þenk þat þei ne myȝt not longe perseuere in goodnesse [1071] ¶ The furst wanhope commeþ of þat he demep þat he hath synned so gretly so ofte and so longe liggyng in synne þat he shal not be saued [1072] ¶ Certes azeinst þat cursed wanhope he shuld þenk þat þe passiō of Ihesu crist is more ¹stronge forto vnbynde þan synne is forto bynde [1073] ¶ And azeinst þe seconnd wanhope he shal þenk þat as often as he falleþ he shal arise by penytence. And þouȝe he neuer so long haue lyen in synne þe mercy of crist is alway redy to receyuen hym to mercy [1074] azeinst þe wanhope þat he demep þat he shuld not longe perseuere in goodnesse ¶ he shal þenk þat þe feblenesse of the deuel may no þing doon but men willen suffre hym [1075] And eke he shal haue strength and þe helpe of god and of al holy churche and of þe protection of aungels if him lust

[1076] ¶ Than shullen men vnderstonde what is þe ^{¶ Verba saluatoris} fruyte of penaunce as aftere þe wordes of Ihesu Crist it is þe endelees blisse of heuene [1077] þer Ioie hap no contrariouste of woo ne greuaunce þer alle harmes ben passed of þis present liff wher as is þe sikernesse fro þe peyn of helle þer as þe blisful company þat reioysen hem euer moo euery of opers Ioie [1078] þer as þe body of man þat whilom was foule and derk is more cleer þan þe sonne Ther as whilom þe body was seke and frele and feble and morteþ is vnmorteþ and so stronge and so hool þat þer may no þinge enpeire it. [1079] wher as neiþer is hunger þrest. ne cold but euery soule repleynshed wiþ þe sict of þe parfit knowynge of god [1080] This blisful regne may man purchase by pouert^t espiritueþ and þe glorie by lownesse. þe plente of Ioy by hunger and þrest. and þe rest by travaille and þe liff by deep and mortificaciō of synne.

To pillk^t liff he vs bringe þat^t bouȝt^t vs wiþ his pre-
cious blood ./ Amen ./

¶ **Explicit fabula Rectoris ./**

Here takeþ þe maker of þis booke his leue ./

[1081]
NOwe prey I to hem alle þat^t harken þis litel tretise.
or rede þat^t ȝif þer be eny þing^t in it^t þat^t likeþ
hem þat^t þerof þei þonk our lord Ihesu
crist^t of whom procedeþ al witte and al goodnes.
[1082] And ȝif þer be eny þing^t þat^t displese hem ./ I
prey hem also þat^t þei arette it^t to þe defaute of myne
vnkonnyng and not^t to my wille þat^t wold^t ful fayn haue
seide better ȝif þat^t I had hadde connyng. [1083] ffor our
boke seiþ ¶ **AH** þat^t is writen is writen for our
doctrine & þat^t is myñ entent^t [1084] ¹Wherfore I
biseche ȝou mekely for þe mercy of god þat^t ȝe prei for
me þat^t crist^t haue mercy on me and forȝeue me my
geltys [1085] and namely of my translaciōs and endit-
ingges of worldly vanytes þe which I reuoke in my re-
traccions [1086] As is þe boke of Troiles. The book
also of fame. The boke of the xxv. ladies ./ The
boke of þe duchesse. The boke of seynt^t valentyne
day of þe parlement^t of briddes. The tales of Canter-
bury þilk þat^t sownen into synne [1087] The book
of þe lyōn and mony oþer bokes ȝif þei were in my
remembraunce. and mony a songe. And mony a lecherous
lay þat^t Crist^t for his gret^t mercy forȝeue me þe synne.
[1088] ¶ But^t of þe translaciō of Boys de *consolacione*
and oþer bokes of legendys of seyntes and omelies
and moralite & deuociō [1089] of þat^t I þonke our
lord Ihesu crist^t and his blessed/ modere and alle þe
seyntes of heuene [1090] bysechyng^t hem þat^t þei from
hens forþ vnto my lyues ende sende me grace to
bywaile my giltes and to stody to þe sauaciō of my
soule. and graunt^t me grace of verrey penaunce. con-

fession and satisfaccioñ to doon in þis present liff
 [1091] þorghe þe benigne grace of hym þat is kyng^t of
 kyngges and preest^t of alle preestes þat^t bouz^t vs
 wiþ þe precious blode of his hert^t [1092] So þat I may
 bene oon of hem at þe day of dome þat^t shal be saued. /
 Qui cum patre & spiritu sancto vivis & regnas deus &cetera.

Here endep þe boke of þe talys of Canter-
 bury compiled by Geffray Chawcer on whoos
 soule Ihesu crist^t haue mercy. || AmeN ||

[*Square painting of the arms of Henry Percy, 4th Earl of Northumberland, K.G., quartering Poynings, Fitz Payn and Bryan. H on the right, P on the left of the shield, in a Garter with the legend 'hony . soit . qui . mal . y . pence.'* A lion, unicorn, &c, in the 4 corners.]

APPENDIX (to Group B, p. 591).

[*Christ Church MS. 152.*] [on leaf 173, back,
sign. k 2, back]

¶ Sire Nonnes preest oure hoost seyde a none
y-blessed be thy breth & euery stoone
This was a mery tale of Chaunteclere
But be my trouthe if *thou* were seculere
Thow woldeste bene a tredefoul a right
ffor if thow haue corage as *thou* haste myght
The were nede of hennes as I wene
Ye moo than .vij. tymes seventene
See whiche braunnes hath *this* gentel preeste
So grete a nekke & so large a breeste
He loketh as a Sparhauke with his yen
Hym nedeth nat his colour for to dyen [leaf 174, sign. k 3]
with Brasile ne with Greyne of Portyngale /
Now sire faire falle yow for youre tale
And aftir he with full mery chere
Saide vnto a nother as ye shulle here

Here is ended the Nonnes prestes tale
And folowith the prologe of the Maunciples tale

DRAWINGS OF THE 23 TELLERS

OF THE

24 CANTERBURY TALES,

COPIED FROM THE ELLESMERE MS,

AND CUT ON WOOD,

BY

Mr W. H. Hooper.

In this first issue, 1871, only 14 of the Cuts are given. The other 10 will follow in 1872. When the print of each MS is bound, the cut of each Teller of a Tale can be put at the beginning of his Tale, as in the Ellesmere MS, or by his description in the General Prologue, to contrast the artist's hand with the poet's; or, all the cuts can be put together before or after the Prologue, or at the end of the volume (as not part of the MS), according to the fancy of each Member.



THE MILLERE.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 38, back.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY of ILLINOIS

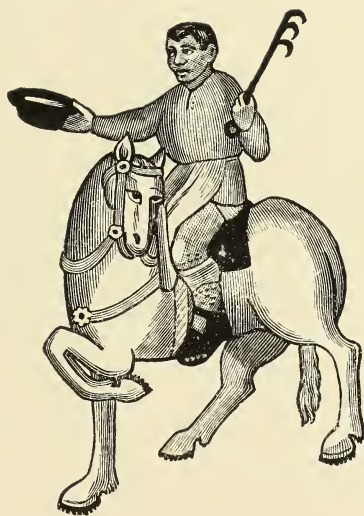


THE KNYGHT.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 14.

(The brand on the horse's hip—M, ? for *Miles*—
is in ink, and probably by a later hand.)

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY of ILLINOIS



THE COOK.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 51.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY of ILLINOIS



THE REVE.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 46.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY of ILLINOIS



THE WYF OF BATHE.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 76.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY of ILLINOIS



THE MAN OF LAWE.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 54, back.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY of ILLINOIS



THE FRERE.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 80, back.



THE SOMONOUR.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 85, back.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY of ILLINOIS



THE CLERK OF OXENFORD.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 92.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY of ILLINOIS



THE SHIPMAN.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 147, back.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY of ILLINOIS



THE PRIORESSE.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 152, back.

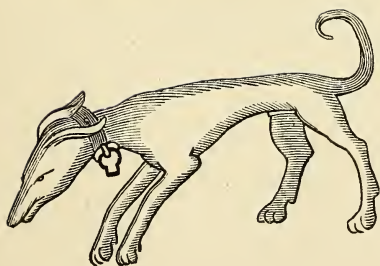
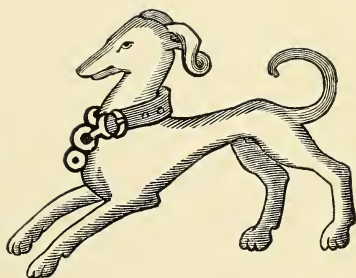
LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS



CHAU CER.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 157, back.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY of ILLINOIS



THE MONK.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 173.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS



THE NONNES PREEST.

Ellesmere MS, leaf 183.

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY of ILLINOIS

UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS-URBANA



3 0112 118417408